http://freefor911.wordpress.com

ACCA

STUDY TEXT

ACCA OFFICIAL PUBLISHER

PAPER F9

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

FOR EXAMS IN 2010

BPP LEARNING MEDIA

http://freefor911.wordpress.com

ACCA

STUDY TEXT

PAPER F9

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

In this edition approved by ACCA

- We **discuss** the **best strategies** for studying for ACCA exams
- We **highlight** the **most important elements** in the syllabus and the **key skills** you will need
- We **signpost** how each chapter links to the syllabus and the study guide
- We **provide** lots of **exam focus points** demonstrating what the examiner will want you to do
- We **emphasise key points** in regular **fast forward summaries**
- We **test your knowledge** of what you've studied in **quick quizzes**
- We **examine your understanding** in our **exam question bank**
- We **reference all the important topics** in our **full index**

BPP's **i-Learn** and **i-Pass** products also support this paper.

FOR EXAMS IN DECEMBER 2009 AND JUNE 2010

BPP LEARNING MEDIA

http://freefor911.wordpress.com

First edition 2007

Third edition June 2009

ISBN 9780 7517 6373 7
(Previous ISBN 9780 7517 4732 4)

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book
is available from the British Library

Published by

BPP Learning Media Ltd
BPP House, Aldine Place
London W12 8AA

www.bpp.com/learningmedia

Printed in the United Kingdom

All our rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of BPP Learning Media Ltd.

We are grateful to the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants for permission to reproduce past examination questions. The suggested solutions in the exam answer bank have been prepared by BPP Learning Media Ltd, except where otherwise stated.

Your learning materials, published by BPP Learning Media Ltd, are printed on paper sourced from sustainable, managed forests.

©
BPP Learning Media Ltd
2009

Contents

Page

Introduction

How the BPP ACCA-approved Study Text can help you pass iv
Studying F9 vii
The exam paper and exam formulae viii

Part A Financial management function

1 Financial management and financial objectives 3

Part B Financial management environment

2 The economic environment for business 35
3 Financial markets and institutions 53

Part C Working capital management

4 Working capital 65
5 Managing working capital 79
6 Working capital finance 103

Part D Investment appraisal

7 Investment decisions 127
8 Investment appraisal using DCF methods 141
9 Allowing for inflation and taxation 157
10 Project appraisal and risk 169
11 Specific investment decisions 181

Part E Business finance

12 Sources of finance 201
13 Dividend policy 223
14 Gearing and capital structure 231

Part F Cost of capital

15 The cost of capital 253
16 Capital structure 275

Part G Business valuations

17 Business valuations 293
18 Market efficiency 313

Part H Risk management

19 Foreign currency risk 325
20 Interest rate risk 349

Mathematical tables 361

Exam question bank 367

Exam answer bank 389

Index 447

Review form and free prize draw

A note about copyright

Dear Customer

What does the little © mean and why does it matter?

Your market-leading BPP books, course materials and e-learning materials do not write and update themselves. People write them: on their own behalf or as employees of an organisation that invests in this activity. Copyright law protects their livelihoods. It does so by creating rights over the use of the content.

Breach of copyright is a form of theft – as well as being a criminal offence in some jurisdictions, it is potentially a serious breach of professional ethics.

With current technology, things might seem a bit hazy but, basically, without the express permission of BPP Learning Media:

- Photocopying our materials is a breach of copyright
- Scanning, ripcasting or conversion of our digital materials into different file formats, uploading them to facebook or emailing them to your friends is a breach of copyright

You can, of course, sell your books, in the form in which you have bought them – once you have finished with them. (Is this fair to your fellow students? We update for a reason.) But the e-products are sold on a single user licence basis: we do not supply 'unlock' codes to people who have bought them second-hand.

And what about outside the UK? BPP Learning Media strives to make our materials available at prices students can afford by local printing arrangements, pricing policies and partnerships which are clearly listed on our website. A tiny minority ignore this and indulge in criminal activity by illegally photocopying our material or supporting organisations that do. If they act illegally and unethically in one area, can you really trust them?

How the BPP ACCA-approved Study Text can help you pass your exams – AND help you with your Practical Experience Requirement!

NEW FEATURE – the PER alert!

Before you can qualify as an ACCA member, you do not only have to pass all your exams but also fulfil a three year **practical experience requirement** (PER). To help you to recognise areas of the syllabus that you might be able to apply in the workplace to achieve different performance objectives, we have introduced the '**PER alert**' feature. You will find this feature throughout the Study Text to remind you that what you are **learning to pass** your ACCA exams is **equally useful to the fulfilment of the PER requirement**.

Tackling studying

Studying can be a daunting prospect, particularly when you have lots of other commitments. The **different features** of the text, the **purposes** of which are explained fully on the **Chapter features** page, will help you whilst studying and improve your chances of **exam success**.

Developing exam awareness

Our Texts are completely **focused** on helping you pass your exam.

Our advice on **Studying F9** outlines the **content** of the paper, the **necessary skills** the examiner expects you to demonstrate and any **brought forward knowledge** you are expected to have.

Exam focus points are included within the chapters to highlight when and how specific topics were examined, or how they might be examined in the future.

Using the Syllabus and Study Guide

You can find the syllabus, Study Guide and other useful resources for F9 on the ACCA web site:

www.accaglobal.com/students/study_exams/qualifications/acca_choose/acca/professional/fm/

The Study Text covers **all aspects** of the syllabus to ensure you are as fully prepared for the exam as possible.

Testing what you can do

Testing yourself helps you develop the skills you need to pass the exam and also confirms that you can recall what you have learnt.

We include **Questions** – lots of them - both within chapters and in the **Exam Question Bank**, as well as **Quick Quizzes** at the end of each chapter to test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Chapter features

Each chapter contains a number of helpful features to guide you through each topic.

Topic list

Topic list	Syllabus reference

Tells you what you will be studying in this chapter and the relevant section numbers, together the ACCA syllabus references.

Introduction

Puts the chapter content in the context of the syllabus as a whole.

Study Guide

Links the chapter content with ACCA guidance.

Exam Guide

Highlights how examinable the chapter content is likely to be and the ways in which it could be examined.

Knowledge brought forward from earlier studies

What you are assumed to know from previous studies/exams.

FAST FORWARD

Summarises the content of main chapter headings, allowing you to preview and review each section easily.

Examples

Demonstrate how to apply key knowledge and techniques.

Key terms

Definitions of important concepts that can often earn you easy marks in exams.

Exam focus points

Tell you when and how specific topics were examined, or how they may be examined in the future.

Formula to learn

Formulae that are not given in the exam but which have to be learnt.

PER alert

This is a new feature that gives you a useful indication of syllabus areas that closely relate to performance objectives in your Practical Experience Requirement (PER).

Question

Give you essential practice of techniques covered in the chapter.

Case Study

Provide real world examples of theories and techniques.

Chapter Roundup

A full list of the Fast Forwards included in the chapter, providing an easy source of review.

Quick Quiz

A quick test of your knowledge of the main topics in the chapter.

Exam Question Bank

Found at the back of the Study Text with more comprehensive chapter questions. Cross referenced for easy navigation.

BPP LEARNING MEDIA

Studying F9

This paper examines a wide range of financial management topics, many of which will be completely new to you. You will need to be competent at a range of quite tricky calculations as well as able to explain and discuss financial management techniques and issues.

The examiner is Tony Head who was the examiner for Paper 2.4 under the old syllabus. He expects you to be able to perform and comment on calculations, exercise critical abilities, clearly demonstrate understanding of the syllabus and use question information.

1 What F9 is about

The aim of this syllabus is to develop the knowledge and skills expected of a finance manager, in relation to investment, financing and dividend policy decisions.

F9 is a middle level paper in the ACCA qualification structure. There are some links to material you have covered in F2, particularly short-term decision making techniques. The paper with a direct link following F9 is P4 which thinks strategically and considers wider environmental factors. F9 requires you to be able to apply techniques and think about their impact on the organisation.

2 What skills are required?

- You are expected to have a core of financial management knowledge
- You will be required to carry out calculations, with clear workings and a logical structure
- You will be required to explain financial management techniques and discuss whether they are appropriate for a particular organisation
- You must be able to apply your skills in a practical context

3 How to improve your chances of passing

- There is no choice in this paper, all questions have to be answered
- You must therefore study the entire syllabus, there are no short-cuts
- Practising questions under timed conditions is essential. BPP's revision kit contains 25 mark questions on all areas of the syllabus
- Questions will be based on simple scenarios and answers must be focused and specific to the organisation
- Answer all parts of the question. Even if you cannot do all of the calculation elements, you will still be able to gain marks in the discussion parts
- Make sure you write full answers to discussion sections, not one or two word lists, the examiner is looking for understanding to be demonstrated
- Plan your written answers and write legibly
- Include all your workings and label them clearly

4 Brought forward knowledge

You will need to have a good working knowledge of certain management accounting techniques from 1.2 (old syllabus) or F2 (new syllabus). In particular, short-term decision making techniques such as cost-volume-profit analysis and the calculation of relevant costs. This Study Text revises these topics and brought forward knowledge is identified. If you struggle with the examples and questions used, you must go back and revisit your previous work. The examiner will assume you know this material and it may form part of an exam question.

The exam paper

The exam is a three–hour paper containing four compulsory 25 mark questions.

Analysis of past papers

The table below provides details of when each element of the syllabus has been examined and the question number and section in which each element appeared. Further details can be found in the Exam Focus Points in the relevant chapters.

Covered in Text chapter		Dec 2008	June 2008	Dec 2007	Pilot Paper
	FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT FUNCTION				
1	Nature & purpose				
1	Objectives				
1	Stakeholders	1e			
	FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT ENVIRONMENT				
2	Economic environment				
3	Financial markets and institutions				
	WORKING CAPITAL MANAGEMENT				
4, 5	Management	2b,c	3a,b,c,d	4a,b,c	3a,b,c
6	Funding strategies				3d
	INVESTMENT APPRAISAL				
7	Non-discounted cash flow techniques				4b
8, 9	Discounted cash flow techniques	3b	1b, 4a,b,c,d	2a,b	4a,c
10	Risk and uncertainty			2c	
11	Specific investment decisions				
	BUSINESS FINANCE				
12	Sources of short-term finance			3d	
12	Sources of long term-finance	1a, 4a	2b,e	3b,c	
13	Dividend policy			3a	
14	Finance for SMEs				
	COST OF CAPITAL				
15	Calculation	3a	1a,c		1a
16	Gearing (capital structure)	3c			1b,c
	BUSINESS VALUATIONS				
17	Valuation of shares	1b,c,d	2a,c	1a	
17	Valuation of debt	4b		1b	
18	Efficient market hypothesis / practical considerations		2d	1c	
	RISK MANAGEMENT				
19	Causes of interest rate / exchange rate fluctuations				2b
19	Hedging foreign currency risk	4c,d		4d	2a,c,d
20	Hedging interest rate risk	2a			

Exam formulae

Set out below are the **formulae you will be given in the exam**. If you are not sure what the symbols mean, or how the formulae are used, you should refer to the appropriate chapter in this Study Text.

	Chapter in Study Text
Economic Order Quantity	5

$$= \sqrt{\frac{2C_0D}{C_H}}$$

Miller-Orr Model	6

$$\text{Return point} = \text{Lower limit} + \left(\frac{1}{3} \times \text{spread}\right)$$

$$\text{Spread} = 3\left[\frac{\frac{3}{4} \times \text{transaction cost} \times \text{variance of cash flows}}{\text{interest rate}}\right]^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

The Capital Asset Pricing Model	15

$$E(r_i) = R_f + \beta_i(E(r_m) - R_f)$$

The Asset Beta Formula	16

$$\beta_a = \left[\frac{V_e}{(V_e + V_d(1-T))}\beta_e\right] + \left[\frac{V_d(1-T)}{(V_e + V_d(1-T))}\beta_d\right]$$

The Growth Model	15

$$P_0 = \frac{D_0(1+g)}{(K_e - g)}$$

Gordon's Growth Approximation	15

$$g = br$$

The weighted average cost of capital	15

$$\text{WACC} = \left[\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_e + \left[\frac{V_d}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_d\,(1-T)$$

The Fisher formula	9

$$(1 + i) = (1 + r)(1 + h)$$

Purchasing Power Parity and Interest Rate Parity	19

$$S_1 = S_0 \times \frac{(1+h_c)}{(1+h_b)} \qquad F_0 = S_0 \times \frac{(1+i_c)}{(1+i_b)}$$

PART A

Financial management function

1

Financial management and financial objectives

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The nature and purpose of financial management	A1(a), (b)
2 Financial objectives and the relationship with corporate strategy	A2 (a), (b)
3 Stakeholders	A3 (a), (b), (c)
4 Measuring the achievement of corporate objectives	A3 (d)
5 Encouraging the achievement of stakeholder objectives	A3 (e)
6 Not-for-profit organisations	A4 (a), (b), (c)

Introduction

In Parts A and B of this study text we examine the work of the financial management function and the framework within which it operates.

In this chapter, after introducing the **nature and purpose of financial management**, we consider the **objectives** of organisations. We go on to examine the influence of **stakeholders** on stakeholder objectives.

The final part of this chapter examines objectives in **not-for-profit** organisations.

http://freefor911.wordpress.com

Study guide

		Intellectual level
A	**Financial management function**	
1	**The nature and purpose of financial management**	
(a)	Explain the nature and purpose of financial management.	1
(b)	Explain the relationship between financial management and financial and management accounting.	1
2	**Financial objectives and the relationship with corporate strategy**	
(a)	Discuss the relationship between financial objectives, corporate objectives and corporate strategy.	2
(b)	Identify and describe a variety of financial objectives, including:	2
(i)	shareholder wealth maximisation	
(ii)	profit maximisation	
(iii)	earnings per share growth	
3	**Stakeholders and impact on corporate objectives**	
(a)	Identify the range of stakeholders and their objectives	2
(b)	Discuss the possible conflict between stakeholder objectives	2
(c)	Discuss the role of management in meeting stakeholder objectives, including the application of agency theory.	2
(d)	Describe and apply ways of measuring achievement of corporate objectives including:	2
(i)	ratio analysis, using appropriate ratios such as return on capital employed, return on equity, earnings per share and dividend per share	
(ii)	changes in dividends and share prices as part of total shareholder return	
(e)	Explain ways to encourage the achievement of stakeholder objectives, including:	2
(i)	managerial reward schemes such as share options and performance-related pay	
(ii)	regulatory requirements such as corporate governance codes of best practice and stock exchange listing regulations	
4	**Financial and other objectives in not-for-profit organisations**	
(a)	Discuss the impact of not-for-profit status on financial and other objectives.	2
(b)	Discuss the nature and importance of Value for Money as an objective in not-for-profit organisations.	2
(c)	Discuss ways of measuring the achievement of objectives in not-for-profit organisations.	2

Exam guide

The material in this chapter is examinable as an entire discussion question or as a question involving calculations such as ratios and discussion. When doing a ratio analysis question, you must make sure you **apply** your answer to the organisation in the question. The organisation will not necessarily be a publicly quoted company with shareholders.

1 The nature and purpose of financial management

FAST FORWARD

Financial management decisions cover **investment** decisions, **financing** decisions, **dividend** decisions and **risk management**.

http://freefor911.wordpress.com

1.1 What is financial management?

Financial management can be defined as the management of the finances of an organisation in order to achieve the financial objectives of the organisation. The usual assumption in financial management for the private sector is that the objective of the company is to **maximise shareholders' wealth**.

1.2 Financial planning

The financial manager will need to **plan** to ensure that enough funding is available at the right time to meet the needs of the organisation for short, medium and long-term capital.

(a) In the short term, funds may be needed to pay for purchases of inventory, or to smooth out changes in receivables, payables and cash: the financial manager is here ensuring that **working capital requirements** are met.

(b) In the medium or long term, the organisation may have planned purchases of **non-current assets** such as plant and equipment, for which the financial manager must ensure that **funding** is available.

The financial manager contributes to decisions on the uses of funds raised by **analysing financial data** to **determine uses** which meet the **organisation's financial objectives.** Is project A to be preferred to Project B? Should a new asset be bought or leased?

1.3 Financial control

The **control** function of the financial manager becomes relevant for funding which has been raised. Are the various activities of the organisation meeting its objectives? Are assets being used efficiently? To answer these questions, the financial manager may **compare data** on **actual performance** with **forecast performance**. Forecast data will have been prepared in the light of past performance (historical data) modified to reflect expected future changes. Future changes may include the effects of economic development, for example an economic recovery leading to a forecast upturn in revenues.

1.4 Financial management decisions

The financial manager makes decisions relating to **investment**, **financing** and **dividends**. The **management of risk** must also be considered.

Investments in assets must be **financed** somehow. Financial management is also concerned with the **management of short-term funds** and with how funds can be raised over the long term.

The retention of profits is a financing decision. The other side of this decision is that if profits are retained, there is less to pay out to shareholders as dividends, which might deter investors. An appropriate balance needs to be struck in addressing the **dividend decision**: how much of its profits should the company pay out as dividends and how much should it retain for investment to provide for future growth and new investment opportunities?

We shall be looking at various aspects of the investment, financing and dividend decisions of financial management throughout this Study Text.

Examples of different types of investment decision	
Decisions **internal** to the business enterprise	• Whether to undertake new projects • Whether to invest in new plant and machinery • Research and development decisions • Investment in a marketing or advertising campaign

Examples of different types of investment decision	
Decisions involving **external parties**	• Whether to carry out a takeover or a merger involving another business • Whether to engage in a joint venture with another enterprise
Disinvestment decisions	• Whether to sell off unprofitable segments of the business • Whether to sell old or surplus plant and machinery • The sale of subsidiary companies

Question

Disposal of surplus assets

'The financial manager should identify surplus assets and dispose of them'. Why?

Answer

A surplus asset earns no return for the business. The business is likely to be paying the 'cost of capital' in respect of the money tied up in the asset, ie the money which it can realise by selling it.

If surplus assets are sold, the business may be able to invest the cash released in more productive ways, or alternatively it may use the cash to cut its liabilities. Either way, it will enhance the return on capital employed for the business as a whole.

Although selling surplus assets yields short-term benefits, the business should not jeopardise its activities in the medium or long term by disposing of productive capacity until the likelihood of it being required in the future has been fully assessed.

1.5 Management accounting, financial accounting and financial management

Of course, it is not just people *within* an organisation who require information. Those **external** to the organisation such as banks, shareholders, the Inland Revenue, creditors and government agencies all desire information too.

Management accountants provide **internally-used** information. The **financial accounting function** provides **externally-used** information. The management accountant is not concerned with the calculation of earnings per share for the income statement and the financial accountant is not concerned with the variances between budgeted and actual labour expenditure.

Management information provides a **common source** from which are prepared financial accounts and management accounts. The **differences** between the two types of accounts arise in the manner in which the common source of data is **analysed**.

Financial accounts	Management accounts
Financial accounts **detail the performance of an organisation over a defined period and the state of affairs at the end of that period.**	Management accounts are **used to aid management to record**, **plan** and **control activities and to help the decision-making process.**
Limited companies must, **by law**, prepare financial accounts.	There is **no legal requirement** to prepare management accounts.
The **format** of published financial accounts is determined by **law** and by **accounting standards**. In principle the accounts of different organisations can therefore be easily compared.	The **format** of management accounts is entirely at management discretion: **no strict rules** govern the way they are prepared or presented.
Financial accounts **concentrate on the business as a whole**, aggregating revenues and costs from different operations, and are an end in themselves.	Management accounts can **focus on specific areas** of an organisation's activities. Information may aid a decision rather than be an end product of a decision.

http://freefor911.wordpress.com

Financial accounts	Management accounts
Most financial accounting information is of a **monetary** nature.	Management accounts incorporate **non-monetary** measures.
Financial accounts present an essentially **historic** picture of **past** operations.	Management accounts are both a **historical** record and a **future** planning tool.

As we have seen financial management is **the management of finance**. Finance is used by an organisation just as, for example, labour is used by an organisation. Finance therefore needs management in a similar way to labour. The management accounting function provides information to ensure the effective management of labour and, in the same way, the financial management function provides information on, for example, projected cash flows to aid the **effective** management of finance.

2 Financial objectives and the relationship with corporate strategy

FAST FORWARD

Strategy is a course of action to achieve an objective.

2.1 Strategy

Strategy may be defined as a course of action, including the specification of resources required, to achieve a specific objective.

Strategy can be **short-term** or **long-term**, depending on the time horizon of the objective it is intended to achieve.

This definition also indicates that since strategy depends on objectives or targets, the obvious starting point for a study of corporate strategy and financial strategy is the **identification and formulation of objectives**.

Financial strategy can be defined as 'the identification of the possible strategies capable of maximising an organisation's net present value, the allocation of scarce capital resources among the competing opportunities and the implementation and monitoring of the chosen strategy so as to achieve stated objectives'.

Financial strategy depends on stated **objectives** or **targets**. Examples of objectives relevant to financial strategy are given below.

Case Study

The following statements of objectives, both formally and informally presented, were taken from recent annual reports and accounts.

Tate & Lyle ('a global leader in carbohydrate processing')

The board of Tate & Lyle is totally committed to a strategy that will achieve a substantial improvement in profitability and return on capital and therefore in shareholder value. To that end we will:

- Continue to develop higher margin, higher-value-added and higher growth carbohydrate-based products, building on the Group's technology strengths in our world-wide starch business.
- Ensure that all retained assets produce acceptable returns.
- Divest businesses which do not contribute to value creation, and/or are no longer core to the Group's strategy.
- Conclude as rapidly as practicable our review of the strategic alternatives available to us in our US sugar operations.

http://freefor911.wordpress.com
http://freefor911.wordpress.com

- Continue to improve efficiency and reduce costs through our business improvement projects which include employee development and training programmes.

Kingfisher ('one of Europe's leading retailers concentrating on market serving the home and family')

Customers are our primary focus. We are determined to provide them with an unbeatable shopping experience built on great value, service and choice, whilst rapidly identifying and serving their ever-changing needs.

This goal is pursued through some of Europe's best known retail brands and increasingly through innovative e-commerce channels which harness our traditional retailing expertise.

By combining global scale and local marketing we aim to continue to grow our business, deliver superior returns to our shareholders and provide unique and satisfying opportunities for our people.

2.2 Corporate objectives

FAST FORWARD

Corporate objectives are relevant for the organisation as a whole, relating to key factors for business success.

Corporate objectives are those which are concerned with the firm as a whole. Objectives should be **explicit**, **quantifiable** and **capable of being achieved**. The corporate objectives outline the expectations of the firm and the strategic planning process is concerned with the means of achieving the objectives.

Objectives should relate to the **key factors for business success**, which are typically as follows.

- Profitability (return on investment)
- Market share
- Growth
- Cash flow
- Customer satisfaction
- The quality of the firm's products
- Industrial relations
- Added value

2.3 Financial objectives

FAST FORWARD

Financial targets may include targets for: **earnings; earnings per share; dividend per share; gearing level; profit retention; operating profitability**.

The usual assumption in financial management for the private sector is that the primary financial objective of the company is to **maximise shareholders' wealth.**

2.3.1 Shareholder wealth maximisation 12/08

If the financial objective of a company is to maximise the value of the company, and in particular the value of its ordinary shares, we need to be able to put values on a company and its shares. How do we do it?

Three possible methods for the valuation of a company might occur to us.

(a) **Statement of financial position valuation**

Here assets will be valued on a **going concern basis**. Certainly, investors will look at a company's statement of financial position. If retained profits rise every year, the company will be a profitable one. Statement of financial position values are not a measure of 'market value', although retained profits might give some indication of what the company could pay as dividends to shareholders.

(b) **Break-up basis**

This method of valuing a business is only of interest when the business is threatened with **liquidation**, or when its management is thinking about selling off individual assets to raise cash.

(c) **Market values**

The market value is the price at which buyers and sellers will trade stocks and shares in a company. This is the method of valuation which is most relevant to the financial objectives of a company.

(i) When shares are traded on a recognised stock market, such as the Stock Exchange, the market value of a company can be measured by the **price** at which shares are currently being traded.

(ii) When shares are in a private company, and are not traded on any stock market, there is no easy way to measure their market value. Even so, the financial objective of these companies should be to **maximise** the **wealth** of their **ordinary shareholders**.

The wealth of the shareholders in a company comes from:

- **Dividends** received
- **Market value** of the shares

A shareholder's **return** on investment is obtained in the form of:

- **Dividends** received
- **Capital gains** from increases in the market value of his or her shares

If a company's shares are traded on a stock market, the wealth of shareholders is increased when the share price goes up. The price of a company's shares will go up when the company makes attractive profits, which it pays out as **dividends** or **re-invests** in the business to achieve future profit growth and dividend growth. However, to increase the share price the company should achieve its attractive profits without taking **business risks** and **financial risks** which worry shareholders.

If there is an increase in earnings and dividends, management can hope for an increase in the share price too, so that shareholders benefit from both **higher revenue** (dividends) and also **capital gains** (higher share prices). **Total shareholder return** is a measure which combines the increase in share price and dividends paid and can be calculated as:

$$(P_1 - P_o + D_1)/P_0$$

Where P_0 is the share price at the beginning of the period

P_1 is the share price at the end of period

D_1 is the dividend paid

Management should set **targets** for factors which they can influence directly, such as **profits** and **dividend growth**. A financial objective might be expressed as the aim of increasing profits, earnings per share and dividend per share by, say, 10% a year for each of the next five years.

2.3.2 Profit maximisation

In much of economic theory, it is assumed that the firm behaves in such a way as to **maximise profits**, where profit is viewed in an economist's sense. Unlike the accountant's concept of cost, total costs by this economist's definition includes an element of reward for the risk-taking of the entrepreneur, called 'normal profit'.

Where the entrepreneur is in **full managerial control** of the firm, as in the case of a small owner-managed company or partnership, the economist's assumption of profit maximisation would seem to be very reasonable. Remember though that the economist's concept of profits is broadly in terms of **cash**, whereas accounting profits may not equate to cash flows.

Even in companies owned by shareholders but run by non-shareholding managers, if the manager is serving the company's (ie the shareholders') interests, we might expect that the profit maximisation assumption should be close to the truth.

Although profits do matter, they are not the best measure of a company's achievements.

(a) Accounting profits are not the same as 'economic' profits. Accounting profits can be **manipulated** to some extent by choices of accounting policies.

Question

Manipulation of profits

Can you give three examples of how accounting profits might be manipulated?

Answer

Here are some examples you might have chosen.

(a) Provisions, such as provisions for depreciation or anticipated losses
(b) The capitalisation of various expenses, such as development costs
(c) Adding overhead costs to inventory valuations

(b) Profit does not take account of **risk**. Shareholders will be very interested in the level of risk, and maximising profits may be achieved by increasing risk to unacceptable levels.

(c) Profits on their own take no account of the **volume of investment** that it has taken to earn the profit. Profits must be related to the volume of investment to have any real meaning. Hence measures of financial achievement include:
   (i) Accounting return on capital employed
   (ii) Earnings per share
   (iii) Yields on investment, eg dividend yield as a percentage of stock market value

(d) Profits are reported every year (with half-year interim results for quoted companies). They are measures of **short-term** performance, whereas a company's performance should ideally be judged over a longer term.

2.3.3 Earnings per share growth — Pilot Paper, 12/08

Key term

> **Earnings per share** is calculated by dividing the net profit or loss attributable to ordinary shareholders by the weighted average number of ordinary shares.

Earnings per share (EPS) is widely used as a measure of a company's performance and is of particular importance in comparing results over a period of several years. A company must be able to sustain its earnings in order to pay dividends and re-invest in the business so as to achieve future growth. Investors also look for **growth** in the EPS from one year to the next.

Question

Earnings per share

Walter Wall Carpets made profits before tax in 20X8 of $9,320,000. Tax amounted to $2,800,000.

The company's share capital is as follows.

	$
Ordinary shares (10,000,000 shares of $1)	10,000,000
8% preference shares	2,000,000
	12,000,000

Calculate the EPS for 20X8.

Answer

	$
Profits before tax	9,320,000
Less tax	2,800,000
Profits after tax	6,520,000
Less preference dividend (8% of $2,000,000)	160,000
Earnings attributable to ordinary shareholders	6,360,000
Number of ordinary shares	10,000,000
EPS	63.6c

Note that:

(a) EPS is a figure based on **past data**, and
(b) It is **easily manipulated** by changes in accounting policies and by mergers or acquisitions

The use of the measure in calculating management bonuses makes it particularly liable to manipulation. The attention given to EPS as a performance measure by City analysts is arguably disproportionate to its true worth. Investors should be more concerned with future earnings, but of course estimates of these are more difficult to reach than the readily available figure.

2.3.4 Other financial targets

In addition to targets for earnings, EPS, and dividend per share, a company might set **other financial targets**, such as:

(a) A restriction on the company's level of **gearing**, or debt. For example, a company's management might decide:
   (i) The ratio of long-term debt capital to equity capital should never exceed, say, 1:1.
   (ii) The cost of interest payments should never be higher than, say, 25% of total profits before interest and tax.
(b) A target for **profit retentions**. For example, management might set a target that dividend cover (the ratio of distributable profits to dividends actually distributed) should not be less than, say, 2.5 times.
(c) A target for **operating profitability**. For example, management might set a target for the profit/sales ratio (say, a minimum of 10%) or for a return on capital employed (say, a minimum ROCE of 20%).

These financial targets are not primary financial objectives, but they can act as subsidiary targets or constraints which should help a company to achieve its main financial objective without incurring excessive risks. They are usually measured over a year rather than over the long term.

Remember however that short-term measures of return can encourage a company to pursue **short-term** objectives at the expense of **long-term** ones, for example by deferring new capital investments, or spending only small amounts on research and development and on training.

A major problem with setting a number of different financial targets, either primary targets or supporting secondary targets, is that they might not all be consistent with each other. When this happens, some compromises will have to be accepted.

2.3.5 Example: Financial targets

Lion Grange Co has recently introduced a formal scheme of long range planning. Sales in the current year reached $10,000,000, and forecasts for the next five years are $10,600,000, $11,400,000, $12,400,000, $13,600,000 and $15,000,000. The ratio of net profit after tax to sales is 10%, and this is expected to continue throughout the planning period. Total assets less current liabilities will remain at around 125% of sales. Equity in the current year is $8.75m.

It was suggested at a recent board meeting that:

(a) If profits rise, dividends should rise by at least the same percentage

(b) An earnings retention rate of 50% should be maintained ie a payment ratio of 50%

(c) The ratio of long-term borrowing to long-term funds (debt plus equity) is limited (by the market) to 30%, which happens also to be the current gearing level of the company

You are required to prepare a financial analysis of the draft long range plan.

Solution

The draft financial plan, for profits, dividends, assets required and funding, can be drawn up in a table, as follows.

	Current Year	*Year 1*	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*	*Year 5*
	$m	$m	$m	$m	$m	$m
Sales	10.00	10.60	11.40	12.40	13.60	15.00
Net profit after tax	1.00	1.06	1.14	1.24	1.36	1.50
Dividends (50% of profit after tax)	0.50	0.53	0.57	0.62	0.68	0.75
Total assets less current liabilities	12.50	13.25	14.25	15.50	17.00	18.75
Equity (increased by retained earnings)	8.75	9.28	9.85	10.47	11.15	11.90
Maximum debt (30% of long-term funds, or 3/7 × equity)	3.75	3.98	4.22	4.49	4.78	5.10
Funds available	12.50	13.26	14.07	14.96	15.93	17.00
(Shortfalls) in funds *	0.00	0.00	(0.18)	(0.54)	(1.07)	(1.75)

* Given maximum gearing of 30% and no new issue of shares = funds available minus net assets required.

Question

Dividends and gearing

Suggest policies on dividends, retained earnings and gearing for Lion Grange, using the data above.

Answer

The financial objectives of the company are not compatible with each other. Adjustments will have to be made.

(a) Given the assumptions about sales, profits, dividends and net assets required, there will be an **increasing shortfall of funds** from year 2 onwards, unless new shares are issued or the gearing level rises above 30%.

(b) In years 2 and 3, the shortfall can be eliminated by **retaining a greater percentage** of profits, but this may have a serious **adverse effect** on the share price. In year 4 and year 5, the shortfall in funds cannot be removed even if dividend payments are reduced to nothing.

(c) The **net asset turnover** appears to be **low**. The situation would be eased if investments were able to generate a higher volume of sales, so that fewer fixed assets and less working capital would be required to support the projected level of sales.

(d) If asset turnover cannot be improved, it may be possible to **increase the profit to sales ratio** by reducing costs or increasing selling prices.

(e) If a new issue of shares is proposed to make up the shortfall in funds, the amount of funds required must be considered very carefully. Total **dividends** would have to be **increased** in order to pay dividends on the new shares. The company seems unable to offer prospects of suitable dividend payments, and so raising new equity might be difficult.

(f) It is conceivable that extra funds could be raised by issuing new debt capital, so that the level of gearing would be over 30%. It is uncertain whether investors would be prepared to lend money so as to increase gearing. If more funds were borrowed, profits after interest and tax would fall so that the share price might also be reduced.

2.4 Non-financial objectives

A company may have important **non-financial objectives**, which will limit the achievement of financial objectives. Examples of non-financial objectives are as follows.

(a) **The welfare of employees**

A company might try to provide good wages and salaries, comfortable and safe working conditions, good training and career development, and good pensions. If redundancies are necessary, many companies will provide generous redundancy payments, or spend money trying to find alternative employment for redundant staff.

(b) **The welfare of management**

Managers will often take decisions to improve their own circumstances, even though their decisions will incur expenditure and so reduce profits. High salaries, company cars and other perks are all examples of managers promoting their own interests.

(c) **The provision of a service**

The major objectives of some companies will include fulfilment of a responsibility to provide a service to the public. Examples are the privatised British Telecom and British Gas. Providing a service is of course a key responsibility of government departments and local authorities.

(d) **The fulfilment of responsibilities towards customers**

Responsibilities towards customers include providing in good time a product or service of a quality that customers expect, and dealing honestly and fairly with customers. Reliable supply arrangements, also after-sales service arrangements, are important.

(e) **The fulfilment of responsibilities towards suppliers**

Responsibilities towards suppliers are expressed mainly in terms of trading relationships. A company's size could give it considerable power as a buyer. The company should not use its power unscrupulously. Suppliers might rely on getting prompt payment, in accordance with the agreed terms of trade.

(f) **The welfare of society as a whole**

The management of some companies is aware of the role that their company has to play in exercising corporate social responsibility. This includes compliance with applicable laws and regulations but is wider than that. Companies may be aware of their responsibility to minimise pollution and other harmful 'externalities' (such as excessive traffic) which their activities generate. In delivering 'green' environmental policies, a company may improve its corporate image as well as reducing harmful externality effects. Companies also may consider their 'positive' responsibilities, for example to make a contribution to the community by local sponsorship.

Other non-financial objectives are **growth**, **diversification** and **leadership in research and development**.

Non-financial objectives do not negate financial objectives, but they do suggest that the simple theory of company finance, that the objective of a firm is to maximise the wealth of ordinary shareholders, is too simplistic. Financial objectives may have to be **compromised** in order to satisfy non-financial objectives.

3 Stakeholders

FAST FORWARD

Stakeholders are individuals or groups who are affected by the activities of the firm. They can be classified as **internal** (employees and managers), **connected** (shareholders, customers and suppliers) and **external** (local communities, pressure groups, government).

Key term

There is a variety of different groups or individuals whose interests are directly affected by the activities of a firm. These groups or individuals are referred to as **stakeholders** in the firms.

The various stakeholder groups in a firm can be classified as follows.

Stakeholder groups	
Internal	Employees and pensioners Managers
Connected	Shareholders Debtholders Customers Bankers Suppliers Competitors
External	Government Pressure groups Local and national communities Professional and regulatory bodies

3.1 Objectives of stakeholder groups

The various groups of stakeholders in a firm will have different goals which will depend in part on the particular situation of the enterprise. Some of the more important aspects of these different goals are as follows.

(a) **Ordinary (equity) shareholders**

Ordinary (equity) shareholders are the providers of the risk capital of a company. Usually their goal will be to maximise the wealth which they have as a result of the ownership of the shares in the company.

(b) **Trade payables**

Trade payables have supplied goods or services to the firm. Trade payables will generally be profit-maximising firms themselves and have the objective of being paid the full amount due by the date agreed. On the other hand, they usually wish to ensure that they continue their trading relationship with the firm and may sometimes be prepared to accept later payment to avoid jeopardising that relationship.

(c) **Long-term payables (creditors)**

Long-term payables, which will often be banks, have the objective of receiving payments of interest and capital on the loan by the due date for the repayments. Where the loan is secured on assets of the company, the creditor will be able to appoint a receiver to dispose of the company's assets if the company defaults on the repayments. To avoid the possibility that this may result in a loss to the lender if the assets are not sufficient to cover the loan, the lender will wish to minimise the risk of default and will not wish to lend more than is prudent.

(d) **Employees**

Employees will usually want to maximise their rewards paid to them in salaries and benefits, according to the particular skills and the rewards available in alternative employment. Most employees will also want continuity of employment.

(e) **Government**

Government has objectives which can be formulated in political terms. Government agencies impinge on the firm's activities in different ways including through taxation of the firm's profits, the provision of grants, health and safety legislation, training initiatives and so on. Government policies will often be related to macroeconomic objectives such as sustained economic growth and high levels of employment.

(f) **Management**

Management has, like other employees (and managers who are not directors will normally be employees), the objective of maximising their own rewards. Directors and the managers to whom they delegate responsibilities must manage the company for the benefit of shareholders. The objective of reward maximisation might conflict with the exercise of this duty.

3.2 Stakeholder groups, strategy and objectives

The actions of stakeholder groups in pursuit of their various goals can exert influence on strategy and objectives. The greater the power of the stakeholder, the greater his influence will be. Each stakeholder group will have different expectations about what it wants, and the **expectations of the various groups may conflict**. Each group, however, will influence strategic decision-making.

3.3 Shareholders and management

Although ordinary shareholders (equity shareholders) are the owners of the company to whom the board of directors are accountable, the actual powers of shareholders tend to be restricted, except in companies where the shareholders are also the directors. The **day-to-day** running of a company is the responsibility of **management.** Although the company's results are submitted for shareholders' approval at the annual general meeting (AGM), there is often apathy and acquiescence in directors' recommendations.

Shareholders are often ignorant about their company's current situation and future prospects. They have no right to inspect the books of account, and their forecasts of future prospects are gleaned from the annual report and accounts, stockbrokers, investment journals and daily newspapers. The relationship between management and shareholders is sometimes referred to as an **agency relationship**, in which managers act as agents for the shareholders.

Key term

Agency relationship: a description of the relationship between management and shareholders expressing the idea that managers act as agents for the shareholder, using delegated powers to run the company in the shareholders' best interests.

However, if managers hold none or very few of the equity shares of the company they work for, what is to stop them from working inefficiently? or not bothering to look for profitable new investment opportunities? **or** giving themselves high salaries and perks?

One power that shareholders possess is the right to **remove** the **directors** from office. But shareholders have to take the initiative to do this, and in many companies, the shareholders lack the energy and organisation to take such a step. Even so, directors will want the company's report and accounts, and the proposed final dividend, to meet with shareholders' approval at the AGM.

Another reason why managers might do their best to improve the financial performance of their company is that managers' pay is often related to the **size** or profitability of the company. Managers in very big companies, or in very profitable companies, will normally expect to earn higher salaries than managers in smaller or less successful companies. There is also an argument for giving managers some **profit-related pay**, or providing incentives which are related to profits or share price.

3.4 Shareholders, managers and the company's long-term creditors

The relationship between long-term creditors of a company, the management and the shareholders of a company encompasses the following factors.

(a) Management may decide to raise finance for a company by taking out long-term or medium-term loans. They might well be taking **risky investment decisions** using outsiders' money to finance them.

(b) Investors who provide debt finance will rely on the company's management to generate enough net cash inflows to make **interest payments on time**, and eventually to repay loans.

However, long-term creditors will often take **security** for their loan, perhaps in the form of a fixed charge over an asset (such as a mortgage on a building). Bonds are also often subject to certain restrictive covenants, which restrict the company's rights to borrow more money until the debentures have been repaid.

If a company is unable to pay what it owes its creditors, the creditors may decide to **exercise their security** or to apply for the company to be **wound up**.

(c) The money that is provided by long-term creditors will be invested to earn profits, and the profits (in excess of what is needed to pay interest on the borrowing) will provide **extra dividends** or retained profits for the shareholders of the company. In other words, shareholders will expect to increase their wealth using creditors' money.

3.5 Shareholders, managers and government

The government does not have a direct interest in companies (except for those in which it actually holds shares). However, the government does often have a strong indirect interest in companies' affairs.

(a) **Taxation**

The government raises taxes on sales and profits and on shareholders' dividends. It also expects companies to act as tax collectors for income tax and VAT. The **tax structure** might influence investors' preferences for either dividends or capital growth.

(b) **Encouraging new investments**

The government might provide **funds** towards the cost of some investment projects. It might also encourage private investment by offering **tax incentives.**

(c) **Encouraging a wider spread of share ownership**

In the UK, the government has made some attempts to encourage more private individuals to become company shareholders, by means of **attractive privatisation issues** (such as in the electricity, gas and telecommunications industries) and tax incentives, such as ISAs (Individual savings accounts) to encourage individuals to invest in shares.

(d) **Legislation**

The government also influences **companies**, and the **relationships** between shareholders, creditors, management, employees and the general public, through legislation, including the Companies Acts, legislation on employment, health and safety regulations, legislation on consumer protection and consumer rights and environmental legislation.

(e) **Economic policy**

A government's economic policy will affect business activity. For example, **exchange rate policy** will have implications for the revenues of exporting firms and for the purchase costs of importing firms. Policies on **economic growth, inflation, employment, interest rates** and so on are all relevant to business activities.

4 Measuring the achievement of corporate objectives

FAST FORWARD

Performance measurement is a part of the system of financial control of an enterprise as well as being important to investors.

4.1 Measuring financial performance

As part of the system of financial control in an organisation, it will be necessary to have ways of measuring the progress of the enterprise, so that managers know how well the company is doing. A common means of doing this is through **ratio analysis**, which is concerned with comparing and quantifying relationships between financial variables, such as those variables found in the statement of financial position and income statement of the enterprise.

Exam focus point

Examiners have said, more than once, that knowledge of how to calculate and interpret key ratios is a weak point for many candidates. Make sure that it is one of your strong points. In reviewing ratio analysis below, we are in part revising material included in previous units.

4.2 The broad categories of ratios

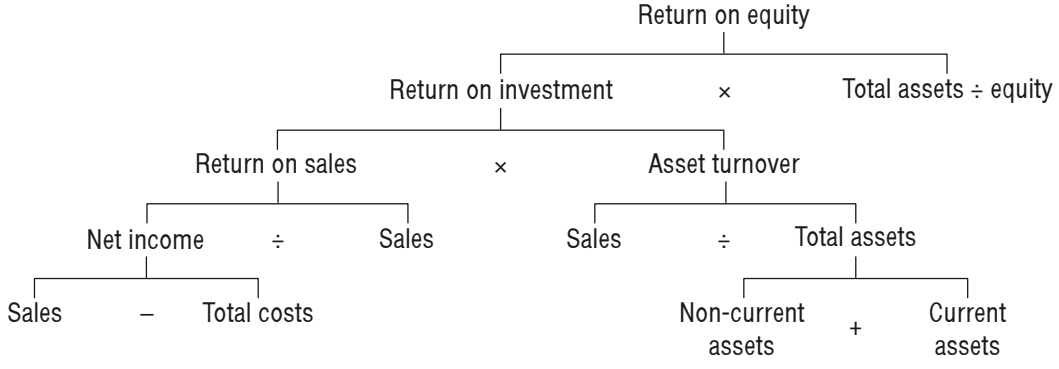
Ratios can be grouped into the following four categories:

- **Profitability and return**
- **Debt and gearing**
- **Liquidity**
- **Shareholders' investment ratios ('stock market ratios').**

The key to obtaining meaningful information from ratio analysis is **comparison**: comparing ratios **over a number of periods** within the same business to establish whether the business is improving or declining, and **comparing ratios between similar businesses** to see whether the company you are analysing is better or worse than average within its own business sector.

4.3 Ratio pyramids

The Du Pont system of ratio analysis involves constructing a pyramid of interrelated ratios like that below.



Such ratio pyramids help in providing for an overall management plan to achieve profitability, and allow the interrelationships between ratios to be checked.

4.4 Profitability

A company ought of course to be profitable if it is to maximise shareholder wealth, and obvious checks on profitability are:

(a) Whether the company has made a profit or a loss on its ordinary activities
(b) By how much this year's profit or loss is bigger or smaller than last year's profit or loss

Profit before taxation is generally thought to be a better figure to use than profit after taxation, because there might be unusual variations in the tax charge from year to year which would not affect the underlying profitability of the company's operations

Another profit figure that should be considered is **profit before interest and tax (PBIT)**. This is the amount of profit which the company earned before having to pay interest to the providers of loan capital. By providers of loan capital, we usually mean **longer term** loan capital, such as debentures and medium-term bank loans.

4.4.1 Profitability and return: the return on capital employed

You cannot assess profits or profit growth properly without relating them to the amount of funds (the capital) employed in making the profits. The most important profitability ratio is therefore **return on capital employed (ROCE),** also called **return on investment (ROI).**

Key terms

Return on Capital Employed = $\frac{\text{PBIT}}{\text{Capital employed}}$

Capital employed = Shareholders' funds *plus* payables: amounts falling due after more than one year' *plus* any long-term provisions for liabilities and charges.

= Total assets less current liabilities.

4.4.2 Evaluating the ROCE

What does a company's ROCE tell us? What should we be looking for? There are three comparisons that can be made.

(a) The **change** in ROCE from one year to the next

(b) The ROCE being **earned** by **other companies**, if this information is available

(c) A comparison of the ROCE with **current market borrowing rates**

  (i) What would be the **cost of extra borrowing** to the company if it needed more loans, and is it earning a ROCE that suggests it could make high enough profits to make such borrowing worthwhile?

  (ii) Is the company making a ROCE which suggests that it is making **profitable use** of its **current borrowing**?

4.4.3 Secondary ratios

We may analyse the ROCE by looking at the kinds of interrelationships between ratios used in ratio pyramids, which we mentioned earlier. We can thus find out why the ROCE is high or low, or better or worse than last year. **Profit margin** and **asset turnover** together explain the ROCE, and if the ROCE is the primary profitability ratio, these other two are the secondary ratios. The relationship between the three ratios is as follows.

Profit margin × asset turnover = ROCE

$$\frac{\text{PBIT}}{\text{Sales revenue}} \times \frac{\text{Sales revenue}}{\text{Capital employed}} = \frac{\text{PBIT}}{\text{Capital employed}}$$

It is also worth commenting on the **change in turnover** from one year to the next. Strong sales growth will usually indicate volume growth as well as turnover increases due to price rises, and volume growth is one sign of a prosperous company.

Exam focus point

Remember that capital employed is **not just** shareholders' funds; this was highlighted as a frequent mistake in previous exams.

4.4.4 Return on equity

Another measure of the firm's overall performance is **return on equity**. This compares net profit after tax with the equity that shareholders have invested in the firm.

Key terms

$$\textbf{Return on Equity} = \frac{\text{Earnings attributable to ordinary shareholders}}{\text{Shareholders' equity}}$$

This ratio shows the earning power of the shareholders' book investment and can be used to compare two firms in the same industry. A high return on equity could reflect the firm's good management of expenses and ability to invest in profitable projects. However it could also reflect a higher level of debt finance (gearing) with associated higher risk. (see Section 4.5)

4.4.5 Gross profit margin, the net profit margin and profit analysis

Depending on the format of the income statement, you may be able to calculate the **gross profit margin** and also the **net profit margin**. Looking at the two together can be quite informative.

4.4.6 Example: Profit margins

A company has the following summarised income statements for two consecutive years.

	Year 1	*Year 2*
	$	$
Sales revenue	70,000	100,000
Less cost of sales	42,000	55,000
Gross profit	28,000	45,000
Less expenses	21,000	35,000
Net profit	7,000	10,000

Although the net profit margin is the same for both years at 10%, the gross profit margin is not.

In year 1 it is: $\frac{28{,}000}{70{,}000} = 40\%$ and in year 2 it is: $\frac{45{,}000}{100{,}000} = 45\%$

Is this good or bad for the business? An increased profit margin must be good because this indicates a wider gap between selling price and cost of sales. However, given that the net profit ratio has stayed the same in the second year, expenses must be rising. In year 1 expenses were 30% of turnover, whereas in year 2 they were 35% of turnover. This indicates that administration or selling and distribution expenses may require tighter control.

A percentage analysis of profit between year 1 and year 2 is as follows.

	Year 1	*Year 2*
	%	%
Cost of sales as a % of sales	60	55
Gross profit as a % of sales	40	45
	100	100
Expenses as a % of sales	30	35
Net profit as a % of sales	10	10
Gross profit as a % of sales	40	45

4.5 Debt and gearing ratios

Debt ratios are concerned with how much the company owes in relation to its size and whether it is getting into heavier debt or improving its situation. **Gearing** is the amount of debt finance a company uses relative to its equity finance.

(a) When a company is heavily in debt, and seems to be getting even more heavily into debt, banks and other would-be lenders are very soon likely to **refuse further borrowing** and the company might well find itself in trouble.

(b) When a company is earning only a modest profit before interest and tax, and has a heavy debt burden, there will be **very little profit** left over for shareholders after the interest charges have been paid.

The main debt and gearing ratios are covered in Chapter 14.

4.6 Liquidity ratios: cash and working capital

Profitability is of course an important aspect of a company's performance, and debt or gearing is another. Neither, however, addresses directly the key issue of **liquidity**. A company needs liquid assets so that it can meet its debts when they fall due. The main liquidity ratios will be described in Chapter 4.

4.7 Shareholders' investment ratios 6/08

FAST FORWARD

Indicators such as **dividend yield**, **EPS**, **P/E ratio** and **dividend cover** can be used to assess investor returns.

Returns to shareholders are obtained in the form of **dividends** received and/or **capital gains** from increases in market value.

A company will only be able to raise finance if investors think that the returns they can expect are satisfactory in view of the risks they are taking. We must therefore consider how investors appraise companies. We will concentrate on quoted companies.

Information that is relevant to market prices and returns is available from published stock market information, and in particular from certain **stock market ratios**.

Key term

Cum dividend or **cum div** means the purchaser of shares is entitled to receive the next dividend payment.

Ex dividend or **ex div** means that the purchaser of shares is not entitled to receive the next dividend payment.

The relationship between the cum div price and the ex div price is:

Market price per share (ex div) = Market price per share (cum div) – forthcoming dividend per share

4.7.1 The dividend yield

Key term

$$\textbf{Dividend yield} = \frac{\text{Dividend per share}}{\text{Market price per share}} \times 100$$

The dividend yield can be calculated on either a gross or net basis. The gross dividend is the dividend paid plus the appropriate tax credit. The gross dividend yield is used in preference to a net dividend yield in the financial press, so that investors can make a direct comparison with (gross) interest yields from bonds.

4.7.2 Example: Dividend yield

A company pays a dividend of 15c (net) per share. The market price is 240c. What is the dividend yield if the rate of tax credit is 10%?

$$\text{Gross dividend per share} = 15\text{c} \times \frac{100}{(100-10)} = 16.67\text{c}$$

$$\text{Gross dividend yield} = \frac{16.67\text{c}}{240\text{c}} = 6.95\%$$

4.7.3 Earnings per share (EPS)

Key term

$$\textbf{Earnings per share} = \frac{\text{Profit distributable to ordinary shareholders}}{\text{Weighted average number of ordinary shares}}$$

The use of earnings per share was discussed in Section 2.3.3 of this chapter.

4.7.4 The price earnings ratio

Key term

$$\textbf{Price earnings ratio} = \frac{\text{Market price of share}}{\text{EPS}}$$

The **price earnings (P/E) ratio** is the most important yardstick for assessing the relative worth of a share.

This is the same as:

$$\frac{\text{Total market value of equity}}{\text{Total earnings}}$$

The **value of the P/E ratio** reflects the **market's appraisal** of the share's **future prospects**. It is an important ratio because it relates two key considerations for investors, the market price of a share and its earnings capacity.

4.7.5 Example: Price earnings ratio

A company has recently declared a dividend of 12c per share. The share price is $3.72 cum div and earnings for the most recent year were 30c per share. Calculate the P/E ratio.

Solution

$$\text{P/E ratio} = \frac{\text{MV ex div}}{\text{EPS}} = \frac{\$3.60}{30c} = 12$$

4.7.6 Changes in EPS: the P/E ratio and the share price 12/08

An approach to assessing what share prices ought to be, which is often used in practice, is a P/E ratio approach.

(a) The relationship between the **EPS** and the **share price** is measured by the **P/E ratio**

(b) The **P/E ratio** does **not vary much** over time

(c) So if the **EPS goes up** or **down**, the **share price** should be expected to **move up or down** too, and the new share price will be the new EPS multiplied by the constant P/E ratio

For example, if a company had an EPS last year of 30c and a share price of $3.60, its P/E ratio would have been 12. If the current year's EPS is 33c, we might expect that the P/E ratio would remain the same, 12, and so the share price ought to go up to 12 × 33c = $3.96.

Exam focus point

The examiner has commented that students have had problems with these ratios and emphasised how important it is to be familiar with them.

Question **Shareholder ratios**

The directors of X are comparing some of the company's year-end statistics with those of Y, the company's main competitor. X has had a fairly normal year in terms of profit but Y's latest profits have been severely reduced by an exceptional loss arising from the closure of an unsuccessful division. Y has a considerably higher level of financial gearing than X.

The board is focusing on the figures given below.

	X	*Y*
Share price	450c	525c
Nominal value of shares	50c	100c
Gross dividend yield	5%	4%
Price/earnings ratio	15	25
Proportion of profits earned overseas	60%	0%

In the course of the discussion a number of comments are made, including those given below.

Required

Discuss comments (a) to (d), making use of the above data where appropriate.

(a) 'There is something odd about the P/E ratios. Y has had a particularly bad year. Its P/E should surely be lower than ours'.

(b) 'One of the factors which may explain Y's high P/E is the high financial gearing.'

(c) 'The comparison of our own P/E ratio and gross dividend yield with those of Y is not really valid. The shares of the two companies have different nominal values.'

(d) 'These figures will not please our shareholders. The dividend yield is below the return an investor could currently obtain on risk-free government bonds.'

Answer

(a) **P/E ratio**

The **P/E ratio** measures the **relationship** between the **market price** of a share and the **earnings per share**. Its calculation involves the use of the share price, which is a reflection of the market's expectations of the future earnings performance, and the historic level of earnings.

If Y has just suffered an abnormally bad year's profit performance which is not expected to be repeated, the market will price the share on the basis of its expected future earnings. The earnings figure used to calculate the ratio will be the historic figure which is lower than that forecast for the future, and thus the ratio will appear high.

(b) **Financial gearing**

The **financial gearing** of the firm expresses the **relationship** between **debt** and **equity** in the capital structure. A high level of gearing means that there is a high ratio of debt to equity. This means that the company carries a high fixed interest charge, and thus the amount of earnings available to equity will be more variable from year to year than in a company with a lower gearing level. Thus the shareholders will carry a higher level of risk than in a company with lower gearing. All other things being equal, it is therefore likely that the share price in a highly geared company will be lower than that in a low geared firm.

The historic P/E ratio is dependent upon the **current share price** and the **historic level of earnings**. A high P/E ratio is therefore more likely to be found in a company with low gearing than in one with high gearing. In the case of Y, the high P/E ratio is more probably attributable to the depressed level of earnings than to the financial structure of the company.

(c) **Comparison of ratios**

The ratios are calculated as follows.

$$\text{P/E ratio} = \frac{\text{Market share price}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$$

$$\text{Dividend yield} = \frac{\text{Dividend per share}}{\text{Market share price}}$$

The **nominal value** of the shares is **irrelevant** in calculating the ratios. This can be proved by calculating the effect on the ratios of a share split - the ratios will be unchanged. Thus if all other

factors (such as accounting conventions used in the two firms) are equal, a direct comparison of the ratios is valid.

(d) **Comparison with risk free securities**

As outlined in (c) above, the **dividend yield** is the relationship between the **dividend per share** and the **current market price** of the share. The market price of the share reflects investor expectations about the future level of earnings and growth. If the share is trading with a low dividend yield, this means that investors have positive growth expectations after taking into account the level of risk. Although the government bonds carry no risk, it is equally likely that they have no growth potential either, and this means that the share will still be more attractive even after the low dividend yield has been taken into account.

5 Encouraging the achievement of stakeholder objectives

12/08

5.1 Managerial reward schemes

FAST FORWARD

It is argued that management will only make **optimal** decisions if they are monitored and appropriate incentives are given.

The agency relationship arising from the separation of ownership from management is sometimes characterised as the **'agency problem'**. For example, if managers hold none or very little of the equity shares of the company they work for, what is to stop them from working inefficiently, not bothering to look for profitable new investment opportunities, or giving themselves high salaries and perks?

Key term

Goal congruence is accordance between the objectives of agents acting within an organisation and the objectives of the organisation as a whole.

Goal congruence may be better achieved and the 'agency problem' better dealt with by offering organisational **rewards** (more pay and promotion) for the achievement of certain levels of performance. The conventional theory of reward structures is that if the organisation establishes procedures for **formal measurement** of performance, and rewards individuals for **good performance**, individuals will be more likely to direct their efforts towards achieving the organisation's goals.

Examples of such remuneration incentives are:

(a) **Performance-related pay**

Pay or bonuses usually related to the size of profits, but other performance indicators may be used.

(b) **Rewarding managers with shares**

This might be done when a private company 'goes public' and managers are invited to subscribe for shares in the company at an attractive offer price. In a **management buy-out** or buy-in (the latter involving purchase of the business by new managers; the former by existing managers), managers become owner-managers.

(c) **Executive share options plans (ESOPs)**

In a share option scheme, selected employees are given a number of share options, each of which gives the holder the right after a certain date to subscribe for shares in the company at a fixed price. The value of an option will increase if the company is successful and its share price goes up.

5.1.1 Beneficial consequences of linking reward schemes and performance

(a) There is some evidence that performance-related pay does give individuals an incentive to achieve a good performance level.

(b) Effective schemes also attract and keep the employees valuable to an organisation.

(c) By tying an organisation's key performance indicators to a scheme, it is clear to all employees what performance creates organisational success.

(d) By rewarding performance, an effective scheme creates an organisation focused on continuous improvement.

(e) Schemes based on shares can motivate employees/managers to act in the long-term interests of the organisation by doing things to increase the organisation's market value.

5.1.2 Problems associated with reward schemes

(a) A serious problem that can arise is that performance-related pay and performance evaluation systems can **encourage dysfunctional behaviour.** Many investigations have noted the tendency of managers to pad their budgets either in anticipation of cuts by superiors or to make subsequent variances more favourable.

(b) Perhaps of even more concern are the numerous examples of managers making **decisions that are contrary to the wider purposes of the organisation.**

(c) Schemes designed to **ensure long-term achievements** (that is, to combat short-termism) **may not motivate** since efforts and reward are too distant in time from each other (or managers may not think they will be around that long!).

(d) It is questionable whether any performance measures or set of measures can provide a **comprehensive assessment of what a single person achieves** for an organisation. There will always be the old chestnut of lack of goal congruence, employees being committed to what is measured, rather than the objectives of the organisation.

(e) **Self-interested performance** may be encouraged at the **expense of team work**.

(f) High levels of output (whether this is number of calls answered or production of product X) may be achieved at the expense of **quality**.

(g) In order to make bonuses more accessible, **standards and targets may have to be lowered**, with knock-on effects on quality.

(h) They **undervalue intrinsic rewards** (which reflect the satisfaction that an individual experiences from doing a job and the opportunity for growth that the job provides) given that they promote extrinsic rewards (bonuses and so on).

5.2 Regulatory requirements

FAST FORWARD

The achievement of stakeholder objectives can be **enforced** using regulatory requirements such as **corporate governance** codes of best practice and stock exchange **listing regulations**.

5.2.1 Corporate governance

FAST FORWARD

Good corporate governance involves **risk management** and **internal control, accountability** to stakeholders and other shareholders and conducting business in an **ethical and effective way.**

Key term

Corporate governance is the system by which organisations are directed and controlled.

There are a number of key elements in corporate governance:

(a) The management and **reduction of risk** is a fundamental issue in all definitions of good governance; whether explicitly stated or merely implied.

(b) The notion that **overall performance enhanced** by **good supervision** and **management** within set best practice guidelines underpins most definitions.

(c) Good governance provides a **framework** for an organisation to pursue its strategy in an **ethical and effective** way from the perspective of all stakeholder groups affected, and offers safeguards against misuse of resources, physical or intellectual.

(d) Good governance is not just about externally established codes, it also requires a willingness to **apply the spirit** as well as the letter of the law.

(e) **Accountability** is generally a major theme in all governance frameworks.

Corporate governance codes of good practice generally cover the following areas:

(a) The board should be responsible for taking major **policy** and **strategic** decisions.

(b) Directors should have a **mix of skills** and their **performance** should be assessed regularly.

(c) Appointments should be conducted by formal procedures administered by a **nomination committee**.

(d) **Division of responsibilities** at the head of an organisation is most simply achieved by separating the roles of chairman and chief executive.

(e) **Independent non-executive directors** have a key role in governance. Their number and status should mean that their views carry significant weight.

(f) Directors' remuneration should be set by a **remuneration committee** consisting of independent non-executive directors.

(g) Remuneration should be dependent upon **organisation** and **individual performance**.

(h) Accounts should disclose **remuneration policy** and (in detail) the **packages of individual directors.**

(i) Boards should regularly review **risk management** and **internal control**, and carry out a wider review annually, the results of which should be disclosed in the accounts.

(j) Audit committees of independent non-executive directors should liaise with external audit, supervise internal audit, and review the annual accounts and internal controls.

(k) The board should maintain a regular dialogue with shareholders, particularly institutional shareholders. The annual general meeting is the most significant forum for communication.

(l) Annual reports must **convey** a **fair and balanced view** of the organisation. They should state whether the organisation has complied with governance regulations and codes, and give specific disclosures about the board, internal control reviews, going concern status and relations with stakeholders.

5.2.2 Stock Exchange listing regulations

FAST FORWARD

A stock exchange sets **rules and regulations** to ensure that the stock market operates **fairly** and **efficiently** for all parties involved.

A stock exchange is an organisation that provides a marketplace in which to trade shares. It also sets rules and regulations to ensure that the stock market operates both efficiently and fairly for all parties involved.

The stock exchange operates as two different markets:

- It is a market for issuers who wish to raise equity capital by offering shares for sale to investors (a primary market). Such companies are **listed** on the stock exchange
- It is also a market for investors who can buy and sell shares at any time, without directly affecting the entities in which they are buying the shares (a secondary market)

To be listed on a stock exchange, a stock must meet the **listing requirements** laid down by that exchange in its approval process. Each exchange has its own particular listing requirements; some are more stringent than others. For example, listed companies in the UK are now required to publish a report on directors' remuneration. The report must include details of individual pay packages and justification for any compensation packages given in the preceding year, also comparing packages with company performance. The report must be voted on by shareholders, although the company is not bound by the shareholders' vote.

6 Not-for-profit organisations

FAST FORWARD

Not-for-profit and public sector organisations have their own objectives, generally concerned with **efficient use of resources** in the light of specified targets.

6.1 Voluntary and not-for-profit sectors

Although most people would know one if they saw it, there is a surprising problem in clearly defining what counts as a **not-for-profit (NFP) organisation**. Local authority services, for example, would not be setting objectives in order to arrive at a profit for shareholders, but nowadays they are being increasingly required to apply the same disciplines and processes as companies which are oriented towards straightforward profit goals.

Case Study

Oxfam operates more shops than any commercial organisation in Britain, and these operate at a profit. The Royal Society for the Protection of Birds operates a mail order trading company which provides a 25% return on capital, operating very profitably and effectively.

Key term

Bois proposes that a **not-for-profit organisation** be defined as:' ... an organisation whose attainment of its prime goal is not assessed by economic measures. However, in pursuit of that goal it may undertake profit-making activities.'

The not-for-profit sector may involve a number of different kinds of organisation with, for example, differing legal status – charities, statutory bodies offering public transport or the provision of services such as leisure, health or public utilities such as water or road maintenance.

The tasks of setting objectives and developing strategies and controls for their implementation can all help in improving the performance of charities and NFP organisations.

6.2 Objectives

Objectives will not be based on profit achievement but rather on achieving a **particular response** from various target markets. This has implications for reporting of results. The organisation will need to be open and honest in showing how it has managed its budget and allocated funds raised. **Efficiency and effectiveness** are particularly important in the use of donated funds, but there is a danger that **resource efficiency** becomes more important than **service effectiveness**.

Here are some possible objectives for a NFP organisation.

(a) Surplus maximisation (equivalent to profit maximisation)
(b) Revenue maximisation (as for a commercial business)
(c) Usage maximisation (as in leisure centre swimming pool usage)
(d) Usage targeting (matching the capacity available, as in the NHS)
(e) Full/partial cost recovery (minimising subsidy)
(f) Budget maximisation (maximising what is offered)
(g) Producer satisfaction maximisation (satisfying the wants of staff and volunteers)
(h) Client satisfaction maximisation (the police generating the support of the public)

6.3 Value for money

FAST FORWARD

Value for money is getting the best possible combination of services from the least resources.

It is reasonable to argue that not-for-profit organisations **best serve society's interests** when the **gap** between the **benefits** they provide and the **cost** of providing those benefits is **greatest**. This is commonly termed **value for money** and is not dissimilar from the concept of profit maximisation, apart from the fact that society's interests are being maximised rather than profit.

Key term

Value for money can be defined as getting the best possible combination of services from the least resources, which means maximising the benefits for the lowest possible cost.

This is usually accepted as requiring the application of economy, effectiveness and efficiency.

(a) **Economy** (spending money frugally)

(b) **Efficiency** (getting out as much as possible for what goes in)

(c) **Effectiveness** (getting done, by means of (a) and (b), what was supposed to be done)

More formally, these criteria can be defined as follows.

Key terms

Effectiveness is the extent to which declared objectives/goals are met.

Efficiency is the relationship between inputs and outputs.

Economy is attaining the appropriate quantity and quality of inputs at lowest cost to achieve a certain level of outputs.

6.4 Example: Economy, efficiency, effectiveness

(a) **Economy.** The economy with which a school purchases equipment can be measured by comparing actual costs with budgets, with costs in previous years, with government/ local authority guidelines or with amounts spent by other schools.

(b) **Efficiency**. The efficiency with which a school's IT laboratory is used might be measured in terms of the proportion of the school week for which it is used.

(c) **Effectiveness.** The effectiveness of a school's objective to produce quality teaching could be measured by the proportion of students going on to higher or further education.

6.5 Performance measures

Value for money as a concept **assumes** that there is a **yardstick** against which to measure the achievement of objectives. It can be **difficult to determine** where there is value for money, however.

(a) Not-for-profit organisations tend to have **multiple objectives**, so that even if they can all be clearly identified it is impossible to say which is the overriding objective.

(b) **Outputs can seldom be measured** in a way that is generally agreed to be meaningful. (Are good exam results alone an adequate measure of the quality of teaching? How does one quantify the easing of pain following a successful operation?) For example, in the National Health Service success is measured in terms of fewer patient deaths per hospital admission, shorter waiting lists for operations, average speed of patient recovery and so on.

Here are a number of possible solutions to these problems.

(a) Performance can be judged in terms of **inputs**. This is very common in everyday life. If somebody tells you that their suit cost $750, for example, you would generally conclude that it was an extremely well-designed and good quality suit, even if you did not think so when you first saw it. The **drawback**, of course, is that you might also conclude that the person wearing the suit had been cheated or was a fool, or you may think that no piece of clothing is worth $750. So it is with the inputs and outputs of a non-profit-seeking organisation.

(b) Accept that performance measurement must to some extent be subjective. **Judgements** can be made **by experts**.

(c) Most not-for-profit organisations do not face competition but this does not mean that they are all unique. Bodies like local governments, health services and so on can **compare** their performance **against each other** and **against the historical results** of their predecessors. **Unit cost measurements** like 'cost per patient day' or 'cost of borrowing one library book' can be established to allow organisations to assess whether they are doing better or worse than their counterparts. Care must be taken not to read too much into limited information, however.

6.6 Example: Performance measures

Although output of not-for-profit organisations can seldom be measured in a way that is generally agreed to be meaningful, outputs of a university might be measured in terms of the following.

Broader performance measures

- Proportion of total undergraduate population attending the university (by subject)
- Proportion of students graduating and classes of degrees obtained
- Amount of private sector research funds attracted
- Number of students finding employment after graduation
- Number of publications/articles produced by teaching staff

Operational performance measures

- Unit costs for each operating 'unit'
- Staff: student ratios; staff workloads
- Class sizes
- Availability of computers; good library stock
- Courses offered

6.7 Example: Inputs and outputs

Suppose that at a cost of $40,000 and 4,000 hours (**inputs**) in an average year, two policemen travel 8,000 miles and are instrumental in 200 arrests (**outputs**). A large number of **possibly meaningful measures** can be derived from these few figures, as the table below shows.

		$40,000	4,000 hours	8,000 miles	200 arrests
Cost ($)	*$40,000*		$40,000/4,000 = $10 per hour	$40,000/8,000 = $5 per mile	$40,000/200 = $200 per arrest
Time (hours)	*4,000*	4,000/$40,000 = 6 minutes patrolling per $1 spent		4,000/8,000 = ½ hour to patrol 1 mile	4,000/200 = 20 hours per arrest
Miles	*8,000*	8,000/$40,000 = 0.2 of a mile per $1	8,000/4,000 = 2 miles patrolled per hour		8,000/200 = 40 miles per arrest
Arrests	*200*	200/$40,000 = 1 arrest per $200	200/4,000 = 1 arrest every 20 hours	200/8,000 = 1 arrest every 40 miles	

These measures do not necessarily identify cause and effect or personal responsibility and accountability. Actual performance needs to be **compared**:

- With **standards**, if there are any
- With similar **external activities**
- With similar **internal activities**
- With **targets**
- With **indices**
- Over time – **as trends**

Chapter Roundup

- Financial management decisions cover **investment** decisions, **financing** decisions, **dividend** decisions and **risk management.**
- **Strategy** is a course of action to achieve an objective.
- **Corporate objectives** are relevant for the organisation as a whole, relating to key factors for business success.
- Financial targets may include targets for: **earnings; earnings per share; dividend per share; gearing level; profit retention; operating profitability**.

  The usual assumption in financial management for the private sector is that the primary financial objective of the company is to **maximise shareholders' wealth**.
- **Stakeholders** are individuals or groups who are affected by the activities of the firm. They can be classified as **internal** (employees and managers), **connected** (shareholders, customers and suppliers) and **external** (local communities, pressure groups, government).
- **Performance measurement** is a part of the system of financial control of an enterprise as well as being important to investors.
- Indicators such as **dividend yield**, **EPS**, **P/E ratio** and **dividend cover** can be used to assess investor returns.
- It is argued that management will only make **optimal** decisions if they are monitored and appropriate incentives are given.
- The achievement of stakeholder objectives can be **enforced** using regulatory requirements such as **corporate governance** codes of best practice and stock exchange **listing regulations**.
- Good corporate governance involves **risk management** and **internal control, accountability** to stakeholders and other shareholders and conducting business in an **ethical and effective way**.
- A stock exchange sets **rules and regulations** to ensure that the stock market operates **fairly** and **efficiently** for all parties involved.
- Not-for-profit and public sector organisations have their own objectives, generally concerned with **efficient use of resources** in the light of specified targets.
- **Value for money** is getting the best possible combination of services from the least resources.

Quick Quiz

1 Give a definition of financial management.

2 What three broad types of decision does financial management involve?

3 What main financial objective does the theory of company finance assume that a business organisation has?

4 If earnings per share fall from one year to the next, so will the level of dividends.

☐ True

☐ False

5 Tick which are stakeholder groups for a company.

Employees ☐

Ordinary shareholders ☐

The Board of Directors ☐

Trade payables ☐

6 Return on capital employed = $\frac{?}{?}$

7 Which of the following are examples of financial objectives that a company might choose to pursue?

A Provision of good wages and salaries
B Restricting the level of gearing to below a specified target level
C Dealing honestly and fairly with customers on all occasions
D Producing environmentally friendly products

8 **Fill in the blank**

..... is accordance between the objectives of agents acting within an organisation.

9 What are the 'Three Es' of value for money.

E .....

E .....

E .....

10 In the context of managing performance in 'not for profit' organisations, which of the following definitions is incorrect?

A Value for money means providing a service in a way which is economical, efficient and effective.

B Economy means doing things cheaply: not spending $2 when the same thing can be bought for $1.

C Efficiency means doing things quickly: minimising the amount of time that is spent on a given activity.

D Effectiveness means doing the right things: spending funds so as to achieve the organisation's objectives.

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 The management of the finances of an organisation in order to achieve the financial objectives of the organisation.

2 Investment decisions, financing decisions, dividend decisions.

3 To maximise the wealth of the company's ordinary shareholders.

4 False. Dividends may still be maintained from payments out of profits retained in earlier periods.

5 You should have ticked all four boxes.

6 $\frac{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}{\text{Capital employed}}$

7 B This is a financial objective that relates to the level of risk that the company accepts.

8 Goal congruence

9 Efficiency. Economy. Effectiveness

10 C Efficiency means doing things well: getting the best use out of what money is spent on

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q1	Examination	25	45 mins

PART B

Financial management environment

The economic environment for business

2

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Outline of macroeconomic policy	B1 (a)
2 Fiscal policy	B1 (b), (c)
3 Monetary and interest rate policy	B1 (b), (c)
4 Exchange rates	B1 (b), (c)
5 Competition policy	B1 (d)
6 Government assistance for business	B1 (d)
7 Green policies	B1 (d)
8 Corporate governance regulation	B1 (d)

Introduction

A business will strive to achieve its objectives, but it has to do so in an economy which the government will try to steer to achieve its own objectives. In this chapter we're moving away from the **microeconomics** of the individual business to the **macroeconomics** of the economy as a whole. The business (and you as an individual) will need to understand how government policies can impact on different aspects of the economy, and the implications for the business's own activities and future plans.

The main **macroeconomic policy** tools we will look at are **fiscal, monetary, interest rate,** and **exchange rate** policy. We will also look at the impact that specific government policies have on businesses.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
B1	**The economic environment for business**	
(a)	Identify and explain the main macroeconomic policy targets.	1
(b)	Define and discuss the role of fiscal, monetary, interest rate and exchange rate policies in achieving macroeconomic policy targets.	1
(c)	Explain how government economic policy interacts with planning and decision-making in business.	2
(d)	Explain the need for, and the interaction with, planning and decision-making in business of:	1
(i)	competition policy	
(ii)	government assistance for business	
(iii)	green policies	
(iv)	corporate governance regulation.	2

Exam guide

The emphasis in the exam will be discussing how economic conditions or policies affect particular businesses, for example the impact of a change in interest rates.

1 Outline of macroeconomic policy

FAST FORWARD

Macroeconomic policy involves

- Policy **objectives** – the ultimate aims of economic policy
- Policy **targets** – quantified levels or ranges which policy is intended to achieve
- Policy **instruments** – the tools used to achieve objectives

Achievement of **economic growth, low inflation, full employment** and **balance of payments stability** are policy objectives.

Policy targets might be set for **economic growth** or the **rate of inflation**, for example.

1.1 Microeconomics, macroeconomics and economic policy

Key terms

Microeconomics is concerned with the behaviour of individual firms and consumers or households.
Macroeconomics is concerned with the economy at large, and with the behaviour of large aggregates such as the national income, the money supply and the level of employment.

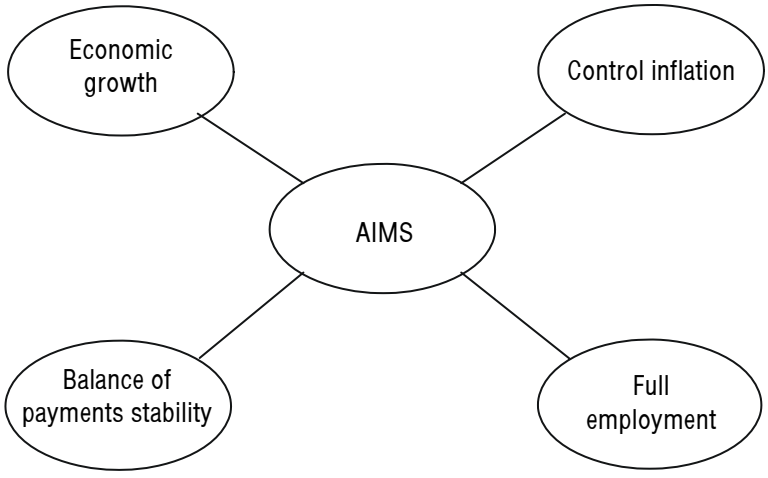
A government will of course be concerned with how the economy is behaving as a whole, and therefore with **macroeconomic variables**.

Macroeconomic policy can affect planning and decision-making in various ways, for example via interest rate changes, which affect borrowing costs and required rates of return.

Note also that a government might adopt policies which try to exert influence at the **microeconomic** level. Examples include policies to restrict the maximum hours an individual can work or the imposition of a minimum wage.

1.2 Economic policies and objectives

The policies pursued by a government may serve various objectives.



(a) **Economic growth**

'Growth' implies an increase in national income in 'real' terms – (increases caused by price inflation are not real increases at all). It is usually interpreted as a rising standard of living.

(b) **Control price inflation**

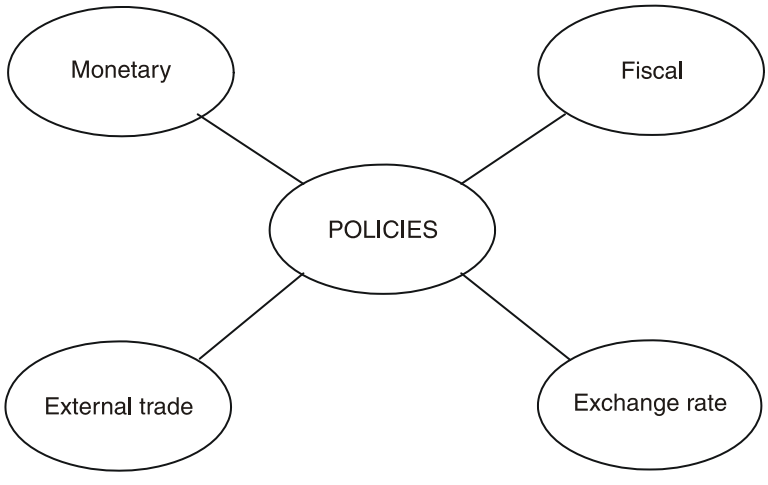
This means achieving **stable prices**. Inflation is viewed as a problem as if a country has a higher rate of inflation than its major trading partners, its exports will become relatively expensive; it leads to a redistribution of income and wealth in ways which may be undesirable; in times of high inflation substantial labour time is spent on planning and implementing price changes

(c) **Full employment**

Full employment does not mean that everyone who wants a job has one all the time, but it does mean that unemployment levels are low, and involuntary unemployment is short-term.

(d) **Balance of payments stability**

The wealth of a country relative to others, a country's creditworthiness as a borrower, and the goodwill between countries in international relations might all depend on the achievement of an external trade balance over time. Deficits in external trade, with imports exceeding exports, might also be damaging for the prospects of economic growth.



To try to achieve its intermediate and overall objectives, a government will use a number of different policy tools or policy instruments. These include the following.

(a) **Monetary policy**

Monetary policy aims to influence monetary variables such as the rate of interest and the money supply in order to achieve targets set for employment, inflation, economic growth and the balance of payments.

(b) **Fiscal policy**

Fiscal policy involves using government spending and taxation in order to influence aggregate demand in the economy.

(c) **Exchange rate policy**

Some economists argue that economic objectives can be achieved through management of the exchange rate by the government. The strength or weakness of sterling's value, for example, will influence the volume of UK imports and exports, the balance of payments and interest rates.

(d) **External trade policy**

A government might have a policy for promoting economic growth by stimulating exports. Another argument is that there should be import controls to provide some form of protection for domestic manufacturing industries by making the cost of imports higher and the volume of imports lower. Protection could encourage domestic output to rise, stimulating the domestic economy.

These **policy tools** are not mutually exclusive and a government might adopt a policy mix of monetary policy, fiscal policy and exchange rate policy and external trade policy in an attempt to achieve its intermediate and ultimate economic objectives.

1.3 Conflicts in policy objectives and instruments

Macroeconomic policy aims cannot necessarily all be sustained together for a long period of time; attempts to achieve one objective will often have adverse effects on others, sooner or later.

(a) There may be a **conflict** between **steady balanced growth** in the economy and **full employment**. Although a growing economy should be able to provide more jobs, there is some concern that since an economy must be modernised to grow and modern technology is labour-saving, it might be possible to achieve growth without creating many more jobs, and so keeping unemployment at a high level.

(b) In the UK, **problems** with **creating more employment** and a **steady growth** in the economy have been the balance of payments, the foreign exchange value of sterling, inflation and the money supply. The objectives of lower unemployment and economic growth have been difficult to achieve because of the problems and conflicts with secondary objectives.

   (i) To create jobs and growth, there must be an **increase in aggregate demand**. When demand picks up there will be a surge in imports, with foreign goods bought by UK manufacturers (eg raw materials) and consumers.

   (ii) The high rate of imports creates a **deficit in the balance of payments**, which in turn will weaken sterling and raise the cost of imports, thus giving some impetus to price rises.

   (iii) To maintain the value of sterling, **interest rates** in the UK might need to be kept **high**, and high interest rates appear to **deter** companies from **investing**.

In practice, achieving the best mix of economic policies also involves a number of problems, such as the following.

- Inadequate **information**
- **Time lags** between use of policy and effects being noticeable
- **Political pressures** for short-term solutions
- Unpredictable **side-effects** of policies
- The influence of **other countries**
- **Conflict** between policy instruments

2 Fiscal policy

FAST FORWARD

Fiscal policy seeks to influence the economy by managing the amounts which the government spends and the amounts it collects through taxation. Fiscal policy can be used as an instrument of **demand management**.

2.1 Fiscal policy and demand management

Key term

Fiscal policy is action by the government to spend money, or to collect money in taxes, with the purpose of influencing the condition of the national economy.

A government might intervene in the economy by:

(a) **Spending more money** and **financing this expenditure** by **borrowing**

(b) **Collecting more in taxes without increasing public spending**

(c) **Collecting more in taxes** in order to **increase public spending**, thus diverting income from one part of the economy to another

Government spending is an **'injection'** into the economy, adding to aggregate demand and therefore national income, whereas taxes are a 'withdrawal' from the economy. Fiscal policy can thus be used as an instrument of demand management.

Fiscal policy appears to offer a method of **managing aggregate demand** in the economy.

(a) If the government spends more – for example, on public works such as hospitals, roads and sewers – without raising more money in taxation (ie by borrowing more) it will **increase expenditure** in the economy, and so **raise demand**.

(b) If the government kept its own spending at the same level, but **reduced** the levels of taxation, it would **also stimulate demand** in the economy because firms and households would have more of their own money after tax for consumption or saving/investing.

(c) In the same way, a government can **reduce demand** in the economy by **raising taxes** or **reducing its expenditure**.

2.2 Fiscal policy and business

Fiscal policy affects business enterprises in both service and manufacturing industries in various ways. For example:

(a) By influencing the level of **aggregate demand (AD)** for goods and services in the economy, macroeconomic policy **affects** the **environment** for business. Business planning should take account of the likely effect of changes in AD for sales growth. Business planning will be easier if government policy is relatively stable.

(b) Tax changes brought about by **fiscal policy** affect businesses. For example, labour costs will be affected by changes in **employer's national insurance contributions**. If indirect taxes such as sales tax or excise duty rise, either the additional cost will have to be absorbed or the rise will have to be passed on to consumers in higher prices.

3 Monetary and interest rate policy

FAST FORWARD

Monetary policy aims to influence monetary variables such as the rate of interest and the money supply in order to achieve targets set.

Money is important because:

(a) It **'oils the wheels'** of **economic activity**, providing an easy method for exchanging goods and services (ie buying and selling).

(b) The total amount of money in a national economy may have a **significant influence** on **economic activity and inflation.**

3.1 The role and aims of monetary policy

Key term

Monetary policy is the regulation of the economy through control of the monetary system by operating on such variables as the money supply, the level of interest rates and the conditions for availability of credit.

The **effectiveness** of monetary policy will depend on:

(a) Whether the **targets** of **monetary policy** are **achieved successfully**.

(b) Whether the **success** of **monetary policy** leads on to the **successful achievement** of the **intermediate target** (eg lower inflation), and

(c) Whether the **successful achievement** of the **intermediate target** (eg lower inflation) leads on to the **successful achievement** of the **overall objective** (eg stronger economic growth).

3.2 Targets of monetary policy

Targets of monetary policy are likely to relate to the volume of national income and expenditure.

- Growth in the size of the money supply
- The level of interest rates
- The volume of credit or growth in the volume of credit
- The volume of expenditure in the economy (ie national income or GNP itself)

3.3 The money supply as a target of monetary policy

To monetarist economists, the **money supply** is a possible intermediate **target** of economic policy. This is because they claim that an increase in the money supply will raise prices and money incomes, and this in turn will raise the demand for money to spend.

3.4 Interest rates as a target for monetary policy

The authorities may decide that **interest rates** themselves should be a target of monetary policy. This would be appropriate if it is considered that there is a **direct relationship** between interest rates and the **level of expenditure** in the economy.

It certainly seems logical that interest rates should have a strong influence on economic activity.

However although empirical evidence suggests there is some connection between interest rates and investment (by companies) and consumer expenditure, the connection is not a stable and predictable one. Some economists argue that the key element affecting investment is **business confidence** rather than the level of interest rates. Interest rate changes are only likely to affect the level of expenditure after a considerable time lag.

In 1997 the new Labour Government of the UK gave responsibility for setting short-term interest rates to the central bank, the Bank of England. The Bank now sets rates at a level which it considers appropriate, given the inflation rate target set by the Government. The purpose of having the central bank setting interest rates is to remove the risk of **political influence** over the decisions. If the UK joins **European monetary union** and therefore adopts the **Euro** as its currency, the interest rates that prevail will effectively be set at the European level.

3.5 Interest rate policy and business 12/08

Interest rate changes brought about by government policy affect the **borrowing costs** of business. Increases in interest rates will mean that **fewer investments** show positive returns, deterring companies from expanding. Increases in interest rates will also exert a **downward pressure on share prices**, making it more difficult for companies to raise monies from new share issues. Businesses will also be squeezed by **decreases in consumer demand** that result from increases in interest rates.

Question

Interest rate levels

Outline the effects on the economy of a policy of high interest rates to dampen demand and inflation.

Answer

An increase in interest rates is thought to reduce the money supply in the economy and thereby to reduce the level of effective demand which will, in turn, decrease inflation and improve the balance of payments (the latter by decreasing the demand for imports, and freeing more domestic output for sale abroad). Aggregate expenditure in the economy will decrease, for various reasons.

(a) A higher interest rate **encourages savings** at the expense of consumer expenditure.

(b) Higher interest rates will **increase mortgage payments** and will thus reduce the amount of disposable income in the hands of home buyers for discretionary spending.

(c) The higher cost of consumer credit will **deter borrowing** and **spending** on consumer durables.

(d) Higher prices of goods due to higher borrowing costs for industry will also **reduce some consumer expenditure** in the economy.

Investment expenditure may also decline for two reasons.

(a) Higher interest rates **deter some investment** due to increased borrowing costs.

(b) Higher interest rates may make the **corporate sector pessimistic** about future business prospects and confidence in the economy. This may further reduce investment in the economy.

To the extent that higher domestic interest rates lead to an appreciation of the exchange rate, this should reduce inflation by lowering the cost of imported items. Exporters will experience pressure on their costs as the result of the more competitive price conditions they face, and may be less willing to concede high wage demands, and thus wage inflation may be constrained. The desired outcomes of the authorities' interest rate policy noted above may be negated by the following effects of higher interest rates.

(a) Higher interest results in **greater interest income** for savers, who may increase their spending due to this interest windfall.

(b) Since **mortgage payments** are the single largest constituent of the Retail Prices Index (RPI), any increase in them will be reflected immediately in **RPI increases**. This could lead to higher wage demands in the economy, and may result in a wage-price spiral.

(c) By encouraging capital inflows, higher interest rates will tend to lead to an **appreciation of the currency's exchange rate**. This makes exports less competitive and imports more attractive.

(d) A reduction in investment may **decrease the pressure of demand** in the economy but at the same time it will set in motion a process which in the future could reduce the economy's potential for production.

(e) To the extent that higher interest rates do squeeze demand in the economy, they will **reduce employment**, decreasing the proceeds of taxation and increasing the government expenditure on the unemployed.

4 Exchange rates

FAST FORWARD

Exchange rates are determined by **supply and demand**, even under fixed exchange rate systems.

Governments can intervene to influence the exchange rate by, for example, **adjusting interest rates**. Government policies on exchange rates might be **fixed or floating exchange rates** as two extreme policies, but 'in-between' schemes have been more common.

Key term

An **exchange rate** is the rate at which one country's currency can be traded in exchange for another country's currency.

Dealers in foreign exchange make their profit by buying currency at one exchange rate, and selling it at a different rate. This means that there is a **selling rate** and a **buying rate** for a currency.

4.1 Factors influencing the exchange rate for a currency

The exchange rate between two currencies is determined primarily by supply and demand in the foreign exchange markets. Demand comes from individuals, firms and governments who want to buy a currency and supply comes from those who want to sell it.

Supply and demand in turn are subject to a number of influences.

- The rate of inflation, compared with the rate of inflation in other countries
- Interest rates, compared with interest rates in other countries
- The balance of payments
- Speculation
- Government policy on intervention to influence the exchange rate

Other factors influence the exchange rate through their relationship with the items identified above.

(a) **Total income and expenditure** (demand) in the **domestic economy** determines the demand for goods. This includes imported goods and demand for goods produced in the country which would otherwise be exported if demand for them did not exist in the home markets.

(b) **Output capacity** and the **level of employment** in the domestic economy might influence the balance of payments, because if the domestic economy has full employment already, it will be unable to increase its volume of production for exports.

(c) The **growth** in the **money supply** influences interest rates and domestic inflation.

We will look at the cause of exchange rate fluctuations in more detail in Chapter 19.

4.2 Consequences of an exchange rate policy

Reasons for a policy of controlling the exchange rate:

(a) To **rectify a balance of trade deficit**, by trying to bring about a fall in the exchange rate.

(b) To **prevent a balance of trade surplus** from getting too large, by trying to bring about a limited rise in the exchange rate.

(c) To **emulate economic conditions** in other countries. The UK's membership of the ERM (from October 1990 until suspended in 1992) had as one of its aims that of emulating the conditions of lower inflation which exist in other ERM member countries.

(d) To **stabilise the exchange rate** of its currency. Exporters and importers will then face less risk of exchange rate movements wiping out their profits. A stable currency increases confidence in the currency and promotes international trade.

4.3 Fixed exchange rates

A government might try to keep the exchange rate at its fixed level, but if it cannot control inflation, the **real value** of its currency would not remain fixed. If one country's rate of inflation is higher than others, its export prices would become uncompetitive in overseas markets and the country's trade deficit would grow. Devaluation of the currency would be necessary for a recovery.

If exchange rates are fixed, any changes in **(real) interest rates** in one country will create pressure for the **movement of capital** into or out of the country. Capital movements would put pressure on the country's exchange rate to change. It follows that if exchange rates are fixed and capital is allowed to move freely between countries (ie there are not exchange controls) all countries must have consistent policies on interest rates.

4.4 Floating exchange rates

Key term

Floating exchange rates are exchange rates which are allowed to fluctuate according to demand and supply conditions in the foreign exchange markets.

Floating exchange rates are at the opposite end of the spectrum to fixed rates. At this extreme, exchange rates are completely left to the free play of demand and supply market forces, and there is no official financing at all. The ruling exchange rate is, therefore, at equilibrium by definition.

In practice, many governments seek to combine the advantages of exchange rate stability with flexibility and to avoid the disadvantages of both rigidly fixed exchange rates and free floating. **Managed** (or dirty) **floating** refers to a system whereby exchange rates are allowed to float, but from time to time the authorities will intervene in the foreign exchange market:

- To use their official reserves of foreign currencies to buy their own domestic currency
- To sell their domestic currency to buy more foreign currency for the official reserves

Buying and selling in this way would be intended to influence the exchange rate of the domestic currency. Governments do not have official reserves large enough to dictate exchange rates to the market, and can only try to 'influence' market rates with intervention.

Speculation in the capital markets often has a much bigger impact short-term than changes in supply and demand.

4.5 European Economic and Monetary Union

There are three main aspects to the European monetary union.

(a) **A common currency** (the euro).

(b) **A European central bank**. The European central bank has several roles.

  (i) Issuing the common currency

  (ii) Conducting monetary policy on behalf of the central government authorities

  (iii) Acting as lender of last resort to all European banks

  (iv) Managing the exchange rate for the common currency

(c) A **centralised monetary policy** applies across all the countries within the union. This involves the surrender of control over aspects of economic policy and therefore surrender of some political sovereignty by the government of each member state to the central government body of the union.

4.6 Exchange rates and business

A change in the exchange rate will affect the **relative prices** of domestic and foreign produced goods and services.

A lower exchange rate	A higher exchange rate
Domestic goods are cheaper in foreign markets so demand for exports increases	Domestic goods are more expensive in foreign markets so demand for exports falls
Foreign goods are more expensive so demand for imports falls	Foreign goods are cheaper so demand for imports rises
Imported raw materials are more expensive so costs of production rise	Imported raw materials are cheaper so costs of production fall

Fluctuating exchange rates create **uncertainties** for businesses involved in international trade. A service industry is less likely to be affected because it is less likely to be involved in substantial international trade.

International trading companies can do a number of things to reduce their **risk of suffering losses** on foreign exchange transactions, including the following.

(a) Many companies buy currencies **'forward'** at a fixed and known price.

(b) **Dealing in a 'hard' currency** may lessen the risks attached to volatile currencies.

(c) **Operations can be managed** so that the proportion of sales in one currency are matched by an equal proportion of purchases in that currency.

(d) **Invoicing can be in the domestic currency**. This means that the customer bears all the foreign exchange risk, however, and, in industries where customers have high bargaining power, this may be an unacceptable arrangement. Furthermore there is the risk that sales will be adversely affected by high prices, reducing demand.

(e) **Outsource activities** to the local market. Many of the Japanese car firms which have invested in the UK in recent years have made efforts to obtain many of their inputs, subject to quality limits, from local suppliers. Promotional activities can also be sourced locally.

(f) Firms can aim at **segments** in the market which are not particularly price sensitive. For example, many German car marques such as Mercedes have been marketed in the US on the basis of quality and exclusivity. This is a type of strategy based on differentiation focus.

Foreign currency risk will be covered in more detail in Chapter 19.

Case Study

For manufacturers, the big fall in the value of the pound against other leading currencies has come at a propitious time. As the global economy cools, the gains in competitiveness for companies – particularly those exporting into markets where the local currency is strong – could make a big difference to survival during what could be an extremely tough couple of years.

While the performance of exporters over the past year has been far from robust, the pound's weakness has provided opportunities for those manufacturers that have organised their businesses in such a way as to take advantage of the currency shifts. The winners in these difficult times are likely to include those manufacturing products for which overall demand remains strong, even in a downturn.

Since July last year, the pound has fallen against the euro and dollar by about 17 per cent and 15 per cent respectively. At the top of the list of those which have benefited from the shifts are those businesses – primarily small to mid-sized – which base virtually all their production in the UK and which are also large exporters. Mainly because their size has diminished their ability to raise finance for expansion, such companies have refrained from spreading production globally, as many manufacturers have done. As a result, they are more susceptible than companies with plants in many countries and which often use these to sell to local markets, either to increases or falls in competitiveness linked to currency movements.

Financial Times October 22 2008

5 Competition policy

5.1 Regulation and market failure

FAST FORWARD

The government influences markets in various ways, one of which is through direct **regulation** (eg the **Competition Commission)**.

Key term

Market failure is said to occur when the market mechanism fails to result in economic efficiency, and therefore the outcome is sub-optimal.

An important role of the government is the **regulation of private markets** where these fail to bring about an **efficient** use of resources. In response to the existence of market failure, and as an alternative to taxation and public provision of production, the state often resorts to regulating economic activity in a variety of ways. Of the various forms of market failure, the following are the cases where regulation of markets can often be the most appropriate policy response.

(a) **Imperfect competition**

Where one company's large share or complete domination of the market is leading to **inefficiency** or **excessive profits**, the state may intervene, for example through controls on prices or profits, in order to try to reduce the effects of this power.

(b) **Social costs**

A possible means of dealing with the problem of social costs or **externalities** is *via* some form of regulation. Regulations might include, for example, controls on emissions of pollutants, restrictions on car use in urban areas, the banning of smoking in public buildings, or compulsory car insurance.

(c) **Imperfect information**

Regulation is often the best form of government action whenever informational inadequacies are undermining the efficient operation of private markets. This is particularly so when consumer choice is being distorted.

(d) **Equity**

The government may also resort to regulation to **improve social justice**.

5.2 Types of regulation

Regulation can be defined as any form of state interference with the operation of the free market. This could involve regulating demand, supply, price, profit, quantity, quality, entry, exit, information, technology, or any other aspect of production and consumption in the market.

In many markets the participants (especially the firms) may decide to maintain a system of voluntary **self-regulation**, possibly in order to try to avert the imposition of government controls. Areas where self-regulation often exists include the professions (eg the Law Society, the British Medical Association and other professional bodies).

5.3 Competition policy in the UK

Overall responsibility for the conduct of policy lies with the Secretary of State for Trade and Industry. However, day to day supervision is carried out by the Office of Fair Trading (OFT), headed by its Director General (DG). The OFT may refer companies to the **Competition Commission** or the Restrictive Practices Court for investigation.

5.4 Monopolies and mergers

Key term

In a pure **monopoly**, there is only one firm, the sole producer of a good, which has no closely competing substitutes.

A monopoly situation can have some advantages.

(a) In certain industries arguably only by achieving a monopoly will a company be able to benefit from the kinds of **economies of scale** (benefits of conducting operations on a large scale) that can minimise prices.

(b) Establishing a monopoly may be the best way for a business to **maximise its profits**.

However monopolies often have several adverse consequences.

(a) Companies can impose **higher prices** on consumers.

(b) The lack of incentive of competition may mean companies have **no incentive** to **improve their products** or **offer a wider range of products**.

(c) There is no pressure on the company to **improve the efficiency** of its **use of resources**.

In practice government policy is concerned not just with situations where one firm has a 100% market share, but other situations where an organisation has a significant market share.

The Competition Commission can also be asked to investigate what could be called **'oligopoly situations'** involving explicit or implicit collusion between firms, who together control the market.

The investigation is not automatic. Once the case has been referred, the Commission must decide whether or not the monopoly is acting **'against the public interest'**.

In its report, the Competition Commission will say if a monopoly situation has been found to exist and, if so, will make recommendations to deal with it. These may involve various measures.

- Price cuts
- Price and profit controls
- Removal of entry barriers
- The breaking up of the firm (rarely).

Case Study

Concern about the growing power of supermarkets in the UK, how they treat their suppliers and the closure of independent stores, have prompted a number of investigations since 2000.

The Office of Fair Trading (OFT) investigated the sector and referred the matter to the Competition Commission for further investigation in May 2006. Following a two year inquiry, the Competition Commission recommended a series of measures. Changes to the planning system should improve the number of large supermarkets consumers can choose from in a local area. An independent ombudsman will investigate how retailers treat their suppliers.

In March 2009 Tesco won an appeal against the recommendation that a 'competition test' be introduced when making planning applications.

Source: www.bbc.co.uk

A prospective **merger** between two or more companies may be referred to the Competition Commission for investigation if a larger company will gain more than 25% market share and where a merger appears likely to lead to a substantial lessening of competition in one or more markets in the UK.

Again, referral to the Competition Commission is not automatic, and since the legislation was first introduced, only a small proportion of all merger proposals have been referred.

If a potential merger is investigated, the Commission has again to determine whether or not the merger would be against the public interest. As with monopolies, it will assess the relative benefits and costs in order to arrive at a decision.

Question

Competition Commission

Look through newspapers or on the Internet for a report on the activities of the Competition Commission. Why is the investigation being carried out and how was it initiated?

5.5 Restrictive practices

The other strand of competition policy is concerned with preventing the development of anti-competitive practices such as **price-fixing agreements** (cartels). Under the legislation, all agreements between firms must be notified to the OFT and the DG will then decide if the agreement should be examined by the Restrictive Practices Court. The presumption of the Court is that the agreement will be declared illegal, unless it can be shown to satisfy one of the 'gateways' as defined in the Restrictive Practices Act 1976.

These gateways (ie reasons for allowing the agreement) include the following.

- To protect employment in a particular area
- To protect the public against injury
- To protect exports
- To counter measures taken by other firms which restrict competition

5.6 European Union competition policy

As a member of the European Union (EU), the UK is also now subject to EU competition policy. This is enshrined in Articles 85 (dealing with restrictive practices) and 86 (concerned with monopoly) of the Treaty of Rome.

5.7 Deregulation

Deregulation or 'liberalisation' is, in general, the opposite of regulation. Deregulation can be defined as the removal or weakening of any form of statutory (or voluntary) regulation of free **market activity**. Deregulation allows **free market forces** more scope to determine the outcome.

Case Study

Here are some examples of deregulation in the UK over recent years.

(a) Deregulation of road passenger transport – both buses (stage services) and coaches (express services) – was brought about by the Transport Acts of 1980 and 1985. There is now effective free entry into both markets (except in London).

(b) The monopoly position enjoyed by some professions has been removed, for example in opticians' supply of spectacles and solicitors' monopoly over house conveyancing. In addition, the controls on advertising by professionals have been loosened.

Deregulation, whose main aim is to **introduce more competition** into an industry by removing statutory or other entry barriers, has the following potential benefits.

(a) **Improved incentives for internal/cost efficiency**

Greater competition compels managers to try harder to keep down costs.

(b) **Improved allocative efficiency**

Competition keeps down prices closer to marginal cost, and firms therefore produce closer to the socially optimal output level.

In some industries it could have certain disadvantages, including the following.

(a) **Loss of economies of scale**

If increased competition means that each firm produces less output on a smaller scale, unit costs will be higher.

(b) **Lower quality or quantity of service**

The need to reduce costs may lead firms to reduce quality or eliminate unprofitable but socially valuable services.

(c) **Need to protect competition**

It may be necessary to implement a regulatory regime to protect competition where inherent forces have a tendency to eliminate it, for example if there is a dominant firm already in the industry, as in the case of British Telecom. In this type of situation, effective 'regulation for competition' will be required, ie regulatory measures aimed at maintaining competitive pressures, whether existing or potential.

5.8 Privatisation

FAST FORWARD

Privatisation is a policy of introducing private enterprise into industries which were previously stated-owned or state-operated.

Privatisation takes three broad forms.

(a) The **deregulation of industries**, to allow private firms to compete against state-owned businesses where they were not allowed to compete before (for example, deregulation of bus and coach services; deregulation of postal services).

(b) **Contracting out work** to **private firms**, where the work was previously done by government employees – for example, refuse collection or hospital laundry work.

(c) **Transferring the ownership** of **assets from** the **state to private shareholders** – for example, the denationalisation of British Gas and British Telecom (now called BT).

Privatisation can improve efficiency, in one of two ways.

(a) If the effect of privatisation is to **increase competition**, the effect might be to reduce or eliminate allocative inefficiency.

(b) The effect of denationalisation might be to make the **industries more cost-conscious**, because they will be directly answerable to shareholders, and under scrutiny from stock market investors.

There are other possible advantages of privatisation.

(a) It provides an **immediate source of money** for the government.

(b) It reduces **bureaucratic and political meddling** in the industries concerned.

(c) It encourages **wider share ownership**. Denationalisation is one method of creating wider share ownership, as the sale of BT, British Gas and some other nationalised industries have shown in the UK.

There are arguments against privatisation too.

(a) State-owned industries are more likely to respond to the **public interest**, ahead of the profit motive. For example, state-owned industries are more likely to cross-subsidise unprofitable operations from profitable ones; for example the Post Office will continue to deliver letters to the isles of Scotland even though the service might be very unprofitable.

(b) Encouraging private competition to state-run industries might be **inadvisable** where significant economies of scale can be achieved by monopoly operations.

Exam focus point

In the exam, you may wish to answer questions using your own country's regulations as an example. You will however need to understand how your own country's legislation deals with the issues we have discussed.

6 Government assistance for business

6.1 Official aid schemes

FAST FORWARD

The freedom of European governments to offer cash grants and other forms of direct assistance to business is limited by European Union policies designed to prevent the distortion of free market competition.

A government may provide finance to companies in cash grants and other forms of official direct assistance, as part of its policy of helping to develop the national economy, especially in high technology industries and in areas of high unemployment.

Government incentives might be offered on:

(a) A **regional basis**, giving help to firms that invest in an economically depressed area of the country.

(b) A **selective national basis**, giving help to firms that invest in an industry that the government would like to see developing more quickly, for example robotics or fibre optics.

In Europe, such assistance is increasingly limited by European Union policies designed to prevent the distortion of free market competition. The UK government's powers to grant aid for modernisation and development are now severely restricted.

6.2 The Enterprise Initiative

The Enterprise Initiative is a package of measures offered by the Department of Trade and Industry (DTI) to businesses in the UK. It includes regional selective grant assistance. A network of 'Business Links', which are local business advice centres, is also provided.

Regional selective assistance is available for investment projects undertaken by firms in **Assisted Areas**. The project must be commercially viable, create or safeguard employment, demonstrate a need for assistance and offer a distinct regional and national benefit. The amount of grant will be negotiated as the minimum necessary to ensure the project goes ahead.

7 Green policies

FAST FORWARD

There are a number of policy approaches to **pollution**, such as **polluter pays policies, subsidies** and direct **legislation**.

The environment is increasingly seen as an important issue facing managers in both the public and private sectors. The problems of pollution and the environment appear to call for international co-operation between governments. Pollutants expelled into the atmosphere in the UK are said to cause 'acid rain to fall in Scandinavia, for example.

7.1 Pollution policy

Key term

Externalities are positive or negative effects on third parties resulting from production and consumption activities.

Pollution, for example from exhaust gas emissions or the dumping of waste, is often discussed in relation to environmental policy. If polluters take little or no account of their actions on others, this generally results in the output of polluting industries being greater than is optimal.

One solution is to levy a tax on polluters equal to the cost of removing the effect of the externality they generate: the **polluter pays principle**. This will encourage firms to cut emissions and provides an incentive for them to research ways of permanently reducing pollution.

Apart from the imposition of a tax, there are a number of other measures open to the government in attempting to reduce pollution. One of the main measures available is the application of **subsidies** which may be used either to persuade polluters to reduce output and hence pollution, or to assist with expenditure on production processes, such as new machinery and air cleaning equipment, which reduce levels of pollution.

Case Study

One subsidy in the UK is that given to householders for loft insulation. This reduces energy consumption, in turn reducing emissions of pollutants.

7.2 Legislation

An alternative approach used in the UK is to impose **legislation** laying down regulations governing waste disposal and atmospheric emissions. Waste may only be disposed of with prior consent and if none is given, or it is exceeded, the polluter is fined. There may also be attempts with this type of approach to specify standards of, for example, air and water quality with appropriate penalties for not conforming to the required standards.

Case Study

The European Council's Directive (1999) states:

"Member States must ensure that existing landfill sites may not continue to operate unless they comply with the provisions of the Directive as soon as possible. Member States must report to the Commission every three years on the implementation of the Directive. On the basis of these reports, the Commission must publish a Community report on the implementation of the Directive."

This led to the Landfill (England & Wales) Regulations 2002 being brought into force in the UK. This, in turn, was implemented through the Government's Waste Strategy 2000:

- Landfill Regulations require a reduction in the quantity of biodegradable and recyclable household waste being disposed of via landfill.
- Local councils are required to increase recycling and composting of household waste to meet rising targets over a number of years. How they achieve this is their responsibility.
- Recycling/composting targets (2005: 25%, 2010: 30%, 2015: 33%)

7.3 Advantages of 'environmentally friendly policies' for a business

There may be various reasons why a business may gain from adopting a policy of strict compliance with environmental regulations, or of going further and taking voluntary initiatives to protect aspects of the environment.

(a) If potential customers perceive the business to be environmentally friendly, some may be **more inclined** to **buy its products**.

(b) A corporate image which embraces environmentally friendly policies may **enhance relationships** with the **public in general** or with local communities.

(c) People may prefer to work for an **environmentally friendly** business.

(d) **'Ethical' investment funds** may be more likely to buy the firm's shares.

8 Corporate governance regulation

FAST FORWARD

The **corporate governance debate** impacts upon the way companies make decisions, their financial organisation and their relations with investors and auditors.

In Chapter 1, Section 5.2.1, we looked at how corporate governance is used to enforce the achievement of stakeholder objectives. Corporate governance has emerged as a major issue in the last ten to fifteen years in the light of several high profile collapses. Guidance has been given because of the lack of confidence perceived in financial reporting and in the ability of auditors to provide the assurances required by the users of financial accounts.

8.1 Impact of corporate governance requirements on businesses

The **consequences of failure to obey** corporate governance regulations should be considered along with failure to obey any other sort of legislation.

Businesses that fail to comply with the law run the risk of **financial penalties** and the financial consequences of accompanying **bad publicity**.

In regimes where corporate governance rules are **guidelines** rather than regulations, businesses will consider what the consequences might be of non-compliance, in particular the **impact on share prices**.

Obedience to requirements or guidelines can also have consequences for businesses. Compliance may involve **extra costs**, including extra procedures and investment necessary to conform.

Chapter Roundup

- Macroeconomic policy involves
  - Policy **objectives** – the ultimate aims of economic policy
  - Policy **targets** – quantified levels or ranges which policy is intended to achieve
  - Policy **instruments** – the tools used to achieve objectives

  Achievement of **economic growth, low inflation, full employment** and **balance of payments stability** are policy objectives.

  Policy targets might be set for **economic growth** or the **rate of inflation**, for example.
- **Fiscal policy** seeks to influence the economy by managing the amounts which the government spends and the amounts it collects through taxation. Fiscal policy can be used as an instrument of **demand management**.
- Monetary policy aims to influence monetary variables such as the rate of interest and the money supply in order to achieve targets set.
- Exchange rates are determined by **supply and demand**, even under fixed exchange rate systems.

  Governments can intervene to influence the exchange rate by, for example, **adjusting interest rates**. Government policies on exchange rates might be **fixed or floating exchange rates** as two extreme policies, but 'in-between' schemes have been more common.
- The government influences markets in various ways, one of which is through direct **regulation** (eg the **Competition Commission)**.
- **Privatisation** is a policy of introducing private enterprise into industries which were previously stated-owned or state-operated.
- The freedom of European governments to offer cash grants and other forms of direct assistance to business is limited by European Union policies designed to prevent the distortion of free market competition.
- There are a number of policy approaches to **pollution**, such as **polluter pays policies, subsidies** and direct **legislation**.
- The **corporate governance debate** impacts upon the way companies make decisions, their financial organisation and their relations with investors and auditors.

Quick Quiz

1 What are likely to be the main aims of a government's economy policy?

2 What is the difference between fiscal policy and monetary policy?

3 What effect does a high interest rate have on the exchange rate?

4 Name five factors that can influence the level of exchange rates.

5 Give four reasons for government intervention in markets.

6 What is the situation called when there is only one firm, the sole producer of a good, which has no closely competing substitutes?

A Duopoly
B Oligopoly
C Monopoly
D Totopoly

7 *Fill in the blank.*

..... are positive or negative effects on third parties resulting from production and consumption activities.

8 *Fill in the blank.*

Corporate governance is .....

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 Main objectives include:

(a) Economic growth
(b) Control of price inflation
(c) Full employment
(d) Balance between imports and exports

2 A government's fiscal policy is concerned with taxation, borrowing and spending and their effects upon the economy. Monetary policy is concerned with money and interest rates.

3 It attracts foreign investment, thus increasing the demand for the currency. The exchange rate rises as a result.

4 (a) Comparative inflation rates
(b) Comparative interest rates
(c) Balance of payments
(d) Speculation
(e) Government policy

5 (a) Imperfect competition
(b) Social costs/externalities
(c) Imperfect information
(d) Equity

6 C Monopoly

7 Externalities

8 The system by which companies are directed and controlled.

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q2	Examination	25	45 mins

3

Financial markets and institutions

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Financial intermediaries	B2 (b)
2 Money markets and capital markets	B2 (a)
3 International money and capital markets	B2 (a), (c)
4 Rates of interest and rates of return	B2 (d)

Introduction

Having discussed the scope of financial management and the objectives of firms and other organisations in Chapter 1, we now introduce the framework of **markets** and **institutions** through which the financing of a business takes place.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
B2	**The nature and role of financial markets and institutions**	
(a)	Identify the nature and role of money and capital markets, both nationally and internationally.	2
(b)	Explain the role of financial intermediaries.	1
(c)	Explain the functions of a stock market and a corporate bond market.	2
(d)	Explain the nature and features of different securities in relation to the risk/return tradeoff.	2

Exam guide

You will not get a complete question on the topics covered in this chapter. You might however be asked a part question that relates to the circumstances of a particular company, for instance how they could raise funds using a stock market.

1 Financial intermediaries

FAST FORWARD

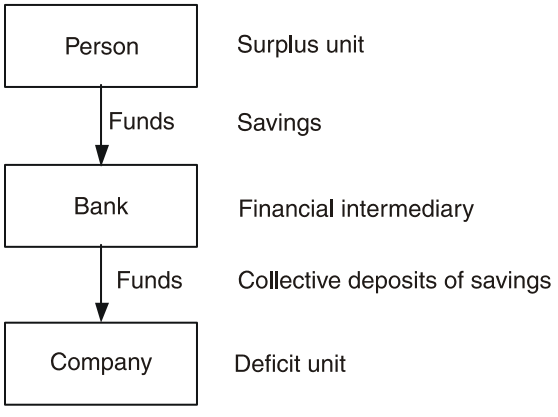
A **financial intermediary** links those with surplus funds (eg **lenders**) to those with funds deficits (eg potential **borrowers**) thus providing **aggregation** and **economies of scale**, **risk pooling** and **maturity transformation**.

1.1 Financial intermediation

Key term

A **Financial intermediary** is a party bringing together providers and users of finance, either as broker or as principal.

A **financial intermediary** is an institution which links lenders with borrowers, by obtaining deposits from lenders and then re-lending them to borrowers.



Not all intermediation takes place between savers and investors. Some institutions act mainly as **intermediaries** between **other institutions**. Financial intermediaries may also lend abroad or borrow from abroad.

Exam focus point

Bear in mind that *financial markets* and *institutions* are topic areas on which the examiner is not expected to set full questions. These topics could, however, be examined in subsections of a question.

1.1.1 Examples of financial intermediaries

- Commercial banks
- Finance houses
- Building societies
- Government's National Savings department
- Institutional investors eg pension funds and investment trusts

1.2 The benefits of financial intermediation

Financial intermediaries perform the following functions.

(a) They provide obvious and **convenient** ways in which a lender can save money. Instead of having to find a suitable borrower for his money, the lender can deposit his money with a financial intermediary. All the lender has to do is decide for **how long** he might want to lend the money, and **what sort of return** he requires, and he can then choose a financial intermediary that offers a **financial instrument** to suit his requirements.

(b) Financial intermediaries also provide a **ready source of funds** for **borrowers**. Even when money is in short supply, a borrower will usually find a financial intermediary prepared to lend some.

(c) They can **aggregate** or **'package'** the amounts lent by savers and lend on to borrowers in different amounts.

(d) **Risk** for individual lenders is reduced by **pooling**. Since financial intermediaries lend to a large number of individuals and organisations, any losses suffered through default by borrowers or capital losses are effectively pooled and **borne** as **costs** by the intermediary. Such losses are **shared among lenders in general**.

(e) By pooling the funds of large numbers of people, some financial institutions are able to give investors access to **diversified portfolios** covering a varied range of different securities, such as unit trusts and investment trusts.

(f) Financial intermediaries, most importantly, provide **maturity transformation**; ie they bridge the gap between the wish of most lenders for **liquidity** and the desire of most borrowers for **loans** over longer periods.

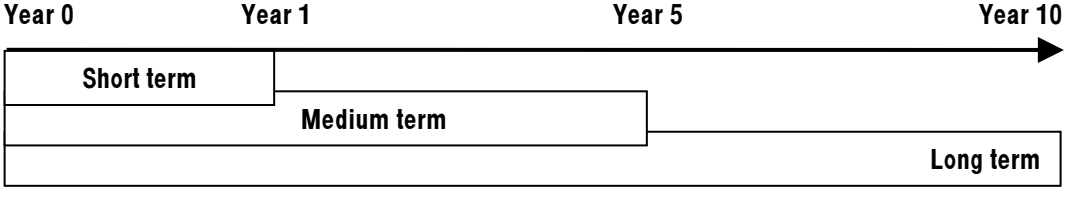
2 Money markets and capital markets

FAST FORWARD

Capital markets are markets for long-term capital.

Money markets are markets for short-term capital.

Differences between loan terms



2.1 The money markets

Money markets are markets for:

- Trading short-term financial instruments
- Short-term lending and borrowing

The money markets are **operated** by the **banks** and other **financial institutions**. Although the money markets largely involve borrowing and lending by banks, some large companies, as well as the government, are involved in money market operations.

The primary market is known as the **official market**, the other markets as the **parallel** or **wholesale markets**.

Types of market	
Primary market	Approved institutions deal in financial instruments with the Central Bank eg Bank of England. The Central Bank uses trading to control short-term interest rates
Interbank market	Banks lend short-term funds to each other
Eurocurrency market	Banks lend and borrow in foreign currencies
Certificate of deposit market	Market for trading in Certificates of Deposit (negotiable instruments acknowledging deposits)
Local authority market	Local authorities borrow short-term funds by issuing and selling short-term debt instruments
Finance house market	Dealing in short-term loans raised from money markets by finance houses
Inter-company market	Direct short-term lending between treasury departments of large companies

We will look at sources of short-term finance in more detail in Chapter 12.

2.2 The capital markets

FAST FORWARD

A stock market (in the UK: the **main market** plus the **AIM**) acts as a **primary market** for raising finance, and as a **secondary market** for the trading of existing securities (ie shares and bonds).

Capital markets are markets for trading in **long-term finance**, in the form of long-term financial instruments such as equities and corporate bonds.

In the UK, the principal capital markets are:

(a) The Stock Exchange **'main market'** (for companies with a full Stock Exchange listing)
(b) The more loosely regulated 'second tier' **Alternative Investment Market (AIM)**

The Stock Exchange is also the market for dealings in **government securities**.

Firms obtain long-term or medium-term capital in one of the following ways.

(a) They may raise **share capital**. Most new issues of share capital are in the form of ordinary share capital. Firms that issue ordinary share capital are inviting investors to take an **equity stake** in the business, or to increase their existing equity stake.
(b) They may raise **loan capital**. Long-term loan capital might be raised in the form of loan notes, corporate bonds, debentures, unsecured and convertible bonds.

We will look at sources of long-term finance in more detail in Chapter 12.

The stock markets serve two main purposes.

(a) As **primary markets** they enable organisations to **raise new finance**, by issuing new shares or new bonds. In the UK, a company must **have public company status** (be a plc) to be allowed to raise finance from the public on a capital market.
(b) As **secondary markets** they enable existing investors to **sell their investments**, should they wish to do so. The marketability of securities is a very important feature of the capital markets, because investors are more willing to buy stocks and shares if they know that they could sell them easily, should they wish to.

These are the main functions of a stock market, but we can add two more important ones.

(a) When a company comes to the stock market for the first time, and 'floats' its shares on the market, the owners of the company can **realise** some of the **value of their shares** in cash, because they will offer a proportion of their personally-held shares for sale to new investors.

(b) When one company wants to **take over** another, it is common to do so by issuing shares to finance the takeover. Takeovers by means of a share exchange are only feasible if the shares that are offered can be readily traded on a stock market, and so have an identifiable market value.

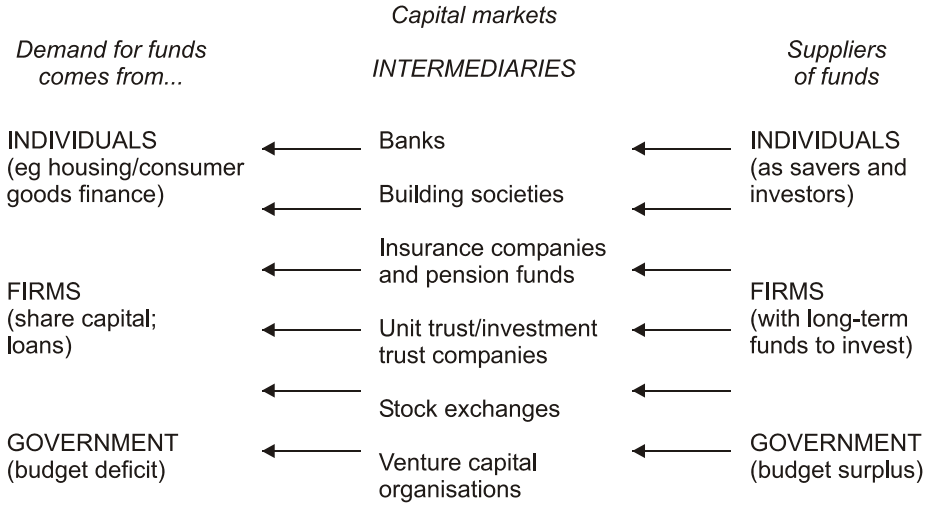
2.3 Institutional investors

Institutional investors are institutions which have large amounts of funds which they want to invest, and they will invest in stocks and shares or any other assets which offer satisfactory returns and security or lend money to companies directly. The institutional investors are now the biggest investors on the stock market.

The major institutional investors in the UK are **pension funds**, **insurance companies, investment trusts**, **unit trusts** and **venture capital organisations**. Of these, pension funds and insurance companies have the largest amounts of funds to invest.

2.4 Capital market participants

The various participants in the capital markets are summarised in the diagram below.



3 International money and capital markets

FAST FORWARD

International money and capital markets are available for larger companies wishing to raise larger amounts of finance.

Larger companies are able to borrow funds on the **eurocurrency markets** (which are international money markets) and on the markets for **eurobonds** (international capital markets).

Exam focus point

Don't suggest these international markets as possible sources of finance for a **smaller** business in an exam answer.

3.1 Eurocurrency markets

A UK company might borrow money from a bank or from the investing public, in sterling. But it might also borrow in a foreign currency, especially if it trades abroad, or if it already has assets or liabilities abroad denominated in a foreign currency.

When a company borrows in a foreign currency, the loan is known as a **eurocurrency loan.**

Key term

Eurocurrency is currency which is held by individuals and institutions outside the country of issue of that currency.

For example, if a UK company borrows US $50,000 from its bank, the loan will be a 'eurodollar' loan. London is a major centre for eurocurrency lending and companies with foreign trade interests might choose to borrow from their bank in another currency.

The **eurocurrency markets** involve the depositing of funds with a bank outside the country of the currency in which the funds are denominated and re-lending these funds for a fairly short term, typically three months. Most eurocurrency transactions in fact takes place between banks of different countries and take the form of negotiable certificates of deposit.

3.2 International capital markets

Large companies may arrange borrowing facilities from their bank, in the form of bank loans or bank overdrafts. Instead, however, they might prefer to borrow from private investors. In other words, instead of obtaining a £10,000,000 bank loan, a company might issue bonds, in order to borrow directly from investors, with:

(a) The bank merely **arranging the transaction**, finding investors who will take up the bonds that the borrowing company issues

(b) **Interest** being payable to the **investors themselves**, not to a bank

In recent years, a strong international market has built up which allows very large companies to borrow in this way, long-term or short-term. As well as eurobonds, there is also a less highly developed market in international equity share issues (**'euro-equity'**).

Key term

A **eurobond** is a bond denominated in a currency which often differs from that of the country of issue.

Eurobonds are long-term loans raised by international companies or other institutions and sold to investors in several countries at the same time. Such bonds can be sold by one holder to another. The term of a eurobond issue is typically ten to 15 years.

Eurobonds may be the most suitable source of finance for a large organisation with an excellent credit rating, such as a large successful multinational company, which:

(a) Requires a **long-term loan** to **finance a big capital expansion** programme. The loan may be for at least five and up to 20 years.

(b) Requires **borrowing** which is **not subject to the national exchange** controls of any government.

In addition, domestic capital issues may be regulated by the government or central bank, with an orderly queue for issues. In contrast, eurobond issues can be made whenever market conditions seem favourable.

A borrower who is contemplating a eurobond issue must consider the **exchange risk** of a long-term foreign currency loan. If the money is to be used to purchase assets which will earn revenue in a currency **different to that of the bond issue**, the borrower will run the risk of exchange losses.

If the money is to be used to purchase assets which will earn revenue in the **same currency**, the borrower can match these revenues with payments on the bond, and so remove or reduce the exchange risk.

An **investor** subscribing to a bond issue will be concerned about the following factors.

(a) **Security**

The borrower must be of **high quality**.

(b) **Marketability**

Investors will wish to have a **ready market** in which bonds can be bought and sold. If the borrower is of high quality the bonds or notes will be readily negotiable.

(c) **Anonymity**

Investors in eurobonds tend to be attracted to the **anonymity** of this type of issue, as the bonds are generally issued to bearer.

(d) **The return on the investment**

This is paid tax-free.

4 Rates of interest and rates of return

Interest rates are effectively the 'prices' governing lending and borrowing. The borrower pays interest to the lender at a certain percentage of the capital sum, as the price for the use of the funds borrowed. As with other prices, supply and demand effects apply. For example, the higher the rates of interest that are charged, the lower will be the demand for funds from borrowers.

4.1 The pattern of interest rates

FAST FORWARD

The **pattern of interest rates** on financial assets is influenced by the **risk** of the assets, the **duration** of the lending, and the **size** of the loan.

The pattern of interest rates refers to the variety of interest rates on different financial assets, and the margin between interest rates on lending and deposits that are set by banks. Note that the **pattern of interest rates** is a different thing from the **general level of interest rates.**

Why are there such a large number of interest rates? In other words, how is the **pattern** of interest rates to be explained? The answer to this question relates to several factors.

(a) **Risk**

There is a trade-off between risk and return. Higher-risk borrowers must pay higher yields on their borrowing, to compensate lenders for the greater risk involved. Banks will assess the creditworthiness of the borrower, and set a rate of interest on its loan at a certain mark-up above its base rate.

(b) **Need to make a profit on re-lending**

Financial intermediaries make their profits from re-lending at a higher rate of interest than the cost of their borrowing. For example, the interest rate charged on bank loans exceeds the rate paid on deposits and the mortgage rate charged by building societies exceeds the interest rate paid on deposits.

(c) **Duration of the lending**

The term of the loan or asset will affect the rate of interest charged on it. In general, longer-dated assets will earn a higher yield than similar short-dated assets but this is not always the case. The differences are referred to as the **term structure** of interest rates.

(d) **Size of the loan or deposit**

The yield on assets might vary with the size of the loan or deposit. Administrative cost savings help to allow **lower rates of interest** to be charged by banks **on larger loans** and **higher rates of interest** to be paid on **larger time deposits**.

(e) **Different types of financial asset**

Different types of financial asset attract **different rates of interest**. This is partly because different types of asset attract different sorts of lender/investor. For example, bank deposits attract individuals and companies, whereas long-dated government securities are particularly attractive to various institutional investors.

The rates of interest paid on government borrowing (the **Treasury bill rate** for short-term borrowing and the **gilt-edged rate** for long-dated government bonds) provide benchmarks for other interest rates. For example:

(a) Clearing banks might set the three months inter-bank rate (LIBOR) at about 1% above the Treasury bill rate.

(b) Banks in turn lend (wholesale) at a rate higher than LIBOR.

Key term

LIBOR or the London Inter-Bank Offered Rate is the rate of interest applying to wholesale money market lending between London banks.

We will look at interest rates in more detail in Chapter 20.

4.2 The risk-return trade-off

FAST FORWARD

There is a **trade-off** between **risk and return**. Investors in riskier assets expect to be compensated for the risk. In the case of ordinary shares, investors hope to achieve their return in the form of an increase in the share price (a capital gain) as well as from dividends.

We have explained how rates of interest, and therefore rates of return to lenders, will be affected by the risk involved in lending. The idea of a risk-return trade-off can, however, be extended beyond a consideration of interest rates.

An investor has the choice between different forms of investment. The investor may earn interest by depositing funds with a financial intermediary who will lend on to, say, a company, or it may invest in corporate bonds. Alternatively, the investor may invest directly in a company by purchasing shares in it.

The current market price of a security is found by discounting the future expected earnings stream at a rate suitably adjusted for risk. This means that investments carrying a **higher degree of risk** will demand a **higher rate of return**. This rate of return or yield has two components:

- **Annual income** (dividend or interest)
- **Expected capital gain**

In general, the **higher the risk** of the security, the **more important is the capital gain** component of the expected yield.

Some of the main forms of investment are listed below in ascending order of risk.

(a) **Government bonds**

The risk of default is negligible. Hence this tends to form the **base level** for returns in the market. The only uncertainty concerns the movement of interest rates over time, and hence longer dated bonds will tend to carry a higher rate of interest.

(b) **Company bonds**

Although there is some risk of default on company bonds, they are usually **secured** against corporate assets.

(c) **Preference shares**

These are generally riskier than bonds since they rank behind debt in the event of a liquidation, although they rank ahead of **ordinary shares**. The return takes the form of a **fixed percentage dividend** based on the par value of the share.

(d) **Ordinary shares**

Ordinary shares carry a high level of risk. Dividends are paid out of distributable profits after all other liabilities have been paid and can be subject to **large fluctuations** from year to year. However, there is the potential for significant **capital appreciation** in times of growth. In general, the level of risk will vary with the operational and financial **gearing** of the company and the nature of the markets in which it operates.

4.3 The reverse yield gap

Because debt involves lower risk than equity investment, we might expect yields on debt to be lower than yields on shares. More usually, however, the opposite applies and the yields on shares are lower than on low-risk debt; this situation is known as a **reverse yield gap**. A reverse yield gap can occur because

shareholders may be willing to accept lower returns on their investment in the short term, in anticipation that they will make capital gains in the future.

4.4 Interest rates and shareholders' required rates of return 12/08

Given that equity shares and interest-earning investments stand as alternatives from the investor's point of view, changes in the general level of interest rates can be expected to have an effect on the rates of return which shareholders will expect.

If the return expected by an investor from an equity investment (ie an investment in shares) is 11% and the dividend paid on the shares is 15 cents, the market value of one share will be 15 cents/11% = $1.36.

Suppose that interest rates then fall. Because the option of putting the funds on deposit has become less attractive, the shareholders' required return will fall, to say, 9%. Then the market value of one share will increase to 15 cents/9% = $1.67.

You can see from this that an **increase** in the shareholders' **required rate of return** (perhaps resulting from an increase in the general level of interest rates) will lead to a **fall** in the **market value** of the share.

Chapter Roundup

- A **financial intermediary** links those with surplus funds (eg **lenders**) to those with funds deficits (eg potential **borrowers**) thus providing **aggregation** and **economies of scale**, **risk pooling** and **maturity transformation**.
- **Capital markets** are markets for long-term capital.

  Money markets are markets for short-term capital.
- A stock market (in the UK: the **main market** plus the **AIM**) acts as a **primary market** for raising finance, and as a **secondary market** for the trading of existing securities (ie shares and bonds).
- **International money and capital markets** are available for larger companies wishing to raise larger amounts of finance.
- The **pattern of interest rates** on financial assets is influenced by the **risk** of the assets, the **duration** of the lending, and the **size** of the loan.
- There is a **trade-off** between **risk and return**. Investors in riskier assets expect to be compensated for the risk. In the case of ordinary shares, investors hope to achieve their return in the form of an increase in the share price (a capital gain) as well as from dividends.

Quick Quiz

1 Identify five types of financial intermediaries.

2 For short-term borrowing, a company will go to the **money markets/capital markets.** (Which?)

3 (a) From which does the **demand** for capital markets funds come: Individuals/Firms/Government? (Delete any that do not apply).

(b) From which does the **supply** of capital market funds come: Individuals/Firms/Government? (Delete any that do not apply).

4 Is the Stock Exchange a money market?

5 *Fill in the blank.*

When a company borrows in a foreign currency, the loan is known as a ..... loan.

6 Which of the following types of investment carries the highest level of risk?

A Company bonds
B Preference shares
C Government bonds
D Ordinary shares

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 Any five of: banks; building societies; insurance companies; pension funds; unit trust companies; investment trusts; Stock Exchanges; venture capital organisations.

2 Money markets.

3 (a) and (b): You should have deleted none.

4 No. The Stock Exchange is a capital market, not a money market.

5 Eurocurrency

6 D Ordinary shares

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q3	Introductory	n/a	20 mins

PART C

Working capital management

4

Working capital

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The nature of working capital	C1 (a)
2 Objectives of working capital	C1 (b)
3 Role of working capital management	C1 (c)
4 The cash operating cycle	C2 (a)
5 Liquidity ratios	C2 (b)

Introduction

Part C of this study text covers the crucial topic of working capital management.

In this chapter, we consider functions of the financial manager relating to the **management of working capital** in general terms including the elements of working capital and the objectives and role of working capital management.

This chapter also explains the cash operating cycle and working capital ratios.

In later chapters, we shall be looking at specific aspects of the management of **cash**, **accounts receivable and payable** and **inventories**.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
C1	**The nature, elements and importance of working capital**	
(a)	Describe the nature of working capital and identify its elements.	1
(b)	Identify the objectives of working capital management in terms of liquidity and profitability, and discuss the conflict between them.	2
(c)	Discuss the central role of working capital management in financial management.	2
C2	**Management of inventories, accounts receivable, accounts payable and cash**	
(a)	Explain the cash operating cycle and the role of accounts payable and accounts receivable.	2
(b)	Explain and apply relevant accounting ratios, including:	2
(i)	current ratio and quick ratio	
(ii)	inventory turnover ratio, average collection period and average payable period	
(iii)	sales revenue/net working capital ratio	

Exam guide

Working capital is highly examinable and has appeared in every exam so far. Questions are likely to be a mixture of calculations and discussion. Always make sure your discussion and explanations are applied to the specific organisation in the question.

1 The nature of working capital

FAST FORWARD

The amount tied up in **working capital** is equal to the value of raw materials, work-in-progress, finished goods inventories and accounts receivable less accounts payable. The size of this net figure has a direct effect on the **liquidity** of an organisation.

Key term

Net working capital of a business is its current assets less its current liabilities.

KEY CURRENT ASSETS AND LIABILITIES	
Current assets	**Current liabilities**
Cash	Trade accounts payable
Inventory of raw materials	Taxation payable
Inventory of work in progress	Dividend payments due
Inventory of finished goods	Short-term loans
Amounts receivable from accounts receivable	Long-term loans maturing within one year
Marketable securities	Lease rentals due within one year

1.1 Working capital characteristics of different businesses

Different businesses will have different working capital characteristics. There are three main aspects to these differences.

(a) Holding inventory (from their purchase from external suppliers, through the production and warehousing of finished goods, up to the time of sale).

(b) Taking time to pay suppliers and other accounts payable.

(c) Allowing customers (accounts receivable) time to pay.

Here are some examples.

(a) Supermarkets and other retailers receive much of their sales in cash or by credit card or debit card. However, they typically buy from suppliers on credit. They may therefore have the advantage of significant cash holdings, which they may choose to invest.

(b) A company which supplies to other companies, such as a wholesaler, is likely to be selling and buying mainly on **credit**. Co-ordinating the flow of cash may be quite a problem. Such a company may make use of short-term borrowings (such as an overdraft) to manage its cash.

(c) Smaller companies with a limited trading record may face particularly severe problems. Lacking a long track record, such companies may find it difficult to obtain credit from suppliers. At the same time, customers will expect to receive the length of credit period that is normal for the particular business concerned. The firm may find itself squeezed in its management of cash.

Exam focus point

Some aspect of working capital management is likely to be included in every paper.

2 Objectives of working capital 12/07, 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The two main objectives of working capital management are to ensure it has **sufficient liquid resources** to continue in business and to **increase its profitability**.

Every business needs adequate **liquid resources** to maintain day-to-day cash flow. It needs enough to pay wages, salaries and accounts payable if it is to keep its workforce and ensure its supplies.

Maintaining adequate working capital is not just important in the short term. Adequate liquidity is needed to ensure the **survival** of the business in the long term. Even a profitable company may fail without adequate cash flow to meet its liabilities.

On the other hand, an excessively conservative approach to working capital management resulting in high levels of cash holdings will **harm profits** because the opportunity to make a return on the assets tied up as cash will have been missed.

These two objectives will often **conflict** as liquid assets give the lowest returns.

Exam focus point

In June 2008, the examiner asked for a discussion of the key factors which determine the level of investment in current assets. Answers often referred incorrectly to working capital funding strategies illustrating that it is essential to answer the specific requirements of the question.

3 Role of working capital management

FAST FORWARD

A business needs to have **clear policies** for the management of each component of working capital.

Working capital management is a key factor in an organisation's long-term success. A business must therefore have clear policies for the management of each component of working capital. The management of cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, accounts payable, accruals and other means of short-term financing is the **direct** responsibility of the financial manager and it requires continuous day-to-day supervision.

Case Study

An article by Karen Winton and Enid Tsui in CHO Asia (April 2003) explained the importance of working capital management in companies in Asia.

'An incredible fortune – almost US$23 billion – is begging to be accessed by finance chiefs in 45 companies in Asia. They could be using the money for acquisitions or factory expansions, they could be using it for debt repayment, or anything else they fancy. They could be, but they can't because, unfortunately, the money is all locked away in places they don't seem to be able to touch. And these places are not like time deposit accounts, they are overdue accounts receivable, over-generous inventory levels and overly prompt bill payments. CFOs could unleash this entire fortune from working capital by conscientiously improving their management of receivables, payables and inventory levels. So close, yet so far.

Working capital management never makes it to the front page of the business news section. It is, to the few laymen who have heard of the term, something buried deep in annual reports, and therefore boring. To most CFOs, it's mainly grunt work, and it could involve alienating customers, suppliers and even the people in the sales department. But there is no doubt that it is a financially rewarding exercise since unlocking assets tied up in working capital could immediately enhance operating cash flow, which, if used wisely, could then lead to an improved bottom line.

Some companies that have started to squeeze cash out of their working capital have seen concrete results. In the first half of its fiscal year 2003, Hong Kong toy maker VTech Holdings cited reduced inventory levels as a major contributor in its return to a net cash position (US$23 million) and a 14-fold increase in net profit (US$50 million) – despite an 11 percent decrease in sales. In 2002, Hong Kong holding company Jardine Strategic added US$64 million to its operating cash flow simply by reducing rental deposits. Likewise, Philippine liquor producer La Tondena Distillers' significant improvement in its receivables collection (from 78 days to 29 days), coupled with a cut in inventories, enabled it to release 2.3 billion pesos (US$42 million) from its working capital.'

Question

Working capital policies

What differences would there be in working capital policies for a manufacturing company and a food retailer?

Answer

The manufacturing company will need to invest heavily in spare parts and may be owed large amounts of money by its customers. The food retailer will have a large inventory of goods for resale but will have low accounts receivable.

The manufacturing company will therefore need a carefully considered policy on the management of accounts receivable which will need to reflect the credit policies of its close competitors.

The food retailer will be more concerned with inventory management.

4 The cash operating cycle

6/08

Key term

The cash operating cycle is the period of time which elapses between the point at which cash begins to be expended on the production of a product and the collection of cash from a purchaser.

The connection between investment in working capital and cash flow may be illustrated by means of the **cash operating cycle** (also called the **working capital cycle** or **trading cycle** or **cash conversion cycle**.)

The cash operating cycle in a manufacturing business equals:

The average time that raw materials remain in inventory
Less the period of credit taken from suppliers
Plus the time taken to produce the goods
Plus the time taken by customers to pay for the goods

If the turnover periods for inventories and accounts receivable lengthen, or the payment period to accounts payable shortens, then the operating cycle will lengthen and the investment in working capital will increase.

4.1 Example: Cash operating cycle

Wines Co buys raw materials from suppliers that allow Wines 2.5 months credit. The raw materials remain in inventory for one month, and it takes Wines 2 months to produce the goods. The goods are sold within a couple of days of production being completed and customers take on average 1.5 months to pay.

Required

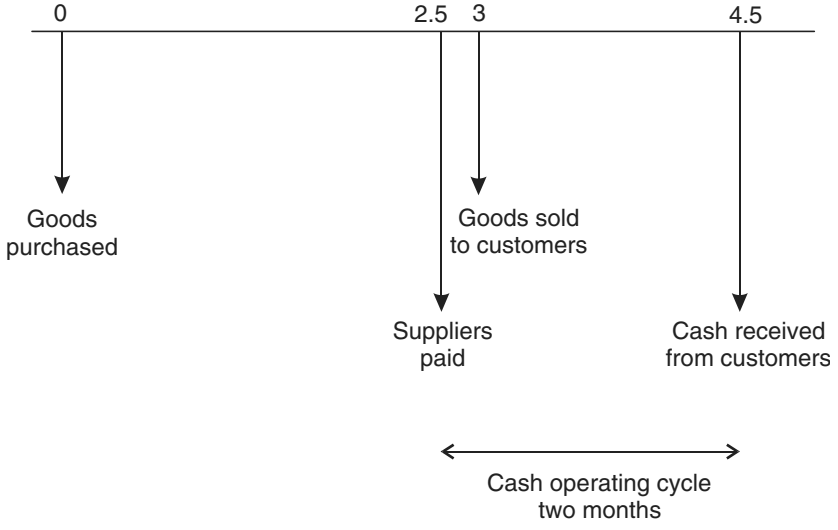
Calculate Wines's cash operating cycle.

Solution

We can ignore the time that finished goods are in inventory as it is no more than a couple of days.

	Months
The average time that raw materials remain in inventory	1.0
Less the time taken to pay suppliers	(2.5)
The time taken to produce the goods	2.0
The time taken by customers to pay for the goods	1.5
	2.0

The company's cash operating cycle is 2 months. This can be illustrated diagrammatically as follows.



The cash operating cycle is the period between the suppliers being paid and the cash being received from the customers.

5 Liquidity ratios 6/08

FAST FORWARD

Working capital ratios may help to indicate whether a company is **over-capitalised**, with excessive working capital, or if a business is likely to fail. A business which is trying to do too much too quickly with too little long-term capital is **overtrading**.

5.1 The current ratio

The **current ratio** is the standard test of liquidity.

Key term

$$\textbf{Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

A company should have enough current assets that give a promise of 'cash to come' to meet its commitments to pay its current liabilities. Obviously, a ratio in **excess of 1** should be expected. In practice, a ratio comfortably in excess of 1 should be expected, but what is 'comfortable' varies between different types of businesses.

5.2 The quick ratio

Key term

$$\textbf{Quick ratio} \text{ or } \textbf{acid test ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets less inventories}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

Companies are not able to convert all their current assets into cash very quickly. In some businesses, where inventory turnover is slow, most inventories are not very liquid assets, because the cash cycle is so long. For these reasons, we calculate an additional liquidity ratio, known as the quick ratio or acid test ratio.

This ratio should ideally be at least 1 for companies with a slow inventory turnover. For companies with a fast inventory turnover, a quick ratio can be less than 1 without suggesting that the company is in cash flow difficulties.

5.3 The accounts receivable payment period

Key term

$$\textbf{Accounts receivable days} \text{ or } \textbf{accounts receivable payment period} = \frac{\text{Trade receivables}}{\text{Credit sales turnover}} \times 365 \text{ days}$$

This is a rough measure of the average length of time it takes for a company's accounts receivable to pay what they owe.

The trade accounts receivable are not the *total* figure for accounts receivable in the statement of financial position, which includes prepayments and non-trade accounts receivable. The trade accounts receivable figure will be itemised in an analysis of the total accounts receivable, in a note to the accounts.

The estimate of accounts receivable days is only approximate.

(a) The **statement of financial position value** of accounts receivable might be **abnormally high** or low compared with the 'normal' level the company usually has. This may apply especially to smaller companies, where the size of year-end accounts receivable may largely depend on whether a few or even a single large customer pay just before or just after the year-end.

(b) Turnover in the income statement excludes sales tax, but the accounts receivable figure in the statement of financial position includes sales tax. We are not strictly comparing like with like.

5.4 The inventory turnover period

Key terms

$$\textbf{Inventory turnover} = \frac{\text{Cost of sales}}{\text{Average inventory}}$$

The inventory turnover period can also be calculated:

$$\textbf{Inventory turnover period (Finished goods)} = \frac{\text{Average inventory}}{\text{Cost of sales}} \times 365 \text{ days}$$

$$\textbf{Raw materials inventory holding period} = \frac{\text{Average raw materials inventory}}{\text{Annual purchases}} \times 365 \text{ days}$$

Average production (work-in-progress) period = $\frac{\text{Average WIP}}{\text{Cost of sales}} \times 365 \text{ days}$

These indicate the average number of days that items of inventory are held for. As with the average accounts receivable collection period, these are only approximate figures, but ones which should be reliable enough for finding changes over time.

A lengthening inventory turnover period indicates:

(a) A **slowdown** in **trading**, or

(b) A **build-up** in **inventory levels**, perhaps suggesting that the investment in inventories is becoming excessive

If we add together the inventory days and the accounts receivable days, this should give us an indication of how soon inventory is convertible into cash, thereby giving a further indication of the **company's liquidity**.

5.5 The accounts payable payment period

Key term

Accounts payable payment period= $\frac{\text{Average trade payables}}{\text{Purchases or Cost of sales}} \times 365 \text{ days}$

The accounts payable payment period often helps to assess a company's liquidity; an increase in accounts payable days is often a sign of lack of long-term finance or poor management of current assets, resulting in the use of extended credit from suppliers, increased bank overdraft and so on.

All the ratios calculated above will **vary by industry**; hence **comparisons** of ratios calculated with other similar companies in the same industry are important.

You may need to use the following periods to calculate the operating cycle.

	Days
Raw materials inventory holding period	X
Accounts payable payment period	(X)
Average production period	X
Inventory turnover period (Finished goods)	X
Accounts receivable payment period	X
Operating cycle	X

5.6 The sales revenue/net working capital ratio

The ratio of $\frac{\text{Sales revenue}}{\text{Current assets} - \text{current liabilities}}$

shows the level of working capital supporting sales. Working capital must **increase in line with sales** to avoid liquidity problems and this ratio can be used to forecast the level of working capital needed for a projected level of sales.

5.7 The need for funds for investment in current assets

These liquidity ratios are a guide to the risk of cash flow problems and insolvency. If a company suddenly finds that it is **unable to renew** its **short-term liabilities** (for example, if the bank suspends its overdraft facilities, there will be a **danger of insolvency** unless the company is able to turn enough of its current assets into cash quickly.

Current liabilities are often a cheap method of finance (trade accounts payable do not usually carry an interest cost). Companies may therefore consider that, in the interest of higher profits, it is worth accepting some risk of insolvency by increasing current liabilities, taking the maximum credit possible from suppliers.

5.8 Working capital needs of different types of business

Different industries have different optimum working capital profiles, reflecting their methods of doing business and what they are selling.

(a) Businesses with a lot of **cash sales** and few credit sales should have **minimal accounts receivable**.

(b) Businesses that exist solely to trade will only have **finished goods in inventory**, whereas **manufacturers** will have **raw material**s and **work in progress** as well. Also some finished goods, notably foodstuffs, have to be sold within a few days because of their perishable nature.

(c) **Large companies** may be able to use their strength as customers to obtain **extended credit periods** from their suppliers. By contrast small companies, particularly those that have recently commenced trading, may be required to pay their suppliers immediately.

(d) Some businesses will be receiving **most of their monies** at **certain times** of the year, whilst incurring expenses throughout the year. Examples include travel agents who will have peaks reflecting demand for holidays during the summer and at Christmas.

5.9 Over-capitalisation and working capital

If there are excessive inventories, accounts receivable and cash, and very few accounts payable, there will be an over-investment by the company in current assets. Working capital will be excessive and the company will be in this respect over-capitalised.

Indicators of over-capitalisation	
Sales/working capital	Compare with previous years or similar companies
Liquidity ratios	Compare with previous years or similar companies
Turnover periods	Long turnover periods for inventory and accounts receivable or short credit period from suppliers may be unnecessary

5.10 Example: Working capital ratios

Calculate liquidity and working capital ratios from the following accounts of a manufacturer of products for the construction industry, and comment on the ratios.

	20X8	*20X7*
	$m	$m
Sales revenue	2,065.0	1,788.7
Cost of sales	1,478.6	1,304.0
Gross profit	586.4	484.7
Current assets		
Inventories	119.0	109.0
Accounts receivable (note 1)	400.9	347.4
Short-term investments	4.2	18.8
Cash at bank and in hand	48.2	48.0
	572.3	523.2
Accounts payable: amounts falling due within one year		
Loans and overdrafts	49.1	35.3
Corporation taxes	62.0	46.7
Dividend	19.2	14.3
Accounts payable (note 2)	370.7	324.0
	501.0	420.3
Net current assets	71.3	102.9

Notes

		20X8	*20X7*
		$m	$m
1	Trade accounts receivable	329.8	285.4
2	Trade accounts payable	236.2	210.8

Solution

	20X8	*20X7*
Current ratio	$\frac{572.3}{501.0} = 1.14$	$\frac{523.2}{420.3} = 1.24$
Quick ratio	$\frac{453.3}{501.0} = 0.90$	$\frac{414.2}{420.3} = 0.99$
Accounts receivable payment period	$\frac{329.8}{2,065.0} \times 365 = 58$ days	$\frac{285.4}{1,788.7} \times 365 = 58$ days
Inventory turnover period	$\frac{119.0}{1,478.6} \times 365 = 29$ days	$\frac{109.0}{1,304.0} \times 365 = 31$ days
Accounts payable turnover period	$\frac{236.2}{1,478.6} \times 365 = 58$ days	$\frac{210.8}{1,304.0} \times 365 = 59$ days
Sales revenue/net working capital	$\frac{2,065.0}{572.3 - 501.0} = 28.96$	$\frac{1,788.7}{523.2 - 420.3} = 17.38$

(a) The company is a manufacturing group serving the construction industry, and so would be expected to have a comparatively lengthy accounts receivable turnover period, because of the relatively poor cash flow in the construction industry.

(b) The company compensates for this by ensuring that they do not pay for raw materials and other costs before they have sold their inventories of finished goods (hence the similarity of accounts receivable and accounts payable turnover periods).

(c) The company's current and quick ratios have fallen but are still reasonable, and the quick ratio is not much less than the current ratio. This suggests that inventory levels are strictly controlled, which is reinforced by the low inventory turnover period.

(d) The ratio of sales revenue/net working capital indicates that working capital has not increased in line with sales. This may forecast future liquidity problems.

It would seem that working capital is tightly managed, to avoid the poor liquidity which could be caused by a high accounts receivable' turnover period and comparatively high accounts payable. However, turnover has increased but net working capital has declined due in part to the fall in short term investments and the increase in loans and overdrafts.

Exam focus point

The examiner may give you industry averages for ratios and expect you to compare performance against what could be expected using financial analysis, including ratio analysis.

In June 2008, candidates were required to work backwards from provided ratios to calculate receivables, inventory etc. This requires a very good familiarity with all of the ratios.

5.11 Overtrading 12/08

In contrast with over-capitalisation, overtrading happens when a business tries to **do too much too quickly** with **too little long-term capital**, so that it is trying to support too large a volume of trade with the capital resources at its disposal.

Even if an overtrading business operates at a profit, it could easily run into serious trouble because it is **short of money**. Such liquidity troubles stem from the fact that it does not have enough capital to provide the cash to pay its debts as they fall due.

Symptoms of overtrading are as follows.

(a) There is a **rapid increase** in **turnover**.

(b) There is a **rapid increase** in the **volume of current assets** and possibly also non-current assets. **Inventory turnover** and **accounts receivable turnover** might slow down, in which case the rate of increase in inventories and accounts receivable would be even greater than the rate of increase in sales.

(c) There is only a **small increase** in **proprietors' capital** (perhaps through retained profits). Most of the increase in assets is financed by credit, especially:

  (i) **Trade accounts payable** - the payment period to accounts payable is likely to lengthen

  (ii) A **bank overdraft**, which often reaches or even exceeds the limit of the facilities agreed by the bank

(d) Some **debt ratios** and **liquidity ratios** alter dramatically.

  (i) The **proportion** of **total assets** financed by proprietors' capital falls, and the proportion financed by credit rises.

  (ii) The current ratio and the quick ratio fall.

  (iii) The business might have a **liquid deficit**, that is, an excess of current liabilities over current assets.

Exam focus point

This list of signs is important; you must be aware of why businesses run into financial difficulties. In the exam you might be expected to diagnose overtrading from information given about a company.

5.12 Example: Overtrading

Great Ambition Co appoints a new managing director who has great plans to expand the company. He wants to increase turnover by 100% within two years, and to do this he employs extra sales staff. He recognises that customers do not want to have to wait for deliveries, and so he decides that the company must build up its inventory levels. There is a substantial increase in the company's inventories. These are held in additional warehouse space which is now rented. The company also buys new cars for its extra sales representatives.

The managing director's policies are immediately successful in boosting sales, which double in just over one year. Inventory levels are now much higher, but the company takes longer credit from its suppliers, even though some suppliers have expressed their annoyance at the length of time they must wait for payment. Credit terms for accounts receivable are unchanged, and so the volume of accounts receivable, like the volume of sales, rises by 100%.

In spite of taking longer credit, the company still needs to increase its overdraft facilities with the bank, which are raised from a limit of $40,000 to one of $80,000. The company is profitable, and retains some profits in the business, but profit margins have fallen. **Gross profit margins** are lower because some prices have been reduced to obtain extra sales. **Net profit margins** are lower because overhead costs are higher. These include sales representatives' wages, car expenses and depreciation on cars, warehouse rent and additional losses from having to write off out-of-date and slow-moving inventory items.

The statement of financial position of the company might change over time from (A) to (B).

	Statement of financial position (A)			*Statement of financial position (B)*		
	$	$	$	$	$	$
Non-current assets			160,000			210,000
Current assets						
Inventory		60,000			150,000	
Accounts receivable		64,000			135,000	
Cash		1,000			–	
		125,000			285,000	
Current liabilities						
Bank	25,000			80,000		
Accounts payable	50,000			200,000		
		75,000			280,000	
			50,000			5,000
			210,000			215,000
Share capital			10,000			10,000
Income statement			200,000			205,000
			210,000			215,000

	Statement of financial position (A)			*Statement of financial position (B)*		
	$	$	$	$	$	$
Sales			$1,000,000			$2,000,000
Gross profit			$200,000			$300,000
Net profit			$50,000			$20,000

In situation (B), the company has **reached** its **overdraft** limit and has **four times** as many **accounts payable** as in situation (A) but with only **twice the sales turnover**. **Inventory levels** are much **higher**, and **inventory turnover** is **lower**.
The company is overtrading. If it had to pay its next trade account, or salaries and wages, before it received any income, it could not do so without the bank allowing it to exceed its overdraft limit. The company is profitable, although profit margins have fallen, and it ought to expect a prosperous future. But if it does not sort out its cash flow and liquidity, it will not survive to enjoy future profits.

Suitable solutions to the problem would be measures to reduce the degree of overtrading.

(a) **New capital** from the shareholders could be injected.

(b) **Better control** could be applied to inventories and accounts receivable. The company could **abandon ambitious plans** for increased sales and more fixed asset purchases until the business has had time to consolidate its position, and build up its capital base with retained profits.

A business seeking to increase its turnover too rapidly without an adequate capital base is not the only **cause of overtrading**. **Other causes** are as follows.

(a) When a business repays a loan, it often replaces the old loan with a new one (refinancing). However a business might **repay a loan without replacing it**, with the consequence that it has **less long-term capital** to finance its current level of operations.

(b) A business might be profitable, but in a period of **inflation**, its **retained profits** might be **insufficient** to pay for **replacement** non-current assets and inventories, which now cost more because of inflation.

Chapter Roundup

- The amount tied up in **working capital** is equal to the value of raw materials, work-in-progress, finished goods inventories and accounts receivable less accounts payable. The size of this net figure has a direct effect on the **liquidity** of an organisation.
- The two main objectives of working capital management are to ensure it has **sufficient liquid resources** to continue in business and to **increase its profitability**.
- A business needs to have clear policies for the management of each component of working capital.
- **Working capital ratios** may help to indicate whether a company is **over-capitalised**, with excessive working capital, or if a business is likely to fail. A business which is trying to do too much too quickly with too little long-term capital is **overtrading**.

Quick Quiz

1 Which of the following is the most likely to be a symptom of overtrading?

A Static levels of inventory turnover
B Rapid increase in profits
C Increase in the level of the current ratio
D Rapid increase in sales

2 The cash operating cycle is:

	A The time	
Less	B The time	
Plus	C The time	
Plus	D The time	

Fill in the blanks.

3 Fill in the blanks with the following:

Current liabilities; current assets; inventories

Quick ratio = less $\frac{\text{.....less.....}}{\text{.....}}$

4 Which of the following describes *overcapitalisation* and which describes *overtrading*?

A A company with excessive investment in working capital

B A company trying to support too large a volume of trade with the capital resources at its disposal

5 Which of the following statements best defines the current ratio?

A The ratio of current assets to current liabilities.
For the majority of businesses it should be at least 2.

B The ratio of current assets to current liabilities.
For the majority of businesses it should be at least 1.

C The ratio of current assets excluding inventory to current liabilities.
For the majority of businesses it should be at least 1.

D The ratio of current assets excluding inventory to current liabilities.
For the majority of businesses it should be at least 2.

6 The accounts receivable payment period is a calculation of the time taken to pay by all accounts receivable.

True ☐

False ☐

7 What are the two most likely reasons for a lengthening inventory turnover period?

8 What is the working capital requirement of a company with the following average figures over a year?

	$
Inventory	3,750
Trade accounts receivable	1,500
Cash and bank balances	500
Trade accounts payable	1,800

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 D Rapid increase in sales

2 A The time raw materials remain in inventory
B The time period of credit taken from suppliers
C The time taken to produce goods
D The time taken by customers to pay for goods

3 Quick ratio = $\frac{\text{Current assets less inventories}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$

4 A Overcapitalisation
B Overtrading

5 A Current assets to current liabilities: 2

6 False; the calculation normally only includes trade accounts receivable.

7 (a) A slowdown in trading
(b) A build-up of inventory levels

8 Working capital requirement = current assets less current liabilities

= 3,750 + 1,500 + 500 – 1,800
= $3,950

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q4	Examination	25	45 mins

5

Managing working capital

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Managing inventories	C2 (c)
2 Managing accounts receivable	C2 (d)
3 Managing accounts payable	C2 (e)

Introduction

This chapter deals with specific techniques in the management of accounts receivable, accounts payable and inventory. These include overall **credit control policies** (should the business offer credit – if so how much and to whom), and ensuring amounts owed are not excessive.

Whilst working through this chapter, try not to think of accounts receivable and accounts payable in isolation; they are part of working capital, each element of which will have **knock-on effects** when there is a change in another. For example, an increase in the credit period taken by accounts receivable will reduce the amount of cash available to pay accounts payable and invest in inventory.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
C2	**Management of inventories, accounts receivable, accounts payable and cash**	
(a)	Discuss, apply and evaluate the use of relevant techniques in managing inventory, including the Economic Order Quantity model and Just-in-Time techniques.	2
(b)	Discuss, apply and evaluate the use of relevant techniques in managing accounts receivable, including:	
(i)	assessing creditworthiness	1
(ii)	managing accounts receivable	1
(iii)	collecting amounts owing	1
(iv)	offering early settlement discounts	2
(v)	using factoring and invoice discounting	2
(vi)	managing foreign accounts receivable	2
(c)	Discuss and apply the use of relevant techniques in managing accounts payable, including:	
(i)	using trade credit effectively	1
(ii)	evaluating the benefits of discounts for early settlement and bulk purchase	2
(iii)	managing foreign accounts payable	1

Exam guide

Questions in this area are likely to be a mixture of calculations and discussion. The material in this chapter is highly examinable.

1 Managing inventories 12/07, 6/08

FAST FORWARD

An **economic order quantity** can be calculated as a guide to minimising costs in managing **inventory** levels. **Bulk discounts** can however mean that a different order quantity minimises inventory costs.

Almost every company carries inventories of some sort, even if they are only inventories of consumables such as stationery. For a manufacturing business, inventories in the form of **raw materials**, **work in progress** and **finished goods**, may amount to a substantial proportion of the total assets of the business.

Some businesses attempt to control inventories on a scientific basis by balancing the costs of inventory shortages against those of inventory holding. The 'scientific' control of inventories may be analysed into three parts.

(a) The **economic order quantity (EOQ) model** can be used to decide the optimum order size for inventories which will minimise the costs of ordering inventories plus inventory holding costs.

(b) If **discounts for bulk purchases** are available, it may be cheaper to buy inventories in large order sizes so as to obtain the discounts.

(c) Uncertainty in the demand for inventories and/or the supply lead time may lead a company to decide to hold **buffer inventories** in order to reduce or eliminate the risk of 'stock-outs' (running out of inventory).

INVENTORY COSTS	
Holding costs	The cost of capital Warehousing and handling costs Deterioration Obsolescence Insurance Pilferage
Procuring costs	Ordering costs Delivery costs
Shortage costs	Contribution from lost sales Extra cost of emergency inventory Cost of lost production and sales in a inventory-out
Cost of inventory	Relevant particularly when calculating discounts

1.1 The basic EOQ formula 6/08

Key term

The **economic order quantity (EOQ)** is the optimal ordering quantity for an item of inventory which will minimise costs.

Let D = usage in units for one period (the demand)

C_o= cost of placing one order
C_H= holding cost per unit of inventory for one period
Q= re-order quantity

} relevant costs only

Assume that demand is constant, the lead time is constant or zero and purchase costs per unit are constant (ie no bulk discounts).

The total annual cost of having inventory is:

(a) Holding costs + ordering costs

$$\frac{Q \times C_H}{2} + \frac{C_0 \times D}{Q}$$

The more orders are made each year the higher the ordering costs, but the lower the holding costs (as less inventory is held).

(b) The objective is to minimise $T = \frac{Q \times C_H}{2} + \frac{C_0 \times D}{Q}$

The order quantity, EOQ, which will minimise these total costs is:

Exam formula

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2C_0D}{C_H}}$$

Exam focus point

The EOQ formula will be given to you in the exam, but make sure you know what each letter represents and how to do the calculation quickly and accurately.

1.2 Example: Economic order quantity

The demand for a commodity is 40,000 units a year, at a steady rate. It costs $20 to place an order, and 40c to hold a unit for a year. Find the order size to minimise inventory costs, the number of orders placed each year, the length of the inventory cycle and the total costs of holding inventory for the year.

Solution

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{2C_0D}{C_H}} = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 20 \times 40{,}000}{0.4}} = 2{,}000 \text{ units.}$$

This means that there will be:

$$\frac{40{,}000}{2{,}000} = 20 \text{ orders placed each year.}$$

The inventory cycle is therefore:

$$\frac{52 \text{ weeks}}{20 \text{ orders}} = 2.6 \text{ weeks.}$$

Total costs will be $(20 \times \$20) + \left(\frac{2{,}000}{2} \times 40c\right) = \$800$ a year.

1.3 Uncertainties in demand and lead times: a re-order level system

FAST FORWARD

Uncertainties in demand and lead times taken to fulfil orders mean that inventory will be ordered once it reaches a re-order level (maximum usage × maximum lead time).

Key term

Re-order level = maximum usage × maximum lead time.

The re-order level is the measure of inventory at which a replenishment order should be made.

(a) If an order is placed **too late**, the organisation may run out of inventory, **a stock-out**, resulting in a loss of sales and/or a loss of production.

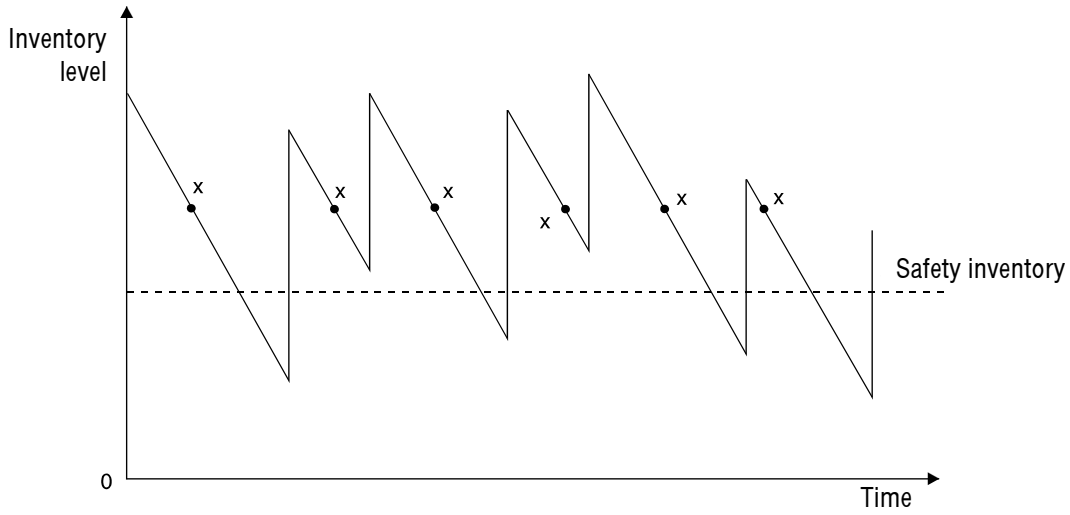
(b) If an order is placed **too soon**, the organisation will hold too much inventory, and inventory holding costs will be excessive.

Use of a re-order level builds in a measure of safety inventory and minimises the risk of the organisation running out of inventory. This is particularly important when the volume of demand or the supply lead time are uncertain.

The **average annual** cost of such a safety inventory would be:

Quantity of safety inventory (in units)	×	Inventory holding cost per unit per annum

The diagram below shows how the inventory levels might fluctuate with this system. Points marked 'X' show the re-order level at which a new order is placed. The number of units ordered each time is the EOQ. Actual inventory levels sometimes fall below the safety inventory level, and sometimes the re-supply arrives before inventories have fallen to the safety level. On average, however, extra inventory holding will approximate the safety inventory. The size of the safety inventory will depend on whether stock-outs (running out of inventory) are allowed.



1.4 Maximum and buffer safety inventory levels

Key term

Maximum inventory level = re-order level + re-order quantity – (minimum usage × minimum lead time)

The maximum level acts as a warning signal to management that inventories are reaching a potentially wasteful level.

Key term

Buffer safety inventory = re-order level – (average usage × average lead time)

The buffer safety level acts as a warning to management that inventories are approaching a dangerously low level and that stock-outs are possible.

Key term

Average inventory = buffer safety inventory + $\frac{\text{re-order amount}}{2}$

This formula assumes that inventory levels fluctuate evenly between the buffer safety (or minimum) inventory level and the highest possible inventory level (the amount of inventory immediately after an order is received, safety inventory and re-order quantity).

1.5 Example: Maximum and buffer safety inventory

A company has an inventory management policy which involves ordering 50,000 units when the inventory level falls to 15,000 units. Forecast demand to meet production requirements during the next year is 310,000 units. You should assume a 50-week year and that demand is constant throughout the year. Orders are received two weeks after being placed with the supplier. What is the average inventory level?

Solution

Average usage per week = 310,000 units/50 weeks = 6,200 units

Average lead time = 2 weeks

Re-order level = 15,000 units

Buffer safety inventory = re-order level – (average usage × average lead time)

= 15,000 – (6,200 × 2) = 2,600 units

Average inventory = buffer safety inventory + $\frac{\text{re-order amount}}{2}$

$= 2{,}600 + \frac{50{,}000}{2} = 27{,}600$ units

This approach assumes that a business wants to minimise the risk of stock-outs at all costs. In the modern manufacturing environment stock-outs can have a disastrous effect on the production process.

If, however, you are given a question where the risk of stock-outs is assumed to be worth taking, and the costs of stock-outs are quantified, the re-order level may not be calculated in the way described above. For **each possible re-order level**, and therefore each **possible level** of buffer inventory, **calculate**:

- The **costs of holding buffer inventory** per annum
- The **costs of stock-outs** (Cost of one stock-out × expected number of stock-outs per order × number of orders per year)

The expected number of stock-outs per order reflects the various levels by which demand during the lead time could exceed the re-order level.

1.6 Example: Possibility of stock-outs

If re-order level is 4 units, but there was a probability of 0.2 that demand during the lead time would be 5 units, and 0.05 that demand during the lead time would be 6 units, then expected number of stock-outs = $((5 - 4) \times 0.2) + ((6 - 4) \times 0.05) = 0.3$.

1.7 The effect of discounts

The solution obtained from using the simple EOQ formula may need to be modified if bulk discounts (also called quantity discounts) are available. To decide mathematically whether it would be worthwhile taking a discount and ordering larger quantities, it is necessary to minimise:

Total purchasing costs + Ordering costs + Inventory holding costs.

The total cost will be minimised:

- At the pre-discount EOQ level, so that a discount is not worthwhile, or
- At the minimum order size necessary to earn the discount

1.8 Example: Bulk discounts

The annual demand for an item of inventory is 125 units. The item costs $200 a unit to purchase, the holding cost for one unit for one year is 15% of the unit cost and ordering costs are $300 an order. The supplier offers a 3% discount for orders of 60 units or more, and a discount of 5% for orders of 90 units or more. What is the cost-minimising order size?

Solution

(a) The EOQ ignoring discounts is:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2 \times 300 \times 125}{15\% \text{ of } 200}} = 50 \text{ units}$$

	$
Purchases (no discount) 125 × $200	25,000
Holding costs ($^{50}/_{2}$) 25 units × 15% × $200	750
Ordering costs 2.5 orders × $300	750
Total annual costs	26,500

(b) With a discount of 3% and an order quantity of 60 units costs are as follows.

	$
Purchases $25,000 × 97%	24,250
Holding costs 30 units × 15% of 97% of $200	873
Ordering costs 2.08 orders × $300	625
Total annual costs	25,748

(c) With a discount of 5% and an order quantity of 90 units costs are as follows.

	$
Purchases $25,000 × 95%	23,750.0
Holding costs 45 units × 15% of 95% of $200	1,282.5
Ordering costs 1.39 orders × $300	416.7
Total annual costs	25,449.2

The cheapest option is to order 90 units at a time.

Question

Bulk orders

Question: Bulk orders

A company uses an item of inventory as follows.

Purchase price:	$96 per unit
Annual demand:	4,000 units
Ordering cost:	$300
Annual holding cost:	10% of purchase price
Economic order quantity:	500 units

Should the company order 1,000 units at a time in order to secure an 8% discount?

Answer

The total annual cost at the economic order quantity of 500 units is as follows.

	$
Purchases 4,000 × $96	384,000
Ordering costs $300 × (4,000/500)	2,400
Holding costs $96 × 10% × (500/2)	2,400
	388,800

The total annual cost at an order quantity of 1,000 units would be as follows.

	$
Purchases $384,000 × 92%	353,280
Ordering costs $300 × (4,000/1,000)	1,200
Holding costs $96 × 92% × 10% × (1,000/2)	4,416
	358,896

The company should order the item 1,000 units at a time, saving $(388,800 - 358,896) = $29,904 a year.

1.9 Just-in-time (JIT) procurement

Some manufacturing companies have sought to reduce their inventories of raw materials and components to as low a level as possible. **Just-in-time procurement** is a term which describes a policy of obtaining goods from suppliers at the latest possible time (ie when they are needed) and so avoiding the need to carry any materials or components inventory.

Introducing JIT might bring the following potential benefits.

- Reduction in inventory holding costs
- Reduced manufacturing lead times
- Improved labour productivity
- Reduced scrap/rework/warranty costs

Reduced inventory levels mean that a lower level of investment in working capital will be required.

JIT will not be appropriate in some cases. For example, a restaurant might find it preferable to use the traditional economic order quantity approach for staple non-perishable food inventories but adopt JIT for perishable and 'exotic' items. In a hospital, a stock-out could quite literally be fatal and so JIT would be quite unsuitable.

Exam focus point

You may be required to evaluate the benefits of introducing a JIT arrangement, given certain assumptions about the costs and benefits.

Case Study

Japanese car manufacturer Toyota was the first company to develop JIT (JIT was originally called the Toyota Production System). After the end of the world war in 1945, Toyota recognised that it had much to do to catch up with the US automobile manufacturing industry. The company was making losses. In Japan, however, consumer demand for cars was weak, and consumers were very resistant to price increases. Japan also had a bad record for industrial disputes. Toyota itself suffered from major strike action in 1950.

The individual credited with devising JIT in Toyota from the 1940s was Taiichi Ohno, and JIT techniques were developed gradually over time.

Ohno identified seven wastes and worked to eliminate them from operations in Toyota. Measures that were taken by the company included the following.

(a) The aim of reducing costs was of paramount importance in the late 1940s. Toyota was losing money, and market demand was weak, preventing price rises. The only way to move from losses into profits was to cut costs, and cost reduction was probably essential for the survival of the company.

(b) The company aimed to level the flow of production and eliminate unevenness in the work flow. Production levelling should help to minimise idle time whilst at the same time allowing the company to achieve its objective of minimum inventories.

(c) The factory layout was changed. Previously all machines, such as presses, were located in the same area of the factory. Under the new system, different types of machines were clustered together in production cells.

(d) Machine operators were re-trained.

(e) Employee involvement in the changes was seen as being particularly important. Team work was promoted.

(f) The **kanban system** was eventually introduced, but a major problem with its introduction was the elimination of defects in production. The kanban system is a 'pull' system of production scheduling. Items are only produced when they are needed. If a part is faulty when it is produced, the production line will be held up until the fault is corrected.

2 Managing accounts receivable

Pilot Paper, 12/07

2.1 Total credit

FAST FORWARD

Offering credit has a cost: the value of the interest charged on an overdraft to fund the period of credit, or the interest lost on the cash not received and deposited in the bank. An increase in profit from extra sales resulting from offering credit could offset this cost.

Finding a **total level of credit** which can be offered is a matter of finding the least costly balance between enticing customers, whose use of credit entails considerable costs, and refusing opportunities for profitable sales.

2.2 Effect on profit of extending credit

The main cost of offering credit is the interest expense. How can we assess the effect on profit?

Let us assume that the Zygo Company sells widgets for $1,000, which enables it to earn a profit, after all other expenses except interest, of $100 (ie a 10% margin).

(a) Aibee buys a widget for $1,000 on 1 January 20X1, but does not pay until 31 December 20X1. Zygo relies on overdraft finance, which costs it 10% pa. The effect is:

	$
Net profit on sale of widget	100
Overdraft cost $1,000 × 10% pa	(100)
Actual profit after 12 months credit	Nil

In other words, the entire profit margin has been wiped out in 12 months.

(b) If Aibee had paid after six months, the effect would be:

	$
Net profit	100
Overdraft cost $1,000 × 10% pa × $^{6}/_{12}$ months	(50)
	50

Half the profit has been wiped out. (*Tutorial note.* The interest cost might be worked out in a more complex way to give a more accurate figure.)

(c) If the cost of borrowing had been 18%, then the profit would have been absorbed before seven months had elapsed. If the net profit were 5% and borrowing costs were 15%, the interest expense would exceed the net profit after four months.

Question

Cost of receivables

Winterson Tools has an average level of accounts receivable of $2m at any time representing 60 days outstanding. (Their terms are thirty days.) The firm borrows money at 10% a year. The managing director is proud of the credit control: 'I only had to write off $10,000 in bad debts last year,' she says proudly. Is she right to be proud?

Answer

The Managing Director may be proud of the low level of bad debts but customers are taking an extra month to pay and this has a cost. At any one time, there is $1m more money outstanding than there should be ($^{30}/_{60}$ days × $2m) and this costs $100,000 in interest charges (10% × $1m).

The level of total credit can then have a significant effect on **profitability**. That said, if credit considerations are included in pricing calculations, extending credit can, in fact, increase profitability. If offering credit generates extra sales, then those extra sales will have additional repercussions on:

(a) The amount of inventory maintained in the warehouse, to ensure that the extra demand must be satisfied.

(b) The amount of money the company owes to its accounts payable (as it will be increasing its supply of raw materials).

2.3 Credit control policy

Several factors should be considered by management when a policy for **credit control** is formulated. These include:

(a) The administrative costs of **debt collection.**

(b) The procedures for **controlling credit** to individual customers and for debt collection.

(c) The amount of **extra capital required** to finance an extension of total credit – there might be an increase in accounts receivable, inventories and accounts payable, and the net increase in working capital must be financed.

(d) The cost of the **additional finance** required for any increase in the volume of accounts receivable (or the savings from a reduction in accounts receivable) – this cost might be bank overdraft interest, or the cost of long-term funds (such as loan inventory or equity).

(e) Any **savings or additional expenses** in operating the credit policy (for example the extra work involved in pursuing slow payers).

(f) The **ways** in which the credit policy could be **implemented** – for example:

  (i) Credit could be eased by giving accounts receivable a longer period in which to settle their accounts – the cost would be the resulting increase in accounts receivable.

  (ii) A discount could be offered for early payment – the cost would be the amount of the discounts taken.

(g) The **effects of easing credit**, which might be to encourage a higher proportion of bad debts, and an increase in sales volume. Provided that the extra gross contribution from the increase in sales exceeds the increase in fixed cost expenses, bad debts, discounts and the finance cost of an increase in working capital, a policy to relax credit terms would be profitable.

2.4 Assessing creditworthiness

FAST FORWARD

In managing **accounts receivable**, the **creditworthiness** of customers needs to be assessed. The risks and costs of a customer defaulting will need to be balanced against the profitability of the business provided by that customer.

Credit control involves the initial investigation of potential credit customers and the continuing control of outstanding accounts. The main points to note are as follows.

(a) New customers should give two **good references**, including one from a bank, before being granted credit.

(b) **Credit ratings** might be **checked** through a credit rating agency.

(c) A **new customer's credit limit** should be **fixed** at a **low level** and only increased if his payment record subsequently warrants it.

(d) For large value customers, a **file** should be **maintained** of any available financial information about the customer. This file should be reviewed regularly. Information is available from:

  (i) An analysis of the company's annual report and accounts

  (ii) Extel cards (sheets of accounting information about public companies in the UK, and also major overseas companies, produced by Extel)

(e) The **Department of Trade and Industry** and the Export Credit Guarantee Department will both be able to advise on overseas companies.

(f) **Press comments** may give information about what a company is currently doing (as opposed to the historical results in Extel cards or published accounts which only show what the company has done in the past).

(g) The company could send a member of staff to **visit** the company concerned, to get a first-hand impression of the company and its prospects. This would be advisable in the case of a prospective major customer.

An organisation might devise a **credit-rating system** for new individual customers that is based on characteristics of the customer (such as whether the customer is a home owner, and the customer's age and occupation). Points would be awarded according to the characteristics of the customer, and the amount of credit that is offered would depend on his or her credit score.

2.5 Managing accounts receivable

FAST FORWARD

Regular monitoring of accounts receivable is very important. Individual accounts receivable can be assessed using a **customer history analysis** and a **credit rating system**. The overall level of accounts receivable can be monitored using an **aged accounts receivable listing** and **credit utilisation report**, as well as reports on the level of bad debts.

(a) **Accounts receivable' payment records** must be **monitored** continually. This depends on successful sales ledger administration.

(b) Credit monitoring can be simplified by a system of **in-house credit ratings**. For example, a company could have five credit-risk categories for its customers. These credit categories or ratings could be used to decide either individual credit limits for customers within that category or the frequency of the credit review.

(c) A **customer's payment record** and the **accounts receivable aged analysis** should be examined regularly, as a matter of course. Breaches of the credit limit, or attempted breaches of it, should be brought immediately to the attention of the credit controller.

2.5.1 Policing total credit

The total amount of credit offered, as well as individual accounts, should be policed to ensure that the senior management policy with regard to the total credit limits is maintained. A **credit utilisation report** can indicate the extent to which total limits are being utilised. An example is given below.

Customer	*Limit*	*Utilisation*	
	$'000	$'000	%
Alpha	100	90	90
Beta	50	35	70
Gamma	35	21	60
Delta	250	125	50
	435	271	
		62.2%	

This might also contain other information, such as days sales outstanding and so on.

Reviewed in aggregate, this can reveal the following.

(a) The **number of customers** who might **want more credit**

(b) The **extent** to which the **company is exposed to accounts receivable**

(c) The **'tightness'** of the policy (It might be possible to increase profitable sales by offering credit. On the other hand, perhaps the firm offers credit too easily.)

It is possible to design credit utilisation reports to highlight other trends.

(a) The **degree of exposure** to **different countries**

(b) The **degree of exposure** to **different industries** (Some countries or industries may be worthy of more credit; others may be too risky.)

Credit utilisation can also be analysed by industry within country or by country within industry. It is also useful to relate credit utilisation to total sales.

2.5.2 Extension of credit

To determine whether it would be profitable to extend the level of total credit, it is necessary to assess:

- The **extra sales** that a **more generous credit policy would stimulate**
- The **profitability** of the **extra sales**
- The **extra length** of the **average debt collection period**
- The **required rate of return** on the investment in additional accounts receivable

2.5.3 Example: A change in credit policy

Russian Beard Co is considering a change of credit policy which will result in an increase in the average collection period from one to two months. The relaxation in credit is expected to produce an increase in sales in each year amounting to 25% of the current sales volume.

Selling price per unit	$10
Variable cost per unit	$8.50
Current annual sales	$2,400,000

The required rate of return on investments is 20%. Assume that the 25% increase in sales would result in additional inventories of $100,000 and additional accounts payable of $20,000.

Advise the company on whether or not to extend the credit period offered to customers, if:

(a) All customers take the longer credit of two months

(b) Existing customers do not change their payment habits, and only the new customers take a full two months credit

Solution

The change in credit policy is justifiable if the rate of return on the additional investment in working capital would exceed 20%.

Extra profit	
Contribution/sales ratio	15%
Increase in sales revenue	$600,000
Increase in contribution and profit	$90,000

(a) *Extra investment, if all accounts receivable take two months credit*

	$
Average accounts receivable after the sales increase (2/12 × $3,000,000)	500,000
Less current average accounts receivable (1/12 × $2,400,000)	200,000
Increase in accounts receivable	300,000
Increase in inventories	100,000
	400,000
Less increase in accounts payable	20,000
Net increase in working capital investment	380,000

Return on extra investment $\frac{\$90,000}{\$380,000} = 23.7\%$

(b) *Extra investment, if only the new accounts receivable take two months credit*

	$
Increase in accounts receivable (2/12 of $600,000)	100,000
Increase in inventories	100,000
	200,000
Less increase in accounts payable	20,000
Net increase in working capital investment	180,000

Return on extra investment $\frac{\$90,000}{\$180,000} = 50\%$

In both case (a) and case (b) the new credit policy appears to be worthwhile.

Question — **Extension of credit**

Enticement Co currently expects sales of $50,000 a month. Variable costs of sales are $40,000 a month (all payable in the month of sale). It is estimated that if the credit period allowed to accounts receivable were to be increased from 30 days to 60 days, sales volume would increase by 20%. All customers would

be expected to take advantage of the extended credit. If the cost of capital is 12½% a year (or approximately 1% a month), is the extension of the credit period justifiable in financial terms?

Answer

	$
Current accounts receivable (1 month)	50,000
Accounts receivable after implementing the proposal (2 months)	120,000
Increase in accounts receivable	70,000
Financing cost (× 12½%)	8,750
Annual contribution from additional sales (12 months × 20% × $10,000)	24,000
Annual net benefit from extending credit period	15,250

2.6 Collecting amounts owing

FAST FORWARD

The **benefits** of action to collect debts must be greater than the **costs** incurred.

The overall **debt collection policy** of the firm should be such that the administrative costs and other costs incurred in debt collection do not exceed the benefits from incurring those costs. Beyond a certain level of spending, however, additional expenditure on debt collection would not have enough effect on bad debts or on the average collection period to justify the extra administrative costs.

Collecting debts is a two-stage process.

(a) Having agreed credit terms with a customer, a business should issue an invoice and expect to receive payment when it is due. **Issuing invoices** and **receiving payments** is the task of sales ledger staff. They should ensure that:

(i) The customer is fully aware of the terms
(ii) The **invoice is correctly drawn up** and issued promptly
(iii) They are aware of any **potential quirks** in the customer's system
(iv) **Queries are resolved quickly**
(v) **Monthly statements** are **issued promptly**

(b) If payments become overdue, they should be 'chased'. Procedures for pursuing overdue debts must be established, for example:

(i) **Instituting reminders or final demands**

These should be sent to a named individual, asking for repayment by return of post. A second or third letter may be required, followed by a final demand stating clearly the action that will be taken. The aim is to goad customers into action, perhaps by threatening not to sell any more goods on credit until the debt is cleared.

(ii) **Chasing payment by telephone**

The telephone is of greater nuisance value than a letter, and the greater immediacy can encourage a response. It can however be time-consuming, in particular because of problems in getting through to the right person.

(iii) **Making a personal approach**

Personal visits can be very time-consuming and tend only to be made to important customers who are worth the effort.

(iv) **Notifying debt collection section**

This means not giving further credit to the customer until he has paid the due amounts.

(v) **Handing over debt collection to specialist debt collection section**

Certain, generally larger, organisations may have a section to collect debts under the supervision of the credit manager.

(vi) **Instituting legal action to recover the debt**

Premature legal action may unnecessarily antagonise important customers.

(vii) **Hiring external debt collection agency to recover debt**

Again this may upset customers.

2.7 Early settlement discounts

FAST FORWARD

Early settlement discounts may be employed to shorten average credit periods, and to reduce the investment in accounts receivable and therefore **interest costs**. The benefit in interest cost saved should exceed the cost of the discounts allowed.

To see whether the offer of a **settlement discount** (for early payment) is financially worthwhile we must compare the cost of the discount with the benefit of a reduced investment in accounts receivable.

Varying the discount allowed for early payment of debts affects the **average collection period** and affects the **volume of demand** (and possibly, therefore, indirectly affects bad debt losses). We shall begin with examples where the offer of a discount for early payment does not affect the volume of demand.

2.8 Example: Settlement discount

Lowe and Price Co has annual credit sales of $12,000,000, and three months are allowed for payment. The company decides to offer a 2% discount for payments made within ten days of the invoice being sent, and to reduce the maximum time allowed for payment to two months. It is estimated that 50% of customers will take the discount. If the company requires a 20% return on investments, what will be the effect of the discount? Assume that the volume of sales will be unaffected by the discount.

Solution

Our approach is to calculate:

(a) The profits forgone by offering the discount
(b) The interest charges saved or incurred as a result of the changes in the cash flows of the company

Thus:

(a) The volume of accounts receivable, if the company policy remains unchanged, would be:

$3/12 \times \$12,000,000 = \$3,000,000$.

(b) If the policy is changed the volume of accounts receivable would be:

$$(10/365 \times 50\% \times \$12,000,000) + (2/12 \times 50\% \times \$12,000,000) = \$164,384 + \$1,000,000 = \$1,164,384.$$

(c) There will be a reduction in accounts receivable of $1,835,616.

(d) Since the company can invest at 20% a year, the value of a reduction in accounts receivable (a source of funds) is 20% of $1,835,616 each year in perpetuity, that is, $367,123 a year.

(e) *Summary*

	$
Value of reduction in accounts receivable each year	367,123
Less discounts allowed each year (2% × 50% × $12,000,000)	120,000
Net benefit of new discount policy each year	247,123

An extension of the payment period allowed to accounts receivable may be introduced in order to increase sales volume.

2.9 Percentage cost of an early settlement discount

The **percentage cost** of an early settlement discount to the company giving it can be estimated by the formula:

$$1 - \left(\frac{100}{(100-d)}\right)^{\frac{365}{t}} \%$$

Where d = the discount offered (5% = 5, etc)
t = the reduction in the payment period in days that is necessary to obtain the early payment discount

Question

Cost of discount

A company offers its goods to customers on 30 days' credit, subject to satisfactory trade references. It also offers a 2% discount if payment is made within ten days of the date of the invoice.

Required

Calculate the cost to the company of offering the discount, assuming a 365 day year.

Answer

The percentage cost of the discount $= 1 - \left[\frac{100}{(100-2)}\right]^{365/20}$

$= 1 - 1.02041^{18.25}$

$= 1 - 1.446$

$= 44.6\%$

2.10 Bad debt risk

Different credit policies are likely to have differing levels of bad debt risk. The higher turnover resulting from easier credit terms should be sufficiently profitable to exceed the cost of:

- Bad debts, and
- The additional investment necessary to achieve the higher sales

2.10.1 Example: Receivables management

Grabbit Quick Co achieves current annual sales of $1,800,000. The cost of sales is 80% of this amount, but bad debts average 1% of total sales, and the annual profit is as follows.

	$
Sales	1,800,000
Less cost of sales	1,440,000
	360,000
Less bad debts	18,000
Profit	342,000

The current debt collection period is one month, and the management consider that if credit terms were eased (option A), the effects would be as follows.

	Present policy	*Option A*
Additional sales (%)	–	25%
Average collection period	1 month	2 months
Bad debts (% of sales)	1%	3%

The company requires a 20% return on its investments. The costs of sales are 75% variable and 25% fixed. Assume there would be no increase in fixed costs from the extra turnover; and that there would be no increase in average inventories or accounts payable. Which is the preferable policy, Option A or the present one?

Solution

The increase in profit before the cost of additional finance for Option A can be found as follows.

(a)

	$
Increase in contribution from additional sales	
25% × $1,800,000 × 40%*	180,000
Less increase in bad debts (3% × $2,250,000) – $18,000	49,500
Increase in annual profit	130,500

* The C/S ratio is 100% – (75% × 80%) = 40%

(b)

	$
Proposed investment in accounts receivable $2,250,000 × 1/6	375,000
Less current investment in accounts receivable $1,800,000 × 1/12	150,000
Additional investment required	225,000
Cost of additional finance at 20%	$45,000

(c) As the increase in profit exceeds the cost of additional finance, Option A should be adopted.

2.10.2 Credit insurance

Companies might be able to obtain credit insurance against certain approved debts going bad through a specialist credit insurance firm. A company cannot insure against all its bad debt losses, but may be able to insure against losses above the normal level.

When a company arranges **credit insurance**, it must submit specific proposals for credit to the insurance company, stating the name of each customer to which it wants to give credit and the amount of credit it wants to give. The insurance company will accept, amend or refuse these proposals, depending on its assessment of each of these customers.

2.11 Factoring 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Some companies use **factoring** and **invoice discounting** to help short-term liquidity or to reduce administration costs. **Insurance**, particularly of overseas debts, can also help reduce the risk of bad debts.

A **factor** is defined as 'a doer or transactor of business for another', but a factoring organisation specialises in trade debts, and manages the debts owed to a client (a business customer) on the client's behalf.

Key term

Factoring is an arrangement to have debts collected by a factor company, which advances a proportion of the money it is due to collect.

2.11.1 Aspects of factoring

The main aspects of factoring include the following.

(a) **Administration** of the client's invoicing, sales accounting and debt collection service

(b) **Credit protection** for the client's debts, whereby the factor takes over the risk of loss from bad debts and so 'insures' the client against such losses. This is known as a **non-recourse** service. However, if a **non-recourse** service is provided the factor, not the firm, will decide what action to take against non-payers.

(c) Making **payments** to the client **in advance** of collecting the debts. This is sometimes referred to as 'factor finance' because the factor is providing cash to the client against outstanding debts.)

2.11.2 Benefits of factoring

The **benefits of factoring** for a business customer include the following.

(a) The business can **pay** its **suppliers promptly**, and so be able to take advantage of any early payment discounts that are available.

(b) **Optimum inventory levels** can be **maintained**, because the business will have enough cash to pay for the inventories it needs.

(c) **Growth** can be **financed** through **sales** rather than by injecting fresh external capital.

(d) The business gets **finance linked** to its **volume of sales**. In contrast, overdraft limits tend to be determined by historical statements of financial position.

(e) The **managers** of the business **do not** have to **spend** their **time** on the problems of **slow paying accounts receivable**.

(f) The business does **not incur** the **costs** of **running** its own **sales ledger department**, and can use the **expertise** of debtor management that the factor has.

An important **disadvantage** is that accounts receivable will be making payments direct to the factor, which is likely to present a negative picture of the firm's **attitude to customer relations**. It may also indicate that the firm is in need of rapid cash, raising questions about its **financial stability**.

2.11.3 Example: Factoring

A company makes annual credit sales of $1,500,000. Credit terms are 30 days, but its debt administration has been poor and the average collection period has been 45 days with 0.5% of sales resulting in bad debts which are written off.

A factor would take on the task of debt administration and credit checking, at an annual fee of 2.5% of credit sales. The company would save $30,000 a year in administration costs. The payment period would be 30 days.

The factor would also provide an advance of 80% of invoiced debts at an interest rate of 14% (3% over the current base rate). The company can obtain an overdraft facility to finance its accounts receivable at a rate of 2.5% over base rate.

Should the factor's services be accepted? Assume a constant monthly turnover.

Solution

It is assumed that the factor would advance an amount equal to 80% of the invoiced debts, and the balance 30 days later.

(a) The current situation is as follows, using the company's debt collection staff and a bank overdraft to finance all debts.

Credit sales	$1,500,000 pa
Average credit period	45 days

The annual cost is as follows:

	$
45/365 × $1,500,000 × 13.5% (11% + 2.5%)	24,966
Bad debts 0.5% × $1,500,000	7,500
Administration costs	30,000
Total cost	62,466

(b) *The cost of the factor.* 80% of credit sales financed by the factor would be 80% of $1,500,000 = $1,200,000. For a consistent comparison, we must assume that 20% of credit sales would be financed by a bank overdraft. The average credit period would be only 30 days. The annual cost would be as follows.

	$
Factor's finance 30/365 × $1,200,000 × 14%	13,808
Overdraft 30/365 × $300,000 × 13.5%	3,329
	17,137
Cost of factor's services: 2.5% × $1,500,000	37,500
Cost of the factor	54,637

(c) *Conclusion.* The factor is cheaper. In this case, the factor's fees exactly equal the savings in bad debts ($7,500) and administration costs ($30,000). The factor is then cheaper overall because it will be more efficient at collecting debts. The advance of 80% of debts is not needed, however, if the company has sufficient overdraft facility because the factor's finance charge of 14% is higher than the company's overdraft rate of 13.5%.

An **alternative way** of carrying out the calculation is to consider the changes in costs that using a factor will mean.

	$
Effect of reduction in collection period $\frac{45-30}{365} \times \$1{,}500{,}000 \times 13.5\%$	8,322
Extra interest cost of factor finance 30/365 × $1,200,000 × (14 – 13.5)%	(493)
Cost of factor's services 2.5% × $1,500,000	(37,500)
Savings in bad debts 0.5% × $1,500,000	7,500
Savings in company's administration costs	30,000
Net benefit of using factor	7,829

Check: $62,466 – $54,637 = $7,829

Exam focus point

Points to look out for in questions about factoring are who bears the risk of bad debts, and company administration costs that may be saved by using a factor. Examiners have commented that calculations of the cost of factoring have often been poor.

2.12 Invoice discounting 6/08

Key term

Invoice discounting is the purchase (by the provider of the discounting service) of trade debts at a discount. Invoice discounting enables the company from which the debts are purchased to raise working capital.

Invoice discounting is related to factoring and many factors will provide an invoice discounting service. It is the purchase of a selection of invoices, at a discount. The invoice discounter does not take over the administration of the client's sales ledger.

A client should only want to have some invoices discounted when he has a temporary cash shortage, and so invoice discounting tends to consist of one-off deals. **Confidential invoice discounting** is an arrangement whereby a debt is confidentially assigned to the factor, and the client's customer will only become aware of the arrangement if he does not pay his debt to the client.

If a client needs to generate cash, he can approach a factor or invoice discounter, who will offer to purchase selected invoices and advance up to 75% of their value. At the end of each month, the factor will pay over the balance of the purchase price, less charges, on the invoices that have been settled in the month.

Exam focus point

Don't confuse invoice discounting with early settlement discounts. They are not the same thing.

2.13 Managing foreign accounts receivable

FAST FORWARD

Exporters have to address the problems of **larger inventories and accounts receivable**, and an **increased risk** of bad debts due to the transportation time and additional paperwork involved in sending goods abroad.

Foreign debts raise the following special problems.

(a) When goods are sold abroad, the customer might ask for credit. Exports take time to arrange, and there might be complex paperwork. Transporting the goods can be slow, if they are sent by sea. These **delays** in **foreign trade** mean that exporters often build up large investments in inventories and accounts receivable. These working capital investments have to be financed somehow.

(b) The **risk of bad debts** can be **greater** with foreign trade than with domestic trade. If a foreign debtor refuses to pay a debt, the exporter must pursue the debt in the debtor's own country, where procedures will be subject to the laws of that country.

There are several measures available to exporters to overcome these problems.

2.13.1 Reducing the investment in foreign accounts receivable

A company can reduce its investment in foreign accounts receivable by insisting on **earlier payment** for goods. Another approach is for an exporter to arrange for a bank to give **cash for a foreign debt**, sooner than the exporter would receive payment in the normal course of events. There are several ways in which this might be done.

(a) **Advances against collections**. Where the exporter asks his bank to handle the collection of payment (of a bill of exchange or a cheque) on his behalf, the bank may be prepared to make an advance to the exporter against the collection. The amount of the advance might be 80% to 90% of the value of the collection.

(b) **Negotiation of bills or cheques**. This is similar to an advance against collection, but would be used where the bill or cheque is payable outside the exporter's country (for example in the foreign buyer's country).

(c) **Discounting bills of exchange**. This is where a bank buys the bill before it is due and credits the value of the bill after a discount charge to the company's account.

(c) **Documentary credits**. These are described below.

2.13.2 Reducing the bad debt risk

Methods of minimising bad debt risks are broadly similar to those for domestic trade. An exporting company should vet the creditworthiness of each customer, and grant credit terms accordingly.

2.13.3 Export factoring

The functions performed by an **overseas factor** or **export factor** are essentially the same as with the factoring of domestic trade debts, which was described earlier in this chapter.

The charges levied by an overseas factor may turn out to be cheaper than using alternative methods such as letters of credit, which are discussed below.

2.13.4 Documentary credits

Documentary credits provide a method of payment in international trade, which gives the exporter a secure risk-free method of obtaining payment.

The buyer (a foreign buyer, or a UK importer) and the seller (a UK exporter or a foreign supplier) first of all agree a contract for the sale of the goods, which provides for payment through a documentary credit. The *buyer* then requests a bank in his country to issue a **letter of credit** in favour of the exporter. The issuing bank, by issuing its letter of credit, guarantees payment to the beneficiary.

A documentary credit arrangement must be made between the exporter, the buyer and participating banks **before the export sale takes place**. Documentary credits are slow to arrange, and administratively cumbersome; however, they might be considered essential where the risk of non-payment is high.

2.13.5 Countertrade

Countertrade is a means of financing trade in which goods are exchanged for other goods. Three parties might be involved in a 'triangular' deal. Countertrade is thus a form of **barter**. It accounts for around 10% – 15% of total international trade according to one estimate.

2.13.6 Export credit insurance

Key term

> **Export credit insurance** is insurance against the risk of non-payment by foreign customers for export debts.

You might be wondering why export credit insurance should be necessary, when exporters can pursue **non-paying customers** through the courts in order to obtain payment. The answer is that:

(a) If a credit customer defaults on payment, the task of pursuing the case through the courts will be lengthy, and it might be a long time before payment is eventually obtained.

(b) There are various reasons why non-payment might happen (Export credit insurance provides insurance against non-payment for a variety of risks in addition to the buyer's failure to pay on time.)

Not all exporters take out export credit insurance because premiums are very high and the benefits are sometimes not fully appreciated. If they do, they will obtain an insurance policy from a private insurance company that deals in export credit insurance.

2.13.7 Overseas accounts receivable; general policies

There are also a number of general credit control policies that can be particularly important when dealing with overseas customers.

(a) Prior to the sale, the customer's **credit rating** should be **checked**, and the terms of the contract specified. One key term may be demanding the use of an **irrevocable letter of credit** as a term of release of goods. The terms of the **remittance** and the bank to be used should be specified.

(b) The **paperwork** relating to the sales should be carefully completed and checked, in particular the shipping and delivery documentation.

(c) Goods should only be released if payment has been made, or is sufficiently certain, either because of the customer's **previous record** or because the customer has issued a **promissory note.**

(d) Receipts should be **rapidly processed** and late **payments chased**.

3 Managing accounts payable

FAST FORWARD

> Effective management of **trade accounts payable** involves seeking satisfactory credit terms from supplier, getting credit extended during periods of cash shortage, and maintaining good relations with suppliers.

Exam focus point

> It may seem an obvious point, but take care not to confuse accounts receivable and accounts payable, as many students do under exam pressure.

3.1 Management of trade accounts payable

The management of trade accounts payable involves:

- Attempting to obtain **satisfactory credit** from suppliers
- Attempting to **extend credit** during periods of cash shortage
- Maintaining **good relations** with regular and important suppliers

If a supplier offers a discount for the early payment of debts, the evaluation of the decision whether or not to **accept the discount** is similar to the **evaluation of the decision** whether or not to **offer a discount**. One problem is the mirror image of the other. The methods of evaluating the offer of a discount to customers were described earlier.

3.1.1 Trade credit

Taking credit from suppliers is a normal feature of business. Nearly every company has some trade accounts payable waiting for payment. It is particularly important to small and fast growing firms. Trade credit is a source of short-term finance because it helps to keep working capital down. It is usually a cheap source of finance, since suppliers rarely charge interest. The costs of making maximum use of trade credit include the loss of suppliers' goodwill, and the loss of any available cash discounts for the early payment of debts.

3.1.2 The cost of lost early payment discounts

The cost of lost cash discounts can be calculated by comparing the saving from the discount with the opportunity cost of investing the cash used.

The cost of lost cash discounts can also be estimated by the formula:

$$1 - \left(\frac{100}{(100 - d)}\right)^{\frac{365}{t}} \%$$

where d is the % discount, d = 5 for 5%.

t is the reduction in the payment period in days which would be necessary to obtain the early payment discount, final date to obtain discount – final date for payment

This is the same formula that was used for accounts receivable.

3.2 Example: Trade credit

X Co has been offered credit terms from its major supplier of 2/10, net 45. That is, a cash discount of 2% will be given if payment is made within ten days of the invoice, and payments must be made within 45 days of the invoice. The company has the choice of paying 98c per $1 on day 10 (to pay before day 10 would be unnecessary), or to invest the 98c for an additional 35 days and eventually pay the supplier $1 per $1. The decision as to whether the discount should be accepted depends on the opportunity cost of investing 98c for 35 days. What should the company do?

Solution

Suppose that X Co can invest cash to obtain an annual return of 25%, and that there is an invoice from the supplier for $1,000. The two alternatives are as follows.

	Refuse discount	*Accept discount*
	$	$
Payment to supplier	1,000.0	980
Return from investing $980 between day 10 and day 45:		
$980 × 35/365 × 25%	23.5	—
Net cost	976.5	980

It is cheaper to refuse the discount because the investment rate of return on cash retained, in this example, exceeds the saving from the discount.

Although a company may delay payment beyond the final due date, thereby obtaining even longer credit from its suppliers, such a policy would generally be inadvisable. Unacceptable delays in payment will **worsen the company's credit rating**, and additional credit may become difficult to obtain.

3.3 Managing foreign accounts payable

Foreign accounts payable will be subject to **exchange rate risk**. Companies expecting to pay foreign currency in the future will be concerned about the possibility of domestic currency **depreciating** against the foreign currency making the cost of the supplies more expensive.

Companies sometimes pay into an overseas bank account today and then let the cash earn some interest so they can pay off the invoice in the future. This method of avoiding exchange rate risk is called **leading**.

The management of exchange rate risk is covered in Chapter 21.

Chapter Roundup

- An **economic order quantity** can be calculated as a guide to minimising costs in managing **inventory** levels. **Bulk discounts** can however mean that a different order quantity minimises inventory costs.
- **Uncertainties** in demand and lead times taken to fulfil orders mean that inventory will be ordered once it reaches a re-order level (maximum usage × maximum lead time).
- Offering credit has a cost: the value of the interest charged on an overdraft to fund the period of credit, or the interest lost on the cash not received and deposited in the bank. An increase in profit from extra sales resulting from offering credit could offset this cost.
- In managing **accounts receivable**, the **creditworthiness** of customers needs to be assessed. The risks and costs of a customer defaulting will need to be balanced against the profitability of the business provided by that customer.
- Regular monitoring of accounts receivable is very important. Individual accounts receivable can be assessed using a **customer history analysis** and a **credit rating system**. The overall level of accounts receivable can be monitored using an **aged accounts receivable listing** and **credit utilisation report**, as well as reports on the level of bad debts.
- The **benefits** of action to collect debts must be greater than the **costs** incurred.
- **Early settlement discounts** may be employed to shorten average credit periods, and to reduce the investment in accounts receivable and therefore **interest costs**. The benefit in interest cost saved should exceed the cost of the discounts allowed.
- Some companies use **factoring** and **invoice discounting** to help short-term liquidity or to reduce administration costs. **Insurance**, particularly of overseas debts, can also help reduce the risk of bad debts.
- **Exporters** have to address the problems of **larger inventories and accounts receivable**, and an increased **risk** of bad debts due to the transportation time and additional paperwork involved in sending goods abroad.
- Effective management of **trade accounts payable** involves seeking satisfactory credit terms from supplier, getting credit extended during periods of cash shortage, and maintaining good relations with suppliers.

Quick Quiz

1 The basic EOQ formula for inventory indicates whether bulk discounts should be taken advantage of.

True ☐

False ☐

2 Identify the potential benefits of JIT manufacturing.

3 PB Co uses 2,500 units of component X per year. The company has calculated that the cost of placing and processing a purchase order for component X is $185, and the cost of holding one unit of component X for a year is $25.

What is the economic order quantity (EOQ) for component X, and assuming a 52-week year, what is the average frequency at which purchase orders should be placed?

4 The economic order quantity model can be used to determine:

Order quantity	*Buffer inventory*	*Re-order level*
Yes/No	Yes/No	Yes/No

5 What service involves collecting debts of a business, advancing a proportion of the money it is due to collect?

6 What service involves advancing a proportion of a selection of invoices, without administration of the sales ledger of the business?

7 Which of the following is a **disadvantage** to a company of using a factor for its accounts receivable?

A It is easier to finance growth through sales
B Managers spend less time on slow paying accounts receivable
C Accounts receivable pay direct to the factor
D It is easier to pay suppliers promptly to obtain discounts

8 Which of the following does **not** determine the amount of credit offered by a supplier?

A The credit terms the supplier obtains from its own suppliers
B The ease with which the buyer can go elsewhere
C The supplier's total risk exposure
D The number of purchases made by the buyer each year

9 If a customer decided to pass up the chance of a cash discount of 1% in return for reducing her average payment period from 70 to 30 days, what would be the implied cost in interest per annum?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 False. It may be necessary to modify the formula to take account of bulk discounts.

2 (a) Reduction in inventory holding costs
(b) Reduced manufacturing lead times
(c) Improved labour productivity
(d) Reduced scrap/warranty/rework/costs
(e) Price reductions on purchased materials
(f) Reduction in the number of accounting transactions

3 C $EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2C_oD}{C_h}}$

Economic order quantity $= \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 185 \times 2{,}500}{25}}$

= 192 units

Frequency of ordering $= \frac{192}{2{,}500}$

= 4 weeks

4 The EOQ model finds order quantity only, not buffer inventory and re-order level.

5 Factoring.

6 Invoice discounting.

7 C This may present a negative picture of the company to customers.

8 D The number of purchases. (Although the amount of annual purchases may well be a factor)

9 Cost $= 1 - \left(\frac{100}{(100-d)}\right)^{\frac{365}{t}}$ %

$= 1 - \left(\frac{100}{99}\right)^{\frac{365}{40}}$

$= 1 - 1.01^{9.125} = 9.5\%$

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q5	Introductory	n/a	30 mins
Q6	Introductory	20	35 mins

6

Working capital finance

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The management of cash	C2 (f)
2 Cash flow forecasts	C2 (f)
3 Treasury management	C2 (f)
4 Cash management models	C2 (f)
5 Investing surplus cash	C2 (f)
6 Working capital funding strategies	C3 (a), (b)

Introduction

This chapter concludes our study of working capital management methods by considering how cash is managed. This involves looking at the various **reasons for holding cash**, the **preparation of cash flow forecasts** and relevant techniques for **managing cash**. We revisit how working capital needs are determined and finally in this area, we consider working capital **funding strategies**.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
C2	**Management of inventories, accounts receivable, accounts payable and cash**	
(f)	Explain the various reasons for holding cash, and discuss and apply the use of relevant techniques in managing cash, including:	2
(i)	preparing cash flow forecasts to determine future cash flows and cash balances	
(ii)	assessing the benefits of centralised treasury management and cash control	
(iii)	cash management models, such as the Baumol model and the Miller-Orr model	
(iv)	investing short-term	
C3	**Determining working capital needs and funding strategies**	
(a)	Calculate the level of working capital investment in current assets and discuss the key factors determining this level, including:	2
(i)	the length of the working capital cycle and terms of trade	
(ii)	an organisation's policy on the level of investment in current assets	
(iii)	the industry in which the organisation operates	
(b)	Describe and discuss the key factors in determining working capital funding strategies, including:	2
(i)	the distinction between permanent and fluctuating current assets	
(ii)	the relative cost and risk of short-term and long-term finance	
(iii)	the matching principle	
(iv)	the relative costs and benefits of aggressive, conservative and matching funding policies	
(v)	management attitudes to risk, previous funding decisions and organisation size	1

Exam guide

The material covered in this chapter is again highly examinable. Any of the calculations could form part or all of a question and you need to also be able to explain the meaning of your answers.

1 The management of cash

1.1 Why organisations hold cash

The economist John Maynard Keynes identified three reasons for holding cash.

(a) Firstly, a business needs cash to meet its **regular commitments** of paying its accounts payable, its employees' wages, its taxes, its annual dividends to shareholders and so on. This reason for holding cash is what Keynes called the **transactions motive**.

(b) Keynes identified the **precautionary motive** as a second motive for holding cash. This means that there is a need to maintain a 'buffer of cash for **unforeseen contingencies**. In the context of a business, this buffer may be provided by an **overdraft facility**, which has the advantage that it will cost nothing until it is actually used.

(c) Keynes identified a third motive for holding cash – the **speculative motive**. Some businesses hold surplus cash as a speculative asset in the hope that interest rates will rise. However many businesses would regard large long-term holdings of cash as not prudent.

How much cash should a company keep on hand or 'on short call' at a bank? The more cash which is on hand, the easier it will be for the company to meet its bills as they fall due and to take advantage of discounts.

However, holding cash or near equivalents to cash has a cost – the **loss of earnings** which would otherwise have been obtained by using the funds in another way. The financial manager must try to **balance liquidity with profitability**.

1.2 Cash flow problems

Cash flow problems can arise in various ways.

(a) **Making losses**

If a business is continually making losses, it will eventually have cash flow problems. If the loss is due to a large depreciation charge, the cash flow troubles might only begin when the business needs to replace non-current assets.

(b) **Inflation**

In a period of inflation, a business needs **ever-increasing amounts** of cash just to replace used-up and worn-out assets. A business can be making a profit in historical cost accounting terms, but still not be receiving enough cash to buy the replacement assets it needs.

(c) **Growth**

When a business is growing, it needs to **acquire more non-current assets**, and to **support higher amounts of inventories and accounts receivable**. These additional assets must be paid for somehow (or financed by accounts payable).

(d) **Seasonal business**

When a business has seasonal or cyclical sales, it may have cash flow difficulties at certain times of the year, when

(i) Cash inflows are low, but

(ii) Cash outflows are high, perhaps because the business is building up its inventories for the next period of high sales

(e) **One-off items of expenditure**

A single non-recurring item of expenditure may create a cash flow problem. Examples include the repayment of loan capital on maturity of the debt or the purchase of an exceptionally expensive item, such as a freehold property.

2 Cash flow forecasts

FAST FORWARD

Cash flow forecasts show the expected receipts and payments during a forecast period and are a vital management control tool, especially during times of recession.

Key term

A **cash flow forecast** is a detailed forecast of cash inflows and outflows incorporating both revenue and capital items.

A cash flow forecast is thus a statement in which estimated future **cash receipts** and **payments** are tabulated in such a way as to show the forecast **cash balance** of a business at defined intervals. For example, in December 20X2 an accounts department might wish to estimate the cash position of the business during the three following months, January to March 20X3. A cash flow forecast might be drawn up in the following format.

	Jan	*Feb*	*Mar*
	$	$	$
Estimated cash receipts			
From credit customers	14,000	16,500	17,000
From cash sales	3,000	4,000	4,500
Proceeds on disposal of non-current assets		2,200	
Total cash receipts	17,000	22,700	21,500
Estimated cash payments			
To suppliers of goods	8,000	7,800	10,500
To employees (wages)	3,000	3,500	3,500
Purchase of fixed assets		16,000	
Rent and rates			1,000
Other overheads	1,200	1,200	1,200
Repayment of loan	2,500		
	14,700	28,500	16,200
Net surplus/(deficit) for month	2,300	(5,800)	5,300
Opening cash balance	1,200	3,500	(2,300)
Closing cash balance	3,500	(2,300)	3,000

In the example above (where the figures are purely for illustration) the accounts department has calculated that the cash balance at the beginning of the flow forecast period, 1 January, will be $1,200. Estimates have been made of the cash which is likely to be received by the business (from cash and credit sales, and from a planned disposal of non-current assets in February). Similar estimates have been made of cash due to be paid out by the business (payments to suppliers and employees, payments for rent, rates and other overheads, payment for a planned purchase of non-current assets in February and a loan repayment due in January).

From these estimates it is a simple step to calculate the excess of cash receipts over cash payments in each month. In some months cash payments may exceed cash receipts and there will be a **deficit** for the month; this occurs during February in the above example because of the large investment in non-current assets in that month.

The last part of the cash flow forecast above shows how the business's estimated cash balance can then be rolled along from month to month. Starting with the opening balance of $1,200 at 1 January a cash surplus of $2,300 is generated in January. This leads to a closing January balance of $3,500 which becomes the opening balance for February. The deficit of $5,800 in February throws the business's cash position into overdraft and the overdrawn balance of $2,300 becomes the opening balance for March. Finally, the healthy cash surplus of $5,300 in March leaves the business with a favourable cash position of $3,000 at the end of the flow forecast period.

Exam focus point

When preparing cash flow forecasts, it is vital that your work is clearly laid out, and referenced to workings where appropriate.

2.1 The usefulness of cash flow forecasts

The cash flow forecast is one of the most important planning tools that an organisation can use. It shows the cash effect of all plans made within the flow forecastary process and hence its preparation can lead to a modification of flow forecasts if it shows that there are insufficient cash resources to finance the planned operations.

It can also **give management an indication of potential problems that could arise and allows them the opportunity to take action to avoid such problems**. A cash flow forecast can show four positions. Management will need to take appropriate action depending on the potential position.

Cash position	Appropriate management action
Short-term surplus	Pay accounts payable early to obtain discount Attempt to increase sales by increasing accounts receivable and inventories Make short-term investments
Short-term deficit	Increase accounts payable Reduce accounts receivable Arrange an overdraft
Long-term surplus	Make long-term investments Expand Diversify Replace/update non-current assets
Long-term deficit	Raise long-term finance (such as via issue of share capital) Consider shutdown/disinvestment opportunities

Exam focus point

A cash flow forecast question could ask you to prepare the cash flow forecast and then recommend appropriate action for management. Ensure your advice takes account both of whether there is a surplus or deficit and whether the position is long or short term.

2.2 What to include in a cash flow forecast

A cash flow forecast is prepared to show the **expected receipts of cash and payments of cash** during a budget period.

It should be obvious that the **profit or loss made by an organisation during an accounting period does not reflect its cash flow position for the following reasons.**

(a) Not all cash receipts affect income statement income.

(b) Not all cash payments affect income statement expenditure.

(c) Some costs in the income statement such as profit or loss on sale of non-current assets or depreciation are not cash items but are costs derived from accounting conventions.

(d) The timing of cash receipts and payments may not coincide with the recording of income statement transactions. For example, a dividend might be declared in the results for 20X6 and shown in the income statement for that year, but paid in 20X7.

To ensure that there is sufficient cash in hand to cope adequately with planned activities, management should therefore prepare and pay close attention to a cash flow forecast rather than a income statement.

Exam focus point

Clear workings and assumptions are very important in a cash flow forecast.

2.3 Example: Cash flow forecast

Peter Blair has worked for some years as a sales representative, but has recently been made redundant. He intends to start up in business on his own account, using $15,000 which he currently has invested with a building society. Peter maintains a bank account showing a small credit balance, and he plans to approach his bank for the necessary additional finance. Peter provides the following additional information.

(a) Arrangements have been made to purchase non-current assets costing $8,000. These will be paid for at the end of September and are expected to have a five-year life, at the end of which they will possess a nil residual value.

(b) Inventories costing $5,000 will be acquired on 28 September and subsequent monthly purchases will be at a level sufficient to replace forecast sales for the month.

(c) Forecast monthly sales are $3,000 for October, $6,000 for November and December, and $10,500 from January 20X4 onwards.

(d) Selling price is fixed at the cost of inventory plus 50%.

(e) Two months' credit will be allowed to customers but only one month's credit will be received from suppliers of inventory.

(f) Running expenses, including rent but excluding depreciation of fixed assets, are estimated at $1,600 per month.

(g) Blair intends to make monthly cash drawings of $1,000.

Required

Prepare a cash flow forecast for the six months to 31 March 20X4.

Solution

The opening cash balance at 1 October is $7,000 which consists of Peter's initial $15,000 less the $8,000 expended on non-current assets purchased in September. Cash receipts from credit customers arise two months after the relevant sales.

Payments to suppliers are a little more tricky. We are told that cost of sales is 100/150 × sales. Thus for October cost of sales is 100/150 × $3,000 = $2,000. These goods will be purchased in October but not paid for until November. Similar calculations can be made for later months. The initial inventory of $5,000 is purchased in September and consequently paid for in October.

Depreciation is not a cash flow and so is *not* included in a cash flow forecast.

CASH FLOW FORECAST FOR THE SIX MONTHS ENDING 31 MARCH 20X4

	Oct	*Nov*	*Dec*	*Jan*	*Feb*	*Mar*
	$	$	$	$	$	$
Payments						
Suppliers	5,000	2,000	4,000	4,000	7,000	7,000
Running expenses	1,600	1,600	1,600	1,600	1,600	1,600
Drawings	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000
	7,600	4,600	6,600	6,600	9,600	9,600
Receipts						
Accounts receivable	–	–	3,000	6,000	6,000	10,500
Surplus/(shortfall)	(7,600)	(4,600)	(3,600)	(600)	(3,600)	900
Opening balance	7,000	(600)	(5,200)	(8,800)	(9,400)	(13,000)
Closing balance	(600)	(5,200)	(8,800)	(9,400)	(13,000)	(12,100)

2.4 Cash flow forecasts and an opening statement of financial position

You might be given a cash flow forecast question in which you are required to analyse an opening statement of financial position to decide how many outstanding accounts receivable will pay what they owe in the first few months of the cash flow forecast period, and how many outstanding accounts payable must be paid.

Suppose that a statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X4 shows accounts receivable of $150,000 and trade accounts payable of $60,000. The following information is also relevant.

- Accounts receivable are allowed two months to pay
- $1^1/_2$ months' credit is taken from trade accounts payable
- Sales and materials purchases were both made at an even monthly rate

Let's try to ascertain the months of 20X5 in which the accounts receivable will eventually pay and the accounts payable will be paid.

(a) Since accounts receivable take two months to pay, the $150,000 of accounts receivable in the statement of financial position represents credit sales in November and December 20X4, who will pay in January and February 20X5 respectively. Since sales in 20X4 were at an equal monthly rate, the cash flow forecast should plan for receipts of $75,000 each month in January and February from the accounts receivable in the opening statement of financial position.

(b) Similarly, since accounts payable are paid after $1^1/_2$ months, the statement of financial position accounts payable will be paid in January and the first half of February 20X5, which means that flow forecasted payments will be as follows.

	$
In January (purchases in 2nd half of Nov. and 1st half of Dec.20X4)	40,000
In February (purchases in 2nd half of December 20X4)	20,000
Total accounts payable in the statement of financial position	60,000

(The accounts payable of $60,000 represent $1^1/_2$ months' purchases, so that purchases in 20X4 must be $40,000 per month, which is $20,000 per half month.)

2.5 Example: A month by month cash flow forecast

From the following information which relates to George and Zola Co you are required to prepare a month by month cash flow forecast for the second half of 20X5 and to append such brief comments as you consider might be helpful to management.

(a) The company's only product, a vest, sells at $40 and has a variable cost of $26 made up of material $20, labour $4 and overhead $2.

(b) Fixed costs of $6,000 per month are paid on the 28th of each month.

(c) Quantities sold/to be sold on credit

May	*June*	*July*	*Aug*	*Sept*	*Oct*	*Nov*	*Dec*
1,000	1,200	1,400	1,600	1,800	2,000	2,200	2,600

(d) Production quantities

May	*June*	*July*	*Aug*	*Sept*	*Oct*	*Nov*	*Dec*
1,200	1,400	1,600	2,000	2,400	2,600	2,400	2,200

(e) Cash sales at a discount of 5% are expected to average 100 units a month.

(f) Customers settle their accounts by the end of the second month following sale.

(g) Suppliers of material are paid two months after the material is used in production.

(h) Wages are paid in the same month as they are incurred.

(i) 70% of the variable overhead is paid in the month of production, the remainder in the following month.

(j) Corporation tax of $18,000 is to be paid in October.

(k) A new delivery vehicle was bought in June. It cost $8,000 and is to be paid for in August. The old vehicle was sold for $600, the buyer undertaking to pay in July.

(l) The company is expected to be $3,000 overdrawn at the bank at 30 June 20X5.

(m) No increases or decreases in raw materials, work in progress or finished goods are planned over the period.

(n) No price increases or cost increases are expected in the period.

Solution

Cash flow forecast for 1 July to 31 December 20X5

	July	*Aug*	*Sept*	*Oct*	*Nov*	*Dec*	*Total*
	$	$	$	$	$	$	$
Receipts							
Credit sales	40,000	48,000	56,000	64,000	72,000	80,000	360,000
Cash sales	3,800	3,800	3,800	3,800	3,800	3,800	22,800
Sale of vehicle	600	–	–	–	–	–	600
	44,400	51,800	59,800	67,800	75,800	83,800	383,400
Payments							
Materials	24,000	28,000	32,000	40,000	48,000	52,000	224,000
Labour	6,400	8,000	9,600	10,400	9,600	8,800	52,800
Variable overhead (W)	3,080	3,760	4,560	5,080	4,920	4,520	25,920
Fixed costs	6,000	6,000	6,000	6,000	6,000	6,000	36,000
Corporation tax				18,000			18,000
Purchase of vehicle		8,000					8,000
	39,480	53,760	52,160	79,480	68,520	71,320	364,720
Receipts less payments	4,920	(1,960)	7,640	(11,680)	7,280	12,480	18,680
Balance b/f	(3,000)	1,920	(40)	7,600	(4,080)	3,200	(3,000)
Balance c/f	1,920	(40)	7,600	(4,080)	3,200	15,680	15,680

Working

	June	*July*	*Aug*	*Sept*	*Oct*	*Nov*	*Dec*
	$	$	$	$	$	$	$
Variable overhead production cost	2,800	3,200	4,000	4,800	5,200	4,800	4,400
70% paid in month		2,240	2,800	3,360	3,640	3,360	3,080
30% in following month		840	960	1,200	1,440	1,560	1,440
		3,080	3,760	4,560	5,080	4,920	4,520

Comments

(a) There will be a small overdraft at the end of August but a much larger one at the end of October. It may be possible to delay payments to suppliers for longer than two months or to reduce purchases of materials or reduce the volume of production by running down existing inventory levels.

(b) If neither of these courses is possible, the company may need to negotiate overdraft facilities with its bank.

(c) The cash deficit is only temporary and by the end of December there will be a comfortable surplus. The use to which this cash will be put should ideally be planned in advance.

Exam focus point

You may be asked to prepare a cash flow forecast, and also consider the effects on the flow forecast or particular figures in it of the original assumptions changing.

Question

Cash budget

You are presented with the following flow forecasted cash flow data for your organisation for the period November 20X1 to June 20X2. It has been extracted from functional flow forecasts that have already been prepared.

	Nov X1	*Dec X1*	*Jan X2*	*Feb X2*	*Mar X2*	*Apr X2*	*May X2*	*June X2*
	$	$	$	$	$	$	$	$
Sales	80,000	100,000	110,000	130,000	140,000	150,000	160,000	180,000
Purchases	40,000	60,000	80,000	90,000	110,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Wages	10,000	12,000	16,000	20,000	24,000	28,000	32,000	36,000
Overheads	10,000	10,000	15,000	15,000	15,000	20,000	20,000	20,000
Dividends		20,000						40,000
Capital expenditure			30,000			40,000		

You are also told the following.

(a) Sales are 40% cash 60% credit. Credit sales are paid two months after the month of sale.
(b) Purchases are paid the month following purchase.
(c) 75% of wages are paid in the current month and 25% the following month.
(d) Overheads are paid the month after they are incurred.
(e) Dividends are paid three months after they are declared.
(f) Capital expenditure is paid two months after it is incurred.
(g) The opening cash balance is $15,000.

The managing director is pleased with the above figures as they show sales will have increased by more than 100% in the period under review. In order to achieve this he has arranged a bank overdraft with a ceiling of $50,000 to accommodate the increased inventory levels and wage bill for overtime worked.

Required

(a) Prepare a cash flow forecast for the six-month period January to June 20X2.
(b) Comment on your results in the light of the managing director's comments and offer advice.

Answer

(a)

	January $	*February* $	*March* $	*April* $	*May* $	*June* $
Cash receipts						
Cash sales	44,000	52,000	56,000	60,000	64,000	72,000
Credit sales	48,000	60,000	66,000	78,000	84,000	90,000
	92,000	112,000	122,000	138,000	148,000	162,000
Cash payments						
Purchases	60,000	80,000	90,000	110,000	130,000	140,000
Wages: 75%	12,000	15,000	18,000	21,000	24,000	27,000
Wages: 25%	3,000	4,000	5,000	6,000	7,000	8,000
Overheads	10,000	15,000	15,000	15,000	20,000	20,000
Dividends			20,000			
Capital expenditure			30,000			40,000
	85,000	114,000	178,000	152,000	181,000	235,000
b/f	15,000	22,000	20,000	(36,000)	(50,000)	(83,000)
Net cash flow	7,000	(2,000)	(56,000)	(14,000)	(33,000)	(73,000)
c/f	22,000	20,000	(36,000)	(50,000)	(83,000)	(156,000)

(b) The overdraft arrangements are quite inadequate to service the cash needs of the business over the six-month period. If the figures are realistic then action should be taken now to avoid difficulties in the near future. The following are **possible courses of action**.

(i) **Activities** could be **curtailed**.
(ii) **Other sources of cash** could be explored, for example a long-term loan to finance the capital expenditure and a factoring arrangement to provide cash due from accounts receivable more quickly.
(iii) Efforts to increase the **speed of debt collection** could be made.
(iv) **Payments to accounts payable** could be delayed.
(v) The **dividend payments** could be **postponed** (the figures indicate that this is a small company, possibly owner-managed).
(vi) Staff might be persuaded to work at a **lower rate** in return for, say, an annual bonus or a profit-sharing agreement.
(vii) **Extra staff** might be taken on to reduce the amount of overtime paid.
(viii) The **stock holding policy** should be **reviewed**; it may be possible to meet demand from current production and minimise cash tied up in inventories.

2.6 Methods of easing cash shortages

FAST FORWARD

Cash shortages can be eased by postponing capital expenditure, selling assets, taking longer to pay accounts payable and pressing accounts receivable for earlier payment.

The steps that are usually taken by a company when a need for cash arises, and when it cannot obtain resources from any other source such as a loan or an increased overdraft, are as follows.

(a) **Postponing capital expenditure**

Some new non-current assets might be needed for the **development and growth of the business**, but some capital expenditures might be postponable without serious consequences. If a company's policy is to replace company cars every two years, but the company is facing a cash shortage, it might decide to replace cars every three years.

(b) **Accelerating cash inflows which would otherwise be expected in a later period**

One way would be to press accounts receivable for earlier payment. Often, this policy will result in a **loss of goodwill** and problems with customers. It might be possible to encourage accounts receivable to pay more quickly by offering discounts for earlier payment.

(c) **Reversing past investment decisions by selling assets previously acquired**

Some assets are less crucial to a business than others. If cash flow problems are severe, the option of selling investments or property might have to be considered.

(d) **Negotiating a reduction in cash outflows, to postpone or reduce payments**

There are several ways in which this could be done.

(i) **Longer credit** might be taken from suppliers. Such an extension of credit would have to be negotiated carefully: there would be a risk of having further supplies refused.

(ii) **Loan repayments** could be rescheduled by agreement with a bank.

(iii) A **deferral** of the payment of **company tax** might be agreed with the taxation authorities. They will however charge interest on the outstanding amount of tax.

(iv) **Dividend payments** could be **reduced**. Dividend payments are discretionary cash outflows, although a company's directors might be constrained by shareholders' expectations, so that they feel obliged to pay dividends even when there is a cash shortage.

2.7 Deviations from expected cash flows

Cash flow forecasts, whether prepared on an annual, monthly, weekly or even a daily basis, can only be estimates of cash flows. Even the best estimates will not be exactly correct, so deviations from the cash flow forecast are inevitable.

A cash flow forecast model could be constructed, using a PC and a spreadsheet package, and the **sensitivity** of cash flow forecasts to changes in estimates of sales, costs and so on could be analysed. By planning for different eventualities, management should be able to prepare **contingency measures** in advance and also **appreciate** the **key factors** in the cash flow forecast.

A knowledge of the **probability distribution** of possible outcomes for the cash position will allow a **more accurate estimate** to be made of the minimum cash balances, or the borrowing power necessary, to provide a satisfactory margin of safety. Unforeseen deficits can be hard to finance at short notice, and advance planning is desirable.

3 Treasury management

FAST FORWARD

A large organisation will have a **treasury department** to manage liquidity, short-term investment, borrowings, foreign exchange risk and other, specialised, areas such as forward contracts and futures etc.

Key term

Treasury management can be defined as: 'The corporate handing of all financial matters, the generation of external and internal funds for business, the management of currencies and cash flows, and the complex strategies, policies and procedures of corporate finance.' (Association of Corporate Treasurers)

Large companies rely heavily on the financial and currency markets. These markets are volatile, with interest rates and foreign exchange rates changing continually and by significant amounts. To manage cash (funds) and currency efficiently, many large companies have set up a separate treasury department.

A treasury department, even in a large organisation, is likely to be quite small, with perhaps a staff of three to six qualified accountants, bankers or corporate treasurers working under the treasurer.

3.1 Centralisation of the treasury department

The following are advantages of having a specialist **centralised treasury department**.

(a) **Centralised liquidity management**
   (i) Avoids having a mix of cash surpluses and overdrafts in different localised bank accounts.
   (ii) Facilitates bulk cash flows, so that lower bank charges can be negotiated.

(b) Larger volumes of cash are available to invest, giving better **short-term investment opportunities** (for example money markets, high-interest accounts and CDs).

(c) Any **borrowing** can be **arranged in bulk**, at lower interest rates than for smaller borrowings, and perhaps on the eurocurrency or eurobond markets.

(d) **Foreign exchange risk management** is likely to be improved in a group of companies. A central treasury department can **match foreign currency income** earned by one subsidiary with **expenditure** in the same currency by another subsidiary. In this way, the risk of losses on adverse exchange rate movements can be avoided with out the expense of forward exchange contracts or other hedging methods.

(e) A specialist treasury department can employ **experts** with knowledge of dealing in forward contracts, futures, options, eurocurrency markets, swaps and so on. Localised departments could not have such expertise.

(f) The centralised pool of **funds required for precautionary purposes** will be **smaller** than the sum of separate precautionary balances which would need to be held under decentralised treasury arrangements.

(g) Through having a separate **profit centre**, attention will be focused on the contribution to group profit performance that can be achieved by good cash, funding, investment and foreign currency management.

Possible advantages of **decentralised** cash management are as follows.

(a) Sources of finance can be **diversified** and can match **local assets**.

(b) **Greater autonomy** can be given to **subsidiaries** and divisions because of the closer relationships they will have with the decentralised cash management function.

(c) A decentralised treasury function may be **more responsive** to the needs of individual operating units.

(d) Since cash balances will not be aggregated at group level, there will be **more limited opportunities** to invest such balances on a short-term basis.

PER alert

One of the competencies you require to fulfil performance objective 16 of the PER is to understand and apply finance knowledge to optimise returns. You can apply the knowledge you obtain from this chapter to help to demonstrate this competence.

4 Cash management models

FAST FORWARD

Optimal **cash** holding levels can be calculated from formal models, such as the **Baumol model** and the **Miller-Orr model**.

A number of different cash management models indicate the **optimum amount of cash** that a company should hold.

4.1 The Baumol model

The **Baumol model** is based on the idea that deciding on optimum cash balances is like deciding on optimum inventory levels. It assumes that cash is steadily consumed over time and a business holds a stock of marketable securities that can be sold when cash is needed. The cost of holding cash is the opportunity cost ie the interest foregone from not investing the cash. The cost of placing an order is the administration cost incurred when selling the securities.

The Baumol model uses an equation of the same form as the EOQ formula for inventory management which we looked at earlier.

Similarly to the EOQ, costs are minimised when:

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{2CS}{i}}$$

Where S = the amount of cash to be used in each time period
C = the cost per sale of securities
i = the interest cost of holding cash or near cash equivalents
Q = the total amount to be raised to provide for S

4.1.1 Example: Baumol approach to cash management

Finder Co faces a fixed cost of $4,000 to obtain new funds. There is a requirement for $24,000 of cash over each period of one year for the foreseeable future. The interest cost of new funds is 12% per annum; the interest rate earned on short-term securities is 9% per annum. How much finance should Finder raise at a time?

Solution

The cost of holding cash is 12% – 9% = 3%

The optimum level of Q (the 'reorder quantity') is:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2 \times 4{,}000 \times 24{,}000}{0.03}} = \$80{,}000$$

The optimum amount of new funds to raise is $80,000. This amount is raised every 80,000 ÷ 24,000 = $3^1/_3$ years.

4.1.2 Drawbacks of the Baumol model

The inventory approach illustrated above has the following drawbacks.

(a) In reality, it is unlikely to be **possible** to **predict amounts required** over future periods with much certainty.

(b) No **buffer inventory** of cash is allowed for. There may be costs associated with running out of cash.

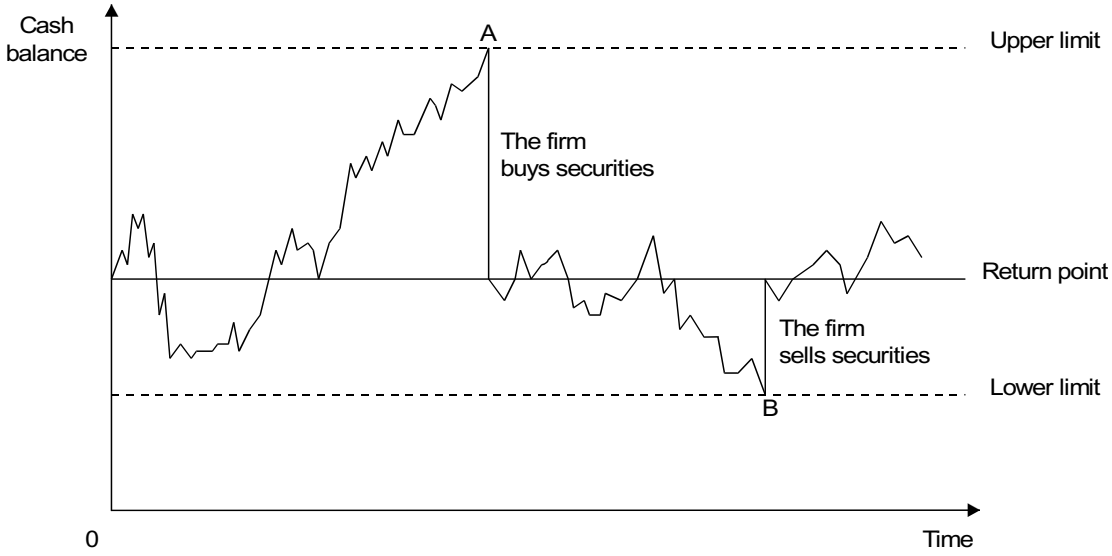
(c) There may be other **normal costs** of holding cash which increase with the average amount held.

4.2 The Miller-Orr model **Pilot Paper**

In an attempt to produce a more realistic approach to cash management, various models more complicated than the inventory approach have been developed. One of these, the **Miller-Orr model**, manages to achieve a reasonable degree of realism while not being too elaborate.

We can begin looking at the Miller-Orr model by asking what will happen if there is no attempt to manage cash balances. Clearly, the cash balance is likely to 'meander' upwards or downwards. The Miller-Orr model imposes limits to this meandering.

If the cash balance reaches an **upper limit** (point A) the firm **buys sufficient securities** to return the cash balance to a normal level (called the 'return point'). When the cash balance reaches a lower limit (point B), the firm sells securities to bring the balance back to the return point.



How are the upper and lower limits and the return point set? Miller and Orr showed that the answer to this question depends on the **variance of cash flows**, **transaction costs** and **interest rates**. If the day-to-day variability of cash flows is high or the transaction cost in buying or selling securities is high, then wider limits should be set. If interest rates are high, the limits should be closer together.

To keep the interest costs of holding cash down, the return point is set at one-third of the distance (or 'spread') between the lower and the upper limit.

Exam formula

(Return point = Lower limit + ($\frac{1}{3}$ × spread)

The formula for the spread is:

$$\text{Spread} = 3\left(\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{\text{transaction cost} \times \text{variance of cashflows}}{\text{interest rate}}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

To use the Miller-Orr model, it is necessary to follow the steps below.

Step 1 Set the **lower limit** for the **cash balance**. This may be zero, or it may be set at some minimum safety margin above zero.

Step 2 **Estimate** the **variance** of **cash flows**, for example from sample observations over a 100-day period.

Step 3 **Note the interest rate** and the **transaction cost** for each sale or purchase of securities (the latter is assumed to be fixed).

Step 4 **Compute the upper limit** and the **return point** from the model and implement the limits strategy.

You may be given the information to help you through the early steps, as in the question below.

Question

Miller-Orr model

The following data applies to a company.

1 The minimum cash balance is $8,000.

2 The variance of daily cash flows is 4,000,000, equivalent to a standard deviation of $2,000 per day.

3 The transaction cost for buying or selling securities is $50. The interest rate is 0.025 per cent per day.

You are required to formulate a decision rule using the Miller-Orr model.

Answer

The spread between the upper and the lower cash balance limits is calculated as follows.

$$\text{Spread} = 3\left(\frac{3}{4}\times\frac{\text{transaction cost}\times\text{variance of cash flows}}{\text{interest rate}}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

$$= 3\left(\frac{3}{4}\times\frac{50\times4{,}000{,}000}{0.00025}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} = 3\times(6\times10^{11})^{1/3} = 3\times8{,}434.33$$

$$= \$25{,}303, \text{ say } \$25{,}300$$

The upper limit and return point are now calculated.

Upper limit = Lower limit + $25,300 = $8,000 + $25,300 = $33,300
Return point = lower limit + 1/3 × spread = $8,000 + 1/3 × $25,300 = $16,433, say $16,400

The decision rule is as follows. If the cash balance reaches $33,300, buy $16,900 (= 33,300 – 16,400) in marketable securities. If the cash balance falls to $8,000, sell $8,400 of marketable securities for cash.

Exam focus point

Variance = standard deviation^2 so if you are given the standard deviation, you will need to square it to calculate the **variance**. If you are given the annual interest rate, you will need to divide it by 365 to obtain the **daily** interest rate.

The **usefulness of the Miller-Orr model** is limited by the assumptions on which it is based. In practice, cash inflows and outflows are unlikely to be entirely **unpredictable** as the model assumes: for example, for a retailer, seasonal factors are likely to affect cash inflows.

However, the Miller-Orr model may save management time which might otherwise be spent in responding to those cash inflows and outflows which cannot be predicted.

5 Investing surplus cash

FAST FORWARD

Temporary surpluses of cash can be invested in a variety of financial instruments. Longer-term surpluses should be returned to shareholders if there is a lack of investment opportunities.

Companies and other organisations sometimes have a **surplus of cash** and become 'cash rich'. A cash surplus is likely to be **temporary**, but while it exists the company should invest or deposit the cash bearing the following considerations in mind:

(a) **Liquidity** – money should be available to take advantage of favourable short-term interest rates on bank deposits, or to grasp a strategic opportunity, for example paying cash to take over another company

(b) **Profitability** – the company should seek to obtain a **good return** for the **risk** incurred

(c) **Safety** – the company should **avoid** the risk of a **capital loss**

Other factors that organisations need to consider include:

(a) Whether to invest at **fixed or floating rates.** Floating rate investments are likely to be chosen if interest rates are expected to rise.

(b) **Term to maturity.** The terms chosen will be affected by the business's desire for **liquidity** and **expectations** about future rates of interest; if there are major uncertainties about future interest rate levels it will be better to choose short-term investments. There may also be **penalties** for **early liquidation**.

(c) How easy it will be to **realise** the investment.

(d) Whether a **minimum amount** has to be invested in certain investments.

(e) Whether to invest on **international markets**.

If a company has no plans to grow or to invest, then surplus cash not required for transactions or precautionary purposes should normally be **returned to shareholders**.

Surplus cash may be returned to shareholders by:

(a) Increasing the usual level of the annual **dividends** which are paid

(b) Making a one-off **special dividend payment** (For example, National Power plc and BT plc have made such payments in recent years.)

(c) Using the money to **buy back its own shares** from some of its shareholders. This will reduce the total number of shares in issue, and should therefore raise the level of **earnings per share**

If surplus cash is to be invested on a regular basis, organisations should have investment guidelines in place covering the following issues:

(a) Surplus funds can only be invested in **specified types of investment** (eg no equity shares).

(b) All investments must be **convertible into cash** within a set number of days.

(c) Investments should be **ranked**: surplus funds to be invested in higher risk instruments only when a sufficiency has been invested in lower risk items (so that there is always a cushion of safety).

(d) If a firm invests in certain financial instruments, a **credit rating** should be obtained. Credit rating agencies, discussed earlier, issue gradings according to risk.

5.1 Short-term investments

Temporary cash surpluses are likely to be:

(a) **Deposited** with a **bank** or similar financial institution.

(b) Invested in **short-term debt instruments** (Debt instruments are debt securities which can be traded).

(c) Invested in **longer term debt instruments**, which can be sold on the stock market when the company eventually needs the cash.

(d) Invested in **shares of listed companies**, which can be sold on the stock market when the company eventually needs the cash.

5.2 Short-term deposits

Cash can of course be put into a **bank deposit** to **earn interest**. The rate of interest obtainable depends on the size of the deposit, and varies from bank to bank.

There are other types of deposit.

(a) **Money market lending**

There is a very large money market in the UK for inter-bank lending. The interest rates in the market are related to the London Interbank Offer Rate (LIBOR) and the London Interbank Bid Rate (LIBID).

(b) **Local authority deposits**

Local authorities often need **short-term cash**, and investors can deposit funds with them for periods ranging from overnight up to one year or more.

(c) **Finance house deposits**

These are **time deposits** with finance houses (usually subsidiaries of banks).

5.3 Short-term debt instruments

There are a number of **short-term debt instruments** which an investor can re-sell before the debt matures and is repaid. These debt instruments include **certificates of deposit** (CDs) and **Treasury bills**.

5.4 Certificates of deposit (CDs)

A **CD** is a security that is issued by a bank, acknowledging that a certain amount of money has been deposited with it for a certain period of time (usually, a short term). The CD is issued to the **depositor**, and attracts a **stated amount of interest**. The **depositor** will be another bank or a large commercial organisation.

CDs are negotiable and traded on the CD market (a money market), so if a CD holder wishes to obtain immediate cash, he can sell the CD on the market at any time. This second-hand market in CDs makes them attractive, flexible investments for organisations with excess cash.

5.5 Treasury bills

Treasury bills are issued weekly by the government to finance short-term cash deficiencies in the government's expenditure programme. They are **IOUs** issued by the government, giving a promise to pay a certain amount to their holder on maturity. Treasury bills have a term of **91 days to maturity**, after which the holder is paid the full value of the bill.

6 Working capital funding strategies

FAST FORWARD

Working capital can be funded by a mixture of short and long-term funding. Businesses should be aware of the distinction between **fluctuating** and **permanent** assets.

6.1 The working capital requirement

Computing the working capital requirement is a matter of calculating the value of current assets less current liabilities, perhaps by taking averages over a one year period.

6.2 Example: Working capital requirements

The following data relate to Corn Co, a manufacturing company.

Turnover for the year	$1,500,000
Costs as percentages of sales	%
Direct materials	30
Direct labour	25
Variable overheads	10
Fixed overheads	15
Selling and distribution	5

On average:

(a) Accounts receivable take 2.5 months before payment

(b) Raw materials are in inventory for three months

(c) Work-in-progress represents two months worth of half produced goods

(d) Finished goods represents one month's production

(e) Credit is taken as follows:

(i)	Direct materials	2 months
(ii)	Direct labour	1 week
(iii)	Variable overheads	1 month
(iv)	Fixed overheads	1 month
(v)	Selling and distribution	0.5 months

Work-in-progress and finished goods are valued at material, labour and variable expense cost.

Compute the working capital requirement of Corn Co assuming the labour force is paid for 50 working weeks a year.

Solution

(a) The annual costs incurred will be as follows.

		$
Direct materials	30% of $1,500,000	450,000
Direct labour	25% of $1,500,000	375,000
Variable overheads	10% of $1,500,000	150,000
Fixed overheads	15% of $1,500,000	225,000
Selling and distribution	5% of $1,500,000	75,000

(b) The average value of current assets will be as follows.

		$	$
Raw materials	3/12 × $450,000		112,500
Work-in-progress			
Materials (50% complete)	1/12 × $450,000	37,500	
Labour (50% complete)	1/12 × $375,000	31,250	
Variable overheads (50% complete)	1/12 × $150,000	12,500	
			81,250
Finished goods			
Materials	1/12 × $450,000	37,500	
Labour	1/12 × $375,000	31,250	
Variable overheads	1/12 × $150,000	12,500	
			81,250
Accounts receivable	2.5/12 × $1,500,000		312,500
			587,500

(c) Average value of current liabilities will be as follows.

Materials	2/12 × $450,000	75,000	
Labour	1/50 × $375,000	7,500	
Variable overheads	1/12 × $150,000	12,500	
Fixed overheads	1/12 × $225,000	18,750	
Selling and distribution	0.5/12 × $75,000	3,125	
			116,875

(d) Working capital required is ($(587,500 – 116,875)) 470,625

It has been assumed that all the direct materials are allocated to work-in-progress when production starts.

6.3 The level of working capital 6/08

Organisations have to decide what are the most important **risks** relating to working capital, and therefore whether to adopt a **conservative**, **aggressive** or **moderate** approach.

6.3.1 A conservative approach

A conservative working capital management policy aims to **reduce the risk** of system breakdown by holding **high** levels of working capital.

Customers are allowed generous payment terms to stimulate demand, finished goods inventories are high to ensure availability for customers, and raw materials and work in progress are high to minimise the risk of running out of inventory and consequent downtime in the manufacturing process. Suppliers are paid promptly to ensure their goodwill, again to minimise the chance of stock-outs.

However, the cumulative effect on these policies can be that the firm carries a high burden of unproductive assets, resulting in a **financing cost** that can **destroy profitability**. A period of rapid expansion may also cause severe cash flow problems as working capital requirements outstrip available finance. Further problems may arise from inventory obsolescence and lack of flexibility to customer demands.

6.3.2 An aggressive approach

An aggressive working capital management policy aims to **reduce this financing cost** and **increase profitability** by cutting inventories, speeding up collections from customers, and delaying payments to suppliers.

The potential disadvantage of this policy is an **increase** in the chances of **system breakdown** through running out of inventory or **loss of goodwill** with customers and suppliers.

However, modern manufacturing techniques encourage inventory and work in progress reductions through just–in–time policies, flexible production facilities and improved quality management. Improved customer satisfaction through quality and effective response to customer demand can also mean that credit periods are shortened.

6.3.3 A moderate approach

A moderate working capital management policy is a **middle way** between the aggressive and conservative approaches.

These characteristics are useful for comparing and analysing the different ways individual organisations deal with working capital and the **trade off** between **risk and return**.

6.4 Permanent and fluctuating current assets

In order to understand working capital financing decisions, assets can be divided into three different types.

(a) **Non-current (fixed) assets** are long-term assets from which an organisation expects to derive benefit over a number of periods. For example, buildings or machinery.

(b) **Permanent current assets** are the amount required to meet long-term minimum needs and sustain normal trading activity. For example, inventory and the average level of accounts receivable.

(c) **Fluctuating current assets** are the current assets which vary according to normal business activity. For example due to seasonal variations.

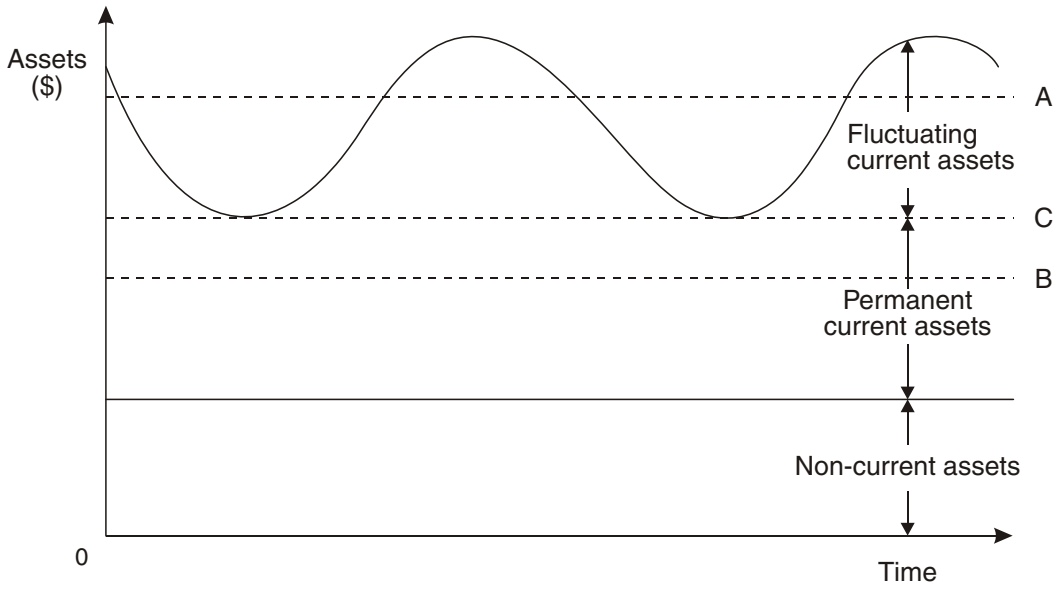
Fluctuating current assets together with **permanent** current assets form part of the working capital of the business, which may be financed by either long-term funding (including equity capital) or by current liabilities (short-term funding).

6.5 Working capital financing

There are different ways in which the funding of the current and non-current assets of a business can be achieved by employing long and short-term sources of funding.

Short-term sources of funding are usually **cheaper** and **more flexible** than long-term ones. However short-term sources are **riskier** for the borrower as interest rates are more volatile in the short term and they may not be renewed.

The diagram below illustrates three alternative types of policy A, B and C. The dotted lines A, B and C are the cut-off levels between short-term and long-term funding for each of the policies A, B and C respectively: assets above the relevant dotted line are financed by short-term funding while assets below the dotted line are financed by long-term funding.



(a) Policy A can be characterised as a **conservative approach** to financing working capital. All non-current assets and permanent current assets, as well as part of the fluctuating current assets, are financed by long-term funding. There is only a need to call upon short-term financing at times when fluctuations in current assets push total assets above the level of dotted line A. At times when fluctuating current assets are low and total assets fall below line A, there will be **surplus cash** which the company will be able to invest in marketable securities.

(b) Policy B is a more **aggressive approach** to financing working capital. Not only are fluctuating current assets all financed out of short-term sources, but so are some of the permanent current assets. This policy represents an **increased risk** of liquidity and cash flow problems, although potential returns will be increased if short-term financing can be obtained more cheaply than long-term finance.

(c) A **balance** between risk and return might be best achieved by the **moderate approach** of policy C, a policy of **maturity matching** in which long-term funds finance permanent assets while short-term funds finance non-permanent assets. This means that the maturity of the funds **matches** the maturity of the assets.

Exam focus point

Don't confuse working capital investment and financing. The amount of working capital that a company chooses to have is an investment decision whereas the type of financing it uses for its working capital is a financing decision.

6.6 Other factors

The trend of overall working capital management will be complicated by the following factors:

(a) **Industry norms**

These are of particular importance for the **management of receivables**. It will be difficult to offer a much shorter payment period than competitors.

(b) **Products**

The **production process**, and hence the amount of work in progress is obviously much greater for some products and in some industries.

(c) **Management issues**

How **working capital** is **managed** may have a significant impact upon the actual length of the working capital cycle whatever the overall strategy might be. Factors to consider include:

(i) The size of the organisation.

(ii) The degree of centralisation (which may allow a more aggressive approach to be adopted, depending though on how efficient the centralised departments actually are).

(iii) Management attitudes to risk.

(iv) Previous funding decisions.

Chapter Roundup

- **Cash flow forecasts** show the expected receipts and payments during a forecast period and are a vital management control tool, especially during times of recession.
- **Cash shortages** can be eased by postponing capital expenditure, selling assets, taking longer to pay accounts payable and pressing accounts receivable for earlier payment.
- A large organisation will have a **treasury department** to manage liquidity, short-term investment, borrowings, foreign exchange risk and other, specialised, areas such as forward contracts and futures etc.
- Optimal **cash** holding levels can be calculated from formal models, such as the **Baumol model** and the **Miller-Orr model**.
- **Temporary surpluses** of cash can be invested in a variety of financial instruments. Longer-term surpluses should be returned to shareholders if there is a lack of investment opportunities.
- Working capital can be funded by a mixture of short and long-term funding. Businesses should be aware of the distinction between **fluctuating** and **permanent** assets.

Quick Quiz

1 Which of the following should be included in a cash flow forecast?

	Include	Do not include
Funds from the issue of share capital		
Revaluation of a fixed asset		
Receipts of dividends from outside the business		
Depreciation of production machinery		
Bad debts written off		
Repayment of a bank loan		

2 *Match the appropriate management action to the cash position shown by a cash budget.*

Position		*Action*	
(a)	Short-term surplus	1	Diversify
(b)	Short-term deficit	2	Issue share capital
(c)	Long-term surplus	3	Reduce debtors
(d)	Long-term deficit	4	Increase debtors
		5	Increase creditors
		6	Expand

3 In the Miller-Orr cash management model

Return point = Lower limit + ... × spread

4 Which of the following is most likely to reduce a firm's working capital?

A Adopting the Miller-Orr model of cash management
B Lengthening the period of credit given to accounts receivable
C Buying new machinery
D Adopting just-in-time procurement and lean manufacturing

5 What type of policy is characterised by all non-current assets and permanent current assets being financed by long-term funding?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1

	Include	Do not include
Funds from the issue of share capital	✓	
Revaluation of a fixed asset		✓
Receipts of dividends from outside the business	✓	
Depreciation of production machinery		✓
Bad debts written off		✓
Repayment of a bank loan	✓	

2 (a) 4
(b) 3, 5
(c) 1, 6
(d) 2

3 One third

4 D The aim of using these methods is to minimise inventory holdings. The impact of using the Miller-Orr model will depend on how the firm was managing cash before (A). Giving more credit to accounts receivable will increase working capital (B). New machinery is not part of working capital (C); the impact, if any, on working capital will depend on how the purchase is financed.

5 Conservative

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q7	Examination	25	45 mins
Q8	Examination	25	45 mins

PART D

Investment appraisal

7

Investment decisions

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Investment	D1 (a)
2 The capital budgeting process	D1 (b) (c)
3 Relevant cash flows	D2 (a)
4 The payback period	D2 (b)
5 The return on capital employed	D2 (c)

Introduction

This chapter introduces **investment appraisal** and covers the manner in which investment opportunities are identified. It also introduces two relatively straightforward, but widely used, investment appraisal methods: **payback period** and **return on capital employed**. Chapter 8 will look at investment appraisal using the more sophisticated **discounted cash flow (DCF)** methods, which address some of the weaknesses of the traditional approaches covered in this chapter (make sure you know what these are!).

Study guide

		Intellectual level
D1	**The nature of investment decisions and the appraisal process**	
(a)	Distinguish between capital and revenue expenditure, and between non-current assets and working capital investment.	2
(b)	Explain the role of investment appraisal in the capital budgeting process.	2
(c)	Discuss the stages of the capital budgeting process in relation to corporate strategy.	2
D2	**Non-discounted cash flow techniques**	
(a)	Identify and calculate relevant cash flows for investment projects.	2
(b)	Calculate payback period and discuss the usefulness of payback as an investment appraisal method.	2
(c)	Calculate return on capital employed (accounting rate of return) and discuss its usefulness as an investment appraisal method.	2

Exam guide

As well as using the techniques covered in this chapter, you may be asked to discuss their drawbacks. You must be able to apply your knowledge.

PER alert

One of the competencies you require to fulfil performance objective 15 of the PER is the ability to evaluate the risks and returns associated with investment opportunities. You can apply the knowledge you obtain from this chapter to help to demonstrate this competence.

1 Investment

FAST FORWARD

Investment can be divided into **capital expenditure** and **revenue expenditure** and can be made in **non-current assets** or **working capital**.

Investment is any expenditure in the expectation of future benefits. We can divide such expenditure into two categories: **capital expenditure**, and **revenue expenditure**.

Suppose that a business purchases a building for $30,000. It then adds an extension to the building at a cost of $10,000. The building needs to have a few broken windows mended, its floors polished and some missing roof tiles replaced. These cleaning and maintenance jobs cost $900.

The original purchase ($30,000) and the cost of the extension ($10,000) are **capital expenditure** because they are incurred to **acquire** and then **improve** a non-current asset. The other costs of $900 are **revenue expenditure** because they merely maintain the building and thus the earning capacity of the building.

Key terms

Capital expenditure is expenditure which results in the **acquisition** of non-current assets or an **improvement** in their earning capacity. It is not charged as an expense in the income statement; the expenditure appears as a non-current asset in the statement of financial position.

Revenue expenditure is charged to the income statement and is expenditure which is incurred:

(a) For the purpose of the trade of the business - this includes expenditure classified as selling and distribution expenses, administration expenses and finance charges

(b) To maintain the existing earning capacity of non-current assets

1.1 Non-current asset investment and working capital investment

Investment can be made in **non-current assets** or **working capital**.

(a) **Investment in** non-current assets involves a significant elapse of time between commitment of funds and recoupment of the investment. Money is paid out to acquire resources which are going to be used on a continuing basis within the organisation.

(b) **Investment in working capital** arises from the need to pay out money for resources (such as raw materials) before it can be recovered from sales of the finished product or service. The funds are therefore only committed for a short period of time.

1.2 Investment by the commercial sector

Investment by commercial organisations might include investment in:

- Plant and machinery
- Research and development
- Advertising
- Warehouse facilities

The overriding feature of a commercial sector investment is that it is generally **based on financial considerations alone.** The various capital expenditure appraisal techniques that we will be looking at assess the financial aspects of capital investment.

1.3 Investment by not-for-profit organisations

Investment by not-for-profit organisations differs from investment by commercial organisations for several reasons.

(a) Relatively few not-for-profit organisations' capital investments are made with the **intention** of earning a **financial return**.

(b) When there are two or more ways of achieving the same objective (mutually exclusive investment opportunities), a commercial organisation might prefer the option with the **lowest present value of cost**.

Not-for-profit organisations, however, rather than just considering financial cost and financial benefits, will often have regard to the **social costs** and **social benefits** of investments.

(c) The **cost of capital** that is applied to project cash flows by the public sector will not be a 'commercial' rate of return, but one that is **determined** by the **government**. Any targets that a public sector investment has to meet before being accepted will therefore not be based on the same criteria as those in the commercial sector.

2 The capital budgeting process

FAST FORWARD

Capital budgeting is the process of identifying, analysing and selecting investment projects whose returns are expected to extend beyond one year.

2.1 Creation of capital budgets

The capital budget will normally be prepared to cover a **longer period** than sales, production and resource budgets, say from three to five years, although it should be **broken down** into periods matching those of other budgets. It should indicate the expenditure required to cover **capital projects already underway** and those it is **anticipated will start** in the three to five year period (say) of the capital budget.

The budget should therefore be based on the current production budget, future expected levels of production and the long-term development of the organisation, and industry, as a whole.

Organisations may have **defined time periods** during which proposals are considered so as to allow for an indication of expected capital expenditure in the forthcoming budget period. Alternatively proposals may be **accepted on a regular basis**, allowing greater scope for investment in unanticipated opportunities. Projects which **emerge during** a budget period may be **disadvantaged** compared with those anticipated when the budget was set, however, as specific funds will not be set aside for them in the budget. If funds are limited, such projects may undergo more rigorous analysis than an anticipated project to justify the allocation of funds.

Budget limits or constraints might be imposed internally or externally.

(a) The imposition of **internal constraints**, which are often imposed when managerial resources are limited, is known as **soft capital rationing**.

(b) **Hard capital rationing** occurs when **external limits** are set, perhaps because of scarcity of financing, high financing costs or restrictions on the amount of external financing an organisation can seek.

Projects can be **classified** in the budget into those that generally arise from top management policy decisions or from sources such as mandatory government regulations (health, safety and welfare capital expenditure) and those that tend to be appraised using the techniques covered in this chapter and the next.

- Cost reduction and replacement expenditure
- Expenditure on the expansion of existing product lines
- New product expenditure

The **administration of** the capital budget is usually separate from that of the other budgets. Overall responsibility for **authorisation and monitoring** of capital expenditure is, in most large organisations, the **responsibility of a committee**. For example:

- Expenditure up to $75,000 may be approved by individual divisional managers.
- Expenditure between $75,000 and $150,000 may be approved by divisional management.
- Expenditure over $150,000 may be approved by the board of directors.

2.2 The investment decision-making process

We have seen in the introduction to this chapter that capital expenditure often involves the outlay of **large sums of money**, and that any expected **benefits may take a number of years to accrue**. For these reasons it is vital that capital expenditure is subject to a rigorous process of appraisal and control.

FAST FORWARD

A typical **model for investment decision making** has a number of distinct stages.

- Origination of proposals
- Project screening
- Analysis and acceptance
- Monitoring and review

We will look at these stages in more detail below.

2.3 Origination of proposals

Investment opportunities **do not just appear** out of thin air. They **must be created**.

An organisation must therefore set up a **mechanism that scans the environment for potential opportunities and gives an early warning of future problems**. A technological change that might result in a drop in sales might be picked up by this scanning process, and steps should be taken immediately to respond to such a threat.

Ideas for investment might come from those working in technical positions. A factory manager, for example, could be well placed to identify ways in which expanded capacity or new machinery could increase output or the efficiency of the manufacturing process. Innovative ideas, such as new product lines, are more likely to come from those in higher levels of management, given their **strategic** view of the organisation's direction and their knowledge of the competitive environment.

The overriding feature of any **proposal** is that it should be **consistent with the organisation's overall strategy to achieve its objectives**. For example, an organisation's strategy could be to increase revenue by introducing new products, or targeting new customers or markets. Employees from across the organisation can be involved in the evaluation of alternative technologies, machines and project specifications. Some alternatives will be rejected early on. Others will be more thoroughly evaluated.

2.4 Project screening

Each proposal must be subject to detailed screening. So that a **qualitative evaluation** of a proposal can be made, a number of key questions such as those below might be asked before any financial analysis is undertaken. Only if the project passes this initial screening will more detailed financial analysis begin.

- What is the purpose of the project?
- Does it 'fit' with the organisation's long-term objectives?
- Is it a mandatory investment, for example to conform with safety legislation?
- What resources are required and are they available, eg money, capacity, labour?
- Do we have the necessary management expertise to guide the project to completion?
- Does the project expose the organisation to unnecessary risk?
- How long will the project last and what factors are key to its success?
- Have all possible alternatives been considered?

2.5 Analysis and acceptance

The analysis stage can be broken down into a number of steps.

Step 1 Complete and submit standard format financial information as a formal investment proposal.

Step 2 Classify the project by type (to separate projects into those that require more or less rigorous financial appraisal, and those that must achieve a greater or lesser rate of return in order to be deemed acceptable).

Step 3 Carry out financial analysis of the project.

Step 4 Compare the outcome of the financial analysis to predetermined acceptance criteria.

Step 5 Consider the project in the light of the capital budget for the current and future operating periods.

Step 6 Make the **decision (go/no go)**.

Step 7 Monitor the progress of the project.

2.5.1 Financial analysis

The financial analysis will involve the **application of the organisation's preferred investment appraisal techniques**. We will be studying these techniques in detail in this chapter and the next. In many projects some of the financial implications will be extremely difficult to quantify, but every effort must be made to do so, in order to have a formal basis for planning and controlling the project.

Here are examples of the type of question that will be addressed at this stage.

- What cash flows/profits will arise from the project and when?
- Has inflation been considered in the determination of the cash flows?
- What are the results of the financial appraisal?
- Has any allowance been made for risk, and if so, what was the outcome?

Some types of project, for example a marketing investment decision, may give rise to cash inflows and **returns which are so intangible and difficult to quantify that a full financial appraisal may not be possible**. In this case more weight may be given to a consideration of the qualitative issues.

2.5.2 Qualitative issues

Financial analysis of capital projects is obviously vital because of the amount of money involved and the length of time for which it is tied up. A consideration of qualitative issues is also relevant to the decision, however (ie factors which are difficult or impossible to quantify). We have already seen that qualitative issues would be considered in the **initial screening stage**, for example in reviewing the project's 'fit' with the organisation's overall objectives and whether it is a mandatory investment. There is a very wide range of other qualitative issues that may be relevant to a particular project.

(a) What are the implications of not undertaking the investment, eg adverse effect on staff morale, loss of market share?

(b) Will acceptance of this project lead to the need for further investment activity in future?

(c) What will be the effect on the company's image?

(d) Will the organisation be more flexible as a result of the investment, and better able to respond to market and technology changes?

2.5.3 Go/no go decision

Go/no go decisions on projects may be **made at different levels within the organisational hierarchy**, depending on three factors.

- The type of investment
- Its perceived riskiness
- The amount of expenditure required

For example, a divisional manager may be authorised to make decisions up to $25,000, an area manager up to $150,000 and a group manager up to $300,000, with board approval for greater amounts.

Once the go/no go (or **accept/reject**) decision has been made, the organisation is committed to the project, and the decision maker must accept that the project's success or failure reflects on his or her ability to make sound decisions.

2.6 Monitoring the progress of the project

FAST FORWARD

During the project's progress, **project controls** should be applied to ensure the following.

- Capital spending does not exceed the amount authorised.
- The implementation of the project is not delayed.
- The anticipated benefits are eventually obtained.

The first two items are probably easier to control than the third, because the controls can normally be applied soon after the capital expenditure has been authorised, whereas monitoring the benefits will span a longer period of time.

3 Relevant cash flows

FAST FORWARD

Relevant costs of investment appraisal include opportunity costs, working capital costs and wider costs such as infrastructure and human development costs. **Non-relevant costs** include past costs and committed costs.

3.1 Relevant cash flows in investment appraisals

The cash flows that should be considered in investment appraisals are those which arise as a **consequence** of the investment decision under evaluation. Any costs incurred in the **past**, or any **committed costs** which will be **incurred regardless** of whether or not an investment is undertaken, are **not relevant cash flows**. They have occurred, or will occur, whatever investment decision is taken. This includes **centrally-allocated overheads** that are not a consequence of undertaking the project.

Exam focus point

Examiners often complain that students often include non-relevant costs in investment appraisals.

The **annual profits** from a project can be calculated as the **incremental contribution** earned **minus any incremental fixed costs** which are additional cash items of expenditure (that is, ignoring depreciation and so on).

There are, however, other cash flows to consider. These might include the following.

3.1.1 Opportunity costs

These are the costs incurred or revenues lost from diverting existing resources from their best use.

3.1.2 Example: opportunity costs

If a salesman, who is paid an annual salary of $30,000, is diverted to work on a new project and as a result existing sales of $50,000 are lost, the opportunity cost to the new project will be the $50,000 of lost sales. The salesman's salary of $30,000 is **not** an opportunity cost since it will be incurred however the salesman's time is spent.

3.1.3 Tax

The extra **taxation** that will be payable on extra profits, or the reductions in tax arising from capital allowances or operating losses in any year. We shall consider the effect of taxation in Chapter 9.

3.1.4 Residual value

The **residual value** or **disposal** value of equipment at the end of its life, or its disposal cost.

3.1.5 Working capital

If a company invests $20,000 in working capital and earns cash profits of $50,000, the net cash receipts will be $30,000. Working capital will be released again at the end of a project's life, and so there will be a cash inflow arising out of the eventual realisation into cash of the project's inventory and receivables in the final year of the project.

3.2 Other relevant costs

Costs that will often need to be considered include:

- **Infrastructure costs** such as additional information technology or communication systems
- **Marketing costs** may be substantial, particularly of course if the investment is in a new product or service. They will include the costs of market research, promotion and branding and the organisation of new distribution channels
- **Human resource costs** including training costs and the costs of reorganisation arising from investments

3.3 Relevant benefits of investments

FAST FORWARD

Relevant benefits from investments include not only **increased cash flows**, but also **savings** and **better relationships** with **customers and employees**.

3.3.1 Types of benefit

The benefits from a proposed investment must also be evaluated. These might consist of benefits of several types.

(a) **Savings** because assets used currently will no longer be used. The savings should include:

(i) Savings in **staff costs**
(ii) Savings in **other operating costs**, such as consumable materials

(b) Extra **savings** or revenue benefits because of the improvements or enhancements that the investment **might** bring:
(i) **More sales revenue** and so additional contribution
(ii) **More efficient system operation**
(iii) Further savings in **staff time**, resulting perhaps in reduced future staff growth

(c) Possibly, some one-off revenue benefits from the **sale of assets** that are currently in use, but which will no longer be required.

Some benefits might be **intangible**, or impossible to give a money value to.

(a) Greater **customer satisfaction**, arising from a more prompt service (eg because of a computerised sales and delivery service).
(b) Improved **staff morale** from working with higher-quality assets.
(c) **Better decision making** may result from better information systems.

3.4 Example: Relevant cash flows

Elsie is considering the manufacture of a new product which would involve the use of both a new machine (costing $150,000) and an existing machine, which cost $80,000 two years ago and has a current net book value of $60,000. There is sufficient capacity on this machine, which has so far been under-utilised. Annual sales of the product would be 5,000 units, selling at $32 per unit. Unit costs would be as follows.

	$
Direct labour (4 hours at $2 per hour)	8
Direct materials	7
Fixed costs including depreciation	9
	24

The project would have a five-year life, after which the new machine would have a net residual value of $10,000. Because direct labour is continually in short supply, labour resources would have to be diverted from other work which currently earns a contribution of $1.50 per direct labour hour. The fixed overhead absorption rate would be $2.25 per hour ($9 per unit) but actual expenditure on fixed overhead would not alter.

Working capital requirements would be $10,000 in the first year, rising to $15,000 in the second year and remaining at this level until the end of the project, when it will all be recovered. The company's cost of capital is 20%. Ignore taxation.

You are required to **identify the relevant cash flows** for the decision as to whether or not the project is worthwhile.

Solution

The relevant cash flows are as follows.

(a)	Year 0	Purchase of new machine	$150,000
(b)	Years 1-5		$
		Contribution from new product (5,000 units × $(32 – 15))	85,000
		Less contribution foregone	
		(5,000 × (4 × $1.50))	30,000
			55,000

(c) The project requires $10,000 of working capital at the end of year 1 and a further $5,000 at the start of year 2. **Increases** in working capital **reduce** the **net cash flow** for the period to which they relate. When the working capital tied up in the project is 'recovered' at the end of the project, it will provide an extra cash inflow (for example debtors will eventually pay up).

(d) All other costs, which are past costs, notional accounting costs or costs which would be incurred anyway without the project, are not relevant to the investment decision.

4 The payback period

FAST FORWARD

The **payback method** of investment appraisal and the **ROCE/ARR/ROI** methods of investment appraisal are popular appraisal techniques despite their limitations (of which you should be aware).

Payback is the amount of time it takes for cash inflows = cash outflows

There are a number of ways of evaluating capital projects, two of which we will be examining in this chapter. We will look first at the payback method.

Exam focus point

Exam questions often ask about the pros and cons of the payback method.

Key term

Payback is the time it takes the cash inflows from a capital investment project to equal the cash outflows, usually expressed in years.

Payback is often used as a 'first screening method'. By this, we mean that when a capital investment project is being considered, the first question to ask is: 'How long will it take to pay back its cost?' The organisation might have a **target payback**, and so it would reject a capital project unless its payback period were less than a certain number of years.

However, a project should not be evaluated on the basis of payback alone. If a project gets through the payback test, it ought then to be evaluated with a more sophisticated investment appraisal technique.

4.1 Why is payback alone an inadequate investment appraisal technique?

The reason why payback should not be used on its own to evaluate capital investments should seem fairly obvious if you look at the figures below for two mutually exclusive projects (this means that only one of them can be undertaken).

	Project P	*Project Q*
	$	$
Capital investment	60,000	60,000
Profits before depreciation (a rough approximation of cash flows)		
Year 1	20,000	50,000
Year 2	30,000	20,000
Year 3	40,000	5,000
Year 4	50,000	5,000
Year 5	60,000	5,000

Project P pays back in year 3 (about one quarter of the way through year 3). Project Q pays back half way through year 2. Using payback alone to judge capital investments, project Q would be preferred.

However the returns from project P over its life are much higher than the returns from project Q. **Project P** will earn total profits before depreciation of $140,000 on an investment of $60,000. **Project Q** will earn total profits before depreciation of only $25,000 on an investment of $60,000.

4.2 Disadvantages of the payback method

There are a number of serious drawbacks to the payback method.

(a) It **ignores** the **timing** of cash flows within the payback period.

(b) It ignores the cash flows after the end of payback period and therefore the total project return.

(c) It **ignores the time value of money** (a concept incorporated into more sophisticated appraisal methods). This means that it does not take account of the fact that $1 today is worth more than $1 in one year's time. An investor who has $1 today can either consume it immediately or alternatively can invest it at the prevailing interest rate, say 10%, to get a return of $1.10 in a year's time.

(d) Payback is **unable to distinguish between projects** with the same payback period.

(e) The choice of any **cut-off** payback period by an organisation is **arbitrary**.

(f) It may lead to **excessive investment** in **short-term projects**.

(g) It takes account of the risk of the timing of cash flows but not the **variability** of those cash flows.

4.3 Advantages of the payback method

In spite of its limitations, the payback method continues to be popular, and the following points can be made in its favour.

(a) It is **simple to calculate** and **simple to understand**. This may be important when management resources are limited. It is similarly helpful in communicating information about minimum requirements to managers responsible for submitting projects.

(b) It uses **cash flows** rather than accounting profits.

(c) It can be used as a **screening device** as a first stage in eliminating obviously inappropriate projects prior to more detailed evaluation.

(d) The fact that it tends to **bias** in favour of **short-term projects** means that it tends to minimise both financial and business risk.

(e) It can be used when there is a **capital rationing situation** to identify those projects which generate additional cash for investment quickly.

5 The return on capital employed **Pilot Paper**

FAST FORWARD

$$\textbf{ROCE} = \frac{\text{Estimated average/total profits}}{\text{Estimated average/initial investment}} \times 100\%$$

The **return on capital employed** method (ROCE) (also called the **accounting rate of return** method or the **return on investment** (ROI) method) of appraising a capital project is to estimate the accounting rate of return that the project should yield. If it exceeds a target rate of return, the project will be undertaken. In Chapter 1 we discussed how return on capital employed is measured for financial accounting purposes. Here the measure is calculated in relation to investments.

Unfortunately, there are several different definitions of 'return on capital employed'. One of the most popular is as follows.

$$\text{ROCE} = \frac{\text{Estimated average annual accounting profits}}{\text{Estimated average investment}} \times 100\%$$

$$\text{Average investment} = \frac{\text{Capital cost} + \text{disposal value}}{2}$$

The others include:

$$\text{ROCE} = \frac{\text{Estimated total profits}}{\text{Estimated initial investment}} \times 100\%$$

$$\text{ROCE} = \frac{\text{Estimated average profits}}{\text{Estimated initial investment}} \times 100\%$$

There are arguments in favour of each of these definitions. The most important point is, however, that the method selected should be used consistently. For examination purposes we recommend the first definition unless the question clearly indicates that some other one is to be used.

Exam focus point

The Pilot Paper stated that the ROCE calculation should be based on the **average** investment and used the first definition.

5.1 Example: The return on capital employed

A company has a target return on capital employed of 20% (using the first definition from the paragraph above), and is now considering the following project.

Capital cost of asset	$80,000
Estimated life	4 years
Estimated profit before depreciation	
Year 1	$20,000
Year 2	$25,000
Year 3	$35,000
Year 4	$25,000

The capital asset would be depreciated by 25% of its cost each year, and will have no residual value. You are required to assess whether the project should be undertaken.

5.2 Solution

The annual profits after depreciation, and the mid-year net book value of the asset, would be as follows.

Year	*Profit after depreciation* $	*Mid-year net book value* $	*ROCE in the year* %
1	0	70,000	0
2	5,000	50,000	10
3	15,000	30,000	50
4	5,000	10,000	50

As the table shows, the ROCE is low in the early stages of the project, partly because of low profits in Year 1 but mainly because the net book value of the asset is much higher early on in its life.

The project does not achieve the target ROCE of 20% in its first two years, but exceeds it in years 3 and 4. So should it be undertaken?

When the ROCE from a project varies from year to year, it makes sense to take an overall or 'average' view of the project's return. In this case, we should look at the return as a whole over the four-year period.

	$
Total profit before depreciation over four years	105,000
Total profit after depreciation over four years	25,000
Average annual profit after depreciation	6,250
Original cost of investment	80,000
Average net book value over the four year period $\frac{(80,000 + 0)}{2}$	40,000

$$\text{ROCE} = \frac{6,250}{40,000} = 15.6\%$$

The project would not be undertaken because it would fail to yield the target return of 20%.

5.3 The ROCE and the comparison of mutually exclusive projects

The ROCE method of capital investment appraisal can also be used to compare two or more projects which are mutually exclusive. The project with the highest ROCE would be selected (provided that the expected ROCE is higher than the company's target ROCE).

5.4 Example: The ROCE and mutually exclusive projects

Arrow wants to buy a new item of equipment which will be used to provide a service to customers of the company. Two models of equipment are available, one with a slightly higher capacity and greater reliability than the other. The expected costs and profits of each item are as follows.

	Equipment item X	*Equipment item Y*
Capital cost	$80,000	$150,000
Life	5 years	5 years
Profits before depreciation	$	$
Year 1	50,000	50,000
Year 2	50,000	50,000
Year 3	30,000	60,000
Year 4	20,000	60,000
Year 5	10,000	60,000
Disposal value	0	0

ROCE is measured as the average annual profit after depreciation, divided by the average net book value of the asset. You are required to decide which item of equipment should be selected, if any, if the company's target ROCE is 30%.

Solution

	Item X	*Item Y*
	$	$
Total profit over life of equipment		
Before depreciation	160,000	280,000
After depreciation	80,000	130,000
Average annual profit after depreciation	16,000	26,000
Average investment = (Capital cost + disposal value)/2	40,000	75,000
ROCE	40%	34.7%

Both projects would earn a return in excess of 30%, but since item X would earn a bigger ROCE, it would be preferred to item Y, even though the profits from Y would be higher by an average of $10,000 a year.

5.5 The drawbacks to the ROCE method of capital investment appraisal

The ROCE method of capital investment appraisal has the serious drawback that it does not take account of the **timing** of the **profits from an investment**. Whenever capital is invested in a project, money is tied up until the project begins to earn profits which pay back the investment. Money tied up in one project cannot be invested anywhere else until the profits come in. Management should be aware of the benefits of early repayments from an investment, which will provide the money for other investments.

There are a number of other disadvantages.

(a) It is based on **accounting profits** and not cash flows. Accounting profits are subject to a number of different accounting treatments.

(b) It is a **relative measure** rather than an absolute measure and hence takes no account of the size of the investment.

(c) It takes no account of the length of the project.

(d) Like the payback method, it ignores the time value of money.

There are, however, advantages to the ROCE method.

(a) It is a quick and simple calculation.

(b) It involves the familiar concept of a percentage return.

(c) It looks at the entire project life.

Chapter Roundup

- Investment can be divided into **capital expenditure** and **revenue expenditure** and can be made in **non-current assets** or **working capital**.
- Capital budgeting is the process of identifying, analysing and selecting investment projects whose returns are expected to extend beyond one year.
- A typical **model for investment decision making** has a number of distinct stages.
  - Origination of proposals
  - Project screening
  - Analysis and acceptance
  - Monitoring and review
- During the project's progress, **project controls** should be applied to ensure the following.
  - Capital spending does not exceed the amount authorised.
  - The implementation of the project is not delayed.
  - The anticipated benefits are eventually obtained.
- **Relevant costs** of investment appraisal include opportunity costs, working capital costs and wider costs such as infrastructure and human development costs. **Non-relevant costs** include past costs and committed costs.
- **Relevant benefits** from investments include not only **increased cash flows**, but also **savings** and **better relationships** with **customers and employees**.
- The **payback method** of investment appraisal and the **ROCE/ARR/ROI** methods of investment appraisal are popular appraisal techniques despite their limitations (of which you should be aware).

  Payback is the amount of time it takes for cash inflows = cash outflows
- **ROCE** = $\dfrac{\text{Estimated average/total profits}}{\text{Estimated average/initial investment}} \times 100\%$

Quick Quiz

1 One reason that capital expenditure may be incurred is to maintain the earning capacity of existing non-current assets.

True ☐

False ☐

2 If a machine with annual running costs of $100,000, was diverted from producing output selling for $50,000 to producing a special order worth $70,000, what would be the relevant costs of what has happened?

A $170,000
B $100,000
C $50,000
D $20,000

3 The financial benefits of a new investment consist of the increased sales revenues it generates.

True ☐

False ☐

4 *Fill in the blank.*

…… is the time it takes the cash inflows from a capital investment project to equal the cash outflows.

5 Which of the following can be used to calculate the return on capital employed?

(a) $\frac{\text{Estimated average annual profits}}{\text{Estimated average investment}} \times 100\%$

(b) $\frac{\text{Estimated total profits}}{\text{Estimated initial investment}} \times 100\%$

(c) $\frac{\text{Estimated average annual profits}}{\text{Estimated initial investment}} \times 100\%$

6 *Fill in the blanks in these statements about the advantages of the payback method.*

(a) Focus on early payback can enhance ……

(b) Investment risk is …… if payback is longer.

(c) …….. term forecasts are likely to be more reliable.

7 The return on capital employed method of investment appraisal uses accounting profits before depreciation charges.

True ☐

False ☐

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 False. This is a reason for incurring **revenue** expenditure.

2 C $50,000, the opportunity cost of the lost sales revenue. A and B are wrong because they include the $100,000 running costs which would be incurred anyway are not relevant. In the absence of any further information, $20,000 (D) would be the net benefit ($70,000 – $50,000).

3 False. Financial benefits could also include the savings from not operating existing assets any more, and also proceeds from the disposal of old assets.

4 Payback

5 All three could be used, although (a) $\frac{\text{Estimated average annual profits}}{\text{Estimated average investment}} \times 100\%$ is generally best.

6 (a) liquidity
(b) increased
(c) shorter

7 False

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q9	Introductory	12	22 mins

Investment appraisal using DCF methods

8

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Discounted cash flow	D3 (a)
2 The net present value method	D3 (b)
3 The internal rate of return method	D3 (c)
4 NPV and IRR compared	D3 (e)
5 Assessment of DCF methods of project appraisal	D3 (d)

Introduction

The **payback** and **ROCE** methods of investment appraisal were considered in the previous chapter. This chapter will look at **discounted cash flow (DCF) methods** of investment appraisal which take into account changes in the value of money over time. These two methods, **Net Present Value (NPV)** and **Internal Rate of Return (IRR)**, use the technique of **discounting** to bring all cash flows resulting from the investment to a present day value by eliminating the **interest** that would have been earned on that cash flow had it happened now rather than later.

The interest rate (referred to as **discount rate** in this context) used in this calculation is specific to each organisation, and depends on the relative levels of debt and equity funding of the organisation. This links to later studies in this text concerning cost of capital and capital structure.

Chapter 9 will look at how **inflation** and **taxation** can be incorporated into appraisal techniques.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
D3	**Discounted cash flow (DCF) techniques**	
(a)	Explain and apply concepts relating to interest and discounting, including:	2
(ii)	the calculation of future values and the application of the annuity formula	
(iii)	the calculation of present values, including the present value of an annuity and perpetuity, and the use of discount and annuity tables	
(iv)	the time value of money and the role of cost of capital in appraising investments	
(b)	Calculate net present value and discuss its usefulness as an investment appraisal method.	2
(c)	Calculate internal rate of return and discuss its usefulness as an investment appraisal method.	2
(d)	Discuss the superiority of DCF methods over non-DCF methods.	2
(e)	Discuss the relative merits of NPV and IRR.	2

Exam guide

You may be asked to discuss the relative merits of the various investment appraisal techniques as well as demonstrate your ability to apply the techniques themselves.

1 Discounted cash flow

FAST FORWARD

There are two methods of using DCF to evaluate capital investments, the **NPV method** and the **IRR method.**

Discounted cash flow, or **DCF** for short, is an investment appraisal technique which takes into account both the timings of cash flows and also total profitability over a project's life.

Two important points about DCF are as follows.

(a) DCF looks at the **cash flows** of a project, not the accounting profits. Cash flows are considered because they show the costs and benefits of a project when they actually occur and ignore notional costs such as depreciation.

(b) The **timing** of cash flows is taken into account by **discounting them**. The effect of discounting is to give a bigger value per $1 for cash flows that occur earlier: $1 earned after one year will be worth more than $1 earned after two years, which in turn will be worth more than $1 earned after five years, and so on.

1.1 Compounding

Suppose that a company has $10,000 to invest, and wants to earn a return of 10% (compound interest) on its investments. This means that if the $10,000 could be invested at 10%, the value of the investment with interest would build up as follows.

(a) After 1 year $10,000 × (1.10) = $11,000
(b) After 2 years $10,000 × $(1.10)^2$ = $12,100
(c) After 3 years $10,000 × $(1.10)^3$ = $13,310 and so on.

This is **compounding**. The formula for the future value of an investment plus accumulated interest after n time periods is:

$FV = PV (1 + r)^n$

where FV is the future value of the investment with interest
PV is the initial or 'present' value of the investment
r is the compound rate of return per time period, expressed as a proportion (so 10% = 0.10, 5% = 0.05 and so on)
n is the number of time periods.

1.2 Discounting

Key term

Present value is the cash equivalent now of a sum of money receivable or payable at a stated future date, discounted at a specified rate of return.

Discounting starts with the future value, and converts a future value to a present value. For example, if a company expects to earn a (compound) rate of return of 10% on its investments, how much would it need to invest now to have the following investments?

(a) $11,000 after 1 year
(b) $12,100 after 2 years
(c) $13,310 after 3 years

The answer is $10,000 in each case, and we can calculate it by discounting. The discounting formula to calculate the present value of a future sum of money at the end of n time periods is:

$$PV = FV\frac{1}{(1+r)^n}$$

Exam formula

Present value of 1 = $(1+r)^{-n}$ or $\frac{1}{(1+r)^n}$

(a) After 1 year, $\$11,000 \times \frac{1}{1.10} = \$10,000$

(b) After 2 years, $\$12,100 \times \frac{1}{1.10^2} = \$10,000$

(c) After 3 years, $\$13,310 \times \frac{1}{1.10^3} = \$10,000$

Discounting can be applied to both money receivable and also to money payable at a future date. By discounting all payments and receipts from a capital investment to a present value, they can be compared on a common basis at a value which takes account of when the various cash flows will take place.

Question

Present value

Spender expects the cash inflow from an investment to be $40,000 after 2 years and another $30,000 after 3 years. Its target rate of return is 12%. Calculate the present value of these future returns, and explain what this present value signifies.

Answer

(a)

Year	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value* $
2	40,000	$\frac{1}{(1.12)^2} = 0.797$	31,880
3	30,000	$\frac{1}{(1.12)^3} = 0.712$	21,360
		Total PV	53,240

(b) The present value of the future returns, discounted at 12%, is $53,240. This means that if Spender Ltd can invest now to earn a return of 12% on its investments, it would have to invest $53,240 now to earn $40,000 after 2 years plus $30,000 after 3 years.

1.3 The cost of capital

The **cost of capital** has two aspects to it.

(a) It is the **cost of funds** that a company raises and uses.

(b) The return that investors expect to be paid for putting funds into the company. It is therefore the **minimum return** that a company should make from its own investments, to earn the cash flows out of which investors can be paid their return.

The cost of capital can therefore be measured by studying the returns required by investors, and used to derive a **discount rate** for DCF analysis and investment appraisal.

We will study the cost of capital in detail in Part F of this study text.

2 The net present value method

12/07, 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

The **NPV method** of investment appraisal is to accept projects with a positive NPV. Ensure that you are aware of the three conventions concerning the timings of cash flows.

An **annuity** is a constant cash flow for a number of years. A **perpetuity** is a constant cash flow forever.

Key terms

Net present value or **NPV** is the value obtained by discounting all cash outflows and inflows of a capital investment project by a chosen target rate of return or **cost of capital.**

The NPV method compares the **present value** of all the **cash inflows** from an investment with the **present value** of all the **cash outflows** from an investment. The NPV is thus calculated as the PV of **cash inflows** minus the PV of **cash outflows**.

NPV	
NPV positive	Return from investment's cash inflows in excess of cost of capital ⇒ undertake project
NPV negative	Return from investment's cash inflows below cost of capital ⇒ don't undertake project
NPV 0	Return from investment's cash inflows same as cost of capital

Note. We assume that the cost of capital is the organisation's target rate of return.

2.1 Example: NPV

A company is considering a capital investment, where the estimated cash flows are as follows.

Year	*Cash flow*
	$
0 (ie now)	(100,000)
1	60,000
2	80,000
3	40,000
4	30,000

The company's cost of capital is 15%. You are required to calculate the NPV of the project and to assess whether it should be undertaken.

Solution

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 15%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(100,000)	1.000	(100,000)
1	60,000	$\frac{1}{(1.15)} = 0.870$	52,200
2	80,000	$\frac{1}{(1.15)^2} = 0.756$	60,480
3	40,000	$\frac{1}{(1.15)^3} = 0.658$	26,320
4	30,000	$\frac{1}{(1.15)^4} = 0.572$	17,160
		NPV =	56,160

(*Note*. The discount factor for any cash flow 'now' (year 0) is always = 1, regardless of what the cost of capital is.) The PV of cash inflows exceeds the PV of cash outflows by $56,160, which means that the project will earn a DCF yield in excess of 15%. It should therefore be undertaken.

2.2 Timing of cash flows: conventions used in DCF

Discounted cash flow applies discounting arithmetic to the relevant costs and benefits of an investment project. Discounting, which reduces the value of future cash flows to a present value equivalent, is clearly concerned with the timing of the cash flows. As a general rule, the following guidelines may be applied.

(a) A cash outlay to be incurred at the beginning of an investment project **('now')** occurs in **year 0**. The present value of $1 now, in year 0, is $1 regardless of the value of r.

(b) A cash outlay, saving or inflow which occurs **during the course of a time period** (say, one year) is assumed to occur all at once **at the end of the time period** (at the end of the year). Receipts of $10,000 during year 1 are therefore taken to occur at the end of year 1.

(c) A cash outlay or receipt which occurs **at the beginning of a time period** (say at the beginning of one year) is taken to occur **at the end of the previous year**. Therefore a cash outlay of $5,000 at the beginning of year 2 is taken to occur at the end of year 1.

Exam focus point

Examiners' reports suggest that candidates often get the timing of cash flows wrong, particularly initial investment, working capital and tax.

2.3 Discount tables for the PV of $1

The discount factor that we use in discounting is $\frac{1}{(1+r)^n} = (1+r)^{-n}$

Instead of having to calculate this factor every time we can use tables. Discount tables for the present value of $1, for different values of r and n, are shown in the Appendix to this Study Text. Use these tables to work out your own solution to the following question.

Exam focus point

Remember that interest should *not* be included in the calculation; it is allowed for in the discount rate.

Question

Net present value

LCH manufactures product X which it sells for $5 per unit. Variable costs of production are currently $3 per unit, and fixed costs 50c per unit. A new machine is available which would cost $90,000 but which could be used to make product X for a variable cost of only $2.50 per unit. Fixed costs, however, would increase by $7,500 per annum as a direct result of purchasing the machine. The machine would have an expected life of 4 years and a resale value after that time of $10,000. Sales of product X are estimated to be 75,000 units per annum. LCH expects to earn at least 12% per annum from its investments. Ignore taxation.

You are required to decide whether LCH should purchase the machine.

Answer

Savings are 75,000 × ($3 – $2.50) = $37,500 per annum.

Additional costs are $7,500 per annum.

Net cash savings are therefore $30,000 per annum. (Remember, depreciation is not a cash flow and must be ignored as a 'cost'.)

The first step in calculating an NPV is to establish the relevant costs year by year. All future cash flows arising as a direct consequence of the decision should be taken into account. It is assumed that the machine will be sold for $10,000 at the end of year 4.

Year	*Cash flow*	*PV factor12%*	*PV of cash flow*
	$		$
0	(90,000)	1.000	(90,000)
1	30,000	0.893	26,790
2	30,000	0.797	23,910
3	30,000	0.712	21,360
4	40,000	0.636	25,440
		NPV =	+7,500

The NPV is positive and so the project is expected to earn more than 12% per annum and is therefore acceptable.

2.4 Annuity tables

In the previous exercise, the calculations could have been simplified for years 1-3 as follows.

$$\begin{array}{rl} & 30{,}000 \times 0.893 \\ + & 30{,}000 \times 0.797 \\ + & 30{,}000 \times 0.712 \\ \hline = & 30{,}000 \times 2.402 \end{array}$$

Where there is a **constant cash flow** from year to year, we can calculate the present value by adding together the discount factors for the individual years.

These total factors could be described as 'same cash flow per annum' factors, 'cumulative present value' factors or **'annuity' factors**. They are shown in the table for cumulative PV of $1 factors which is shown in the Appendix to this Study Text (2.402, for example, is in the column for 12% per annum and the row for year 3.)

Question

Annuities

If you have not used them before, check that you can understand annuity tables by trying the following exercise.

(a) What is the present value of $1,000 in contribution earned each year from years 1-10, when the required return on investment is 11%?

(b) What is the present value of $2,000 costs incurred each year from years 3-6 when the cost of capital is 5%?

Answer

(a) The PV of $1,000 earned each year from year 1-10 when the required earning rate of money is 11% is calculated as follows.

$1,000 × 5.889 = $5,889

(b) The PV of $2,000 in costs each year from years 3-6 when the cost of capital is 5% per annum is calculated as follows.

PV of $1 per annum for years 1 – 6 at 5% =	5.076
Less PV of $1 per annum for years 1 – 2 at 5% =	1.859
PV of $1 per annum for years 3 – 6 =	3.217

PV = $2,000 × 3.217 = $6,434

2.5 Annual cash flows in perpetuity

You need to know how to calculate the cumulative present value of $1 per annum for every year in perpetuity (that is, forever).

Formula to learn

When the cost of capital is r, the cumulative PV of $1 per annum in perpetuity is **$1/r**.

For example, the PV of $1 per annum in perpetuity at a discount rate of 10% would be $1/0.10 = $10.

Similarly, the PV of $1 per annum in perpetuity at a discount rate of 15% would be $1/0.15 = $6.67 and at a discount rate of 20% it would be $1/0.20 = $5.

Question

Perpetuities

An organisation with a cost of capital of 14% is considering investing in a project costing $500,000 that would yield cash inflows of $100,000 per annum in perpetuity.

Required

Assess whether the project should be undertaken.

Answer

Year	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor14%*	*Present value* $
0	(500,000)	1.000	(500,000)
1–∞	100,000	1/0.14 = 7.143	714,300
		NPV =	214,300

The NPV is positive and so the project should be undertaken.

Exam focus point

Examiners have often commented that candidates are often unable to evaluate cash flows in perpetuity.

2.6 NPV and shareholder wealth maximisation

If a project has a positive NPV it offers a **higher return** than the return required by the company to provide satisfactory returns to its sources of finance. This means that the **company's value** is increased and the project contributes to shareholder wealth maximisation.

3 The internal rate of return method 12/07, 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The **IRR method** of investment appraisal is to accept projects whose IRR (the rate at which the NPV is zero) exceeds a target rate of return. The IRR is calculated using interpolation.

Using the **NPV method of discounted cash flow**, present values are calculated by discounting at a target rate of return, or cost of capital, and the difference between the PV of costs and the PV of benefits is the NPV. In contrast, the **internal rate of return (IRR)** method is to calculate the **exact DCF rate of return** which the project is expected to achieve, in other words the rate at which the **NPV is zero**. If the expected rate of return (the IRR or DCF yield) **exceeds** a **target rate** of return, the project would be worth undertaking (ignoring risk and uncertainty factors).

Without a computer or calculator program, the calculation of the internal rate of return is made using a hit-and-miss technique known as the interpolation method.

Step 1 Calculate the net present value using the company's cost of capital.

Step 2 Having calculated the NPV using the company's cost of capital, calculate the NPV using a second discount rate.

(a) If the NPV is **positive**, use a second rate that is **greater** than the first rate
(b) If the NPV is **negative**, use a second rate that is **less** than the first rate

Step 3 Use the two NPV values to **estimate the IRR**. The formula to apply is as follows.

Formula to learn

$$\text{IRR} \approx a + \left(\left(\frac{NPV_a}{NPV_a - NPV_b}\right)(b-a)\right)\%$$

where a = the lower of the two rates of return used
b = the higher of the two rates of return used
NPV_a = the NPV obtained using rate a
NPV_b = the NPV obtained using rate b

Note. Ideally NPV_a will be a positive value and NPV_b will be negative. (If NPV_b is negative, then in the equation above you will be subtracting a negative, ie treating it as an added positive).

Exam focus point

Do not worry if you have two positive or two negative values, since the above formula will extrapolate as well as interpolate. In the exam you will not have time to calculate NPVs using more than two rates.

3.1 Example: the IRR method

A company is trying to decide whether to buy a machine for $80,000 which will save costs of $20,000 per annum for 5 years and which will have a resale value of $10,000 at the end of year 5. If it is the company's policy to undertake projects only if they are expected to yield a DCF return of 10% or more, ascertain whether this project be undertaken.

Solution

Step 1 Calculate the first NPV, using the company's cost of capital of 10%

Year	*Cash flow*	*PV factor 10%*	*PV of cash flow*
	$		$
0	(80,000)	1.000	(80,000)
1–5	20,000	3.791	75,820
5	10,000	0.621	6,210
		NPV =	2,030

This is positive, which means that the IRR is more than 10%.

Step 2 Calculate the second NPV, using a rate that is **greater** than the first rate, as the first rate gave a positive answer.

Suppose we try 12%.

Year	*Cash flow*	*PV factor12%*	*PV of cash flow*
	$		$
0	(80,000)	1.000	(80,000)
1–5	20,000	3.605	72,100
5	10,000	0.567	5,670
		NPV =	(2,230)

This is fairly close to zero and **negative**. The IRR is therefore greater than 10% (positive NPV of $2,030) but less than 12% (negative NPV of $2,230).

Step 3 Use the two NPV values to estimate the IRR.

The interpolation method assumes that the NPV rises in linear fashion between the two NPVs close to 0. The IRR is therefore assumed to be on a straight line between NPV = $2,030 at 10% and NPV = –$2,230 at 12%.

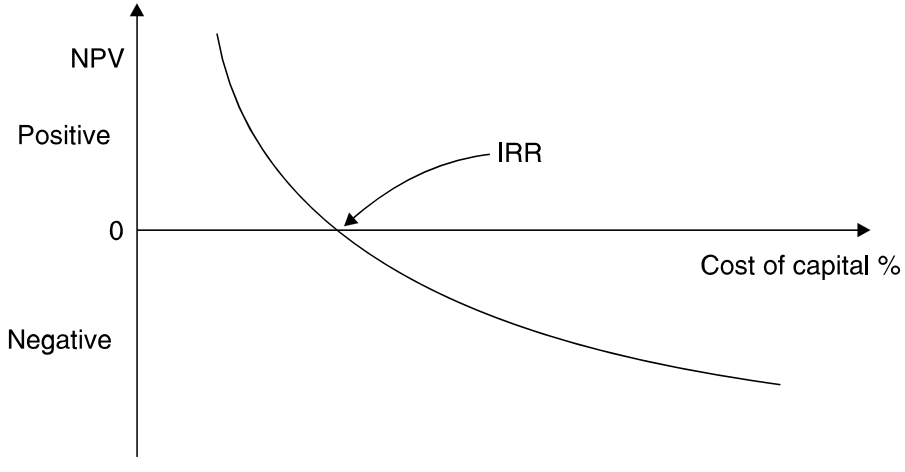
Using the formula

$$\text{IRR} \approx a + \left(\left(\frac{\text{NPV}_a}{\text{NPV}_a - \text{NPV}_b}\right)(b-a)\right)\%$$

$$\text{IRR} \approx 10 + \left[\frac{2{,}030}{2{,}030 + 2{,}230} \times (12-10)\right]\% = 10.95\%, \text{ say } 11\%$$

If it is company policy to undertake investments which are expected to yield 10% or more, this project would be undertaken.

If we were to draw a graph of a 'typical' capital project, with a negative cash flow at the start of the project, and positive net cash flows afterwards up to the end of the project, we could draw a graph of the project's NPV at different costs of capital. It would look like Figure 1.



If we use a cost of capital where the NPV is slightly positive, and use another cost of capital where it is slightly negative, we can estimate the IRR – where the NPV is zero – by drawing a straight line between the two points on the graph that we have calculated.

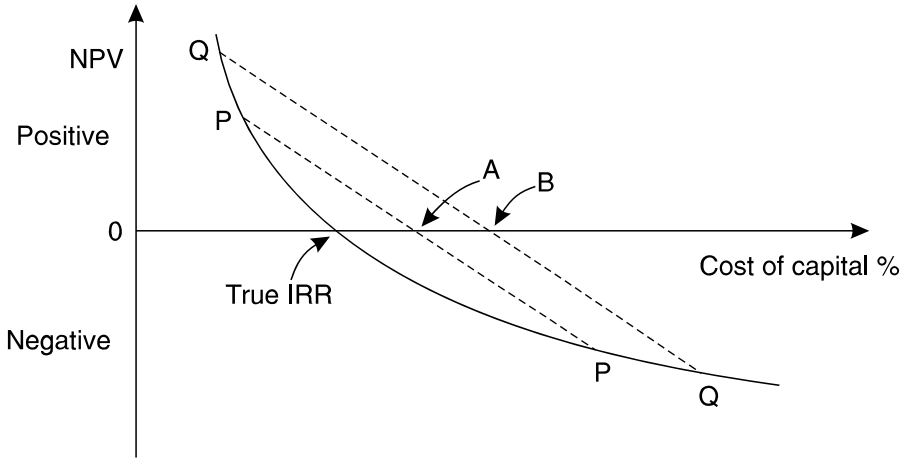


Figure 2

Consider Figure 2.

(a) If we establish the NPVs at the two points P, we would estimate the IRR to be at point A.
(b) If we establish the NPVs at the two points Q, we would estimate the IRR to be at point B.

The closer our NPVs are to zero, the closer our estimate will be to the true IRR.

Question

IRR

Find the IRR of the project given below and state whether the project should be accepted if the company requires a minimum return of 17%.

Time		$
0	Investment	(4,000)
1	Receipts	1,200
2	"	1,410
3	"	1,875
4	"	1,150

Answer

Time	*Cash flow* $	*Try 17% Discount factor*	*Present value* $	*Try 14% Discount factor*	*Present value* $
0	(4,000)	1.000	(4,000)	1.000	(4,000)
1	1,200	0.855	1,026	0.877	1,052
2	1,410	0.731	1,031	0.769	1,084
3	1,875	0.624	1,170	0.675	1,266
4	1,150	0.534	614	0.592	681
			NPV = (159)		NPV = (83)

The IRR must be less than 17%, but higher than 14%. The NPVs at these two costs of capital will be used to estimate the IRR.

Using the interpolation formula:

$$\text{IRR} = 14\% + \left[\frac{83}{83+159} \times (17\% - 14\%)\right] = 15.03\%$$

The project should be rejected as the IRR is less than the minimum return demanded.

4 NPV and IRR compared

Pilot paper, 6/08

FAST FORWARD

There are advantages and disadvantages to each appraisal method. Make sure that you can discuss them.

Given that there are two methods of using DCF, the NPV method and the IRR method, the relative merits of each method have to be considered.

4.1 Advantages and disadvantages of IRR method

The main advantage of the IRR method is that the information it provides is **more easily understood** by managers, especially non-financial managers. For example, it is fairly easy to understand the meaning of the following statement.

> 'The project will be expected to have an initial capital outlay of $100,000, and to earn a yield of 25%. This is in excess of the target yield of 15% for investments.'

It is not so easy to understand the meaning of this statement.

> 'The project will cost $100,000 and have an NPV of $30,000 when discounted at the minimum required rate of 15%.'

However managers may **confuse IRR** and accounting return on capital employed, **ROCE**.

The IRR method **ignores** the **relative size** of investments. Both the following projects have an IRR of 18%.

	Project A	*Project B*
	$	$
Cost, year 0	350,000	35,000
Annual savings, years 1-6	100,000	10,000

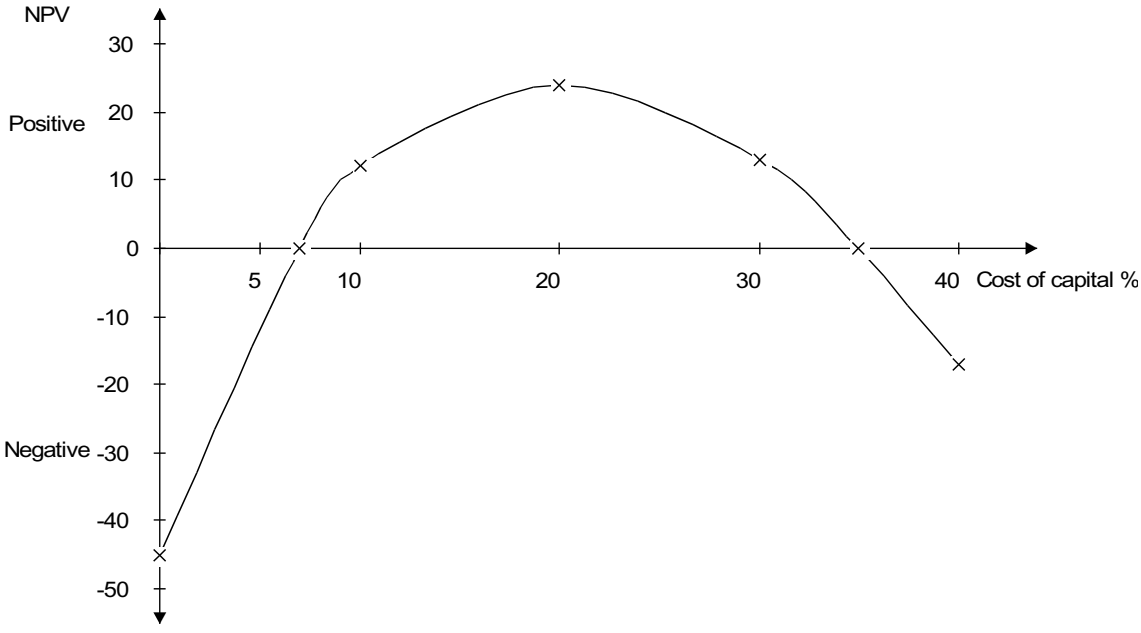
Clearly, project A is bigger (ten times as big) and so more 'profitable' but if the only information on which the projects were judged were to be their IRR of 18%, project B would be made to seem just as beneficial as project A, which is not the case.

4.2 Non-conventional cash flows

The projects we have considered so far have had conventional cash flows (an initial cash outflow followed by a series of inflows). When flows vary from this they are termed non-conventional. The following project has **non-conventional cash flows**.

Year	*Project X*
	$'000
0	(1,900)
1	4,590
2	(2,735)

Project X would have two IRRs as shown by this diagram.



The NPV rule suggests that the project is acceptable between costs of capital of 7% and 35%.

Suppose that the required rate on project X is 10% and that the IRR of 7% is used in deciding whether to accept or reject the project. The project would be rejected since it appears that it can only yield 7%.

The diagram shows, however, that between rates of 7% and 35% the project should be accepted. Using the IRR of 35% would produce the correct decision to accept the project. **Lack of knowledge** of **multiple IRRs** could therefore lead to serious errors in the decision of whether to accept or reject a project.

In general, if the sign of the net cash flow changes in successive periods, the calculations may produce as many IRRs as there are sign changes. IRR should not normally be used when there are non-conventional cash flows.

Exam focus point

> You need to be aware of the possibility of multiple IRRs, but the area is not examinable at a computational level.

4.3 Mutually exclusive projects

Mutually exclusive projects are two or more projects from which only one can be chosen. Examples include the choice of a factory location or the choice of just one of a number of machines. The IRR and NPV methods can, however, give conflicting rankings as to which project should be given priority.

Let us suppose that a company is considering two mutually exclusive options, option A and option B. The cash flows for each would be as follows.

Year		*Option A*	*Option B*
		$	$
0	Capital outlay	(10,200)	(35,250)
1	Net cash inflow	6,000	18,000
2	Net cash inflow	5,000	15,000
3	Net cash inflow	3,000	15,000

The company's cost of capital is 16%.

The NPV of each project is calculated below.

		Option A		Option B	
Year	*Discount factor*	*Cash flow*	*Present value*	*Cash flow*	*Present value*
		$	$	$	$
0	1.000	(10,200)	(10,200)	(35,250)	(35,250)
1	0.862	6,000	5,172	18,000	15,516
2	0.743	5,000	3,715	15,000	11,145
3	0.641	3,000	1,923	15,000	9,615
			NPV = +610		NPV = +1,026

The IRR of option A is 20% and the IRR of option B is only 18% (workings not shown.) On a comparison of NPVs, option B would be preferred, but on a comparison of IRRs, option A would be preferred.

If the projects were independent this would be irrelevant since under the NPV rule both would be accepted. With mutually exclusive projects, however, only one project can be accepted. Therefore the ranking is crucial and we cannot be indifferent to the outcomes of the NPV and IRR appraisal methods. The NPV method is preferable.

4.4 Reinvestment assumptions

An assumption underlying the NPV method is that any net cash inflows generated during the life of the project will be reinvested at the cost of capital (that is, the **discount rate**). The IRR method, on the other hand, assumes these cash flows can be reinvested to earn a return equal to the IRR of the original project.

In the example above, the NPV method assumes that the cash inflows of $6,000, $5,000 and $3,000 for option A will be reinvested at the cost of capital of 16% whereas the IRR method assumes they will be reinvested at 20%. In theory, a firm will have accepted all projects which provide a return in excess of the cost of capital. Any other funds which become available can only be reinvested at the cost of capital. This is the assumption implied in the NPV rule.

4.5 Summary of NPV and IRR comparison

(a) When cash flow patterns are conventional both methods gives the **same** accept or reject **decision**.

(b) The IRR method is **more easily understood**.

(c) NPV is **technically superior** to IRR and simpler to calculate.

(d) **IRR** and **accounting ROCE** can be **confused**.

(e) **IRR ignores** the **relative sizes** of investments.

(f) Where cash flow patterns are non-conventional, there may be **several IRRs** which decision makers must be aware of to avoid making the wrong decision.

(g) The **NPV method** is superior for **ranking mutually exclusive projects** in order of attractiveness.

(h) The **reinvestment assumption** underlying the **IRR** method cannot be **substantiated**.

(i) When **discount rates** are **expected to differ** over the life of the project, such **variations** can be incorporated easily into **NPV** calculations, but not into IRR calculations.

(j) Despite the advantages of the NPV method over the IRR method, the **IRR method** is **widely used** in practice.

5 Assessment of DCF methods of project appraisal

FAST FORWARD

DCF methods of appraisal have a number of **advantages** over other appraisal methods.

- The time value of money is taken into account.
- The method takes account of all of a project's cash flows.
- It allows for the timing of cash flows.
- There are universally accepted methods of calculating the NPV and IRR.

5.1 Advantages of DCF methods

DCF is a capital appraisal technique that is based on a concept known as the time value of money: the concept that $1 received today is not equal to $1 received in the future. Given the choice between receiving $100 today, and $100 in one year's time, most people would opt to receive $100 today because they could spend it or invest it to earn interest. If the interest rate was 10%, you could invest $100 today and it would be worth ($100 × 1.10) = $110 in one year's time.

There are, however, other reasons why a present $1 is worth more than a future $1.

(a) **Uncertainty.** Although there might be a promise of money to come in the future, it can never be certain that the money will be received until it has actually been paid.

(b) **Inflation** also means $1 now is worth more than $1 in the future because of inflation. The time value of money concept applies even if there is zero inflation but inflation obviously increases the discrepancy in value between monies received at different times.

Taking account of the time value of money (by discounting) is one of the principal advantages of the DCF appraisal method. Other advantages are as follows.

- The method uses **all relevant cash flows** relating to the project
- It allows for the **timing** of the cash flows
- There are **universally accepted methods** of calculating the NPV and the IRR

5.2 Problems with DCF methods

Although DCF methods are theoretically the best methods of investment appraisal, you should be aware of their limitations.

(a) DCF methods use **future cash flows** that may be difficult to forecast. Although other methods use these as well, arguably the problem is greater with DCF methods that take cash flows into the longer-term.

(b) The basic decision rule, accept all projects with a positive NPV, will not apply when the capital available for investment is **rationed**.

(c) The **cost of capital** used in DCF calculations may be **difficult to estimate**.

(d) The **cost of capital** may **change** over the life of the investment.

5.3 The use of appraisal methods in practice

One reason for the failure of many businesses to use NPV is that its (sometimes long-term) nature may conflict with judgements on a business that are concerned with its (short-term) profits. **Managers' remuneration** may depend upon the level of annual profits, and they may thus be unwilling to risk large initial expenditure on a project that only offers good returns in the significantly uncertain long-term.

In addition the NPV method is based on the assumption that businesses seek to **maximise** the **wealth of their shareholders**. As discussed previously, this may conflict with the interests of other stakeholders. Public sector organisations will be concerned with the **social opportunity costs.**

Even when **wealth maximisation** is the key objective, there may be factors that help maximise wealth, but cannot be quantified for NPV purposes, for example investment in a loss-making project for strategic reasons such as obtaining an initial share in an important market.

Exam focus point

The examiner has emphasised that investment appraisal is about modelling the real world situation and students struggle with how to improve the process. Any discussion of these techniques must be applied and not just a list.

Chapter Roundup

- There are two methods of using DCF to evaluate capital investments, the **NPV method** and the **IRR method.**
- The **NPV method** of investment appraisal is to accept projects with a positive NPV. Ensure that you are aware of the three conventions concerning the timings of cash flows.

  An **annuity** is a constant cash flow for a number of years. A **perpetuity** is a constant cash flow forever.
- The **IRR method** of investment appraisal is to accept projects whose IRR (the rate at which the NPV is zero) exceeds a target rate of return. The IRR is calculated using interpolation.
- There are advantages and disadvantages to each appraisal method. Make sure that you can discuss them.
- **DCF methods of appraisal** have a number of **advantages** over other appraisal methods.
  - The time value of money is taken into account.
  - The method takes account of all of a project's cash flows.
  - It allows for the timing of cash flows.
  - There are universally accepted methods of calculating the NPV and IRR.

Quick Quiz

1 What is the formula for calculating the future value of an investment plus accumulated interest after n time periods?

2 What is the formula for calculating the present value of a future sum of money out the end of n time periods?

3 List three cash flow timing conventions used in DCF.

4 What is the perpetuity formula?

5 List three advantages of the DCF method of project appraisal over other appraisal methods.

6 For a certain project, the net present value at a discount rate of 15% is $3,670, and at a rate of 18% the net present value is negative at ($1,390). What is the internal rate of return of the project?

A 15.7%
B 16.5%
C 16.6%
D 17.2%

7 *Tick the correct box to indicate whether or not the following items are included in the cash flows when determining the net present value of a project.*

		Included	*Not included*
(a)	The disposal value of equipment at the end of its life	☐	☐
(b)	Depreciation charges for the equipment	☐	☐
(c)	Research costs incurred prior to the appraisal	☐	☐
(d)	Interest payments on the loan to finance the investment	☐	☐

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 $FV = PV (1 + r)^n$

2 $PV = FV \frac{1}{(1+r)^n}$

3 (a) A cash outlay to be incurred at the beginning of an investment project occurs in year 0.

(b) A cash outlay, saving or inflow which occurs during the course of a time period is assumed to occur all at once at the end of the time period.

(c) A cash outlay or receipt that occurs at the beginning of a time period is taken to occur at the end of the previous year.

4 Annual cash flow/discount rate.

5 (a) It takes account of the time value of money.
(b) It uses all cash flows relating to a project.
(c) It allows for the timing of cash flows.

6 D 15% + {(3,670/[3,670 + 1,390]) × 3%} = 17.2%

7 (a) Included

(b) Not included (non-cash)

(c) Not included (past cost)

(d) Not included (included in the discount rate).

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q10	Introductory	n/a	45 mins
Q11	Examination	25	45 mins
Q12	Examination	25	45 mins

9

Allowing for inflation and taxation

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Allowing for inflation	D3 (a), 4 (a)
2 Allowing for taxation	D4 (b), (c)
3 NPV layout	D3, 4

Introduction

Having covered the more sophisticated of the investment appraisal techniques which are available in Chapter 8, we will be looking in this chapter at how to incorporate **inflation** and **taxation** into investment decisions. A key concept in this chapter which you must grasp is the difference between **nominal rates of return** and **real rates of return**, and when each is to be used as the discount rate.

The next chapter will consider how the **risk** associated with a project can be assessed and taken into account.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
D3	**Discounted cash flow (DCF) techniques**	
(a) (i)	Explain and apply concepts relating to interest and discounting, including: the relationship between interest rates and inflation, and between real and nominal interest rates	2
D4	**Allowing for inflation and taxation in DCF**	
(a)	Apply and discuss the real-terms and nominal terms approaches to investment appraisal.	2
(b)	Calculate the taxation effects of relevant cash flows, including the tax benefits of capital allowances and the tax liabilities of taxable profit.	2
(c)	Calculate and apply before- and after-tax discount rates.	2

Exam guide

As well as bringing inflation into your DCF calculations, you may be asked to explain the differences between real and nominal rates. You can expect to have to deal with inflation, tax and working capital in an NPV question.

1 Allowing for inflation

6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Inflation is a feature of all economies, and it must be accommodated in financial planning.

Real cash flows (ie adjusted for inflation) should be discounted at a **real discount rate**.

Nominal cash flows should be discounted at a nominal discount rate.

So far we have not considered the effect of **inflation** on the appraisal of capital investment proposals. As the inflation rate increases so will the minimum return required by an investor. For example, you might be happy with a return of 5% in an inflation-free world, but if inflation were running at 15% you would expect a considerably greater yield.

The **nominal interest rate** incorporates inflation. When the nominal rate of interest is higher than the rate of inflation, there is a **positive** real rate. When the rate of inflation is higher than the nominal rate of interest, the real rate of interest will be **negative**.

The relationship between real and nominal rates of interest is given by the Fisher formula:

Exam formula

$$(1 + i) = (1 + r)(1 + h)$$

Where h = rate of inflation
r = real rate of interest
i = nominal (money) rate of interest

1.1 Example: Inflation (1)

A company is considering investing in a project with the following cash flows.

Time	*Actual cash flows*
	$
0	(15,000)
1	9,000
2	8,000
3	7,000

The company requires a minimum return of 20% under the present and anticipated conditions. Inflation is currently running at 10% a year, and this rate of inflation is expected to continue indefinitely. Should the company go ahead with the project?

Let us first look at the company's required rate of return. Suppose that it invested $1,000 for one year on 1 January, then on 31 December it would require a minimum return of $200. With the initial investment of $1,000, the total value of the investment by 31 December must therefore increase to $1,200. During the course of the year the purchasing value of the dollar would fall due to inflation. We can restate the amount received on 31 December in terms of the purchasing power of the dollar at 1 January as follows.

$$\text{Amount received on 31 December in terms of the value of the pound at 1 January} = \frac{\$1{,}200}{(1.10)^1} = \$1{,}091$$

In terms of the value of the dollar at 1 January, the company would make a profit of $91 which represents a rate of return of 9.1% in 'today's money' terms. This is **the real rate of return**. The required rate of 20% is a **nominal rate of return** (sometimes called a **money rate of return**). The **nominal rate** measures the return in terms of the **dollar** which is, of course, falling in value. The **real rate** measures the return in **constant price level** terms.

The two rates of return and the inflation rate are linked by the equation, $(1 + i) = (1 + r)(1 + h)$ where all rates are expressed as proportions.

In our example,

$$(1 + 0.2) = (1 + r)(1 + 0.1)$$

$$1 + r = \frac{1.2}{1.1} = 1.091$$

$$r = 9.1\%$$

Exam focus point

> You may be asked in the exam to explain the difference between a real and nominal terms analysis.

1.2 Do we use the real rate or the nominal rate?

The rule is as follows.

(a) If the cash flows are expressed in terms of the **actual number of dollars** that will be **received** or **paid** on the **various future dates**, we use the **nominal rate** for discounting.

(b) If the cash flows are expressed in terms of the **value of the dollar at time 0** (that is, in constant price level terms), we use the **real rate**.

The cash flows given above are expressed in terms of the **actual number** of **dollars** that will be received or paid at the relevant dates (nominal cash flows). We should, therefore, discount them using the **nominal rate of return**.

Time	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 20%*	*PV*
	$		$
0	(15,000)	1.000	(15,000)
1	9,000	0.833	7,497
2	8,000	0.694	5,552
3	7,000	0.579	4,053
			2,102

The project has a positive net present value of $2,102.

The future cash flows can be re-expressed in terms of the value of the dollar at time 0 as follows, given inflation at 10% a year.

Time	*Actual cash flow*	*Cash flow at time 0 price level*		
	$			$
0	(15,000)			(15,000)
1	9,000	$9{,}000 \times \frac{1}{1.10}$	=	8,182
2	8,000	$8{,}000 \times \frac{1}{(1.10)^2}$	=	6,612
3	7,000	$7{,}000 \times \frac{1}{(1.10)^3}$	=	5,259

The cash flows expressed in terms of the value of the dollar at time 0 (real cash flows) can now be discounted using the real rate of 9.1%.

Time	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 9.1%*	*PV*
	$		$
0	(15,000)	1.00	(15,000)
1	8,182	$\frac{1}{1.091}$	7,500
2	6,612	$\frac{1}{(1.091)^2}$	5,555
3	5,259	$\frac{1}{(1.091)^3}$	4,050
			NPV = 2,105

The NPV is the same as before (and the present value of the cash flow in each year is the same as before) apart from rounding errors.

1.3 The advantages and misuses of real values and a real rate of return

Although generally companies should discount money values at the nominal cost of capital, there are some advantages of using real values discounted at a real cost of capital.

(a) When all costs and benefits rise at the same rate of price inflation, **real values** are the **same as current day values**, so that no **further adjustments** need be made to cash flows before discounting. In contrast, when nominal values are discounted at the nominal cost of capital, the **prices** in **future years** must be **calculated** before discounting can begin.

(b) The government might prefer to set a **real return** as a target for investments, as being more suitable than a commercial money rate of return.

1.3.1 Costs and benefits which inflate at different rates

Not all costs and benefits will rise in line with the general level of inflation. In such cases, we can apply the **nominal rate** to **inflated values** to determine a project's NPV.

1.4 Example: Inflation (2)

Rice is considering a project which would cost $5,000 now. The annual benefits, for four years, would be a fixed income of $2,500 a year, plus other savings of $500 a year in year 1, rising by 5% each year because of inflation. Running costs will be $1,000 in the first year, but would increase at 10% each year because of inflating labour costs. The general rate of inflation is expected to be 7½% and the company's required nominal rate of return is 16%. Is the project worthwhile? Ignore taxation.

Solution

The cash flows at inflated values are as follows.

Year	*Fixed income*	*Other savings*	*Running costs*	*Net cash flow*
	$	$	$	$
1	2,500	500	1,000	2,000
2	2,500	525	1,100	1,925
3	2,500	551	1,210	1,841
4	2,500	579	1,331	1,748

The NPV of the project is as follows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 16%*	*PV*
	$		$
0	(5,000)	1.000	(5,000)
1	2,000	0.862	1,724
2	1,925	0.743	1,430
3	1,841	0.641	1,180
4	1,748	0.552	965
			+ 299

The NPV is positive and the project would seem therefore to be worthwhile.

1.4.1 Variations in the expected rate of inflation

If the rate of inflation is expected to change, the calculation of the nominal cost of capital is slightly more complicated.

1.5 Example: Inflation (3)

Mr Gable has just received a dividend of $1,000 on his shareholding in Gonwithy Windmills. The market value of the shares is $8,000 ex div. What is the (nominal) cost of the equity capital, if dividends are expected to rise because of inflation by 10% in years 1, 2 and 3, before levelling off at this year 3 amount?

Solution

The nominal cost of equity capital is the internal rate of return of the following cash flows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*PV factor 15%*	*PV at 15%*	*PV factor 20%*	*PV at 20%*
	$		$		$
0	(8,000)	1.000	(8,000)	1.000	(8,000)
1	1,100	0.870	957	0.833	916
2	1,210	0.756	915	0.694	840
3–∞*	1,331 pa	5.041	6,709	3.472	4,621
			581		(1,623)

The IRR is approximately $15\% + \left[\frac{581}{581 - -1{,}623} \times (20-15)\right]\% = 16.3\%$, say 16%

* The present value factor = (Factor 1 – ∞) – (Factor yrs 1-2).

For 15%

PV factor $= \frac{1}{0.15} - 1.626 = 5.041$

For 20%

PV factor $= \frac{1}{0.2} - 1.528 = 3.472$

1.6 Expectations of inflation and the effects of inflation

When managers evaluate a particular project, or when shareholders evaluate their investments, they can only guess at what the rate of inflation is going to be. Their expectations will probably be inaccurate, because it is extremely difficult to forecast the rate of inflation correctly. The only way in which uncertainty about inflation can be allowed for in project evaluation is by **risk** and **uncertainty analysis**. Plans should be made to obtain **'contingency funds',** for example a higher bank overdraft facility if the rate of inflation exceeds expectations.

Inflation may be **general,** affecting prices of all kinds, or **specific** to particular prices. Generalised inflation has the following effects.

(a) Since non current assets and stocks will increase in money value, the same quantities of assets must be financed by **increasing amounts** of capital.

(b) Inflation means higher costs and **higher selling prices**. The effect of higher prices on demand may **not** be **easy to predict**. A company that raises its prices by 10% because the general rate of inflation is running at 10% might suffer a serious fall in demand.

(c) Inflation, because it affects financing needs, is also likely to affect **gearing**, and so the **cost of capital**.

1.7 Mid-year and end of year money values

You might wonder why, in all the examples so far, the cash flows have been inflated to the end of year money prices. Inflation does not usually run at a steady rate.

In DCF calculations it is more appropriate to use **end of year money values**. This is because by convention, all **cash flows** are assumed to **occur** at the **end of the year**, and a discount factor appropriate to the end of the year is applied.

2 Allowing for taxation

12/07, 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Taxation is a major practical consideration for businesses. It is vital to take it into account in making decisions.

In investment appraisal, tax is often assumed to be payable **one year in arrears.** Tax-allowable depreciation details should be checked in any question you attempt.

So far, in looking at project appraisal, we have ignored **taxation**. However, payments of tax, or reductions of tax payments, are cash flows and ought to be considered in DCF analysis. Assumptions which may be stated in questions are as follows.

(a) Tax is payable in the year following the one in which the taxable profits are made. Thus, if a project increases taxable profits by $10,000 in year 2, there will be a tax payment, assuming tax at 30%, of $3,000 in year 3.

(b) Net cash flows from a project should be considered as the **taxable profits** (not just the taxable revenues) arising from the project (unless an indication is given to the contrary).

Exam focus point

Check any question involving tax carefully to see what assumptions about tax rates are made. Also look out for questions which state that tax is payable in the same year as that in which the profits arise.

2.1 Tax-allowable depreciation

Tax-allowable depreciation (capital allowances) is used to reduce taxable profits, and the consequent reduction in a tax payment should be treated as a **cash saving** arising from the acceptance of a project.

For example, suppose tax-allowable depreciation is allowed on the cost of **plant and machinery** at the rate of 25% on a **reducing balance** basis. Thus if a company purchases plant costing $80,000, the subsequent writing down allowances would be as follows.

Year		Tax-allowable depreciation	Reducing balance
		$	$
1	(25% of cost)	20,000	60,000
2	(25% of RB)	15,000	45,000
3	(25% of RB)	11,250	33,750
4	(25% of RB)	8,438	25,312

When the plant is eventually sold, the difference between the sale price and the reducing balance amount at the time of sale will be treated as:

(a) a taxable profit if the sale price exceeds the reducing balance, and
(b) as a tax allowable loss if the reducing balance exceeds the sale price.

Exam focus point

Examination questions often assume that this loss will be available immediately, though in practice the balance less the sale price continues to be written off at 25% a year as part of a pool balance.

The cash saving on tax-allowable depreciation (or the cash payment for the charge) is calculated by multiplying the depreciation by the tax rate.

Assumptions about tax-allowable depreciation could be **simplified** in an **exam question**. For example, you might be told that tax-allowable depreciation can be claimed at the rate of 25% of cost on a straight line basis (that is, over four years).

There are two possible assumptions about the time when tax-allowable depreciation starts to be claimed.

(a) It can be assumed that the first claim occurs at the **start** of the **project** (at year 0)
(b) Alternatively it can be assumed that the **first claim** occurs **later** in the **first year**

Examination questions generally will indicate which of the two assumptions is required but you should state your assumptions clearly if you have to make assumptions. Assumption (b) is easier to use since there is one claim for tax-allowable depreciation for each year of the project.

Exam focus point

A common mistake in exams is to include the tax-allowable depreciation itself in the NPV calculation; it is the **tax effect** of the allowance that should be included.

2.2 Example: Taxation

A company is considering whether or not to purchase an item of machinery costing $40,000 payable immediately. It would have a life of four years, after which it would be sold for $5,000. The machinery would create annual cost savings of $14,000.

The company pays tax one year in arrears at an annual rate of 30% and can claim tax-allowable depreciation on a 25% reducing balance basis. A balancing allowance is claimed in the final year of operation. The company's cost of capital is 8%.

Should the machinery be purchased?

Solution

	Tax-allowable depreciation			Tax benefits
Year		$	Year	$
1	40,000 × 0.25	10,000	2	10,000 × 0.3 = 3,000
2	10,000 × 0.75	7,500	3	7,500 × 0.3 = 2,250
3	7,500 × 0.75	5,625	4	5,625 × 0.3 = 1,688
		23,125		
4	By difference	11,875	5	11,875 × 0.3 = 3,563
	40,000 – 5,000	35,000		

The extra tax payments on annual cost savings of $14,000 = 0.3 × 14,000 = $4,200

Calculation of NPV

	0	1	2	3	4	5
	$	$	$	$	$	$
Machine costs	(40,000)				5,000	
Cost savings		14,000	14,000	14,000	14,000	
Tax on cost saving			(4,200)	(4,200)	(4,200)	(4,200)
Tax benefits from tax allowable depreciation			3,000	2,250	1,688	3,563
After-tax cash flow	(40,000)	14,000	12,800	12,050	16,488	(637)
Discount factor @ 8%	1.000	0.926	0.857	0.794	0.735	0.681
Present values	(40,000)	12,964	10,970	9,568	12,119	(434)

The net present value is $5,187 and so the purchase appears to be worthwhile.

2.3 Taxation and DCF

The effect of taxation on capital budgeting is theoretically quite simple. Organisations must pay tax, and the effect of undertaking a project will be to increase or decrease tax payments each year. These incremental tax cash flows should be included in the cash flows of the project for discounting to arrive at the project's NPV.

When **taxation is ignored** in the DCF calculations, the discount rate will reflect the **pre-tax rate of return** required on capital investments. When **taxation is included** in the cash flows, a **post-tax required rate of return** should be used.

Question

DCF and taxation

A company is considering the purchase of an item of equipment, which would earn profits before tax of $25,000 a year. Depreciation charges would be $20,000 a year for six years. Tax-allowable depreciation would be $30,000 a year for the first four years. Tax is at 30%.

What would be the annual net cash inflows of the project:

(a) For the first four years
(b) For the fifth and sixth years

assuming that tax payments occur in the same year as the profits giving rise to them, and there is no balancing charge or allowance when the machine is scrapped at the end of the sixth year?

Answer

(a)

	Years 1–4	*Years 5–6*
	$	$
Profit before tax	25,000	25,000
Add back depreciation	20,000	20,000
Net cash inflow before tax	45,000	45,000
Less tax-allowable depreciation	30,000	0
	15,000	45,000
Tax at 30%	4,500	13,500

Years 1 – 4 Net cash inflow after tax $45,000 – $4,500 = $40,500

(b) Years 5 – 6 Net cash inflow after tax = $45,000 – $13,500 = $31,500

Question

Tax implications

A company is considering the purchase of a machine for $150,000. It would be sold after four years for an estimated realisable value of $50,000. By this time tax-allowable depreciation of $120,000 would have been claimed. The rate of tax is 30%.

What are the tax implications of the sale of the machine at the end of four years?

Answer

There will be a balancing charge on the sale of the machine of $(50,000 – (150,000 – 120,000)) = $20,000. This will give rise to a tax payment of 30% × $20,000 = $6,000.

Exam focus point

In reality, company income tax may be paid quarterly but the timing is simplified in a DCF calculation and an exam question will tell you what assumptions to use.

3 NPV layout

When answering an NPV question, you may find it helpful to use the following layout.

	Year 0	*Year 1*	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*
Sales receipts		X	X	X	
Costs		(X)	(X)	(X)	
Sales less costs		X	X	X	
Taxation		(X)	(X)	(X)	(X)
Capital expenditure	(X)				
Scrap value				X	
Working capital	(X)			X	
Tax benefit of tax dep'n		X	X	X	X
	(X)	X	X	X	(X)
Discount factors @ post-tax cost of capital	X	X	X	X	X
Present value	(X)	X	X	X	(X)

3.1 Working capital

6/08, 12/08

Increases in working capital reduce the net cash flow of the period to which they relate. The relevant cash flows are the incremental cash flows from one year's requirement to the next. So for example, if a project lasts for five years with a $20,000 working capital requirement at the end of year 1, rising to $30,000 at the end of year 2, the DCF calculation will show $20,000 as a year 1 cash outflow and $10,000 (30,000 – 20,000) as a year 2 cash outflow.

Working capital is assumed to be recovered at the end of the project. In the example above, this will be shown by a $30,000 cash inflow at year 5.

Question

NPV with working capital

Elsie is considering the manufacture of a new product which would involve the use of both a new machine (costing $150,000) and an existing machine, which cost $80,000 two years ago and has a current net book value of $60,000. There is sufficient capacity on this machine, which has so far been under-used.

Annual sales of the product would be 5,000 units, selling at $32 a unit. Unit costs would be as follows.

	$
Direct labour (4 hours at $2)	8
Direct materials	7
Fixed costs including depreciation	9
	24

The project would have a five year life, after which the new machine would have a net residual value of $10,000. Because direct labour is continually in short supply, labour resources would have to be diverted from other work which currently earns a contribution of $1.50 per direct labour hour. The fixed overhead absorption rate would be $2.25 an hour ($9 a unit) but actual expenditure on fixed overhead would not alter.

Working capital requirements would be $10,000 in the first year, rising to $15,000 in the second year and remaining at this level until the end of the project, when it will all be recovered. The company's cost of capital is 20%. Ignore taxation.

Is the project worthwhile?

Answer

Working		$
Years 1-5	Contribution from new product	
	5,000 × $(32 – 15)	85,000
	Less contribution forgone	
	5,000 × (4 × $1.50)	30,000
		55,000

Year	*0*	*1*	*1-5*	*5*
	$	$	$	$
Contribution			55,000	
Equipment	(150,000)			10,000
Working capital	(10,000)	(5,000)		15,000
Net cash flows	(160,000	(5,000)	55,000	25,000
Discount factor @ 20%	1.000	0.833	*2.991	0.402
Present value	(160,000)	(4,165)	164,505	10,050
NPV	10,390			

The NPV is positive and the project is worthwhile.

* The discount factor 2.991 applied to the annual contribution is an example of an annuity factor, which can be used for a series of equal annual cash flows starting at time 0. Annuity factors may be found from the table or from the formula, both given in the Appendix at the end of this text.

Exam focus point

The examiner has commented that the treatment of working capital investment has been a source of regular errors.

Chapter Roundup

- **Inflation** is a feature of all economies, and it must be accommodated in financial planning.

  Real cash flows (ie adjusted for inflation) should be discounted at a **real discount rate**.

  Nominal cash flows should be discounted at a nominal discount rate.

- **Taxation** is a major practical consideration for businesses. It is vital to take it into account in making decisions.

  In investment appraisal, tax is often assumed to be payable **one year in arrears.** Tax-allowable depreciation details should be checked in any question you attempt.

Quick Quiz

1 What is the relationship between the nominal rate of return, the real rate of return and the rate of inflation?

2 The nominal cost of capital is 11%. The expected annual rate of inflation is 5%. What is the real cost of capital?

3 A company wants a minimum real return of 3% a year on its investments. Inflation is expected to be 8% a year. What is the company's minimum nominal cost of capital?

4 Summarise briefly how taxation is taken into consideration in capital budgeting.

5 A company is appraising an investment that will save electricity costs. Electricity prices are expected to rise at a rate of 15% per annum in future, although the general inflation rate will be 10% per annum. The nominal cost of capital for the company is 20%. What is the appropriate discount rate to apply to the forecast actual nominal cash flows for electricity?

A 20.0%
B 22.0%
C 26.5%
D 32.0%

6 *Choose the correct words from those highlighted.*

Tax-allowable depreciation is used to (1) **increase/reduce** taxable profits, and the consequent reduction in a tax payment should be treated as a (2) **cash saving/cash payment** arising from the acceptance of a project.

When the plant is eventually sold, the difference between the sales price and the reducing balance amount will be treated as a (3) **taxable profit/tax allowable loss** if the sales price exceeds the reducing balance, and as a (4) **taxable profit/tax allowable loss** if the reducing balance exceeds the sales price.

7 If cash flows are expressed in terms of the actual number of pounds that will be received or paid on various future dates, should the nominal rate or real rate be used for discounting?

8 Red Co is considering the purchase of a machine for $2,190,000. It would be sold after four years for an estimated realisable value of $790,000. By this time tax-allowable depreciation of $1,450,000 would have been claimed. The rate of tax is 30%.

What is the cash flow arising as a result of tax implications on the sale of the machine at the end of four years?

A Inflow of $15,000
B Outflow of $50,000
C Outflow of $459,000
D Outflow of $15,000

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (1 + nominal rate) = (1 + real rate) × (1 + inflation rate)

2 $\frac{1.11}{1.05}$ = 1.057. The real cost of capital is 5.7%.

3 1.03 × 1.08 = 1.1124. The nominal cost of capital is 11.24%.

4 If tax is included in the cash flows, the post-tax rate of required return on capital investments should be used. If tax is ignored, the discount rate should reflect the pre-tax rate of return.

5 A The nominal rate of 20% is applied to the nominal cash flows.

6 (1) reduce
(2) cash saving
(3) taxable profit
(4) tax allowable loss

7 The nominal rate

8 D There will be a balancing charge on the sale of the machine of $(790,000 – (2,190,000 – 1,450,000)) = $50,000. This will give rise to a tax payment of 30% × $50,000 = $15,000.

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q13	Introductory	15	27 mins
Q14	Examination	25	45 mins

10

Project appraisal and risk

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Risk and uncertainty	D5 (a)
2 Sensitivity analysis	D5 (b)
3 Probability analysis	D5 (c)
4 Other risk adjustment techniques	D5 (d)

Introduction

This chapter will show some of the different methods of assessing and taking account of the **risk** and **uncertainty** associated with a project. The next chapter of this Study Text will consider two further project appraisal topics – **capital rationing** and **leasing**.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
D5	**Adjusting for risk and uncertainty in investment appraisal**	
(a)	Describe and discuss the difference between risk and uncertainty in relation to probabilities and increasing project life.	2
(b)	Apply sensitivity analysis to investment projects and discuss the usefulness of sensitivity analysis in assisting investment decisions.	2
(c)	Apply probability analysis to investment projects and discuss the usefulness of probability analysis in assisting investment decisions.	2
(d)	Apply and discuss other techniques of adjusting for risk and uncertainty in investment appraisal, including:	
(i)	Simulation	1
(ii)	Adjusted payback	1
(iii)	Risk-adjusted discount rates	2

Exam guide

Risk and uncertainty are increasingly examinable in financial management exams and sensitivity calculations are particularly important. You will need to be able to explain these techniques as well as be confident and competent with the calculations.

1 Risk and uncertainty 12/07

FAST FORWARD

Risk can be applied to a situation where there are several possible outcomes and, on the basis of past relevant experience, probabilities can be assigned to the various outcomes that could prevail.

Uncertainty can be applied to a situation where there are several possible outcomes but there is little past relevant experience to enable the probability of the possible outcomes to be predicted.

There are a wide range of techniques for incorporating risk into project appraisal.

A distinction should be made between the terms risk and uncertainty.

Risk	• Several possible outcomes • On basis of past relevant experience, assign probabilities to outcomes • Increases as the variability of returns increases
Uncertainty	• Several possible outcomes • Little past experience, thus difficult to assign probabilities to outcomes • Increases as project life increases

A risky situation is one where we can say that there is a 70% probability that returns from a project will be in excess of $100,000 but a 30% probability that returns will be less than $100,000. If, however, no information can be provided on the returns from the project, we are faced with an uncertain situation.

In general, risky projects are those whose future cash flows, and hence the project returns, are likely to be variable. The greater the variability is, the greater the risk. The problem of risk is more acute with capital investment decisions than other decisions for the following reasons.

(a) **Estimates** of capital expenditure might be for **several years ahead**, such as for major construction projects. Actual costs may escalate well above budget as the work progresses.

(b) Estimates of **benefits** will be for **several years ahead**, sometimes 10, 15 or 20 years ahead or even longer, and such long-term estimates can at best be approximations.

Exam focus point

Make sure you can explain the difference between risk and uncertainty. This was required in December 2007 and the examiner commented that it caused difficulties.

2 Sensitivity analysis 12/07

FAST FORWARD

Sensitivity analysis assesses how responsive the project's NPV is to changes in the variables used to calculate that NPV. One particular approach to sensitivity analysis, the certainty-equivalent approach, involves the conversion of the expected cash flows of the project to riskless equivalent amounts.

Key term

Sensitivity analysis is one method of analysing the risk surrounding a capital expenditure project and enables an assessment to be made of how responsive the project's NPV is to changes in the variables that are used to calculate that NPV.

The NPV could depend on a number of uncertain independent variables.

- Selling price
- Sales volume
- Cost of capital
- Initial cost
- Operating costs
- Benefits

The basic approach of sensitivity analysis is to **calculate the project's NPV** under **alternative assumptions** to determine how sensitive it is to changing conditions. An indication is thus provided of those variables to which the NPV is most sensitive (**critical variables**) and the **extent** to which those variables **may change** before the investment results in a negative NPV.

Sensitivity analysis therefore provides an indication of why a project might fail. Management should review critical variables to assess whether or not there is a strong possibility of events occurring which will lead to a negative NPV. Management should also pay particular attention to controlling those variables to which the NPV is particularly sensitive, once the decision has been taken to accept the investment.

A simple approach to deciding which variables the NPV is particularly sensitive to is to calculate the sensitivity of each variable:

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{\text{NPV}}{\text{Present value of project variable}} \%$$

The lower the percentage, the more sensitive is NPV to that project variable as the variable would need to change by a smaller amount to make the project non-viable.

2.1 Example: Sensitivity analysis

Kenney Co is considering a project with the following cash flows.

Year	*Initial investment*	*Variable costs*	*Cash inflows*	*Net cash flows*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
0	7,000			
1		(2,000)	6,500	4,500
2		(2,000)	6,500	4,500

Cash flows arise from selling 650,000 units at $10 per unit. Kenney Co has a cost of capital of 8%.

Required

Measure the sensitivity of the project to changes in variables.

Solution

The PVs of the cash flow are as follows.

Year	*Discount factor 8%*	*PV of initial investment*	*PV of variable costs*	*PV of cash inflows*	*PV of net cash flow*
		$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
0	1.000	(7,000)			(7,000)
1	0.926		(1,852)	6,019	4,167
2	0.857		(1,714)	5,571	3,857
		(7,000)	(3,566)	11,590	1,024

The project has a positive NPV and would appear to be worthwhile. The sensitivity of each project variable is as follows.

(a) **Initial investment**

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{1{,}024}{7{,}000} \times 100 = 14.6\%$$

(b) **Sales volume**

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{1{,}024}{11{,}590 - 3{,}566} \times 100 = 12.8\%$$

(c) **Selling price**

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{1{,}024}{11{,}590} \times 100 = 8.8\%$$

(d) **Variable costs**

$$\text{Sensitivity} = \frac{1{,}024}{3{,}566} \times 100 = 28.7\%$$

(e) **Cost of capital.** We need to calculate the IRR of the project. Let us try discount rates of 15% and 20%.

Year	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor 15%*	*PV*	*Discount factor 20%*	*PV*
	$'000		$'000		$'000
0	(7,000)	1	(7,000)	1	(7,000)
1	4,500	0.870	3,915	0.833	3,749
2	4,500	0.756	3,402	0.694	3,123
			NPV = 317		NPV = (128)

$$\text{IRR} = 0.15 + \left[\frac{317}{317 + 128} \times (0.20 - 0.15)\right] = 18.56\%$$

The cost of capital can therefore increase by 132% before the NPV becomes negative.

The elements to which the NPV appears to be most sensitive are the selling price followed by the sales volume. Management should thus pay particular attention to these factors so that they can be carefully monitored.

2.2 Weaknesses of this approach to sensitivity analysis

These are as follows.

(a) The method requires that **changes** in each key variable are **isolated.** However management is more interested in the combination of the effects of changes in two or more key variables.

(b) Looking at factors in isolation is unrealistic since they are often **interdependent**.

(c) Sensitivity analysis does not examine the **probability** that any particular variation in costs or revenues might occur.

(d) **Critical factors** may be those over which managers have no control.

(e) In itself it does not provide a decision rule. Parameters defining **acceptability** must be laid down by managers.

Question

Sensitivity analysis

Nevers Ure Co has a cost of capital of 8% and is considering a project with the following 'most-likely' cash flows.

Year	*Purchase of plant*	*Running costs*	*Savings*
	$	$	$
0	(7,000)		
1		2,000	6,000
2		2,500	7,000

Required

Measure the sensitivity (in percentages) of the project to changes in the levels of expected costs and savings.

Answer

The PVs of the cash flows are as follows.

Year	*Discount factor 8%*	*PV of plant cost*	*PV of running costs*	*PV of savings*	*PV of net cash flow*
		$	$	$	$
0	1.000	(7,000)			(7,000)
1	0.926		(1,852)	5,556	3,704
2	0.857		(2,143)	5,999	3,856
		(7,000)	(3,995)	11,555	560

The project has a positive NPV and would appear to be worthwhile. Sensitivity of the project to changes in the levels of expected costs and savings is as follows.

(a) **Plant costs sensitivity** = $\frac{560}{7,000} \times 100 = 8\%$

(b) **Running costs sensitivity** = $\frac{560}{3,995} \times 100 = 14\%$

(c) **Savings sensitivity** = $\frac{560}{11,555} \times 100 = 4.8\%$

Exam focus point

Examiners have commented that sensitivity analysis is often confused with the internal rate of return.

2.3 The certainty-equivalent approach

Another method is the **certainty-equivalent approach**. By this method, the expected cash flows of the project are **converted to riskless equivalent amounts**. The greater the risk of an expected cash flow, the smaller the certainty-equivalent value (for receipts) or the larger the certainty equivalent value (for payments).

As the cash flows are reduced to supposedly certain amounts, they should be discounted at a **risk free** rate.

2.4 Example: Certainty-equivalent approach

Dark Ages Co, whose cost of capital is 10%, is considering a project with the following expected cash flows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 10%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(10,000)	1.000	(10,000)
1	7,000	0.909	6,363
2	5,000	0.826	4,130
3	5,000	0.751	3,755
		NPV =	+4,248

The project seems to be worthwhile. However, because of the uncertainty about the future cash receipts, the management decides to reduce them to 'certainty-equivalents' by taking only 70%, 60% and 50% of the years 1, 2 and 3 cash flows respectively. The risk free rate is 5%.

On the basis of the information set out above, assess whether the project is worthwhile.

Solution

The risk-adjusted NPV of the project is as follows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 5%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(10,000)	1.000	(10,000)
1	4,900	0.952	4,665
2	3,000	0.907	2,721
3	2,500	0.864	2,160
		NPV =	(454)

The project is too risky and should be rejected.

The disadvantage of the 'certainty-equivalent' approach is that the amount of the adjustment to each cash flow is decided **subjectively**.

3 Probability analysis 12/07

FAST FORWARD

A **probability analysis** of expected cash flows can often be estimated and used both to calculate an expected NPV and to measure risk.

A **probability distribution** of '**expected cash flows'** can often be estimated, recognising there are several possible outcomes, not just one. This may be used to do the following.

Step 1 Calculate an expected value of the NPV

Step 2 Measure risk, for example in the following ways.

(a) By calculating the worst possible outcome and its probability.
(b) By calculating the probability that the project will fail to achieve a positive NPV.
(c) By calculating the standard deviation of the NPV.

3.1 Example: Probability estimates of cash flows

A company is considering a project involving the outlay of $300,000 which it estimates will generate cash flows over its two year life at the probabilities shown in the following table.

Cash flows for project

Year 1	*Cash flow*	*Probability*
	$	
	100,000	0.25
	200,000	0.50
	300,000	0.25
		1.00

Year 2

If cash flow in Year 1 is:	*there is a probability of:*	*that the cash flow in Year 2 will be:*
$		$
100,000	0.25	Nil
	0.50	100,000
	0.25	200,000
	1.00	
200,000	0.25	100,000
	0.50	200,000
	0.25	300,000
	1.00	
300,000	0.25	200,000
	0.50	300,000
	0.25	350,000
	1.00	

The company's cost of capital for this type of project is 10% DCF.

You are required to calculate the expected value (EV) of the project's NPV and the probability that the NPV will be negative.

Solution

Step 1

Calculate expected value of the NPV.

First we need to draw up a probability distribution of the expected cash flows. We begin by calculating the present values of the cash flows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 10%*	*Present value*
	$'000		$'000
1	100	0.909	90.9
1	200	0.909	181.8
1	300	0.909	272.7
2	100	0.826	82.6
2	200	0.826	165.2
2	300	0.826	247.8
2	350	0.826	289.1

Year 1 PV of cash flow	*Probability*	*Year 2 PV of cash flow*	*Probability*	*Joint probability*	*Total PV of cash inflows*	*EV of PV of cash inflows*
$'000		$'000			$'000	$'000
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(b) × (d)	(a) + (c)	
90.9	0.25	0.0	0.25	0.0625	90.9	5.681
90.9	0.25	82.6	0.50	0.1250	173.5	21.688
90.9	0.25	165.2	0.25	0.0625	256.1	16.006
181.8	0.50	82.6	0.25	0.1250	264.4	33.050
181.8	0.50	165.2	0.50	0.2500	347.0	86.750
181.8	0.50	247.8	0.25	0.1250	429.6	53.700
272.7	0.25	165.2	0.25	0.0625	437.9	27.369
272.7	0.25	247.8	0.50	0.1250	520.5	65.063
272.7	0.25	289.1	0.25	0.0625	561.8	35.113
						344.420

	$
EV of PV of cash inflows	344,420
Less project cost	300,000
EV of NPV	44,420

Step 2 Measure risk.

Since the EV of the NPV is positive, the project should go ahead unless the risk is unacceptably high. The probability that the project will have a negative NPV is the probability that the total PV of cash inflows is less than $300,000. From the column headed 'Total PV of cash inflows', we can establish that this probability is 0.0625 + 0.125 + 0.0625 + 0.125 = 0.375 or 37.5%. This might be considered an unacceptably high risk.

3.2 Problems with expected values

There are the following problems with using expected values in making investment decisions.

- An investment may be **one-off**, and 'expected' NPV may never actually occur
- **Assigning probabilities** to events is highly **subjective**
- Expected values **do not evaluate the range** of possible NPV outcomes

4 Other risk adjustment techniques

4.1 Simulation

FAST FORWARD

Other risk adjustment techniques include the use of simulation models, adjusted payback and risk-adjusted discount rates.

Simulation will overcome problems of having a very large number of possible outcomes, also the correlation of cash flows (a project which is successful in its early years is more likely to be successful in its later years).

4.2 Example: Simulation model

The following probability estimates have been prepared for a proposed project.

	Year	*Probability*	
			$
Cost of equipment	0	1.00	(40,000)
Revenue each year	1–5	0.15	40,000
		0.40	50,000
		0.30	55,000
		0.15	60,000
Running costs each year	1–5	0.10	25,000
		0.25	30,000
		0.35	35,000
		0.30	40,000

The cost of capital is 12%. Assess how a simulation model might be used to assess the project's NPV.

Solution

A simulation model could be constructed by assigning a range of random number digits to each possible value for each of the uncertain variables. The random numbers must exactly match their respective probabilities. This is achieved by working upwards cumulatively from the lowest to the highest cash flow values and assigning numbers that will correspond to probability groupings as follows.

Revenue				*Running costs*		
$	*Prob*	*Random numbers*		$	*Prob*	*Random numbers*
40,000	0.15	00 – 14	*	25,000	0.10	00 – 09
50,000	0.40	15 – 54	**	30,000	0.25	10 – 34
55,000	0.30	55 – 84	***	40,000	0.35	35 – 69
60,000	0.15	85 – 99		40,000	0.30	70 – 99

* Probability is 0.15 (15%). Random numbers are 15% of range 00 – 99.

** Probability is 0.40 (40%). Random numbers are 40% of range 00 – 99 but starting at 15.

*** Probability is 0.30 (30%). Random numbers are 30% of range 00 – 99 but starting at 55.

For revenue, the selection of a random number in the range 00 and 14 has a probability of 0.15. This probability represents revenue of $40,000. Numbers have been assigned to cash flows so that when numbers are selected at random, the cash flows have exactly the same probability of being selected as is indicated in their respective probability distribution above.

Random numbers would be generated, for example by a computer program, and these would be used to assign values to each of the uncertain variables.

For example, if random numbers 378420015689 were generated, the values assigned to the variables would be as follows.

	Revenue		*Costs*	
Calculation	*Random number*	*Value*	*Random number*	*Value*
		$		$
1	37	50,000	84	40,000
2	20	50,000	01	25,000
3	56	55,000	89	40,000

A computer would calculate the NPV may times over using the values established in this way with more random numbers, and the results would be analysed to provide the following.

(a) An **expected NPV** for the project
(b) A **statistical distribution** pattern for the possible variation in the NPV above or below this average

The decision whether to go ahead with the project would then be made on the basis of **expected return** and **risk**.

4.3 Adjusted payback

The payback method of investment appraisal, discussed in Chapter 7, recognises uncertainty in investment decisions by focusing on the near future. Short-term projects are preferred to long-term projects and liquidity is emphasised.

Adjusted payback uses **discounted cash flows**.

One way of dealing with risk is to **shorten** the payback period required. A **maximum payback period** can be set to reflect the fact that risk increases the longer the time period under consideration. However, the disadvantages of payback as an investment appraisal method (discussed in Section 4.2 of Chapter 7) mean that adjusted payback cannot be recommended as a method of adjusting for risk.

4.4 Risk-adjusted discount rates

Investors want higher returns for higher risk investments. The greater the risk attached to future returns, the greater the risk premium required. Investors also prefer cash now to later and require a higher return for longer time periods.

In investment appraisal, a **risk-adjusted discount rate** can be used for particular types or **risk classes** of investment projects to reflect their relative risks. For example, a **high discount rate** can be used so that a cash flow which occurs quite some time in the future will have less effect on the decision. Alternatively, with the launch of a new product, a higher **initial** risk premium may be used with a decrease in the discount rate as the product becomes established.

We will study risk-adjusted discount rates in more detail in Chapter 18.

Chapter Roundup

- **Risk** can be applied to a situation where there are several possible outcomes and, on the basis of past relevant experience, probabilities can be assigned to the various outcomes that could prevail.

  Uncertainty can be applied to a situation where there are several possible outcomes but there is little past relevant experience to enable the probability of the possible outcomes to be predicted.

  There are a wide range of techniques for incorporating risk into project appraisal.
- **Sensitivity analysis** assesses how responsive the project's NPV is to changes in the variables used to calculate that NPV. One particular approach to sensitivity analysis, the certainty-equivalent approach, involves the conversion of the expected cash flows of the project to riskless equivalent amounts.
- A **probability analysis** of expected cash flows can often be estimated and used both to calculate an expected NPV and to measure risk.
- Other risk adjustment techniques include the use of simulation models, adjusted payback and risk-adjusted discount rates.

Quick Quiz

1 Give three examples of uncertain independent variables upon which the NPV of a project may depend.

2 How are simulation models constructed?

3 Describe in a sentence each three ways in which managers can reduce risk.

4 Sensitivity analysis allows for uncertainty in project appraisal by assessing the probability of changes in the decision variables.

True ☐

False ☐

5 *Fill in the blanks.*

The ..... is where expected cashflows are converted to riskless equivalent amounts.

6 Give two examples of ways that risk can be measured in probability analysis.

7 Expected values can help an accountant evaluate the range of possible Net Present Value outcomes.

True ☐

False ☐

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (a) Selling price
(b) Sales volume
(c) Cost of capital
(d) Initial cost
(e) Operating costs
(f) Benefits

2 By assigning a range of random number digits to each possible value of each of the uncertain variables.

3 (a) Set maximum payback period.
(b) Use high discounting rate.
(c) Use sensitivity analysis to determine the critical factors within the decision-making process.
(d) Use pessimistic estimates.

4 False. Sensitivity analysis does not assess probability.

5 Certainty-equivalent approach.

6 Calculating the worst possible outcome and its probability.
Calculating the probability that the project will fail to achieve a positive NPV.

7 False

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q15	Introductory	n/a	30 mins

11 Specific investment decisions

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Lease or buy decisions	D6 (a)
2 Asset replacement decisions	D6 (b)
3 Capital rationing	D6 (c)

Introduction

In this chapter, we consider specific investment decisions such as whether to lease or buy an asset, when to replace an asset and how to assess projects when capital is a scarce resource.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
D6	**Specific investment decisions (Lease or buy; asset replacement; capital rationing)**	
(a)	Evaluate leasing and borrowing to buy using the before-and after-tax costs of debt.	2
(b)	Evaluate asset replacement decisions using equivalent annual cost.	2
(c)	Evaluate investment decisions under single period capital rationing, including:	2
(i)	The calculation of profitability indexes for divisible investment projects	
(ii)	The calculation of the NPV of combinations of non-divisible investment projects	
(iii)	A discussion of the reasons for capital rationing	

Exam guide

You may be asked to calculate the results of different options and careful, methodical workings will be essential. These calculations can be quite difficult and will need lots of practice.

PER alert

One of the competencies you require to fulfil performance objective 15 of the PER is the ability to investigate finance options available and analyse the costs and benefits of each option. You can apply the knowledge you obtain from this chapter of the text to help to demonstrate this competence.

1 Lease or buy decisions

FAST FORWARD

Leasing is a commonly used source of finance.

We distinguish three types of leasing:

- **Operating leases** (**lessor** responsible for maintaining asset)
- **Finance leases** (**lessee** responsible for maintenance)
- **Sale and leaseback** arrangements

1.1 The nature of leasing 12/07

Rather than buying an asset outright, using either available cash resources or borrowed funds, a business may lease an asset.

Key terms

Leasing is a contract between a lessor and a lessee for hire of a specific asset selected from a manufacturer or vendor of such assets by the lessee.

The **lessor** has ownership of the asset.

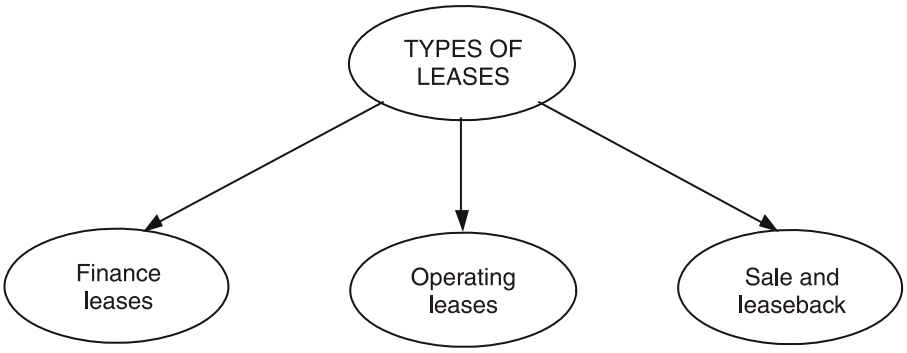
The **lessee** has possession and use of the asset on payment of specified rentals over a period.

1.1.1 Examples of lessors

- Banks
- Insurance companies

1.1.2 Types of asset leased

- Office equipment
- Computers
- Cars
- Commercial vehicles
- Aircraft
- Ships
- Buildings



1.2 Operating leases 12/07

Key term

> **Operating lease** is a lease where the lessor retains most of the risks and rewards of ownership.

Operating leases are rental agreements between a lessor and a lessee.

(a) The lessor **supplies** the equipment to the **lessee**.

(b) The **lessor** is **responsible** for **servicing and maintaining** the leased equipment

(c) The **period** of the lease is fairly **short**, **less** than the expected **economic life** of the asset. At the end of one lease agreement, the lessor can either lease the same equipment to someone else, and obtain a good rent for it, or sell the equipment second-hand

Much of the growth in the UK leasing business in recent years has been in operating leases.

1.3 Finance leases

Key term

> A **finance lease** is a lease that transfers substantially all of the risks and rewards of ownership of an asset to the lessee. It is an agreement between the lessee and the lessor for most or all of the asset's expected useful life.

There are other important characteristics of a finance lease.

(a) The lessee is responsible for the **upkeep**, **servicing** and **maintenance** of the asset.

(b) The lease has a **primary period** covering all or most of the useful economic life of the asset. At the end of this period, the lessor would not be able to lease the asset to someone else, because the asset would be worn out. The lessor must therefore ensure that the lease payments during the primary period pay for the **full cost** of the asset as well as providing the lessor with a **suitable return** on his investment.

(c) At the end of the primary period the lessee can normally continue to lease the asset for an indefinite secondary period, in return for a very low nominal rent, sometimes called a 'peppercorn rent'. Alternatively, the lessee might be allowed to sell the asset on a lessor's behalf (since the lessor is the owner) and perhaps to keep most of the sale proceeds.

1.4 Example: A motor lease

The primary period of the lease might be three years, with an agreement by the lessee to make three annual payments of $6,000 each. The lessee will be responsible for repairs and servicing, road tax, insurance and garaging. At the end of the primary period of the lease, the lessee may have the option either to continue leasing the car at a nominal rent (perhaps $250 a year) or to sell the car and pay the lessor 10% of the proceeds.

1.5 Sale and leaseback

Key term

Sale and leaseback is when a business that owns an asset agrees to sell the asset to a financial institution and lease it back on terms specified in the sale and leaseback agreement.

The business retains **use** of the asset but has the **funds** from the sale, whilst having to pay rent.

1.6 Attractions of leasing

Attractions include the following.

(a) The supplier of the equipment is **paid** in **full** at the beginning. The equipment is sold to the lessor, and other than guarantees, the supplier has no further financial concern about the asset.

(b) The lessor **invests finance** by purchasing assets from suppliers and makes a **return** out of the lease payments from the lessee. The lessor will also get capital allowances on his purchase of the equipment.

(c) Leasing may have advantages for the lessee:

  (i) The lessee may not have enough cash to pay for the asset, and would have difficulty obtaining a bank loan to buy it. If so the lessee has to rent the asset to obtain use of it at all.

  (ii) Finance leasing may be cheaper than a bank loan.

  (iii) The lessee may find the tax relief available advantageous.

Operating leases have further advantages.

(a) The leased equipment does not have to be shown in the **lessee's** published **statement of financial position**, and so the lessee's statement shows no increase in its gearing ratio.

(b) The equipment is leased for a **shorter period** than its expected useful life. In the case of high-technology equipment, if the equipment becomes out of date before the end of its expected life, the lessee does not have to keep on using it. The lessor will bear the risk of having to sell obsolete equipment secondhand.

A major growth area in operating leasing in the UK has been in computers and office equipment (such as photocopiers and fax machines) where technology is continually improving.

1.7 Lease or buy decisions

FAST FORWARD

The decision whether to **lease or buy** an asset is a **financing decision** which interacts with the investment decision to buy the asset. Identify the **least-cost financing option** by comparing the cash flows of purchasing and leasing. The cash flows are discounted at an **after-tax cost of borrowing**.

The decision whether to buy or lease an asset is made once the **decision to invest** in the asset has been made.

Discounted cash flow techniques are used to evaluate the lease or buy decision so that the **least-cost financing option** can be chosen.

The cost of capital that should be applied to the cash flows for the financing decision is the **cost of borrowing**. We assume that if the organisation decided to purchase the equipment, it would finance the

purchase by borrowing funds (rather than out of retained funds). We therefore compare the **cost of purchasing** with the c**ash flows of leasing** by applying this cost of borrowing to the financing cash flows.

The cash flows of purchasing **do not include the interest repayments on the loan** as these are dealt with via the cost of capital.

1.8 A simple example

Brown Co has decided to invest in a new machine which has a ten year life and no residual value. The machine can either be purchased now for $50,000, or it can be leased for ten years with lease rental payments of $8,000 per annum payable at the end of each year.

The cost of capital to be applied is 9% and taxation should be ignored.

Solution

Present value of leasing costs

PV = Annuity factor at 9% for 10 years × $8,000
= 6.418 × $8,000
= $51,344

If the machine was purchased now, it would cost $50,000. The purchase is therefore the least-cost financing option.

1.9 An example with taxation

Mallen and Mullins has decided to install a new milling machine. The machine costs $20,000 and it would have a useful life of five years with a trade-in value of $4,000 at the end of the fifth year. A decision has now to be taken on the method of financing the project.

(a) The company could purchase the machine for cash, using bank loan facilities on which the current rate of interest is 13% before tax.

(b) The company could lease the machine under an agreement which would entail payment of $4,800 at the end of each year for the next five years.

The rate of tax is 30%. If the machine is purchased, the company will be able to claim a tax depreciation allowance of 100% in Year 1. Tax is payable with a year's delay.

Solution

Cash flows are discounted at the after-tax cost of borrowing, which is at 13% × 70% = 9.1%, say 9%.

The present value (PV) of purchase costs

Year	*Item*	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor* 9%	*PV* $
0	Equipment cost	(20,000)	1.000	(20,000)
5	Trade-in value	4,000	0.650	2,600
2	Tax savings, from allowances 30% × $20,000	6,000	0.842	5,052
6	Balancing charge 30% × $4,000	(1,200)	0.596	(715)
			NPV of purchase	(13,063)

The PV of leasing costs

It is assumed that the lease payments are fully tax-allowable.

Year	Lease payment $	Savings in tax (30%) $	Discount factor 9%	PV $
1-5	(4,800) pa		3.890	(18,672)
2-6		1,440 pa	3.569 (W)	5,139
			NPV of leasing	(13,533)

Working

6 year cumulative present value factor 9%	4.486
1 Year present value factor 9%	(0.917)
	3.569

The cheapest option would be to purchase the machine.

An alternative method of making lease or buy decisions is to carry out a single financing calculation with the payments for one method being negative and the receipts being positive, and vice versa for the other method.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
	$m	$m	$m	$m	$m	$m	$m
Saved equipment cost	20,000						
Lost trade-in value						(4,000)	
Balancing charge							1,200
Lost tax savings from allowances			(6,000)				
Lease payments		(4,800)	(4,800)	(4,800)	(4,800)	(4,800)	
Tax allowances			1,440	1,440	1,440	1,440	1,440
Net cash flow	20,000	(4,800)	(9,360)	(3,360)	(3,360)	(7,360)	2,640
Discount factor 9%	1.000	0.917	0.842	0.772	0.708	0.650	0.596
PV	20,000	(4,402)	(7,881)	(2,594)	(2,379)	(4,784)	1,573
NPV	(467)						

The negative NPV indicates that the lease is unattractive and the purchasing decision is better, as the net savings from not leasing outweigh the net costs of purchasing.

Exam focus point

Remember that the decisions made by companies are not solely made according to the results of calculations like these. Other factors (short-term cash flow advantages, flexibility, use of different costs of capital) may be significant.

1.10 The position of the lessor

Exam focus point

So far, we have looked at examples of leasing decisions from the viewpoint of the lessee. You may be asked to evaluate a leasing arrangement from the position of the lessor. This is rather like a mirror image of the lessee's position.

The lessor will receive tax allowable depreciation on the expenditure, and the lease payments will be taxable income.

1.11 Example: Lessor's position

Continuing the same case of Mallen and Mullins, suppose that the lessor's required rate of return is 12% after tax. The lessor can claim 25% reducing balance tax depreciation. The lessor's cash flows will be as follows.

	Cash flow $	Discount factor 12%	PV $
Purchase costs			
Year 0	(20,000)	1.000	(20,000)
Year 5 trade-in	4,000	0.567	2,268
Tax savings			
Year 2	1,500	0.797	1,196
Year 3	1,125	0.712	801
Year 4	844	0.636	537
Year 5	633	0.567	359
Year 6	698	0.507	354
Lease payments: years 1-5	4,800	3.605	17,304
Tax on lease payments: years 2-6	(1,440)	3.218	(4,634)
NPV			(1,815)

Conclusion

The proposed level of leasing payments are not justifiable for the lessor if it seeks a required rate of return of 12%, since the resulting NPV is negative.

Question

Lease or buy

The management of a company has decided to acquire Machine X which costs $63,000 and has an operational life of four years. The expected scrap value would be zero. Tax is payable at 30% on operating cash flows one year in arrears. Tax allowable depreciation is available at 25% a year on a reducing balance basis.

Suppose that the company has the opportunity either to purchase the machine or to lease it under a finance lease arrangement, at an annual rent of $20,000 for four years, payable at the end of each year. The company can borrow to finance the acquisition at 10%. Should the company lease or buy the machine?

Answer

Working

Tax allowable depreciation

Year		$
1	(25% of $63,000)	15,750
2	(75% of $15,750)	11,813
3	(75% of $11,813)	8,859
		36,422
4	($63,000 – $36,422)	26,578

The financing decision will be appraised by discounting the relevant cash flows at the after-tax cost of borrowing, which is 10% × 70% = 7%.

(a) *Purchase option*

Year	*Item*	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor 7%*	*Present value* $
0	Cost of machine	(63,000)	1.000	(63,000)
	Tax saved from tax allowable depreciation			
2	30% × $15,750	4,725	0.873	4,125
3	30% × $11,813	3,544	0.816	2,892
4	30% × $8,859	2,658	0.763	2,028
5	30% × $26,578	7,973	0.713	5,685
				(48,270)

(b) *Leasing option*

It is assumed that the lease payments are tax-allowable in full.

Year	*Item*	*Cash Flow* $	*Discount factor 7%*	*Present value* $
1–4	Lease costs	(20,000)	3.387	(67,740)
2–5	Tax savings on lease costs (× 30%)	6,000	3.165	18,990
				(48,750)

The purchase option is cheaper, using a cost of capital based on the after-tax cost of borrowing. On the assumption that investors would regard borrowing and leasing as equally risky finance options, the purchase option is recommended.

2 Asset replacement decisions

FAST FORWARD

DCF techniques can assist **asset replacement decisions**. When an asset is being replaced with an identical asset, the **equivalent annual cost method** can be used to calculate an **optimum replacement cycle**.

As well as assisting with decisions between particular assets, DCF techniques can be used in **asset replacement decisions**, to assess **when** and **how frequently** an asset should be replaced. When an asset is to be replaced by an 'identical' asset, the problem is to decide the optimum interval between replacements. As the asset gets older, it may cost more to maintain and operate, its residual value will decrease, and it may lose some productivity/operating capability.

2.1 Equivalent annual cost method

The equivalent annual cost method is the quickest method to use in a period of no inflation.

Step 1 Calculate the **present value of costs** for each **replacement cycle** over **one cycle only**.

These costs are not comparable because they refer to different time periods, whereas replacement is continuous.

Step 2 **Turn the present value** of costs for each replacement cycle into an **equivalent annual cost** (an annuity).

The equivalent annual costs is calculated as follows.

$$\frac{\text{The PV of cost over one replacement cycle}}{\text{The cumulative present value factor for the number of years in the cycle}}$$

For example if there are three years in the cycle, the denominator will be the present value of an annuity for three years at 10% (2.487).

2.2 Example: replacement of an identical asset

A company operates a machine which has the following costs and resale values over its four year life.

Purchase cost: $25,000

	Year 1 $	*Year 2* $	*Year 3* $	*Year 4* $
Running costs (cash expenses)	7,500	11,000	12,500	15,000
Resale value (end of year)	15,000	10,000	7,500	2,500

The organisation's cost of capital is 10%. You are required to assess how frequently the asset should be replaced.

Solution

In our example:

Step 1 Calculate the present value of costs for each replacement cycle over one cycle.

		Replace every year		*Replace every 2 years*		*Replace every 3 years*		*Replace every 4 years*	
Year	*Discount factors*	*Cash flow*	*PV at 10%*	*Cash flow*	*PV at 10%*	*Cash flow*	*PV at 10%*	*Cash flow*	*PV at 10%*
		$	$	$	$	$	$	$	$
0	–	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)	(25,000)
1	0.909	(7,500)	(6,818)	(7,500)	(6,818)	(7,500)	(6,818)	(7,500)	(6,818)
		15,000	13,635						
2	0.826			(11,000)	(9,086)	(11,000)	(9,086)	(11,000)	(9,086)
				10,000	8,260				
3	0.751					(12,500)	(9,388)	(12,500)	(9,388)
						7,500	5,633		
4	0.683							(15,000)	(10,245)
								2,500	1,708
PV of cost over one replacement cycle			(18,183)		(32,644)		(44,659)		(58,829)

Step 2 Calculate the equivalent annual cost.

We use a discount rate of 10%.

(a) Replacement every year:

$$\text{Equivalent annual cost} = \frac{\$(18{,}183)}{0.909} = \$(20{,}003)$$

(b) Replacement every two years:

$$\text{Equivalent annual cost} = \frac{\$(32{,}644)}{1.736} = \$(18{,}804)$$

(c) Replacement every three years:

$$\text{Equivalent annual cost} = \frac{\$(44{,}659)}{2.487} = \$(17{,}957)$$

(d) Replacement every four years:

$$\text{Equivalent annual cost} = \frac{\$(58{,}829)}{3.170} = \$(18{,}558)$$

The optimum replacement policy is the one with the lowest equivalent annual cost, every three years.

2.3 Equivalent annual benefit

Key term

> The **equivalent annual benefit** is the annual annuity with the same value as the net present value of an investment project.

$$\text{The equivalent annual annuity} = \frac{\text{NPV of project}}{\text{Annuity factor}}$$

For example, a project A with an NPV of $3.75m and a duration of 6 years, given a discount rate of 12%, will have an equivalent annual annuity of $\frac{3.75}{4.11} = 0.91$

An alternative project B with an NPV of $4.45m and a duration of 7 years will have an equivalent annual annuity of $\frac{4.45}{4.564} = 0.98$

Project B will therefore be **ranked higher** than Project A. This method is a useful way to compare projects with **unequal lives**.

3 Capital rationing

FAST FORWARD

Capital rationing may occur due to internal factors (soft capital rationing) or external factors (hard capital rationing).

Key terms

Capital rationing: a situation in which a company has a limited amount of capital to invest in potential projects, such that the different possible investments need to be compared with one another in order to allocate the capital available most effectively.

Soft capital rationing is brought about by internal factors; **hard capital rationing** is brought about by external factors.

If an organisation is in a **capital rationing** situation it will not be able to enter into all projects with positive NPVs because there is not enough capital for all of the investments.

3.1 Soft and hard capital rationing

Soft capital rationing may arise for one of the following reasons.

(a) Management may be **reluctant** to **issue additional share capital** because of concern that this may lead to **outsiders** gaining control of the business.

(b) **Management** may be **unwilling** to **issue additional share capital** if it will lead to a **dilution of earnings** per share.

(c) Management may **not want to raise additional debt capital** because they do not wish to be committed to **large fixed interest payments**.

(d) Management may wish to **limit investment** to a level that can be financed solely from **retained earnings**.

Hard capital rationing may arise for one of the following reasons.

(a) Raising money through the stock market may not be possible if **share prices** are **depressed**.

(b) There may be **restrictions** on **bank lending** due to government control.

(c) Lending institutions may consider an organisation to be **too risky** to be granted further loan facilities.

(d) The **costs** associated with making small **issues** of capital may be too great.

3.2 Relaxation of capital constraints

If an organisation adopts a policy that restricts funds available for investment (soft capital rationing), the policy may be less than optimal. The organisation may reject projects with a positive net present value and forgo opportunities that would have enhanced the market value of the organisation.

A company may be able to limit the effects of hard capital rationing and exploit new opportunities.

(a) It might **seek joint venture partners** with which to share projects.

(b) As an alternative to direct investment in a project, the company may be able to consider a **licensing** or **franchising agreement** with another enterprise, under which the licensor/franchisor company would receive royalties.

(c) It may be possible to **contract** out parts of a project to reduce the initial capital outlay required.

(d) The company may seek **new** alternative **sources of capital** (subject to any restrictions which apply to it) for example:

- Venture capital
- Debt finance secured on the assets of the project
- Sale and leaseback of property or equipment (see the next chapter)
- Grant aid
- More effective capital management

3.3 Single period capital rationing

FAST FORWARD

When capital rationing occurs in a **single period**, projects are ranked in terms of **profitability index**.

We shall begin our analysis by assuming that capital rationing occurs in a single period, and that capital is freely available at all other times.

The following further assumptions will be made.

(a) If a company does not accept and undertake a project during the period of capital rationing, the **opportunity** to undertake it is **lost**. The project cannot be postponed until a subsequent period when no capital rationing exists.

(b) There is **complete certainty** about the outcome of each project, so that the choice between projects is not affected by considerations of risk.

(c) **Projects** are **divisible**, so that it is possible to undertake, say, half of Project X in order to earn half of the net present value (NPV) of the whole project.

The basic approach is to rank all investment opportunities so that the NPVs can be maximised from the use of the available funds.

Ranking in terms of absolute NPVs will normally give incorrect results. This method leads to the **selection** of **large projects**, each of which has a high individual NPV but which have, in total, a lower NPV than a large number of smaller projects with lower individual NPVs. Ranking is therefore in terms of what is called the **profitability index.**

This profitability index is a ratio that measures the PV of future cash flows per $1 of investment, and so indicates which investments make the best use of the limited resources available.

Key term

Profitability index is the ratio of the present value of the project's future cash flows (not including the capital investment) divided by the present value of the total capital investment.

3.4 Example: Capital rationing

Suppose that Hard Times Co is considering four projects, W, X, Y and Z. Relevant details are as follows.

Project	*Investment required* $	*Present value of cash inflows* $	*NPV* $	*Profitability index (PI)*	*Ranking as per NPV*	*Ranking as per PI*
W	(10,000)	11,240	1,240	1.12	3	1
X	(20,000)	20,991	991	1.05	4	4
Y	(30,000)	32,230	2,230	1.07	2	3
Z	(40,000)	43,801	3,801	1.10	1	2

Without capital rationing all four projects would be viable investments. Suppose, however, that only $60,000 was available for capital investment. Let us look at the resulting NPV if we select projects in the order of ranking per NPV.

Project	*Priority*	*Outlay*	*NPV*	
		$	$	
Z	1st	40,000	3,801	
Y (balance)*	2nd	20,000	1,487	(2/3 of $2,230)
		60,000	5,288	

* Projects are divisible. By spending the balancing $20,000 on project Y, two thirds of the full investment would be made to earn two thirds of the NPV.

Suppose, on the other hand, that we adopt the profitability index approach. The selection of projects will be as follows.

Project	*Priority*	*Outlay*	*NPV*	
		$	$	
W	1st	10,000	1,240	
Z	2nd	40,000	3,801	
Y (balance)	3rd	10,000	743	(1/3 of $2,230)
		60,000	5,784	

By choosing projects according to the PI, the resulting NPV if only $60,000 is available is increased by $496.

3.4.1 Problems with the Profitability Index method

(a) The approach can only be used if **projects** are **divisible**. If the projects are not divisible a decision has to be made by examining the **absolute NPVs** of all possible combinations of complete projects that can be undertaken within the constraints of the capital available. The combination of projects which remains at or under the limit of available capital without any of them being divided, and which maximises the total NPV, should be chosen.

(b) The **selection criterion** is fairly **simplistic**, taking no account of the possible strategic value of individual investments in the context of the overall objectives of the organisation.

(c) The method is of limited use when projects have **differing cash flow patterns**. These patterns may be important to the company since they will affect the timing and availability of funds. With multi-period capital rationing, it is possible that the project with the highest Profitability Index is the slowest in generating returns.

(d) The Profitability Index **ignores** the **absolute size** of individual projects. A project with a high index might be very small and therefore only generate a small NPV.

Question

Capital rationing

A company is experiencing capital rationing in year 0, when only $60,000 of investment finance will be available. No capital rationing is expected in future periods, but none of the three projects under consideration by the company can be postponed. The expected cash flows of the three projects are as follows.

Project	*Year 0*	*Year 1*	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*
	$	$	$	$	$
A	(50,000)	(20,000)	20,000	40,000	40,000
B	(28,000)	(50,000)	40,000	40,000	20,000
C	(30,000)	(30,000)	30,000	40,000	10,000

The cost of capital is 10%. You are required to decide which projects should be undertaken in year 0, in view of the capital rationing, given that projects are divisible.

Answer

The ratio of NPV at 10% to outlay in year 0 (the year of capital rationing) is as follows.

Project	*Outlay in Year 0*	*PV*	*NPV*	*Ratio*	*Ranking*
	$	$	$		
A	50,000	55,700	5,700	1.114	3rd
B	28,000	31,290	3,290	1.118	2nd
C	30,000	34,380	4,380	1.146	1st

Working

Present value A

Year			*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	10%	$
1	Cash flow	(20,000)	0.909	(18,180)
2	Cash flow	20,000	0.826	16,520
3	Cash flow	40,000	0.751	30,040
4	Cash flow	40,000	0.683	27,320
				55,700

Present value B

Year			*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	10%	$
1	Cash flow	(50,000)	0.909	(45,450)
2	Cash flow	40,000	0.826	33,040
3	Cash flow	40,000	0.751	30,040
4	Cash flow	20,000	0.683	13,660
				31,290

Present value C

Year			*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	10%	$
1	Cash flow	(30,000)	0.909	(27,270)
2	Cash flow	30,000	0.826	24,780
3	Cash flow	40,000	0.751	30,040
4	Cash flow	10,000	0.683	6,830
				34,380

The optimal investment policy is as follows.

Ranking	*Project*	*Year 0 outlay*	*NPV*
		$	$
1st	C	30,000	4,380
2nd	B	28,000	3,290
3rd	A (balance)	2,000 (4% of 5,700)	228
		NPV from total investment =	7,898

3.5 Postponing projects

We have so far assumed that projects cannot be postponed until year 1. If this assumption is removed, the choice of projects in year 0 would be made by reference to the loss of NPV from **postponement**.

3.6 Example: Postponing projects

The figures in the previous exercise will be used to illustrate the method. If any project, A, B or C, were delayed by one year, the 'NPV' would now relate to year 1 values, so that in year 0 terms, the NPVs would be as follows.

		NPV in Year 1 $				*NPV in Year 0 Value* $	*Loss in NPV* $
(a)	Project A	5,700	×	$\frac{1}{1.10}$	=	5,182	518
(b)	Project B	3,290	×	$\frac{1}{1.10}$	=	2,991	299
(c)	Project C	4,380	×	$\frac{1}{1.10}$	=	3,982	398

An index of postponability would be calculated as follows.

Project	*Loss in NPV from one-year postponement* $	*Outlay deferred from year 0* $	*Postponability index (loss/outlay)*
A	518	50,000	0.0104
B	299	28,000	0.0107
C	398	30,000	0.0133

The loss in NPV by deferring investment would be greatest for Project C, and least for Project A. It is therefore more profitable to postpone A, rather than B or C, as follows.

Investment in year 0:

Project	*Outlay* $		*NPV* $
C	30,000		4,380
B	28,000		3,290
A (balance)	2,000	(4% of 5,700)	228
	60,000		7,898

Investment in year 1 (balance):

Project A	$48,000	(96% of 5,182)	4,975
Total NPV (as at year 0) of investments in years 0 and 1			12,873

3.7 Single period rationing with non-divisible projects

If the projects are **not divisible** then the method shown above may not result in the optimal solution. Another complication which arises is that there is likely to be a small amount of **unused capital** with each combination of projects. The best way to deal with this situation is to use **trial and error** and test the NPV available from different combinations of projects. This can be a laborious process if there are a large number of projects available.

3.8 Example: single period rationing with non-divisible projects

Short O'Funds has capital of $95,000 available for investment in the forthcoming period The directors decide to consider projects P, Q and R only. They wish to invest only in whole projects, but surplus funds can be invested. Which combination of projects will produce the highest NPV at a cost of capital of 20%?

Project	*Investment required* $'000	*Present value of inflows at 20%* $'000
P	40	56.5
Q	50	67.0
R	30	48.8

Solution

The investment combinations we need to consider are the various possible pairs of projects P, Q and R.

Projects	*Required investment* $'000	*PV of inflows*	*NPV from projects* $'000
P and Q	90	123.5	33.5
P and R	70	105.3	35.3
Q and R	80	115.8	35.8

The highest NPV will be achieved by undertaking projects Q and R and investing the unused funds of $20,000 externally.

Chapter Roundup

- **Leasing** is a commonly used source of finance.

  We distinguish three types of leasing:

  – **Operating leases** (**lessor** responsible for maintaining asset)
  – **Finance leases** (**lessee** responsible for maintenance)
  – **Sale and leaseback** arrangements

- The decision whether to **lease or buy** an asset is a **financing decision** which interacts with the investment decision to buy the asset. Identify the **least-cost financing option** by comparing the cash flows of purchasing and leasing. The cash flows are discounted at an **after-tax cost of borrowing**.
- DCF techniques can assist **asset replacement decisions**. When an asset is being replaced with an identical asset, the **equivalent annual cost method** can be used to calculate an **optimum replacement cycle**.
- **Capital rationing** may occur due to internal factors (soft capital rationing) or external factors (hard capital rationing).
- When capital rationing occurs in a **single period**, projects are ranked in terms of **profitability index**.

Quick Quiz

1 Who is responsible for the servicing of a leased asset in the case of:

(a) An operating lease?

(b) A finance lease?

The lessee	or	The lessor

2 The net present value of the costs of operating a machine for the next three years is $10,724 at a cost of capital of 15%. What is the equivalent annual cost of operating the machine?

A $4,697
B $3,575
C $4,111
D $3,109

3 *Hard capital rationing* occurs when a restriction on an organisation's ability to invest capital funds is caused by an internal budget ceiling imposed by management.

True ☐

False ☐

4 Profitability Index (PI) = $\frac{(1)}{(2)}$

What are (1) and (2)?

5 Equivalent annual cost = $\frac{\text{PV of costs over n years}}{\text{n year annuity factor}}$

Explain briefly what is meant by:

(a) PV of costs
(b) n year annuity factor

6 What is an indivisible project?

7 Give three reasons why hard capital rationing may occur.

8 What is the best way to find the optimal solution in a situation of single period rationing with indivisible projects?

9 What is the best way to find the optimal solution in a situation of single period rationing with divisible projects?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (a) The lessor
(b) The lessee

2 A $10,724/2.283 = $4,697

3 False. This describes *soft* capital rationing.

4 (1) Present value of cash inflows
(2) Initial investment

5 (a) The purchase cost, minus the present value of any subsequent disposal proceeds at the end of the item's life

(b) The annuity factor at the company's cost of capital, for the number of years of the item's life

6 A project that must be undertaken completely or not at all

7 Any *three* of:

(a) Raising money through the stock market may not be possible if share prices are depressed.
(b) There are restrictions on lending due to government control.
(c) Lending institutions may consider the organisation to be too risky.
(d) The costs associated with making small issues of capital may be too great.

8 Use trial and error and test the NPV available from different project combinations.

9 Rank the projects according to their profitability index.

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q16	Examination	25	45 mins
Q17	Examination	25	45 mins
Q18	Examination	25	45 mins

PART E

Business finance

12 Sources of finance

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Short-term sources of finance	E1 (a)
2 Debt finance	E2 (a)
3 Venture capital	E2 (a)
4 Equity finance	E2 (a), (b)

Introduction

In Part E of this study text we consider sources of finance. In this chapter we will look at the distinction between short-term and long-term sources of finance.

When sources of **long-term finance** are used, large sums are usually involved, and so the financial manager needs to consider all the options available with care, looking to the possible effects on the company in the long term.

If a company decides to raise new equity finance, it needs to consider which method would be best for its circumstances.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
E1	**Sources of and raising short-term finance**	
(a)	Identify and discuss the range of short-term sources of finance available to businesses, including:	2
(i)	Overdraft	
(ii)	Short-term loan	
(iii)	Trade credit	
(iv)	Lease finance	
E2	**Sources of and raising, long-term finance**	
(a)	Identify and discuss the range of long-term sources of finance available to businesses, including:	2
(i)	Equity finance	
(ii)	Debt finance	
(iii)	Lease finance	
(iv)	Venture capital	
(b)	Identify and discuss methods of raising equity finance, including:	2
(i)	Rights issue	
(ii)	Placing	
(iii)	Public offer	
(iv)	Stock exchange listing	

Exam guide

Sources of finance are a major topic. You may be asked to describe appropriate sources of finance for a particular company, and also discuss in general terms when different sources of finance should be utilised and when they are likely to be available.

PER alert

One of the competencies you require to fulfil performance objective 16 of the PER is the ability to minimise charges associated with both short-term and long-term finance options. You can apply the knowledge you obtain from this chapter to help to demonstrate this competence.

1 Short-term sources of finance

FAST FORWARD

A range of short-term sources of finance are available to businesses including **overdrafts**, **short-term loans**, **trade credit** and **lease finance**.

Short-term finance is usually needed for businesses to run their **day-to-day operations** including payment of wages to employees, inventory ordering and supplies. Businesses with seasonal peaks and troughs and those engaged in international trade are likely to be heavy users of short-term finance.

1.1 Overdrafts

Where payments from a current account exceed income to the account for a temporary period, the bank finances the deficit by means of an **overdraft**. Overdrafts are the most important source of short-term finance available to businesses. They can be arranged relatively **quickly**, and offer a level of **flexibility** with regard to the amount borrowed at any time, whilst interest is only paid when the account is overdrawn.

OVERDRAFTS	
Amount	Should not exceed limit, usually based on known income
Margin	Interest charged at base rate plus margin on daily amount overdrawn and charged quarterly. Fee may be charged for large facility
Purpose	Generally to cover short-term deficits
Repayment	Technically repayable on demand
Security	Depends on size of facility
Benefits	Customer has flexible means of short-term borrowing; bank has to accept fluctuation

By providing an overdraft facility to a customer, the bank is committing itself to provide an overdraft to the customer whenever the customer wants it, up to the agreed limit. The bank will earn interest on the lending, but only to the extent that the customer **uses the facility** and goes into overdraft. If the customer does not go into overdraft, the bank cannot charge interest.

The bank will generally charge a **commitment fee** when a customer is granted an overdraft facility or an increase in his overdraft facility. This is a fee for granting an overdraft facility and agreeing to provide the customer with funds if and whenever he needs them.

1.1.1 Overdrafts and the operating cycle

Many businesses require their bank to provide financial assistance for normal trading over the **operating cycle**.

For example, suppose that a business has the following operating cycle.

	$	$
Inventories and trade receivables		10,000
Bank overdraft	1,000	
Trade payables	3,000	
		4,000
Working capital		6,000

It now buys inventory costing $2,500 for cash, using its overdraft. Working capital remains the same, $6,000, although the bank's financial stake has risen from $1,000 to $3,500.

	$	$
Inventories and trade receivables		12,500
Bank overdraft	3,500	
Trade payables	3,000	
		6,500
Working capital		6,000

A bank overdraft provides support for normal trading finance. In this example, finance for normal trading rises from $(10,000 – 3,000) = $7,000 to $(12,500 – 3,000) = $9,500 and the bank's contribution rises from $1,000 out of $7,000 to $3,500 out of $9,500.

A feature of bank lending to support normal trading finance is that the amount of the overdraft required at any time will depend on the **cash flows of the business –** the timing of receipts and payments, seasonal variations in trade patterns and so on. The purpose of the overdraft is to bridge the gap between cash payments and cash receipts.

1.1.2 Solid core overdrafts

When a business customer has an overdraft facility, and the account is always in overdraft, then it has a **solid core** (or **hard core**) overdraft. For example, suppose that the account of a company has the following record for the previous year:

Quarter to	*Average balance* $	*Range* $		$	*Debit Turnover* $
31 March 20X5	40,000 debit	70,000 debit	–	20,000 debit	600,000
30 June 20X5	50,000 debit	80,000 debit	–	25,000 debit	500,000
30 September 20X5	75,000 debit	105,000 debit	–	50,000 debit	700,000
31 December 20X5	80,000 debit	110,000 debit	–	60,000 debit	550,000

These figures show that the account has been permanently in overdraft, and the hard core of the overdraft has been rising steeply over the course of the year.

If the hard core element of the overdraft appears to be becoming a **long-term feature** of the business, the bank might wish, after discussions with the customer, to convert the hard core of the overdraft into a **loan**, thus giving formal recognition to its more permanent nature. Otherwise annual reductions in the hard core of an overdraft would typically be a requirement of the bank.

1.2 Short-term loans

A **term loan** is a loan for a fixed amount for a specified period. It is drawn in full at the beginning of the loan period and repaid at a specified time or in defined instalments. Term loans are offered with a variety of **repayment schedules**. Often, the interest and capital repayments are predetermined.

The main advantage of lending on a loan account for the bank is that it makes **monitoring** and **control** of the advance much easier. The bank can see immediately when the customer is falling behind with his repayments, or struggling to make the payments. With overdraft lending, a customer's difficulties might be obscured for some time by the variety of transactions on his current account.

(a) The customer knows what he will be **expected** to **pay back** at regular intervals and the bank can also predict its future income with more certainty (depending on whether the interest rate is fixed or floating).

(b) Once the loan is agreed, the **term of** the loan must be **adhered** to, provided that the customer does not fall behind with his repayments. It is not repayable on demand by the bank.

(c) Because the bank will be committing its funds to a customer for a number of years, it may wish to insist on **building certain written safeguards** into the loan agreement, to prevent the customer from becoming over-extended with his borrowing during the course of the loan. A loan **covenant** is a condition that the borrower must comply with. If the borrower does not act in accordance with the covenants, the loan can be considered in **default** and the bank can demand payment.

1.3 Overdrafts and short-term loans compared

A customer might ask the bank for an overdraft facility when the bank would wish to suggest a loan instead; alternatively, a customer might ask for a loan when an overdraft would be more appropriate.

(a) In most cases, when a customer wants finance to help with **'day to day' trading** and cash flow needs, an **overdraft** would be the appropriate method of financing. The customer should not be short of cash all the time, and should expect to be in credit in some days, but in need of an overdraft on others.

(b) When a customer wants to **borrow** from a bank **for only a short period of time**, even for the purchase of a major fixed asset such as an item of plant or machinery, an overdraft facility might be more suitable than a loan, because the customer will stop paying interest as soon as his account goes into credit.

1.3.1 Advantages of an overdraft over a loan

(a) The customer **only pays interest** when he is **overdrawn**.

(b) The bank has the **flexibility** to review the customer's overdraft facility periodically, and perhaps agree to additional facilities, or insist on a reduction in the facility.

(c) An overdraft can do the **same job** as a loan: a facility can simply be renewed every time it comes up for review.

Bear in mind, however, that overdrafts are normally repayable on demand.

1.3.2 Advantages of a loan for longer term lending

(a) Both the customer and the bank **know** exactly what the **repayments** of the loan will be and how much **interest** is payable, and when. This makes planning (budgeting) simpler.

(b) The customer does **not** have to **worry** about the bank deciding to reduce or withdraw an overdraft facility before he is in a position to repay what is owed. There is an element of 'security' or 'peace of mind' in being able to arrange a loan for an agreed term.

(c) Loans normally carry a **facility letter setting** out the precise terms of the agreement.

However, a **mix** of overdrafts and loans might be suggested in some cases. Consider a case where a business asks for a loan, perhaps to purchase a shop with inventory. The banker might wish to suggest a loan to help with the purchase of the shop, but that inventory ought to be financed by an overdraft facility. The offer of part-loan part-overdraft is an option that might be well worth considering.

1.3.3 Calculation of repayments on a loan

We can use the annuity table to calculate the repayments on a loan.

For example, a $30,000 loan is taken out by a business at a rate of 12% over 5 years. What will be the annual payment?

The annuity factor for 12% over 5 years is 3.605. Therefore $30,000 = 3.605 × annual payment.

$$\text{Annual payment} = \frac{30{,}000}{3.605}$$

$$= \$8{,}321.78$$

1.3.4 The split between interest and capital repayment

A loan of $100,000 is to be repaid to the bank in equal annual year-end instalments made up of capital repayments and interest at 9% pa.

$$\text{The annual payment} = \frac{\$100{,}000}{3.890} = \$25{,}707$$

Each payment can then be split between the repayment of capital and interest.

Year	*Balance b/f*	*Interest @ 9%*	*Annual payment*	*Balance c/f*
	$	$	$	$
1	100,000	9,000	(25,707)	83,293
2	83,293	7,496	(25,707)	65,082
3	65,082	5,857	(25,707)	45,232
4	45,232	4,071	(25,707)	23,596
5	23,596	2,111*	(25,707)	

* Rounding difference

1.4 Trade credit

Trade credit is one of the main sources of short-term finance for a business. Current assets such as raw materials may be purchased on credit with payment terms normally varying from between 30 to 90 days. Trade credit therefore represents an interest free short-term loan. In a period of high inflation, purchasing via trade credit will be very helpful in keeping costs down. However, it is important to take into account the **loss of discounts** suppliers offer for early payment.

Unacceptable delays in payment will worsen a company's **credit rating** and additional credit may become difficult to obtain.

1.5 Leasing

Rather than buying an asset outright, using either available cash resources or borrowed funds, a business may **lease** an asset. Leasing has become a popular source of finance.

Leasing can be defined as a contract between **lessor** and **lessee** for hire of a specific asset selected from a manufacturer or vendor of such assets by the lessee. The lessor retains ownership of the asset. The lessee has possession and use of the asset on payment of specified rentals over a period.

Many lessors are financial intermediaries such as banks and insurance companies. The range of assets leased is wide, including office equipment and computers, cars and commercial vehicles, aircraft, ships and buildings.

Leasing is covered in detail in Chapter 11 of this study text.

1.5.1 Sale and leaseback

A company which owns its own premises can obtain finance by selling the property to an insurance company or pension fund for immediate cash and renting it back, usually for at least 50 years with rent reviews every few years.

A company would raise more cash from a sale and leaseback arrangements than from a mortgage, but there are significant **disadvantages**.

(a) The company **loses ownership** of a valuable asset which is almost certain to appreciate over time.

(b) The **future borrowing capacity** of the firm will be reduced, as there will be less assets to provide security for a loan.

(c) The company is **contractually committed** to occupying the property for many years ahead which can be restricting.

(d) The **real cost** is likely to be high, particularly as there will be frequent rent reviews.

2 Debt finance 12/08

FAST FORWARD

A range of long-term sources of finance are available to businesses including **debt finance**, **leasing**, **venture capital** and **equity finance**.

Long-term finance is used for major investments and is usually more expensive and less flexible than short-term finance.

2.1 Reasons for seeking debt finance

Sometimes businesses may need long-term funds, but may not wish to issue equity capital. Perhaps the current shareholders will be unwilling to **contribute additional capital**; possibly the company does not wish to involve outside shareholders who will have more onerous requirements than current members.

Other reasons for choosing debt finance may include **lesser cost** and **easier availability**, particularly if the company has little or no existing debt finance. Debt finance provides **tax relief** on interest payments.

2.2 Sources of debt finance

If a company does wish to raise debt finance, it will need to consider what **type** of finance will be available. If it is seeking medium-term bank finance, it ought to be in the form of a **loan**, although an overdraft is a virtually permanent feature of many companies' statements of financial position. Bank finance is a most important source of debt for small companies, and we shall consider this in greater detail in Chapter 14.

If a company is seeking to issue bonds, it must decide whether the bonds will be **repaid** (**redeemed**), whether there will be **conversion rights** into shares, and whether **warrants** will be attached.

2.3 Factors influencing choice of debt finance 12/08

FAST FORWARD

The choice of **debt finance** that a company can make depends upon:

- The size of the business (a public issue of bonds is only available to a large company)
- The duration of the loan
- Whether a fixed or floating interest rate is preferred (fixed rates are more expensive, but floating rates are riskier)
- The security that can be offered

In Chapter 14, we shall look in detail at the factors that determine the mix of debt and equity finance that a company chooses. For now, you need to bear in mind when reading this chapter the following considerations influencing what type of debt finance is sought.

(a) **Availability**

Only listed companies will be able to make a public issue of bonds on a stock exchange; smaller companies may only be able to obtain significant amounts of debt finance from their bank.

(b) **Duration**

If loan finance is sought to buy a particular asset to generate revenues for the business, the length of the loan should **match** the length of time that the asset will be generating revenues.

(c) **Fixed or floating rate**

Expectations of interest rate movements will determine whether a company chooses to borrow at a fixed or floating rate. Fixed rate finance may be more expensive, but the business runs the risk of adverse upward rate movements if it chooses floating rate finance.

(d) **Security and covenants**

The choice of finance may be determined by the assets that the business is willing or able to offer as **security**, also on the restrictions in **covenants** that the lenders wish to impose.

2.4 Bonds

FAST FORWARD

The term **bonds** describes various forms of long-term debt a company may issue, such as **loan notes** or **debentures**, which may be:

- **Redeemable**
- **Irredeemable**

Bonds or loans come in various forms, including:

- **Floating rate debentures**
- **Zero coupon bonds**
- **Convertible bonds**

Key term

Bonds are long-term debt capital raised by a company for which interest is paid, usually half yearly and at a fixed rate. Holders of bonds are therefore long-term payables for the company.

Bonds have a nominal value, which is the debt owed by the company, and interest is paid at a stated '**coupon**' on this amount. For example, if a company issues 10% bonds, the coupon will be 10% of the nominal value of the bonds, so that $100 of bonds will receive $10 interest each year. The rate quoted is the gross rate, before tax.

Unlike shares, debt is often issued **at par**, ie with $100 payable per $100 nominal value. Where the coupon rate is fixed at the time of issue, it will be set according to **prevailing market conditions** given the **credit rating** of the company issuing the debt. Subsequent changes in market (and company) conditions will cause the **market value** of the bond to fluctuate, although the coupon will stay at the fixed percentage of the nominal value.

Key term

Debentures are a form of loan note, the written acknowledgement of a debt incurred by a company, normally containing provisions about the payment of interest and the eventual repayment of capital.

2.5 Deep discount bonds

Key term

Deep discount bonds are loan notes issued at a price which is at a large discount to the nominal value of the notes, and which will be redeemable at par (or above par) when they eventually mature.

For example a company might issue $1,000,000 of bonds in 20X1, at a price of $50 per $100 of bond, and redeemable at par in the year 20X9. For a company with specific cash flow requirements, the low servicing costs during the currency of the bond may be an attraction, coupled with a high cost of redemption at maturity.

Investors might be attracted by the **large capital gain** offered by the bonds, which is the difference between the **issue price** and the **redemption value**. However, deep discount bonds will carry a much **lower rate of interest** than other types of bond. The only tax advantage is that the gain gets taxed (as **income**) in one lump on maturity or sale, not as amounts of interest each year. The borrower can, however, **deduct notional interest** each year in computing profits.

2.6 Zero coupon bonds

Key term

Zero coupon bonds are bonds that are issued at a discount to their redemption value, but no interest is paid on them.

The investor gains from the difference between the issue price and the redemption value. There is an implied interest rate in the amount of discount at which the bonds are issued (or subsequently re-sold on the market).

(a) The advantage for borrowers is that zero coupon bonds can be used to **raise cash immediately**, and there is **no cash repayment** until redemption date. The cost of redemption is known at the time of issue. The borrower can plan to have funds available to redeem the bonds at maturity.

(b) The **advantage for lenders** is **restricted**, unless the rate of discount on the bonds offers a high yield. The only way of obtaining cash from the bonds before maturity is to sell them. Their **market value** will depend on the **remaining term** to maturity and **current market interest rates**.

The tax advantage of zero coupon bonds is the same as that for deep discount bonds (see 2.2.5 above).

2.7 Convertible bonds 12/07

FAST FORWARD

Convertible bonds are bonds that give the holder the right to convert to other securities, normally ordinary shares, at a pre-determined price/rate and time.

Conversion terms often vary over time. For example, the conversion terms of convertible bonds might be that on 1 April 20X0, $2 of bonds can be converted into one ordinary share, whereas on 1 April 20X1, the conversion price will be $2.20 of bonds for one ordinary share. Once converted, convertible securities cannot be converted back into the original fixed return security.

2.7.1 The conversion value and the conversion premium

The current market value of ordinary shares into which a bond may be converted is known as the conversion value. The **conversion value** will be below the value of the bond at the date of issue, but will be expected to increase as the date for conversion approaches on the assumption that a company's shares ought to increase in market value over time.

Conversion value = Conversion ratio × MPS (ordinary shares)

Conversion premium = Current market value – current conversion value

Question

The 10% convertible bonds of Starchwhite are quoted at $142 per $100 nominal. The earliest date for conversion is in four years time, at the rate of 30 ordinary shares per $100 nominal bond. The share price is currently $4.15. Annual interest on the bonds has just been paid.

Required

(a) Calculate the current conversion value.
(b) Calculate the conversion premium and comment on its meaning.

Answer

(a) Conversion ratio is $100 bond = 30 ordinary shares
Conversion value = 30 × $4.15 = $124.50

(b) Conversion premium = $(142 – 124.50) = $17.50 or $\frac{17.50}{124.50} \times 100\% = 14\%$

The share price would have to rise by 14% before the conversion rights became attractive.

2.7.2 The issue price and the market price of convertible bonds

A company will aim to issue bonds with the **greatest possible conversion premium** as this will mean that, for the amount of capital raised, it will, on conversion, have to issue the lowest number of new ordinary shares. The premium that will be accepted by potential investors will depend on the company's growth potential and so on prospects for a sizeable increase in the share price.

Convertible bonds issued at par normally have a **lower coupon rate of interest** than straight debt. This lower interest rate is the price the investor has to pay for the conversion rights. It is, of course, also one of the reasons why the issue of convertible bonds is attractive to a company, particularly one with tight cash flows around the time of issue, but an easier situation when the notes are due to be converted.

When convertible bonds are traded on a stock market, their **minimum market price** or **floor value** will be the price of straight bonds with the same coupon rate of interest. If the market value falls to this minimum, it follows that the market attaches no value to the conversion rights.

The actual market price of convertible bonds will depend on

- The **price of straight debt**
- The **current conversion value**
- The **length of time** before conversion may take place
- The **market's expectation** as to future equity returns and the risk associated with these returns

Most companies issuing convertible bonds expect them to be **converted**. They view the bonds as delayed equity. They are often used either because the company's ordinary share price is considered to be particularly depressed at the time of issue or because the issue of equity shares would result in an immediate and significant drop in earnings per share. There is no certainty, however, that the security holders will exercise their option to convert; therefore the bonds may run their full term and need to be redeemed.

2.7.3 Example: Convertible bonds

CD has issued 50,000 units of convertible bonds, each with a nominal value of $100 and a coupon rate of interest of 10% payable yearly. Each $100 of convertible bonds may be converted into 40 ordinary shares of CD in three years time. Any bonds not converted will be redeemed at 110 (that is, at $110 per $100 nominal value of bond).

Estimate the likely current market price for $100 of the bonds, if investors in the bonds now require a pre-tax return of only 8%, and the expected value of CD ordinary shares on the conversion day is:

(a) $2.50 per share
(b) $3.00 per share

Solution

(a) Shares are valued at $2.50 each

If shares are only expected to be worth $2.50 each on conversion day, the value of 40 shares will be $100, and investors in the debt will presumably therefore redeem their debt at 110 instead of converting them into shares.

The market value of $100 of the convertible debt will be the discounted present value of the expected future income stream.

Year		*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 8%*	*Present value*
		$		$
1	Interest	10	0.926	9.26
2	Interest	10	0.857	8.57
3	Interest	10	0.794	7.94
3	Redemption value	110	0.794	87.34
				113.11

The estimated market value is $113.11 per $100 of debt. This is also the floor value.

(b) Shares are valued at $3 each

If shares are expected to be worth $3 each, the debt holders will convert their debt into shares (value per $100 of bonds = 40 shares × $3 = $120) rather than redeem their debt at 110.

Year		*Cash flow/value*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	8%	$
1	Interest	10	0.926	9.26
2	Interest	10	0.857	8.57
3	Interest	10	0.794	7.94
3	Value of 40 shares	120	0.794	95.28
				121.05

The estimated market value is $121.05 per $100 of debt.

2.8 Security

Bonds will often be secured. **Security** may take the form of either a **fixed charge** or a **floating charge.**

Fixed charge	Floating charge
Security relates to specific asset/group of assets (land and buildings)	Security in event of default is whatever assets of the class secured (inventory/trade receivables) company then owns
Company can't dispose of assets without providing substitute/consent of lender	Company can dispose of assets until default takes place
	In event of default lenders appoint receiver rather than lay claim to asset

Not all bonds are secured. Investors are likely to expect a higher yield with **unsecured bonds** to compensate them for the extra risk.

2.9 The redemption of bonds

Key term

Redemption is repayment of preference shares and bonds.

Bonds are usually redeemable. They are issued for a term of ten years or more, and perhaps 25 to 30 years. At the end of this period, they will 'mature' and become redeemable (at par or possibly at a value above par).

Most redeemable bonds have an earliest and a latest redemption date. For example, 12% Debenture Stock 20X7/X9 is redeemable, at any time between the earliest specified date (in 20X7) and the latest date (in 20X9). The **issuing company** can choose the date.

Some bonds do not have a redemption date, and are **'irredeemable'** or 'undated'. Undated bonds might be redeemed by a company that wishes to pay off the debt, but there is no obligation on the company to do so.

2.9.1 How will a company finance the redemption of long-term debt?

There is no guarantee that a company will be able to raise a new loan to pay off a maturing debt. One item you should look for in a company's statement of financial position is the **redemption date** of current loans, to establish how much new finance is likely to be needed by the company, and when.

Occasionally, perhaps because the secured assets have fallen in value and would not realise much in a forced sale, or perhaps out of a belief that the company can improve its position soon, unpaid debenture holders might be persuaded to surrender their debentures. In exchange they may get an **equity interest** in the company or **convertible debentures**, paying a lower rate of interest, but carrying the option to convert the debentures into shares at a specified time in the future.

Case Study

Football Association chairman Lord Triesman believes the global credit crisis could pose a 'terrible danger' to football clubs dealing with spiralling debts. Against the backdrop of such a volatile financial climate, Triesman estimates English clubs owe an estimated £3bn. A worldwide banking crisis has led to a collapse in shares, a recession and increasing costs for clubs having to repay or maintain huge debts.

'Football is obviously carrying a pretty large volume of debt. People will be making business judgements about whether it is sustainable or not. These debts will either have to be paid or there will have to be a re-financing deal, and re-financing deals inevitably mean that you package up debts in smaller blocks as people try to minimise the risk'.

Source: www.bbc.co.uk

2.10 Tax relief on loan interest

As far as companies are concerned, debt capital is a potentially attractive source of finance because interest charges **reduce the profits** chargeable to corporation tax.

(a) A new issue of bonds is likely to be preferable to a new issue of preference shares (Preference share are shares carrying a fixed rate of dividends).

(b) Companies might wish to **avoid dilution of shareholdings** and **increase gearing** (the ratio of fixed interest capital to equity capital) in order to improve their earnings per share by benefiting from tax relief on interest payments.

3 Venture capital

Key term

Venture capital is risk capital, normally provided in return for an equity stake.

Venture capital organisations have been operating for many years. There are now quite a large number of such organisations.

(a) The British Venture Capital Association is a regulatory body for all the institutions that have joined it as members.

(b) **Investors in Industry plc**, or the **3i group** as it is more commonly known, is the biggest and oldest of the venture capital organisations. It is involved in many venture capital schemes in Europe, Singapore, Japan and the US.

The supply of venture capital in the UK has grown in recent years, as governments have helped to create an environment which supports entrepreneurial business.

Like other venture capitalists, the 3i group wants to invest in companies that will be successful. The group's publicity material states that successful investments have certain common characteristics.

- Highly motivated individuals with a strong management team in place
- A well defined strategy
- A clearly defined target market
- Current turnover between $1m and $100m
- A proven ability to outperform your competitors
- Innovation

The types of venture that the 3i group might invest in include the following.

(a) **Business start-ups**. When a business has been set up by someone who has already put time and money into getting it started, the group may be willing to **provide finance** to enable it to get off the ground.

(b) **Business development**. The group may be willing to **provide development capital** for a company which wants to invest in new products or new markets or to make a business acquisition, and so which needs a major capital injection.

(c) **Management buyouts**. A management buyout is the **purchase** of all or parts of a **business** from its owners by its managers.

(d) Helping a company where one of its owners wants to **realise all or part of his investment**. The 3i group may be prepared to buy some of the company's equity.

3.1 Venture capital funds

Some other organisations are engaged in the creation of **venture capital funds.** In these the organisation raises venture capital funds from investors and invests in management buyouts or expanding companies. The venture capital fund managers usually reward themselves by taking a percentage of the portfolio of the fund's investments.

Venture capital trusts are a special type of fund giving investors tax reliefs.

3.2 Finding venture capital

When a company's directors look for help from a venture capital institution, they must recognise that:

(a) The institution will want an **equity stake** in the company.

(b) It will need convincing that the company can be successful (management buyouts of companies which already have a record of **successful trading** have been increasingly favoured by venture capitalists in recent years).

(c) It may want to have a **representative** appointed to the company's board, to look after its interests, or an **independent director** (the 3i group runs an Independent Director Scheme).

The directors of the company must then contact venture capital organisations, to try to find one or more which would be willing to offer finance. Typically, a venture capitalist will consider offering finance of $500,000 upwards. A venture capital organisation will only give funds to a company that it believes can succeed.

A survey has indicated that around 75% of requests for venture capital are rejected on an initial screening, and only about 3% of all requests survive both this screening and further investigation and result in actual investments.

The venture capital organisation ('VC' below) will take account of various factors in deciding whether or not to invest.

Factors in investment decisions	
The nature of the company's **product**	Viability of production and selling potential
Expertise in **production**	Technical ability to produce efficiently
Expertise in **management**	Commitment, skills and experience
The **market and competition**	Threat from rival producers or future new entrants
Future profits	Detailed business plan showing profit prospects that compensate for risks
Board membership	To take account of VC's interests and ensure VC has say in future strategy
Risk borne by existing owners	Owners bear significant risk and invest significant part of their overall wealth

4 Equity finance

FAST FORWARD

Equity finance is raised through the sale of **ordinary shares** to investors via a **new issue** or a **rights issue.**

4.1 Ordinary shares

Ordinary shares are issued to the owners of a company. Ordinary shares have a **nominal** or 'face' value, typically $1 or 50c.

You should understand that the **market value** of a quoted company's shares bears **no relationship** to their nominal value, except that when ordinary shares are issued for cash, the issue price must be equal to or (more usually) more than the nominal value of the shares. Outside the UK it is not uncommon for a company's shares to have no nominal value.

Ordinary shareholders have **rights** as a result of their ownership of the shares.

(a) Shareholders can attend company general meetings.
(b) They can vote on important company matters such as the appointment of directors, using shares in a takeover bid, changes to authorised share capital or the appointment of auditors.
(c) They are entitled to receive a share of any agreed dividend.
(d) They will receive the annual report and accounts.
(e) They will receive a share of any assets remaining after liquidation.
(f) They can participate in any new issue of shares.

Ordinary shareholders are the ultimate bearers of **risk** as they are at the bottom of the **creditor hierarchy** in a liquidation. This means there is a significant risk they will receive nothing after all of the other trade payables have been paid.

This greatest risk means that shareholders expect the **highest return** of long-term providers of finance. The cost of equity finance is therefore always **higher** than the cost of debt.

4.2 Advantages of a stock market listing

FAST FORWARD

A company can obtain a **stock market listing** for its shares through a **public offer** or a **placing.**

4.3 Disadvantages of a stock market listing

The owners of a company seeking a stock market listing must take the following disadvantages into account:

(a) There will be significantly greater **public regulation, accountability** and **scrutiny.** The legal requirements the company faces will be greater, and the company will also be subject to the rules of the stock exchange on which its shares are listed.

(b) A **wider circle of investors** with more exacting requirements will hold shares.

(c) There will be additional costs involved in making share issues, including **brokerage commissions** and **underwriting fees**.

4.4 Methods of obtaining a listing

An unquoted company can obtain a listing on the stock market by means of a:

- **Initial public offer (IPO)**
- **Placing**
- **Introduction**

4.4.1 Initial public offer

Key term

An **initial public offer (IPO)** is an invitation to apply for shares in a company based on information contained in a prospectus.

An **initial public offer (IPO)** is a means of selling the shares of a company to the public at large. When companies 'go public' for the first time, a **large** issue will probably take the form of an IPO. This is known as **flotation**. Subsequent issues are likely to be **placings** or **rights issues**, described later.

An IPO entails the **acquisition by an issuing house** of a large block of shares of a company, with a view to offering them for sale to the public and investing institutions.

An issuing house is usually a merchant bank (or sometimes a firm of stockbrokers). It may acquire the shares either as a direct allotment from the company or by purchase from existing members. In either case, the issuing house publishes an invitation to the public to apply for shares, either at a fixed price or on a tender basis. The issuing house **accepts responsibility** to the public, and gives to the issue the support of its own standing.

4.4.2 A placing

A **placing** is an arrangement whereby the shares are not all offered to the public, but instead, the sponsoring market maker arranges for most of the issue to be bought by a **small number of investors**, usually institutional investors such as pension funds and insurance companies.

4.4.3 The choice between an IPO and a placing

Is a company likely to prefer an IPO of its shares, or a placing?

(a) **Placings** are much **cheaper**. Approaching institutional investors privately is a much cheaper way of obtaining finance, and thus placings are often used for smaller issues.

(b) Placings are likely to be **quicker**.

(c) Placings are likely to involve **less disclosure** of **information.**

(d) However, most of the shares will be placed with a **relatively small number of (institutional) shareholders**, which means that most of the shares are **unlikely to be available for trading** after the flotation, and that **institutional shareholders** will have control of the **company**.

(e) When a company first comes to the market in the UK, the **maximum proportion of shares** that can be **placed** is **75%**, to ensure some shares are available to a wider public.

4.4.4 A Stock Exchange introduction

By this method of obtaining a quotation, no shares are made available to the market, neither existing nor newly created shares; nevertheless, the stock market grants a quotation. This will only happen where shares in a large company are already widely held, so that a market can be seen to exist. A company might want an **introduction** to obtain **greater marketability** for the shares, a known share valuation for inheritance tax purposes and easier access in the future to additional capital.

4.5 Costs of share issues on the stock market

Companies may incur the following costs when issuing shares.

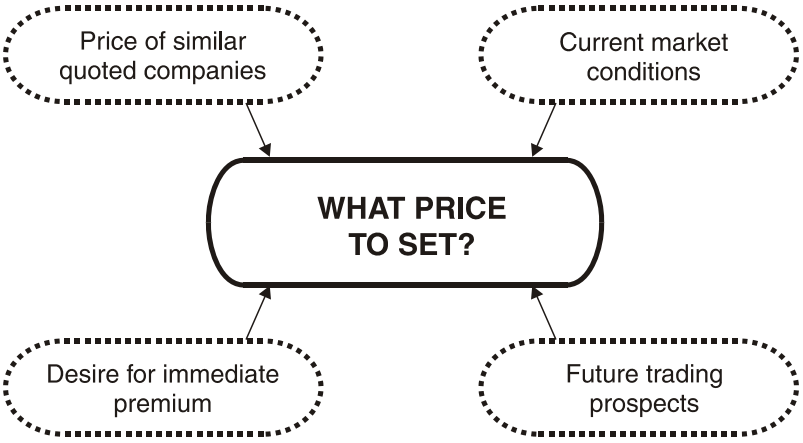
- Underwriting costs (see below)
- Stock market listing fee (the initial charge) for the new securities
- Fees of the issuing house, solicitors, auditors and public relations consultant
- Charges for printing and distributing the prospectus
- Advertising in national newspapers

4.5.1 Underwriting

A company about to issue new securities in order to raise finance might decide to have the issue underwritten. **Underwriters** are financial institutions which agree (in exchange for a fixed fee, perhaps 2.25% of the finance to be raised) to buy at the issue price any securities which are **not subscribed** for by the investing public.

Underwriters **remove** the **risk** of a share issue's being under-subscribed, but at a cost to the company issuing the shares. It is not compulsory to have an issue underwritten. Ordinary offers for sale are most likely to be underwritten although rights issues may be as well.

4.6 Pricing shares for a stock market launch



Companies will be keen to avoid **over-pricing an issue**, which could result in the **issue** being **under subscribed**, leaving underwriters with the unwelcome task of having to buy up the unsold shares. On the other hand, if the **issue price** is **too low** then the issue will be **oversubscribed** and the company would have been able to raise the required capital by issuing fewer shares.

The share price of an issue is usually advertised as being based on a certain P/E ratio, the ratio of the price to the company's most recent earnings per share figure in its audited accounts. The issuer's P/E ratio can then be compared by investors with the P/E ratios of similar quoted companies. (We covered P/E ratios in Chapter 1.)

4.7 Rights issues 12/07, 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

A **rights issue** is an offer to existing shareholders enabling them to buy more shares, usually at a price lower than the current market price.

A **rights issue** provides a way of raising new share capital by means of an offer to existing shareholders, inviting them to subscribe cash for new shares in proportion to their existing holdings.

For example, a rights issue on a one for four basis at 280c per share would mean that a company is inviting its existing shareholders to subscribe for one new share for every four shares they hold, at a price of 280c per new share. A rights issue may be made by any type of company. The analysis below, however, applies primarily to listed companies.

The major advantages of a rights issue are as follows.

(a) Rights issues are **cheaper** than **IPOs** to the general public. This is partly because **no prospectus** is not normally required, partly because the administration is simpler and partly because the cost of underwriting will be less.

(b) Rights issues are **more beneficial** to **existing shareholders** than issues to the general public. New shares are issued at a discount to the current market price, to make them attractive to investors. A rights issue **secures** the **discount** on the market price for existing shareholders, who may either keep the shares or sell them if they wish.

(c) **Relative voting** rights are **unaffected** if shareholders all take up their rights.

(d) The finance raised may be used to **reduce gearing** in book value terms by increasing share capital and/or to pay off long-term debt which will reduce gearing in market value terms. We will look at gearing in more detail in Chapter 14.

4.8 Deciding the issue price for a rights issue

The **offer price** in a rights issue will be lower than the current market price of existing shares. The size of the discount will vary, and will be larger for difficult issues. The offer price must however be at or above the **nominal value** of the shares, so as not to contravene company law.

A company making a rights issue must set a price which is **low enough** to **secure** the **acceptance** of shareholders, who are being asked to provide extra funds, but not too low, so as to avoid excessive dilution of the earnings per share.

Exam focus point

A question could ask for discussion on the effect of a rights issue, as well as calculations, eg of the effect on EPS.

4.9 Example: Rights issue (1)

Seagull can achieve a profit after tax of 20% on the capital employed. At present its capital structure is as follows.

	$
200,000 ordinary shares of $1 each	200,000
Retained earnings	100,000
	300,000

The directors propose to raise an additional $126,000 from a rights issue. The current market price is $1.80.

Required

(a) Calculate the number of shares that must be issued if the rights price is: $1.60; $1.50; $1.40; $1.20.

(b) Calculate the dilution in earnings per share in each case.

Solution

The earnings at present are 20% of $300,000 = $60,000. This gives earnings per share of 30c. The earnings after the rights issue will be 20% of $426,000 = $85,200.

Rights price	*No of new share ($126,000 ÷ rights price)*	*EPS ($85,200 ÷ total no of shares)*	*Dilution*
$		Cents	Cents
1.60	78,750	30.6	+ 0.6
1.50	84,000	30.0	–
1.40	90,000	29.4	– 0.6
1.20	105,000	27.9	– 2.1

Note that at a high rights price the earnings per share are increased, not diluted. The breakeven point (zero dilution) occurs when the rights price is equal to the capital employed per share: $300,000 ÷ 200,000 = $1.50.

4.9.1 The market price of shares after a rights issue: the theoretical ex rights price

When a rights issue is announced, all existing shareholders have the right to subscribe for new shares, and so there are rights attached to the existing shares. The shares are therefore described as being **'cum rights'** (with rights attached) and are traded cum rights. On the first day of dealings in the newly issued shares, the rights no longer exist and the old shares are now **'ex rights'** (without rights attached).

After the announcement of a rights issue, share prices normally **fall**. The extent and duration of the fall may depend on the number of shareholders and the size of their holdings. This temporary fall is due to **uncertainty** in the market about the consequences of the issue, with respect to future profits, earnings and dividends.

After the issue has actually been made, the market price per share will normally fall, because there are more shares in issue and the new shares were issued at a discount price.

In theory, the new market price will be the consequence of an adjustment to allow for the discount price of the new issue, and a theoretical ex rights price can be calculated.

4.9.2 Example: Rights issue (2)

Fundraiser has 1,000,000 ordinary shares of $1 in issue, which have a market price on 1 September of $2.10 per share. The company decides to make a rights issue, and offers its shareholders the right to subscribe for one new share at $1.50 each for every four shares already held. After the announcement of the issue, the share price fell to $1.95, but by the time just prior to the issue being made, it had recovered to $2 per share. This market value just before the issue is known as the cum rights price. What is the theoretical ex rights price?

Solution

Value of the portfolio for a shareholder with 4 shares before the rights issue:

	$
4 shares @ $2.00	8.00
1 share @ $1.50	1.50
5	9.50

so the value per share after the rights issue (or TERP) is 9.50/5 = $1.90.

4.9.3 The value of rights

The value of rights is the theoretical gain a shareholder would make by exercising his rights.

(a) Using the above example, if the price offered in the rights issue is $1.50 per share, and the market price after the issue is expected to be $1.90, the value attaching to a right is $1.90 – $1.50 = $0.40. A shareholder would therefore be expected to gain 40 pence for each new share he buys.

If he does not have enough money to buy the share himself, he could sell the right to subscribe for a new share to another investor, and receive 40 pence from the sale. This other investor would then buy the new share for $1.50, so that his total outlay to acquire the share would be $0.40 + $1.50 = $1.90, the theoretical ex rights price.

(b) The value of rights attaching to existing shares is calculated in the same way. If the value of rights on a new share is 40 pence, and there is a one for four rights issue, the value of the rights attaching to each existing share is 40 ÷ 4 = 10 pence.

4.9.4 The theoretical gain or loss to shareholders

The possible courses of action open to shareholders are:

(a) To **'take up' or 'exercise' the rights**, that is, to buy the new shares at the rights price. Shareholders who do this will maintain their percentage holdings in the company by subscribing for the new shares.

(b) To **'renounce' the rights** and sell them on the market. Shareholders who do this will have lower percentage holdings of the company's equity after the issue than before the issue, and the total value of their shares will be less.

(c) To **renounce part of the rights and take up the remainder**. For example, a shareholder may sell enough of his rights to enable him to buy the remaining rights shares he is entitled to with the sale proceeds, and so keep the total market value of his shareholding in the company unchanged.

(d) To **do nothing**. Shareholders may be protected from the consequences of their inaction because rights not taken up are sold on a shareholder's behalf by the company. The Stock Exchange rules state that if new securities are not taken up, they should be sold by the company to new subscribers for the benefit of the shareholders who were entitled to the rights.

Question **Rights issue**

Gopher has issued 3,000,000 ordinary shares of $1 each, which are at present selling for $4 per share. The company plans to issue rights to purchase one new equity share at a price of $3.20 per share for every three shares held. A shareholder who owns 900 shares thinks that he will suffer a loss in his personal wealth because the new shares are being offered at a price lower than market value. On the

assumption that the actual market value of shares will be equal to the theoretical ex rights price, what would be the effect on the shareholder's wealth if:

(a) He sells all the rights
(b) He exercises half of the rights and sells the other half
(c) He does nothing at all?

Answer

Value of the portfolio for a shareholder with 3 shares before the rights issue

	$
3 shares @ $4.00	12.00
1 share @ $3.20	3.20
4	15.20

so the value per share after the rights issue (or TERP) is 15.20/4 = 3.80.

	$
Theoretical ex rights price	3.80
Price per new share	3.20
Value of rights per new share	0.60

The value of the rights attached to each existing share is $\frac{\$0.60}{3}$ = $0.20.

We will assume that a shareholder is able to sell his rights for $0.20 per existing share held.

(a) If the shareholder sells all his rights:

	$
Sale value of rights (900 × $0.20)	180
Market value of his 900 shares, ex rights × $3.80)	3,420
Total wealth	3,600
Total value of 900 shares cum rights (× $4)	$3,600

The shareholder would neither gain nor lose wealth. He would not be required to provide any additional funds to the company, but his shareholding as a proportion of the total equity of the company will be lower.

(b) If the shareholder exercises half of the rights (buys 450/3 = 150 shares at $3.20) and sells the other half:

	$
Sale value of rights (450 × $0.20)	90
Market value of his 1,050 shares, ex rights (× $3.80)	3,990
	4,080
Total value of 900 shares cum rights (× $4)	3,600
Additional investment (150 × $3.20)	480
	4,080

The shareholder would neither gain nor lose wealth, although he will have increased his investment in the company by $480.

(c) If the shareholder does nothing, but all other shareholders either exercise their rights or sell them, he would lose wealth as follows.

	$
Market value of 900 shares cum rights (× $4)	3,600
Market value of 900 shares ex rights (× $3.80)	3,420
Loss in wealth	180

It follows that the shareholder, to protect his existing investment, should either exercise his rights or sell them to another investor. If he does not exercise his rights, the new securities he was entitled to subscribe for might be sold for his benefit by the company, and this would protect him from losing wealth.

4.10 The actual market price after a rights issue 12/08

The actual market price of a share after a rights issue may differ from the theoretical ex rights price. This will occur when:

4.10.1 Expected yield from new funds raised ≠ Earnings yield from existing funds

The market will take a view of how profitably the new funds will be invested, and will value the shares accordingly. An example will illustrate this point.

4.10.2 Example: Rights issue (3)

Musk currently has 4,000,000 ordinary shares in issue, valued at $2 each, and the company has annual earnings equal to 20% of the market value of the shares. A one for four rights issue is proposed, at an issue price of $1.50. If the market continues to value the shares on a price/earnings ratio of 5, what would be the value per share if the new funds are expected to earn, as a percentage of the money raised:

(a) 15%?
(b) 20%?
(c) 25%?

How do these values in (a), (b) and (c) compare with the theoretical ex rights price? Ignore issue costs.

Solution

The theoretical ex rights price will be calculated first.

	$
Four shares have a current value (× $2) of	8.00
One new share will be issued for	1.50
Five shares would have a theoretical value of	9.50

$$\text{Theoretical ex rights price} = \frac{1}{4+1}((4 \times 2) + 1.50)$$

$$= \$1.90$$

The new funds will raise 1,000,000 × $1.50 = $1,500,000.

Earnings as a % of Money raised	*Additional earnings*	*Current earnings*	*Total earnings after the issue*
	$	$	$
15%	225,000	1,600,000	1,825,000
20%	300,000	1,600,000	1,900,000
25%	375,000	1,600,000	1,975,000

If the market values shares on a P/E ratio of 5, the total market value of equity and the market price per share would be as follows.

Total earnings	*Market value*	*Price per share (5,000,000 shares)*
$	$	$
1,825,000	9,125,000	1.825
1,900,000	9,500,000	1.900
1,975,000	9,875,000	1.975

(a) If the additional funds raised are expected to generate earnings at the **same rate** as existing funds, the **actual market value** will probably be the **same** as the theoretical ex rights price.

(b) If the new funds are expected to generate earnings at a **lower rate**, the **market value** will **fall** below the theoretical ex rights price. If this happens, **shareholders** will **lose**.

(c) If the new funds are expected to earn at a **higher rate** than current funds, the **market value** should **rise** above the theoretical ex rights price. If this happens, shareholders will profit by taking up their rights.

The decision by individual shareholders as to whether they take up the offer will therefore depend on:

- The **expected rate of return** on the investment (and the risk associated with it)
- The **return obtainable from other investments** (allowing for the associated risk)

Chapter Roundup

- A range of short-term sources of finance are available to businesses including **overdrafts**, **short-term loans**, **trade credit** and **lease finance**.
- A range of long-term sources of finance are available to businesses including **debt finance**, **leasing**, **venture capital** and **equity finance**.
- The choice of **debt finance** that a company can make depends upon:
  - The size of the business (a public issue of bonds is only available to a large company)
  - The duration of the loan
  - Whether a fixed or floating interest rate is preferred (fixed rates are more expensive, but floating rates are riskier)
  - The security that can be offered
- The term **bonds** describes various forms of long-term debt a company may issue, such as **loan notes** or **debentures**, which may be:
  - Redeemable
  - Irredeemable

  Bonds or loans come in various forms, including:
  - Floating rate debentures
  - Zero coupon bonds
  - Convertible bonds
- **Convertible bonds** are bonds that gives the holder the right to convert to other securities, normally ordinary shares, at a pre-determined price/rate and time.
- Equity finance is raised through the sale of **ordinary shares** to investors via a **new issue** or a **rights issue.**
- A company can obtain a **stock market listing** for its shares through a **public offer** or a **placing.**
- A **rights issue** is an offer to existing shareholders enabling them to buy more shares, usually at a price lower than the current market price.

Quick Quiz

1 Identify four reasons why a company may seek a stock market listing.

2 A company's shares have a nominal value of $1 and a market value of $3. In a rights issue, one new share would be issued for every three shares at a price of $2.60. What is the theoretical ex-rights price?

3 Which of the following is least likely to be a reason for seeking a stock market flotation?

A Improving the existing owners' control over the business
B Access to a wider pool of finance
C Enhancement of the company's image
D Transfer of capital to other uses

4 Which of the following is not true of a rights issue by a listed company?

A Rights issues do not require a prospectus
B The rights issues price can be at a discount to market price
C If shareholders do not take up the rights, the rights lapse
D Relative voting rights are unaffected if shareholders exercise their rights

5 A company has 12% debentures in issue, which have a market value of $135 per $100 nominal value. What is:

(a) The coupon rate?
(b) The amount of interest payable per annum per $100 (nominal) of debenture?

6 Convertible securities are fixed return securities that may be converted into zero coupon bonds/ordinary shares/warrants. (Delete as appropriate.)

7 What is the value of $100 12% debt redeemable in 3 years time at a premium of 20c per $ if the loanholder's required return is 10%?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 **Four** of the following **five**: access to a wider pool of finance; improved marketability of shares; transfer of capital to other uses (eg founder members liquidating holdings); enhancement of company image; making growth by acquisition possible.

2 $\frac{1}{3+1}((\$3 \times 3) + \$2.60) = \$2.90.$

3 A Flotation is likely to involve a significant loss of control to a wider circle of investors.

4 C Shareholders have the option of renouncing the rights and selling them on the market.

5 (a) 12%
(b) $12

6 Ordinary shares.

7

Years		$	*Discount factor 10%*	*Present value* $
1–3	Interest	12	2.487	29.84
3	Redemption premium	120	0.751	90.12
Value of debt				119.96

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q19	Introductory	15	27 mins
Q20	Examination	25	45 mins

13

Dividend policy

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Internal sources of finance	E3 (a)
2 Dividend policy	E3 (b), (c)

Introduction

In the previous chapter we looked at **external** sources of finance. In this chapter we will consider **internal** finance in the form of surplus cash.

There is a clear link between financing decisions and the wealth of a company's shareholders. **Dividend policy** plays a big part in a company's relations with its equity shareholders, and a company must consider how the stock market will view its results.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
E3	**Internal sources of finance and dividend policy**	
(a)	Identify and discuss internal sources of finance, including:	2
(i)	Retained earnings	
(ii)	Increasing working capital management efficiency	
(b)	Explain the relationship between dividend policy and the financing decision	2
(c)	Discuss the theoretical approaches to, and the practical influences on, the dividend decisions, including:	2
(i)	Legal constraints	
(ii)	Liquidity	
(iii)	Shareholder expectations	
(iv)	Alternatives to cash dividends	

Exam guide

This chapter is likely to be examined as a discussion question, perhaps combined with ratio analysis.

1 Internal sources of finance

FAST FORWARD

Internal sources of finance include **retained earnings** and **increasing working capital management efficiency**.

1.1 Retained earnings

Retained earnings is surplus cash that has not been needed for operating costs, interest payments, tax liabilities, asset replacement or cash dividends. For many businesses, the cash needed to finance investments will be available because the earnings the business has made have been retained within the business rather than paid out as dividends. We emphasised in Chapter 1 that this **interaction** of investment, financing and dividend policy is the most important issue facing many businesses.

Retained earnings **belong to shareholders** and are classed as **equity** financing.

Exam focus point

It is important not to confuse retained earnings with the accounting term 'retained profit' from the income statement and statement of financial position. 'Retained profit' in the accounting statements is not necessarily cash and does not represent funds that can be invested. It is the **cash generated** from retention of earnings which can be used for financing purposes.

A company may have substantial retained profits in its statement of financial position but no cash in the bank and will not therefore be able to finance investment from retained earnings.

1.1.1 Advantages of using retained earnings

(a) Retained earnings are a **flexible source** of finance; companies are not tied to specific amounts or specific repayment patterns.

(b) Using retained earnings does not involve a change in the pattern of shareholdings and no dilution of control.

(c) Retained earnings have no issue costs.

1.1.2 Disadvantages of using retained earnings

(a) Shareholders may be **sensitive** to the **loss of dividends** that will result from retention for re-investment, rather than paying dividends.

(b) Not so much a disadvantage as a misconception, that retaining profits is a cost-free method of obtaining funds. There is an **opportunity cost** in that if dividends were paid, the cash received could be invested by shareholders to earn a return.

1.2 Increasing working capital management efficiency

It is important not to forget that an internal source of finance is the **savings** that can be generated from more efficient management of trade receivables, inventory, cash and trade payables. As we saw in Part C of this study text, efficient working capital management can reduce bank overdraft and interest charges as well as increasing cash reserves.

2 Dividend policy 12/07

FAST FORWARD

- **Retained earnings** are the most important single source of finance for companies, and financial managers should take account of the proportion of earnings that are retained as opposed to being paid as dividends.
- Companies generally **smooth out dividend payments** by adjusting only gradually to changes in earnings: large fluctuations might **undermine investors' confidence**.
- The dividends a company pays may be treated as a **signal** to investors. A company needs to take account of different clienteles of shareholders in deciding what dividends to pay.

For any company, the amount of earnings retained within the business has a direct impact on the amount of dividends. Profit re-invested as retained earnings is profit that could have been paid as a **dividend**.

A company must restrict its self-financing through retained earnings because shareholders should be paid a **reasonable dividend**, in line with realistic expectations, even if the directors would rather keep the funds for re-investing. At the same time, a company that is looking for extra funds will not be expected by investors (such as banks) to pay generous dividends, nor over-generous salaries to owner-directors.

The dividend policy of a business affects the **total shareholder return** and therefore **shareholder wealth** (see Chapter 1).

2.1 Dividend payments

Shareholders normally have the power to vote to **reduce** the size of the dividend at the AGM, but **not** the power to increase the dividend. The directors of the company are therefore in a strong position, with regard to shareholders, when it comes to determining dividend policy. For practical purposes, shareholders will usually be obliged to accept the dividend policy that has been decided on by the directors, or otherwise to sell their shares.

2.2 Factors influencing dividend policy

When deciding upon the dividends to pay out to shareholders, one of the main considerations of the directors will be the amount of earnings they wish to retain to meet **financing needs**.

As well as future financing requirements, the decision on how much of a company's profits should be retained, and how much paid out to shareholders, will be influenced by:

(a) The **need to remain profitable** (Dividends are paid out of profits, and an unprofitable company cannot for ever go on paying dividends out of retained profits made in the past).

(b) The **law on distributable profits** (A Companies Act may make companies bound to pay dividends solely out of **accumulated net realised profits** as in the UK).

(c) The government which may impose **direct restrictions** on the amount of dividends companies can pay. (For example, in the UK in the 1960's as part of a prices and income policy).

(d) Any **dividend restraints** that might be imposed by loan agreements.

(e) The **effect of inflation**, and the need to retain some profit within the business just to maintain its operating capability unchanged.

(f) The company's **gearing level** (If the company wants extra finance, the sources of funds used should strike a balance between equity and debt finance).

(g) The company's **liquidity position** (Dividends are a cash payment, and a company must have enough cash to pay the dividends it declares).

(h) The need to **repay debt** in the near future.

(i) The ease with which the company could raise **extra finance** from sources other than retained earnings (Small companies which find it hard to raise finance might have to rely more heavily on retained earnings than large companies).

(j) The **signalling effect** of dividends to shareholders and the financial markets in general – see below.

2.3 Dividends as a signal to investors

The ultimate objective in any financial management decisions is to **maximise shareholders' wealth**. This wealth is basically represented by the **current market value** of the company, which should largely be determined by the **cash flows arising from the investment decisions** taken by management.

Although the market would **like** to value shares on the basis of underlying cash flows on the company's projects, such information is **not readily available to investors**. But the directors do have this information. The dividend declared can be interpreted as a **signal** from directors to shareholders about the strength of underlying project cash flows.

Investors usually expect a **consistent dividend policy** from the company, with stable dividends each year or, even better, **steady dividend growth**. A large rise or fall in dividends in any year can have a marked effect on the company's share price. Stable dividends or steady dividend growth are usually needed for share price stability. A cut in dividends may be treated by investors as signalling that the future prospects of the company are weak. Thus, the dividend which is paid acts, possibly without justification, **as a signal of the future prospects** of the company.

The signalling effect of a company's dividend policy may also be used by management of a company which faces a possible **takeover**. The dividend level might be increased as a defence against the takeover: investors may take the increased dividend as a signal of improved future prospects, thus driving the share price higher and making the company more expensive for a potential bidder to take over.

2.4 Theories of dividend policy

2.4.1 Residual theory

A **'residual' theory** of **dividend policy** can be summarised as follows.

- If a company can identify projects with positive NPVs, it should invest in them
- Only when these investment opportunities are exhausted should dividends be paid

2.4.2 Traditional view

The **'traditional' view** of dividend policy, implicit in our earlier discussion, is to focus on the effects on share price. The price of a share depends upon the mix of dividends, given shareholders' required rate of return, and growth.

2.4.3 Irrelevancy theory

In contrast to the traditional view, **Modigliani and Miller** (MM) proposed that in a tax-free world, shareholders are indifferent between dividends and capital gains, and the value of a company is determined solely by the 'earning power' of its assets and investments.

MM argued that if a company with investment opportunities decides to pay a dividend, so that **retained earnings** are **insufficient** to finance all its investments, the shortfall in funds will be made up by **obtaining additional funds** from outside sources. As a result of obtaining outside finance instead of using retained earnings:

Loss of value in existing shares = Amount of dividend paid

In answer to criticisms that certain shareholders will show a preference either for high dividends or for capital gains, MM argued that if a company pursues a consistent dividend policy, 'each corporation would tend to attract to itself a clientele consisting of those preferring its particular payout ratio, but one clientele would be entirely as good as another in terms of the valuation it would imply for the firm'.

2.4.4 The case in favour of the relevance of dividend policy (and against MM's views)

There are strong arguments against MM's view that dividend policy is irrelevant as a means of affecting shareholder's wealth.

(a) Differing rates of taxation on dividends and capital gains can create a preference for a high dividend or one for high earnings retention.

(b) Dividend retention should be preferred by companies in a period of capital rationing.

(c) Due to imperfect markets and the possible difficulties of selling shares easily at a fair price, shareholders might need high dividends in order to have funds to invest in opportunities outside the company.

(d) Markets are not perfect. Because of transaction costs on the sale of shares, investors who want some cash from their investments will prefer to receive dividends rather than to sell some of their shares to get the cash they want.

(e) Information available to shareholders is imperfect, and they are not aware of the future investment plans and expected profits of their company. Even if management were to provide them with profit forecasts, these forecasts would not necessarily be accurate or believable.

(f) Perhaps the strongest argument against the MM view is that shareholders will tend to prefer a current dividend to future capital gains (or deferred dividends) because the future is more uncertain.

Exam focus point

Even if you accept that dividend policy may have some influence on share values, there may be other, more important, influences.

Question

Dividend policy

Ochre is a company that is still managed by the two individuals who set it up 12 years ago. In the current year the company was launched on the stock market. Previously, all of the shares had been owned by its two founders and certain employees. Now, 40% of the shares are in the hands of the investing public. The company's profit growth and dividend policy are set out below. Will a continuation of the same dividend policy as in the past be suitable now that the company is quoted on the stock market?

Year	*Profits*	*Dividend*	*Shares in issue*
	$'000	$'000	
4 years ago	176	88	800,000
3 years ago	200	104	800,000
2 years ago	240	120	1,000,000
1 year ago	290	150	1,000,000
Current year	444	222 (proposed)	1,500,000

Answer

Year	*Dividend per share cents*	*Dividend as %of profit*
4 years ago	11.0	50%
3 years ago	13.0	52%

2 years ago	12.0	50%
1 year ago	15.0	52%
Current year	14.8	50%

The company appears to have pursued a dividend policy of paying out half of after-tax profits in dividend. This policy is only suitable when a company achieves a stable EPS or steady EPS growth. Investors do not like a fall in dividend from one year to the next, and the fall in dividend per share in the current year is likely to be unpopular, and to result in a fall in the share price.

The company would probably serve its shareholders better by paying a dividend of at least 15c per share, possibly more, in the current year, even though the dividend as a percentage of profit would then be higher.

2.5 Scrip dividends

Key term

A **scrip dividend** is a dividend paid by the issue of additional company shares, rather than by cash.

When the directors of a company would prefer to retain funds within the business but consider that they must pay at least a certain amount of dividend, they might offer equity shareholders the choice of a **cash dividend** or a **scrip dividend**. Each shareholder would decide separately which to take.

Recently **enhanced scrip dividends** have been offered by many companies. With enhanced scrip dividends, the value of the shares offered is much greater than the cash alternative, giving investors an incentive to choose the shares.

2.5.1 Advantages of scrip dividends

(a) They can **preserve** a company's **cash position** if a substantial number of shareholders take up the share option.

(b) Investors may be able to obtain **tax advantages** if dividends are in the form of shares.

(c) Investors looking to **expand their holding** can do so **without incurring** the **transaction costs** of buying more shares.

(d) A small scrip dividend issue will **not dilute the share price significantly.** If however cash is not offered as an alternative, empirical evidence suggests that the share price will tend to fall.

(e) A share issue will **decrease** the company's **gearing**, and may therefore **enhance** its **borrowing capacity.**

2.6 Stock split

A stock split occurs where, for example, each ordinary share of $1 each is split into two shares of 50c each, thus creating cheaper shares with **greater marketability**. There is possibly an added psychological advantage, in that investors may expect a company which splits its shares in this way to be planning for substantial earnings growth and dividend growth in the future.

As a consequence, the market price of shares may benefit. For example, if one existing share of $1 has a market value of $6, and is then split into two shares of 50c each, the market value of the new shares might settle at, say, $3.10 instead of the expected $3, in anticipation of strong future growth in earnings and dividends.

The difference between a stock split and a scrip issue is that a scrip issue converts equity reserves into share capital, whereas a stock split leaves reserves unaffected.

2.7 Share repurchase

FAST FORWARD

Purchase by a company of its own shares can take place for various reasons and must be in accordance with any **requirements of legislation**.

In many countries companies have the right to **buy back shares from shareholders** who are willing to sell them, subject to certain conditions.

For a **smaller company** with few shareholders, the reason for buying back the company's own shares may be that there is no immediate willing purchaser at a time when a shareholder wishes to sell shares. For a public company, share repurchase could provide a way of withdrawing from the share market and 'going private'.

2.7.1 Benefits of a share repurchase scheme

(a) Finding a **use for surplus cash**, which may be a 'dead asset'.

(b) **Increase in earnings per share** through a reduction in the number of shares in issue. This should lead to a higher share price than would otherwise be the case, and the company should be able to increase dividend payments on the remaining shares in issue.

(c) **Increase in gearing**. Repurchase of a company's own shares allows debt to be substituted for equity, so raising gearing. This will be of interest to a company wanting to increase its gearing without increasing its total long-term funding.

(d) **Readjustment of the company's equity base** to more appropriate levels, for a company whose business is in decline.

(e) Possibly **preventing a takeover** or enabling a quoted company to withdraw from the stock market.

2.7.2 Drawbacks of a share repurchase scheme

(a) It can be **hard to arrive at a price** that will be fair both to the vendors and to any shareholders who are not selling shares to the company.

(b) A repurchase of shares could be seen as an **admission** that the company **cannot make better use of the funds** than the shareholders.

(c) Some shareholders may suffer from being **taxed on a capital gain** following the purchase of their shares rather than receiving dividend income.

Case Study

Germany's largest bank, Deutsche Bank, announced on 16 April 2003 that it had completed a €3 billion share buyback aimed at supporting its stock price and pushing up shareholder return on equity and earnings per share. The scheme was launched after the bank's share price dipped in the first months of 2002. The bank planned to seek approval for another programme later in 2003 of up to 10% of share capital.

Chapter Roundup

- Internal sources of finance include **retained earnings** and increasing **working capital efficiency**.
- **Retained earnings** are the most important single source of finance for companies, and financial managers should take account of the proportion of earnings that are retained as opposed to being paid as dividends.

  Companies generally **smooth out dividend payments** by adjusting only gradually to changes in earnings: large fluctuations might **undermine investors' confidence**.

The dividends a company pays may be treated as a **signal** to investors. A company needs to take account of different clienteles of shareholders in deciding what dividends to pay.

- Purchase by a company of its own shares can take place for various reasons and must be in accordance with any **requirements of legislation**.

Quick Quiz

1 A company offers to pay a dividend in the form of new shares which are worth more than the cash alternative which is also offered. What is this dividend in the form of shares called?

2 Match A/B to (i)/(ii), to express the difference between a stock split and a scrip issue.

A	A scrip issue ….	(i)	…. converts equity reserves into share capital
B	A stock split ….	(ii)	…. leaves reserves unaffected

3 Which of the following sources of finance to companies is the most widely used in practice?

A Bank borrowings
B Rights issues
C New share issues
D Retained earnings

4 A scrip dividend is

A A dividend paid at a fixed percentage rate on the nominal value of the shares

B A dividend paid at a fixed percentage rate on the market value of the shares on the date that the dividend is declared

C A dividend payment that takes the form of new shares instead of cash

D An issue of new shares to existing shareholders by converting equity reserves into issued share capital

5 Give a definition of 'signalling' in the context of dividends policy.

6 Why might shareholders prefer a current dividend to a future capital gain?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 An enhanced scrip dividend.

2 A(i); B(ii).

3 D Retained earnings

4 C A would most commonly be a preference dividend. D is a definition of a scrip issue, not a scrip dividend.

5 The use of dividend policy to indicate the future prospects of an enterprise

6 Tax advantages or because the future capital gain will be uncertain

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q21	Introductory	–	20 mins

14 Gearing and capital structure

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Gearing	E4 (a)
2 Effect on shareholder wealth	E4 (b)
3 Finance for small and medium-sized entities	E5 (a), (b), (c), (d)

Introduction

In Chapter 12, we described different methods by which a company can obtain long-term finance, both in the form of **equity** and in the form of **debt**.

This chapter looks now at the effect of sources of finance on the financial position and financial risk of a company. A central question here is: What are the implications of using different proportions of equity and debt finance?

The answer to this has to take account the attitudes of investors to the **financial risk** associated with increasing levels of debt finance, and the **trade-off** between risk and return.

We also look at various **gearing ratios** which give us a measure of the extent to which a company is financed by debt.

In this chapter we shall also be looking at how small and medium-sized enterprises **(SMEs)** obtain finance. The sources of finance are important but this chapter also discusses why SMEs have difficulty raising finance and how they can tackle the obstacles that exist to obtaining finance.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
E4	**Gearing and capital structure considerations**	
(a)	Identify and discuss the problem of high levels of gearing	2
(b)	Assess the impact of sources of finance on financial position and financial risk using appropriate measure, including:	
(i)	Ratio analysis using balance sheet gearing, operational and financial gearing, interest coverage ratio and other relevant ratios	2
(ii)	Cash flow forecasting	2
(iii)	Effect on shareholder wealth	2
E5	**Finance for small and medium sized entities**	
(a)	Describe the financing needs of small businesses.	2
(b)	Describe the nature of the financing problem for small businesses in terms of the funding gap, the maturity gap and inadequate security.	2
(c)	Explain measures that may be taken to ease the financing problems of SMEs, including the responses of government departments and financial institutions.	1
(d)	Identify appropriate sources of finance for SMEs and evaluate the financial impact of different sources of finance on SMEs.	2

Exam guide

You may be asked to explain the implications of different financing decisions on investment opportunities and the company's continued health. Capital structure is a significant topic in this exam and can be examined in conjunction with a number of other areas.

1 Gearing

Pilot Paper, 12/07

Key term

Gearing is the amount of debt finance a company uses relative to its equity finance.

1.1 Financial risk

FAST FORWARD

Debt finance tends to be relatively low risk for the debtholder as it is interest-bearing and can be secured. The cost of debt to the company is therefore relatively low.

The greater the level of debt, the more **financial risk** (of reduced dividends after the payment of debt interest) to the shareholder of the company, so the higher is their required return.

The assets of a business must be financed somehow, and when a business is growing, the additional assets must be financed by additional capital.

However a high level of debt creates financial risk. **Financial risk** can be seen from different points of view.

(a) **The company as a whole**

If a company builds up debts that it cannot pay when they fall due, it will be forced into liquidation.

(b) **Payables**

If a company cannot pay its debts, the company will go into liquidation owing payables money that they are unlikely to recover in full. Lenders will thus want a **higher interest yield** to compensate them for higher financial risk and gearing.

(c) **Ordinary shareholders**

A company will not make any distributable profits unless it is able to earn enough profit before interest and tax to pay all its interest charges, and then tax. The lower the profits or the higher the interest-bearing debts, the less there will be, if there is anything at all, for shareholders. Ordinary shareholders will probably want a **bigger expected return** from their shares to compensate them for a **higher financial risk**. The market value of shares will therefore depend on gearing, because of this premium for financial risk that shareholders will want to earn.

1.2 Gearing ratios

FAST FORWARD

- The **financial risk** of a company's capital structure can be measured by a **gearing ratio**, a **debt ratio** or **debt/equity ratio** and by the **interest coverage**.
- **Financial gearing** measures the relationship between **shareholders' funds** and **prior charge capital.**
- **Operational gearing** measures the relationship between **contribution** and **profit before interest and tax.**

Exam focus point

You need to be able to explain **and calculate** the level of financial gearing using alternative measures.

Financial gearing measures the relationship between shareholders' capital plus reserves, and either prior charge capital or borrowings or both.

Commonly used measures of financial gearing are based on the **statement of financial position values** of the fixed interest and equity capital. They include:

Formula to learn

$$\textbf{Financial gearing} = \frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Equity capital (including reserves)}}$$

$$\text{and} = \frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed *}}$$

* Either including or excluding minority interests, deferred tax and deferred income.

Prior charge capital is capital which has a right to the receipt of interest or of preferred dividends in precedence to any claim on distributable earnings on the part of the ordinary shareholders. On winding up, the claims of holders of prior charge also rank before those of ordinary shareholders.

With the first definition above, a company is low geared if the gearing ratio is less than 100%, highly geared if the ratio is over 100% and neutrally geared if it is exactly 100%. With the second definition, a company is neutrally geared if the ratio is 50%, low geared below that, and highly geared above that.

Exam focus point

If the question specifies a gearing formula, for example by defining an industry average for comparison, you must use that formula.

Question

From the following statement of financial position, compute the company's financial gearing ratio.

	$'000
Non-current assets	12,400
Current assets	1,000
	13,400
Financing	
Debentures	4,700
Bank loans	500
Provisions for liabilities and charges: deferred taxation	300
Deferred income	250
Ordinary shares	1,500
Preference shares	500
Share premium account	760
Revaluation reserve	1,200
Income statement	2,810
	12,520
Current liabilities	
Loans	120
Bank overdraft	260
Trade payables	430
Bills of exchange	70
	13,400

Answer

Prior charge capital	$'000
Preference shares	500
Debentures	4,700
Long-term bank loans	500
Prior charge capital, ignoring short-term debt	5,700
Short-term loans	120
Overdraft	260
Prior charge capital, including short-term interest bearing debt	6,080

Either figure, $6,080,000 or $5,700,000, could be used. If gearing is calculated with capital employed in the denominator, and capital employed is net non-current assets plus **net** current assets, it would seem more reasonable to exclude short-term interest bearing debt from prior charge capital. This is because short-term debt is set off against current assets in arriving at the figure for net current assets.

Equity = 1,500 + 760 + 1,200 + 2,810 = $6,270,000

The gearing ratio can be calculated in any of the following ways.

(a) $$\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Equity}} \times 100\% = \frac{6{,}080}{6{,}270} \times 100\% = 97\%$$

(b) $$\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Equity plus prior charge capital}} \times 100\% = \frac{6{,}080}{(6{,}080 + 6{,}270)} \times 100\% = 49.2\%$$

(c) $$\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed}} \times 100\% = \frac{5{,}700}{12{,}520} \times 100\% = 45.5\%$$

1.2.1 Gearing ratios based on market values

An alternative method of calculating a gearing ratio is one based on **market values**:

Formula to learn

$$\textbf{Financial gearing} = \frac{\text{Market value of prior charge capital}}{\text{Market value of equity} + \text{Market value of debt}}$$

The advantage of this method is that potential investors in a company are able to judge the further debt capacity of the company more clearly by reference to **market values** than they could by looking at statement of financial position values.

The disadvantage of a gearing ratio based on market values is that it **disregards** the **value** of the company's **assets**, which might be used to secure further loans. A gearing ratio based on statement of financial position values arguably gives a better indication of the security for lenders of fixed interest capital.

1.2.2 Changing financial gearing

Financial gearing is an attempt to quantify the **degree of risk** involved in holding equity shares in a company, both in terms of the company's ability to remain in business and in terms of expected ordinary dividends from the company.

The more geared the company is, the **greater the risk** that little (if anything) will be available to distribute by way of dividend to the ordinary shareholders. The more geared the company, the greater the percentage change in profit available for ordinary shareholders for any given percentage change in profit before interest and tax.

This means that there will be greater **volatility** of amounts available for ordinary shareholders, and presumably therefore greater volatility in dividends paid to those shareholders, where a company is highly geared. That is the risk. You may do extremely well or extremely badly without a particularly large movement in the profit from operations of the company.

Gearing ultimately measures the company's ability to **remain in business**. A highly geared company has a large amount of interest to pay annually. If those borrowings are 'secured' in any way (and bonds in particular are secured), then the holders of the debt are perfectly entitled to force the company to realise assets to pay their interest if funds are not available from other sources. Clearly, the more highly geared a company, the more likely this is to occur when and if profits fall.

1.2.3 Example: Gearing

Suppose that two companies are identical in every respect except for their gearing. Both have assets of $20,000 and both make the same operating profits (profit before interest and tax: PBIT). The only difference between the two companies is that Nonlever is all-equity financed and Lever is partly financed by debt capital, as follows.

	Nonlever	*Lever*
	$	$
Assets	20,000	20,000
10% Bonds	0	(10,000)
	20,000	10,000
Ordinary shares of $1	20,000	10,000

Because Lever has $10,000 of 10% bonds it must make a profit before interest of at least $1,000 in order to pay the interest charges. Nonlever, on the other hand, does not have any minimum PBIT requirement because it has no debt capital. A company which is lower geared is considered less risky than a higher geared company because of the greater likelihood that its PBIT will be high enough to cover interest charges and make a profit for equity shareholders.

1.2.4 Operational gearing

Financial risk, as we have seen, can be measured by financial gearing. **Business risk** refers to the risk of making only low profits, or even losses, due to the nature of the business that the company is involved in. One way of measuring business risk is by calculating a company's **operational gearing**.

Formula to learn

$$\textbf{Operational gearing} = \frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{Profit before interest and tax (PBIT)}}$$

Contribution is sales minus variable cost of sales.

The significance of operational gearing is as follows.

(a) **If contribution is high but PBIT is low**, fixed costs will be high, and only just covered by contribution. Business risk, as measured by operational gearing, will be high.

(b) **If contribution is not much bigger than PBIT**, fixed costs will be low, and fairly easily covered. Business risk, as measured by operational gearing, will be low.

1.3 Interest coverage ratio

The interest coverage ratio is a measure of financial risk which is designed to show the risks in terms of profit rather than in terms of capital values.

Formula to learn

$$\textbf{Interest coverage ratio} = \frac{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}{\text{Interest}}$$

The reciprocal of this, the interest to profit ratio, is also sometimes used. As a general guide, an interest coverage ratio of **less than three times** is considered low, indicating that profitability is too low given the gearing of the company. An interest coverage ratio of more than seven is usually seen as safe.

1.4 The debt ratio

Another measure of financial risk is the **debt ratio.**

Debt ratio = Total debts : Total assets

Debt does not include long-term provisions and liabilities such as deferred taxation.

There is no firm rule on the maximum safe debt ratio, but as a general guide, you might regard 50% as a safe limit to debt.

Question — **Impact of new investment**

Timothy Co is planning to invest in new machinery costing $10 million. The revenues and costs arising from the investment are as follows:

	$'000
Sales	2,500
Variable cost of sales	1,100
Other variable operating expenses	200
Other fixed operating expenses including tax allowable depreciation	120

The purchase of the machinery will be financed solely by an issue of 7% bonds, repayable in 20X9.

Timothy's budgeted income statement for the year ended, and statement of financial position at, 31 December 20X4 before taking into account the effects of the new investment are set out below.

Income statement

	20X4
	$'000
Sales	16,000
Cost of sales (100% variable)	9,600
Gross profit	6,400
Other operating expenses (50% variable)	2,800
Profit before interest and tax	3,600
Interest	800
Profit before tax	2,800
Tax (30%)	840
Profit after tax	1,960
Dividends (Dividend cover is constant 2:1)	980
Retained earnings	980

Statement of financial position

	$'000	$'000
Non-current assets		25,000
Current assets	10,000	
Current liabilities	3,000	
		7,000
10% Bonds 20X8		8,000
		24,000
Equity share capital and reserves		24,000

Required

Demonstrate the effects of the new investment on:

(a) Operational gearing

(b) Interest cover

(c) Financial gearing (= $\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed}}$)

Answer

The best approach is firstly to calculate the impact on the budgeted income statement and the finance section of the statement of financial position.

Income statement

	20X4
	$000
Sales (16,000 + 2,500)	18,500
Cost of sales (9,600 + 1,100)	10,700
Gross profit	7,800
Other variable operating expenses (50% × 2,800) + 200	1,600
Other fixed operating expenses (50% × 2,800) + 120	1,520
Profit before interest and tax	4,680
Interest (800 + (7% × 10,000))	1,500
Profit before tax	3,180
Tax (840 + (30% × (2,500 – 1,100 – 200 – 120 – 700)))	954
Profit after tax	2,226
Dividends (50% × 2,226)	1,113
Retained earnings	1,113

Statement of financial position

	$000
7% Bonds 20X9	10,000
10% Bonds 20X8	8,000
	18,000
Equity share capital and reserves (24,000 + (1,113 – 980)	24,133

(a) Operational gearing $= \dfrac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{Profit before interest and tax (PBIT)}}$

Before the investment

Operational gearing $= \dfrac{16{,}000 - 9{,}600 - (50\% \times 2{,}800)}{3{,}600} = 1.39$

After the investment

Operational gearing $= \dfrac{18{,}500 - 10{,}700 - 1{,}600}{4{,}680} = 1.32$

(b) Interest cover $= \dfrac{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}{\text{Interest}}$

Before the investment

Interest cover $= \dfrac{3{,}600}{800} = 4.5$

After the investment

Interest cover $= \dfrac{4{,}680}{1{,}500} = 3.12$

(c) Financial gearing $= \dfrac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed}}$

Before investment

Financial gearing $= \dfrac{8{,}000}{8{,}000 + 24{,}000} = 25\%$

After investment

Financial gearing $= \dfrac{8{,}000 + 10{,}000}{8{,}000 + 10{,}000 + 24{,}133} = 42.7\%$

Exam focus point

A change in sources of finance could be examined by the preparation of a **cash flow forecast** which we covered in Chapter 6.

1.5 Company circumstances 6/08, 12/08

One determinant of the suitability of the gearing mix is the **stability** of the company. It may seem obvious, but it is worth stressing that debt financing will be more appropriate when:

- The company is in a **healthy competitive position**
- **Cash flows** and **earnings** are stable
- **Profit margins** are **reasonable**
- **Operational gearing** is **low** (ie the fixed costs that have to be covered by profits from trading activities are low)
- The **bulk of the company's assets** are **tangible**
- The **liquidity** and **cash flow position** is **strong**
- The **debt-equity ratio** is **low**
- **Share prices** are **low**

1.6 Cost and flexibility

The **cost of debt** is likely to be lower than the cost of equity, because debt is **less risky** from the debtholders' viewpoint. As we have seen, interest has to be paid no matter what the level of profits, and debt capital can be secured by **fixed** and **floating charges**.

Interest rates on longer-term debt may be higher than interest rates on shorter-term debt, because many lenders believe longer-term lending to be riskier. However **issue costs** or **arrangement fees** will be **higher** for shorter-term debt as it has to be renewed more frequently.

A business may also find itself locked into **longer-term debt**, with adverse interest rates and large penalties if it repays the debt early. Both **inflation** and **uncertainty** about future interest rate changes are reasons why companies are unwilling to borrow long-term at high rates of interest and investors are unwilling to lend long-term when they think that interest yields might go even higher.

1.7 Optimal capital structure

When we consider the capital structure decision, the question arises of whether there is an optimal mix of capital and debt which a company should try to achieve. We will consider this issue in detail in Chapter 16 of this study text.

2 Effect on shareholder wealth 6/08

FAST FORWARD

If a company can generate returns on capital in excess of the interest payable on debt, financial gearing will raise the EPS. Gearing will, however, also increase **the variability of returns** for shareholders and increase the chance of corporate **failure**.

A company will only be able to raise finance if investors think the returns they can expect are satisfactory in view of the risks they are taking.

2.1 Earnings per share

Remember the definition of earnings per share.

Key term

Basic **earnings per share** should be calculated by dividing the net profit or loss for the period attributable to ordinary shareholders by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the period.

One measure of gearing uses earnings per share.

$$\text{Financial gearing at a given level of sales} = \frac{\text{\% change in earnings per share}}{\text{\% change in profits before interest and tax}}$$

The relationship between these two figures can be used to evaluate alternative financing plans by examining their effect on earnings per share over a range of PBIT levels. Its objective is to determine the PBIT indifference points amongst the various alternative financing plans. The indifference points between any two methods of financing can be determined by solving for PBIT the following equation:

$$\frac{(PBIT - I)(1 - T)}{S1} = \frac{(PBIT - I)(1 - T)}{S2}$$

where t = tax rate, I = interest payable, S1 and S2 = number of shares after financing for plans 1 and 2

2.2 Example: PBIT and EPS

Edted Company has 10,000 m €1 shares in issue and wants to raise €5,000 m to fund an investment by either:

(a) Selling 2,500 m shares at €2 each or
(b) Issuing €5,000 m 10% loan stock at par

The income tax rate is 40%.

In order to calculate the indifference point between issuing equity shares and issuing debt, we use the above equation.

$$\frac{(PBIT - 0)(1 - 0.4)}{12{,}500} = \frac{(PBIT - 500)(1 - 0.4)}{10{,}000}$$

$10{,}000 \times 0.6 \times PBIT = 12{,}500 \times 0.6 \times (PBIT - 500)$

$6{,}000\ PBIT = 7{,}500\ PBIT - 3{,}750{,}000$

$1{,}500\ PBIT = 3{,}750{,}000$

$PBIT = 2{,}500$

We can prove this calculation as follows

	Issues Equity	*Issues Debt*
	€m	€m
PBIT	2,500	2,500
Interest		(500)
PBIT	2,500	2,000
Tax	(1,000)	(800)
Earnings after tax	1,500	1,200
Number of shares	12,500	10,000
Earnings per share	€0.12	€0.12

At a level of PBIT above €2,500 million, it will be better to issue debt, as every € extra of earnings will be distributed between fewer shareholders. At a level of PBIT below €2,500 million, it will be better to issue equity, as the loss of each € will be by more shareholders.

The company's attitude will depend on what levels of earnings it expects and also the **variability** of **possible earnings** limits. Variations from what is expected will have a greater impact on earnings per share if the company chooses debt finance.

2.3 Price-earnings ratio

You will remember that the price-earnings ratio is calculated in the following way:

Key term

Price earnings (P/E) ratio = $\frac{\text{Market price per share}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$

and that the **value of the P/E ratio** reflects the market's appraisal of the share's future prospects. If earnings per share falls because of an increased burden arising from increased gearing, an increased P/E ratio will mean that the share price has not fallen as much as earnings, indicating the market views positively the projects that the increased gearing will fund.

2.4 Dividend cover

You will recall that the **dividend cover** is the number of times the actual dividend could be paid out of current profits.

Key term

Dividend cover = $\frac{\text{Earnings per share}}{\text{Dividend per share}}$

To judge the effect of increased gearing on dividend cover, you should consider changes in the dividend levels and changes in dividend cover. If earnings decrease because of an increased burden of interest payments, then:

(a) The directors may decide to make **corresponding reductions in dividend** to maintain levels of dividend cover.

(b) Alternatively the directions may choose to maintain dividend levels, in which case **dividend cover** will **fall.** This will indicate to shareholders an **increased risk** that the company will not be able to maintain the same dividend payments in future years, should earnings fall.

2.5 Dividend yield

Remember that the dividend yield is calculated as follows:

Key term

$$\textbf{Dividend yield} = \frac{\text{Gross dividend per share}}{\text{Market price per share}} \times 100\%$$

The gross dividend is the dividend paid plus the appropriate tax credit. The (net) dividend yield (using the dividend per share net of taxes deducted at source) can also be used.

We have discussed how increased gearing might affect dividends and dividend cover. However with dividend yield, we are also looking at the effect on the **market price of shares**. If the additional debt finance is expected to be used to generate good returns in the long-term, it is possible that the dividend yield might fall significantly in the short-term because of a fall in short-term dividends, but also an increase in the market price reflecting market expectations of enhanced long-term returns. How shareholders view this movement will depend on their preference between short-term and long-term returns.

Question — Gearing

A summarised statement of financial position of Rufus is as follows.

	$m
Assets less current liabilities	150
Debt capital	(70)
	80
Share capital (20 million shares of $1)	20
Reserves	60
	80

The company's profits in the year just ended are as follows.

	$m
Profit from operations	21.0
Interest	6.0
Profit before tax	15.0
Taxation at 30%	4.5
Profit after tax (earnings)	10.5
Dividends	6.5
Retained profits	4.0

The company is now considering an investment of $25 million. This will add $5 million each year to profits before interest and tax.

(a) There are two ways of financing this investment. One would be to borrow $25 million at a cost of 8% per annum in interest. The other would be to raise the money by means of a 1 for 4 rights issue.

(b) Whichever financing method is used, the company will increase dividends per share next year from 32.5c to 35c.

(c) The company does not intend to allow its gearing level, measured as debt finance as a proportion of equity capital plus debt finance, to exceed 55% as at the end of any financial year. In addition, the company will not accept any dilution in earnings per share.

Assume that the rate of taxation will remain at 30% and that debt interest costs will be $6 million plus the interest cost of any new debt capital.

Required

(a) Produce a profit forecast for next year, assuming that the new project is undertaken and is financed (i) by debt capital or (ii) by a rights issue.

(b) Calculate the earnings per share next year, with each financing method.

(c) Calculate the effect on gearing as at the end of next year, with each financing method.

(d) Explain whether either or both methods of funding would be acceptable.

Answer

Current earnings per share are $10.5 million/20 million shares = 52.5 c

If the project is financed by $25 million of debt at 8%, interest charges will rise by $2 million. If the project is financed by a 1 for 4 rights issue, there will be 25 million shares in issue.

	Finance with debt	*Finance with rights issue*
	$m	$m
Profit before interest and tax (+ 5.0)	26.00	26.00
Interest	8.00	6.00
	18.00	20.00
Taxation (30%)	5.40	6.00
Profit after tax	12.60	14.00
Dividends (35c per share)	7.00	8.75
Retained profits	5.60	5.25
Earnings (profits after tax)	$12.6 m	$14.0 m
Number of shares	20 million	25 million
Earnings per share	63 c	56 c

The projected statement of financial position as at the end of the year will be:

	Finance with debt	*Finance with rights issue*
	$m	$m
Assets less current liabilities (150 + new capital 25 + retained profits)	180.6	180.25
Debt capital	(95.0)	(70.00)
	85.6	110.25
Share capital	20.0	25.00
Reserves	65.6	* 85.25
	85.6	110.25

* The rights issue raises $25 million, of which $5 million is represented in the statement of financial position by share capital and the remaining $20 million by share premium. The reserves are therefore the current amount ($60 million) plus the share premium of $20 million plus accumulated profits of $5.25 million.

	Finance with debt	*Finance with rights issue*
Debt capital	95.0	70.0
Debt capital plus equity finance	(95.0 + 85.6)	(70.0 + 110.25)
Gearing	53%	39%

Either financing method would be acceptable, since the company's requirements for no dilution in EPS would be met with a rights issue as well as by borrowing, and the company's requirement for the gearing level to remain below 55% is (just) met even if the company were to borrow the money.

3 Finance for small and medium-sized entities

FAST FORWARD

SMEs are generally:

- Unquoted
- Owned by a small number of individuals
- Not micro-businesses

Key terms

Small and medium-sized entities (SMEs) can be defined as having three characteristics

(a) Firms are likely to be unquoted

(b) Ownership of the business is restricted to a few individuals, typically a family group

(c) They are not micro businesses that are normally regarded as those very small businesses that act as a medium for self-employment of the owners. *Laney*

The characteristics may alter over time, with the enterprise perhaps looking for a listing on the Alternative Investment Market as it expands.

The SME sector accounts for between a third and a half of sales and employment in the UK. The sector is particularly associated with the service sector and serving niche markets. If market conditions change, small businesses may be **more adaptable**.

There is, however, a significant failure rate amongst small firms. According to a Bank of England survey in 1998, only 47% of new firms still survive five years after commencing trading.

3.1 The problems of financing SMEs

FAST FORWARD

SMEs may **not know about** the sources of finance available.

Finance may be difficult to obtain because of the **risks** faced by SMEs.

The money for investment that SMEs can obtain comes from the savings individuals make in the economy. Government policy will have a major influence on the level of funds available.

(a) **Tax policy** including concessions given to businesses to invest (capital allowances) and taxes on distributions (higher taxes on dividends mean less income for investors).

(b) **Interest rate policy** with high interest rates working in different ways – borrowing for SMEs becomes more expensive, but the supply of funds is also greater as higher rates give greater incentives to investors to save.

SMEs however also face **competition** for funds. Investors have opportunities to invest in all sizes of organisation, also overseas and in government debt.

The main handicap that SMEs face in accessing funds is the problem of **uncertainty.**

(a) Whatever the details provided to potential investors, SMEs have **neither** the **business** history **nor larger track record** that larger organisations possess.

(b) Larger enterprises are subject by law to **more public scrutiny**; their accounts have to contain more detail and be audited, they receive more press coverage and so on.

(c) Because of the uncertainties involved, banks often use **credit scoring** systems to **control exposure.**

Because the information is not available in other ways, SMEs will have to provide it when they seek finance. They will need to give a business plan, list of the firm's assets, details of the experience of directors and managers and show how they intend to provide security for sums advanced.

Prospective lenders, often banks, will then make a decision based on the information provided. The terms of the loan (interest rate, term, security, repayment details) will depend on the **risk** involved, and the lender will also want to monitor their investment.

A common problem is often that the banks will be **unwilling** to increase loan funding without an increase in **security** given (which the owners may be unwilling or unable to give), or an increase in equity funding (which may be difficult to obtain).

A further problem for SMEs is the **maturity gap**. It is particularly difficult for SMEs to obtain medium term loans due to a mismatching of the maturity of assets and liabilities. Longer term loans are easier to obtain than medium term loans as longer loans can be secured with mortgages against property.

3.2 Sources of finance for SMEs

Potential sources of financing for small and medium-sized companies include the following.

(a) Owner financing
(b) Overdraft financing (covered in chapter 12)
(c) Bank loans (covered in Chapter 12)
(d) Trade credit (covered in Chapter 5)
(e) Equity finance
(f) Business angel financing
(g) Venture capital (covered in Chapter 12)
(h) Leasing (covered in Chapter 12)
(i) Factoring (covered in Chapter 5)

Surveys have suggested that small firms have problems accessing different sources of finance because managers are **insufficiently informed** about what is available. However the increased amount of literature and government agencies designed to help small businesses have resulted in a reduction in this difficulty.

3.2.1 Owner financing

Finance from the owner(s)' personal resources or those of family connections is generally the initial source of finance. At this stage because many assets are intangible, external funding may be difficult to obtain.

3.2.2 Equity finance

Other than investment by owners or business angels, businesses with few tangible assets will probably have difficulty obtaining equity finance when they are formed (a problem known as the **equity gap**).

However, once small firms have become established, they do not necessarily need to seek a market listing to obtain equity financing; shares can be **placed privately**. Letting external shareholders invest does not necessarily mean that the original owners have to cede control, particularly if the shares are held by a number of small investors. However, small companies may find it difficult to obtain large sums by this means.

As noted above, owners will need to invest a certain amount of capital when the business starts up. However, subsequently owners can choose whether they withdraw profits from the business or re-invest them.

Surveys have suggested that the amount of equity invested by owners in a business after startup and retained earnings are relatively low compared with other sources of finance. However the failure of owners to invest limits the assets that can be acquired, and hence the amount of security that can be given for debt capital.

A major problem with obtaining equity finance can be the inability of the small firm to offer an easy **exit route** for any investors who wish to sell their stake.

(a) The **firm** can **purchase its own shares** back from the shareholders, but this involves the use of cash that could be better employed elsewhere.
(b) The **firm** can obtain a **market listing** but not all small firms do.

3.2.3 Business angel financing

Business angel financing can be an important initial source of business finance. Business angels are wealthy individuals or groups of individuals who invest directly in small businesses. They are prepared to take **high risks** in the hope of **high returns**.

The main problem with business angel financing is that it is **informal** in terms of a market and can be difficult to set up. However informality can be a strength. There may be less need to provide business angels with **detailed information** about the company, since business angels generally have prior knowledge of the industry.

Surveys suggest that business angels are often more patient than providers of other sources of finance. However the money available from individual business angels may be limited, and large sums may only be available from a consortium of business angels.

There was an article in *Student Accountant* in March 2009 on 'Being an angel'.

3.3 Capital structure

Significant influences on the capital structure of small firms are:

- The **lack of separation** between **ownership** and **management**
- The **lack of equity finance**

Studies have suggested that the owners' preference and market considerations are also significant. Small firms tend not to have target debt ratios.

Other studies suggest that the **life-cycle** of the firm is important. Debt finance is an important early source, its availability depending upon the security available.

As firms mature, however, the reliance on debt declines. There seems to be little evidence of a relationship between gearing, and profitability and risk levels.

3.4 Government aid for SMEs

FAST FORWARD

Government aid for SMEs includes the Small Firms Loan Guarantee Scheme, grants and Enterprise Capital Funds.

Exam focus point

Availability of government assistance is country-specific. For the exam, at a minimum, you should be aware of the possibilities of such assistance and the major schemes operating in at least one country.

The UK government has introduced a number of assistance schemes to help businesses, and several of these are designed to encourage lenders and investors to make finance available to small and unquoted businesses.

3.4.1 The Small Firms Loan Guarantee Scheme

The **Loan Guarantee Scheme** was introduced by the government in 1981. It is intended to help small businesses to get a loan from the bank, when a bank would otherwise be unwilling to lend because the business cannot offer the security that the bank would want. The borrower's annual turnover must not exceed a limit and the business must be less than five years old.

Under the scheme, which was revised in 1993, the bank can lend up to £250,000 without security over **personal** assets or a personal guarantee being required of the borrower. However, all available **business** assets must be used as security if required. The government will guarantee 75% of the loan, while the borrower must pay an annual 2% premium on the guaranteed part of the loan.

3.4.2 Grants

A grant is a sum of money given to an individual or business for a specific project or purpose. A grant usually covers only part of the total costs involved.

Grants to help with **business development** are available from a variety of sources, such as the government, European Union, Regional Development Agencies, Business Link, local authorities and some charitable organisations.

These grants may be linked to business activity or a specific industry sector. Some grants are linked to specific geographical areas, eg those in need of economic regeneration.

3.4.3 Enterprise capital funds

Enterprise capital funds (ECFs) were launched in the UK in 2005. ECFs are designed to be commercial funds, investing a combination of private and public money in small high-growth businesses. They are based on a variant of the Small Business Investment Company (SBIC) programme that has operated in the United States for the past 45 years. The SBIC programme has supported the early growth of companies such as FedEx, Apple, Intel and AOL.

For investment below £500,000 most SMEs can access an informal funding network of their friends, families and business angels. Once companies require funding above £2m they are usually quite established, generating revenues and therefore perceived as lower risk and are able to secure funding from institutional investors. The gap between these two finance situations is known as the 'equity gap'.

ECFs provide Government match funding for business angels and venture capitalists to help small and medium sized businesses bridge the equity gap. Each ECF will be able to make equity investments of up to £2 million into eligible SMEs that have genuine growth potential but whose funding needs currently are not met.

Question

Small company finance

Ella Ltd, a small company, is currently considering a major capital investment project for which additional finance will be required. It is not currently feasible to raise additional equity finance, consequently debt finance is being considered. The decision has not yet been finalised whether this debt finance will be short or long term and if it is to be at fixed or variable rates. The financial controller has asked you for your assistance in the preparation of a report for a forthcoming meeting of the board of directors.

Required

Prepare a draft report to the board of directors which identifies and briefly explains:

(a) The main factors to be considered when deciding on the appropriate mix of short, medium or long-term debt finance for Ella Ltd.

(b) The practical considerations which could be factors in restricting the amount of debt which Ella Ltd could raise.

Answer

(a) To: Board
From: Accountant
Date: 8 January 20X2
Re: Debt finance

The term of the finance

The term should be appropriate to the **asset** being acquired. As a general rule, long-term **assets** should be **financed** from **long-term finance** sources. Cheaper short-term funds should be used to finance short-term requirements, such as fluctuations in the level of working capital.

Flexibility

Short-term debt is a **more flexible** source of finance; there may be penalties for repaying long-term debt early. If the company takes out long-term debt and interest rates fall, it will find itself locked into unfavourable terms.

Repayment terms

The company must have **sufficient funds** to be able to **meet repayment schedules** laid down in loan agreements, and to cover interest costs. Although there may be no specific terms of repayment laid down for short-term debt, it may possibly be **repayable on demand**, so it may be risky to finance long-term capital investments in this way.

Costs

Interest on short-term debt is usually **less** than on long-term debt. However, if short-term debt has to be renewed frequently, issue expenses may raise its cost significantly.

Availability

It may be **difficult to renew short-term finance** in the future if the company's position or economic conditions change adversely.

Effect on gearing

Certain types of short-term debt (bank overdrafts, increased credit from suppliers) will not be included in gearing calculations. If a company is seen as **too highly geared**, lenders may be **unwilling to lend money**, or judge that the high risk of default must be compensated by higher interest rates or restrictive covenants.

(b) **Previous record of company**

If the company (or possibly its directors or even shareholders) has a **low credit rating** with credit reference agencies, investors may be unwilling to subscribe for debentures. Banks may be influenced by this, and also by their own experiences of the company as customer (has the company exceeded overdraft limits in the past on a regular basis).

Restrictions in memorandum and articles

The company should examine the legal documents carefully to see if they place any restrictions on what the company can borrow, and for what purposes.

Restrictions of current borrowing

The **terms** of any **loans** to the company that are **currently outstanding** may contain restrictions about further borrowing that can be taken out.

Uncertainty over project

The project is a significant one, and presumably the **interest and ultimately repayment** that lenders obtain may be very dependent on the success of the project. If the results are uncertain, lenders may not be willing to take the risk.

Security

The company may be **unwilling to provide the security** that lenders require, particularly if it is faced **with restrictions** on what it can do with the **assets secured**.

Alternatively it may have **insufficient assets** to provide the necessary security.

Chapter Roundup

- Debt finance tends to be relatively low risk for the debtholder as it is interest-bearing and can be secured. The cost of debt to the company is therefore relatively low.

  The greater the level of debt, the more **financial risk** (of reduced dividends after the payment of debt interest) to the shareholder of the company, so the higher is their required return.

- The **financial risk** of a company's capital structure can be measured by a **gearing ratio**, a **debt ratio** or **debt/equity ratio** and by the **interest coverage**.

  Financial gearing measures the relationship between **shareholders' funds** and **prior charge capital.**

  Operational gearing measures the relationship between **contribution** and **profit before interest and tax.**

- If a company can generate returns on capital in excess of the interest payable on debt, financial gearing will raise the EPS. Gearing will, however, also increase **the variability of returns** for shareholders and increase the chance of corporate **failure**.

- **SMEs** are generally:
  - Unquoted
  - Owned by a small number of individuals
  - Not micro-businesses

- SMEs may **not know about** the sources of finance available.

  Finance may be difficult to obtain because of the **risks** faced by SMEs.

- **Government aid** for SMEs includes the Small Firms Loan Guarantee Scheme, grants and Enterprise Capital Funds.

Quick Quiz

1 **Fill in the blank.**

…….. gearing = $\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed}}$

2 **Fill in the blank.**

……. gearing = $\frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}$

3 **Fill in the blank.**

Interest coverage = ……..

4 What condition has to be fulfilled for increased financial gearing to result in increased earnings per share?

5 What is the debt ratio?

6 What are the main characteristics of small and medium-sized enterprises defined by Laney?

7 What is business angel financing?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 **Financial** gearing = $\frac{\text{Prior charge capital}}{\text{Total capital employed}}$

2 **Operational** gearing = $\frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}$

3 Interest coverage = $\frac{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}{\text{Interest}}$

4 The returns on capital investment must exceed the interest payable on the extra debt used to finance the investment.

5 Total debt: Total assets

6 (a) Firms are likely to be unquoted.
(b) Ownership of the business is restricted to a few individuals, typically a family group.
(c) They are not micro businesses that offer a medium for self-employment of their owners.

7 Direct investment in SMEs by individuals or small groups of investors.

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q22	Examination	25	45 mins

PART F

Cost of capital

15 The cost of capital

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The cost of capital	F1 (a), (b)
2 The dividend growth model	F2 (a)
3 The capital asset pricing model (CAPM)	F2 (b), (c)
4 The cost of debt	F3 (a)
5 The weighted average cost of capital	F4 (a), (b)

Introduction

In this chapter we examine the concept of the **cost of capital**, which can be used as a **discount rate** in evaluating the investments of an organisation.

We firstly base **cost of equity** calculations on the **dividend valuation model**. We then look at a way of establishing the cost of equity that takes risk into account: the **capital asset pricing model**.

We then calculate the cost of capital for a range of debt instruments and then estimate the **cost of capital**.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
F1	**Sources of finance and their relative costs**	
(a)	Describe the relative risk-return relationship and describe costs of equity and debt.	2
(b)	Describe the creditor hierarchy and its connection with the relative costs of sources of finance.	2
F2	**Estimating the cost of equity**	
(a)	Apply the dividend growth model and discuss its weaknesses.	2
(b)	Describe and explain the assumptions and components of the capital asset pricing model (CAPM).	2
(c)	Explain and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the CAPM.	2
F3	**Estimating the cost of debt and other capital instruments**	
	Calculate the cost of capital of a range of capital instruments, including:	2
(a)	Irredeemable debt	
(b)	Redeemable debt	
(c)	Convertible debt	
(d)	Preference shares	
(e)	Bank debt	
F4	**Estimating the overall cost of capital**	
(a)	Distinguish between average and marginal cost of capital.	2
(b)	Calculate the weighted average cost of capital (WACC) using book value and market value weightings.	2

Exam guide

In the exam you may be asked to calculate the **weighted average cost of capital** and its component costs, either as a separate sub-question, or as part of a larger question, most likely an investment appraisal. Remember that questions won't just involve calculations; you may be asked to discuss the problems with the methods of calculation you've used or the relevance of the costs of capital to investment decisions.

1 The cost of capital 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The **cost of capital** is the rate of return that the enterprise must pay to satisfy the providers of funds, and it reflects the riskiness of providing funds.

1.1 Aspects of the cost of capital

The cost of capital has two aspects to it.

(a) The **cost of funds** that a company raises and uses, and the return that investors expect to be paid for putting funds into the company.

(b) It is therefore the **minimum return** that a company should make on its own investments, to earn the cash flows out of which investors can be paid their return.

The cost of capital can therefore be measured by studying the returns required by investors, and then used to derive a discount rate for DCF analysis and investment appraisal.

1.2 The cost of capital as an opportunity cost of finance

The cost of capital is an **opportunity cost of finance**, because it is the minimum return that investors require. If they do not get this return, they will transfer some or all of their investment somewhere else. Here are two examples.

(a) If a bank offers to lend money to a company, the interest rate it charges is the **yield** that the bank wants to receive from investing in the company, because it can get just as good a return from lending the money to someone else. In other words, the interest rate is the opportunity cost of lending for the bank.

(b) When shareholders invest in a company, the returns that they can expect must be sufficient to persuade them not to sell some or all of their shares and invest the money somewhere else. The yield on the shares is therefore the **opportunity cost** to the **shareholders of not investing somewhere else**.

1.3 The cost of capital and risk

The cost of capital has three elements.

Risk free rate of return +
Premium for business risk +
Premium for financial risk
COST OF CAPITAL

(a) **Risk-free rate of return**

This is the return which would be required from an investment if it were completely free from risk. Typically, a risk-free yield would be the **yield on government securities**.

(b) **Premium for business risk**

This is an increase in the required rate of return due to the existence of **uncertainty about** the future and about a **firm's business prospects**. The actual returns from an investment may not be as high as they are expected to be. Business risk will be higher for some firms than for others, and some types of project undertaken by a firm may be more risky than other types of project that it undertakes.

(c) **Premium for financial risk**

This relates to the danger of high debt levels (high gearing). The higher the gearing of a company's capital structure, the greater will be the financial risk to ordinary shareholders, and this should be reflected in a higher risk premium and therefore a higher cost of capital.

Because different companies are in different types of business (varying business risk) and have different capital structures (varying financial risk) the cost of capital applied to one company may differ radically from the cost of capital of another.

1.4 The relative costs of sources of finance

The cost of debt is likely to be **lower** than the cost of equity, because debt is **less risky** from the debtholders' viewpoint. In the event of liquidation, the **creditor hierarchy** dictates the priority of claims and debt finance is paid off before equity. This makes debt a safer investment than equity and hence debt investors demand a lower rate of return than equity investors. Debt interest is also corporation **tax deductible** (unlike equity dividends) making it even cheaper to a tax paying company. Arrangement costs are usually lower on debt finance than equity finance and once again, unlike equity arrangement costs, they are also tax deductible.

1.5 The creditor hierarchy

Increasing risk ↓

1. Creditors with a fixed charge
2. Creditors with a floating charge
3. Unsecured creditors
4. Preference shareholders
5. Ordinary shareholders

This means that the **cheapest type of finance is debt** (especially if secured) and the **most expensive type of finance is equity** (ordinary shares).

2 The dividend growth model 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The **dividend growth model** can be used to estimate a cost of equity, on the assumption that the market value of share is directly related to the expected future dividends from the shares.

2.1 The cost of ordinary share capital

New funds from equity shareholders are obtained either from **new issues of shares** or from **retained earnings**. Both of these sources of funds have a cost.

(a) Shareholders will **not** be prepared to **provide funds** for a **new issue** of **shares** unless the return on their investment is sufficiently attractive.

(b) Retained earnings also have a cost. This is an **opportunity cost**, the dividend forgone by shareholders.

2.2 The dividend valuation model

If we begin by ignoring share issue costs, the cost of equity, both for new issues and retained earnings, could be estimated by means of a **dividend valuation model**, on the assumption that the market value of shares is directly related to expected future dividends on the shares.

If the future dividend per share is expected to be **constant** in amount, then the **ex dividend** share price will be calculated by the formula:

$$P_0 = \frac{d}{(1+k_e)} + \frac{d}{(1+k_e)^2} + \frac{d}{(1+k_e)^3} + ... = \frac{d}{k_e}, \text{ so } k_e = \frac{d}{P_0}$$

Where k_e is the cost of equity capital

d is the annual dividend per share, starting at year 1 and then continuing annually in perpetuity.

P_0 is the ex-dividend share price (the price of a share where the share's new owner is **not** entitled to the dividend that is soon to be paid).

We shall look at the dividend valuation model again in Chapter 18, in the context of valuation of shares.

2.3 Example: Dividend valuation model

Cygnus has a dividend cover ratio of 4.0 times and expects zero growth in dividends. The company has one million $1 ordinary shares in issue and the market capitalisation (value) of the company is $50 million. After-tax profits for next year are expected to be $20 million.

What is the cost of equity capital?

Solution

Total dividends = 20 million/4 = $5 million.

k_e = 5/50 = 10%.

2.4 The dividend growth model

Shareholders will normally expect dividends to increase year by year and not to remain constant in perpetuity. The **fundamental theory of share values** states that the market price of a share is the present value of the discounted future cash flows of revenues from the share, so the market value given an expected constant annual growth in dividends would be:

$$P_0 = \frac{d_0(1+g)}{(1+k_e)} + \frac{d_0(1+g)^2}{(1+k_e)^2} + ...$$

where P_0 is the current market price (ex div)
d_0 is the current net dividend
k_e is the cost of equity capital
g is the expected annual growth in dividend payments

and both k_e and g are expressed as proportions.

It is often convenient to assume a constant expected dividend growth rate in perpetuity. The formula above then simplifies to:

$$P_0 = \frac{d_0(1+g)}{(k_e - g)} = \frac{d_1}{(k_e - g)}$$

Re-arranging this, we get a formula for the ordinary shareholders' cost of capital.

Exam Formula

Cost of ordinary (equity) share capital, having a current ex div price, P_0, having just paid a dividend, d_0, with the dividend growing in perpetuity by a constant g% per annum:

$$k_e = \frac{d_0(1+g)}{P_0} + g \text{ or } k_e = \frac{d_1}{P_0} + g$$

Question

Cost of equity

A share has a current market value of 96c, and the last dividend was 12c. If the expected annual growth rate of dividends is 4%, calculate the cost of equity capital.

Answer

$$\text{Cost of capital} = \frac{12(1 + 0.04)}{96} + 0.04$$

$$= 0.13 + 0.04$$

$$= 0.17$$

$$= 17\%$$

2.4.1 Estimating the growth rate

There are two methods for estimating the growth rate that you need to be familiar with.

Firstly, the future growth rate can be predicted from an **analysis of the growth in dividends** over the past few years.

Year	*Dividends*	*Earnings*
	$	$
20X1	150,000	400,000
20X2	192,000	510,000
20X3	206,000	550,000
20X4	245,000	650,000
20X5	262,350	700,000

Dividends have risen from $150,000 in 20X1 to $262,350 in 20X5. The increase represents four years growth. (Check that you can see that there are four years growth, and not five years growth, in the table.) The average growth rate, g, may be calculated as follows.

$$\text{Dividend in 20X1} \times (1+g)^4 = \text{Dividend in 20X5}$$

$$(1+g)^4 = \frac{\text{Dividend in 20X5}}{\text{Dividend in 20X1}}$$

$$= \frac{\$262{,}350}{\$150{,}000}$$

$$= 1.749$$

$$1+g = \sqrt[4]{1.749} = 1.15$$

$$g = 0.15, \text{ ie } 15\%$$

The growth rate over the last four years is assumed to be expected by shareholders into the indefinite future. If the company is financed entirely by equity and there are 1,000,000 shares in issue, each with a market value of $3.35 ex div, the cost of equity, K_e, is:

$$\frac{d_0(1+g)}{P_0} + g = \frac{0.26235(1.15)}{3.35} + 0.15 = 0.24, \text{ ie } 24\%$$

Alternatively the growth rate can be estimated using **Gordon's growth approximation.** The **rate of growth in dividends** is sometimes expressed, theoretically, as:

Exam formula

$$g = br$$

where g is the annual growth rate in dividends
b is the proportion of profits that are retained
r is the rate of return on new investments

So, if a company retains 65% of its earnings for capital investment projects it has identified and these projects are expected to have an average return of 8%:

$g = br = 65\% \times 8 = 5.2\%$

2.5 Weaknesses of the dividend growth model 6/08

(a) The model does not incorporate risk.

(b) Dividend do not grow smoothly in reality so g is only an approximation.

(c) The model fails to take capital gains into account, however it is argued that a change of share ownership does not affect the present value of the dividend stream.

(d) No allowance is made for the effects of taxation although the model can be modified to incorporate tax.

(e) It assumes there are no issue costs for new shares.

3 The capital asset pricing model (CAPM) 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The **capital asset pricing model** can be used to calculate a cost of equity and incorporates **risk.**
The CAPM is based on a comparison of the **systematic risk** of **individual investments** with the **risks of all shares** in the **market**.

3.1 Systematic risk and unsystematic risk

FAST FORWARD

The **risk** involved in holding securities (shares) divides into **risk specific** to the company (unsystematic) and risk due to **variations** in **market activity** (systematic).

Unsystematic or business risk can be diversified away, while **systematic or market risk** cannot. Investors may mix a diversified market portfolio with risk-free assets to achieve a preferred mix of risk and return.

Whenever an investor invests in some shares, or a company invests in a new project, there will be some risk involved. The actual return on the investment might be better or worse than that hoped for. To some extent, risk is unavoidable (unless the investor settles for risk-free securities such as gilts).

Provided that the investor **diversifies** his investments in a suitably wide portfolio, the investments which perform well and those which perform badly should tend to cancel each other out, and much risk can be diversified away. In the same way, a company which invests in a number of projects will find that some do well and some do badly, but taking the whole portfolio of investments, average returns should turn out much as expected.

Risks that can be diversified away are referred to as **unsystematic risk**. But there is another sort of risk too. Some investments are by their very nature more risky than others. This has nothing to do with chance variations up or down in actual returns compared with what an investor should expect. This **inherent risk** – the **systematic risk** or **market risk** – cannot be diversified away.

Key terms

Market or **systematic risk** is risk that cannot be diversified away. **Non-systematic** or **unsystematic risk** applies to a single investment or class of investments, and can be reduced or eliminated by diversification.

In return for accepting systematic risk, a **risk-averse investor** will expect to **earn a return** which is **higher** than the return on a risk-free investment.

The amount of systematic risk in an investment varies between different types of investment.

Exam focus point

Common errors on this topic in exams include:

- Assuming risk-averse investors wish to eliminate risk. Risk-averse investors are prepared to accept risk, in exchange for higher returns
- Failing to link the risks of an investment with its returns
- Mixing up systematic and unsystematic risk

3.2 Systematic risk and unsystematic risk: implications for investments

The implications of systematic risk and unsystematic risk are as follows.

(a) If an investor wants to **avoid risk** altogether, he must **invest entirely** in **risk-free securities**.

(b) If an investor **holds shares in just a few companies**, there will be **some unsystematic risk** as well as systematic risk in his portfolio, because he will not have spread his risk enough to diversify away the unsystematic risk. To eliminate unsystematic risk, he must build up a well diversified portfolio of investments.

(c) If an investor holds a **balanced portfolio** of all the stocks and shares on the stock market, he will incur systematic risk which is exactly equal to the average systematic risk in the stock market as a whole.

(d) **Shares in individual companies** will have **different systematic risk characteristics** to this market average. Some shares will be less risky and some will be more risky than the stock market average. Similarly, some investments will be more risky and some will be less risky than a company's 'average' investments.

3.3 Systematic risk and the CAPM

FAST FORWARD

The **beta factor** measures a share's volatility in terms of market risk.

The capital asset pricing model is mainly concerned with how systematic risk is measured, and how systematic risk affects required returns and share prices. **Systematic risk** is measured using **beta factors**.

Key term

Beta factor is the measure of the systematic risk of a security relative to the market portfolio. If a share price were to rise or fall at double the market rate, it would have a beta factor of 2.0. Conversely, if the share price moved at half the market rate, the beta factor would be 0.5.

CAPM theory includes the following propositions.

(a) Investors in shares require a **return** in **excess of the risk-free rate**, to compensate them for systematic risk.

(b) Investors should **not require** a **premium** for **unsystematic risk**, because this can be diversified away by holding a wide portfolio of investments.

(c) Because systematic risk varies between companies, investors will require a **higher return** from shares in those companies where the systematic risk is bigger.

The same propositions can be applied to capital investments by companies.

(a) Companies will want a **return on a project** to **exceed** the **risk-free rate**, to compensate them for systematic risk.

(b) **Unsystematic risk** can be **diversified away**, and so a premium for unsystematic risk should not be required.

(c) Companies should want a **bigger return** on projects where **systematic risk is greater**.

3.4 Market risk and returns

Market risk (systematic risk) is the average risk of the market as a whole. Taking all the shares on a stock market together, the total expected returns from the market will vary because of systematic risk. The market as a whole might do well or it might do badly.

3.5 Risk and returns from an individual security

In the same way, an individual security may offer prospects of a return of x%, but with some risk (business risk and financial risk) attached. The return (the x%) that investors will require from the individual security will be higher or lower than the market return, depending on whether the security's systematic risk is greater or less than the market average. A major **assumption in CAPM** is that there is a linear relationship between the return obtained from an individual security and the average return from all securities in the market.

3.6 Example: CAPM (1)

The following information is available about the performance of an individual company's shares and the stock market as a whole.

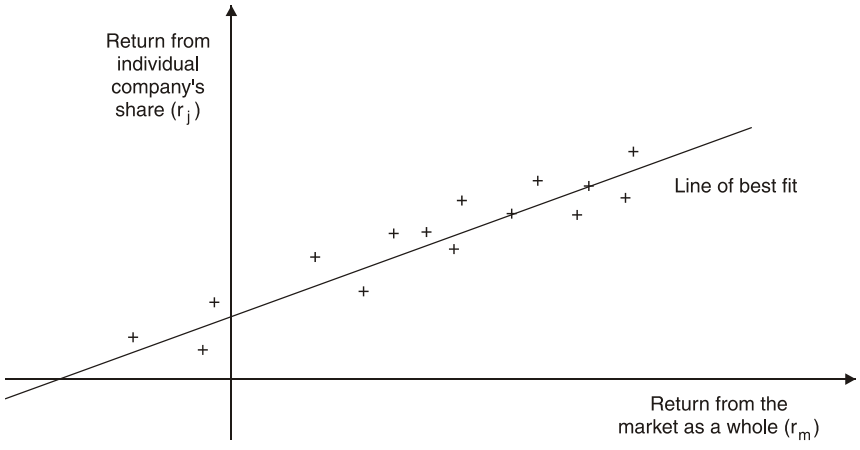
	Individual company	*Stock market as a whole*
Price at start of period	105.0	480.0
Price at end of period	110.0	490.0
Dividend during period	7.6	39.2

The expected return on the company's shares R_i and the expected return on the 'market portfolio' of shares $E(r_m)$ may be calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Capital gain (or loss)} + \text{dividend}}{\text{Price at start of period}} = \frac{P_1 - P_0 + D_1}{P_0}$$

$$R_i = \frac{(110-105)+7.6}{105} = 12\% \qquad E(r_m) = \frac{(490-480)+39.2}{480} = 10.25\%$$

A statistical analysis of 'historic' returns from a security and from the 'average' market may suggest that a linear relationship can be assumed to exist between them. A series of comparative figures could be prepared of the return from a company's shares and the average return of the market as a whole. The results could be drawn on a scattergraph and a 'line of best fit' drawn (using linear regression techniques) as shown below.



This analysis would show three things.

(a) The **return from** the **security** and the **return from** the **market** as a whole **will tend to rise or fall together**.

(b) The **return from the security** may be **higher or lower** than the **market return**. This is because the systematic risk of the individual security differs from that of the market as a whole.

(c) The scattergraph may **not give a good line of best fit**, unless a large number of data items are plotted, because actual returns are affected by unsystematic risk as well as by systematic risk.

Note that returns can be negative. A share price fall represents a capital loss, which is a negative return.

The conclusion from this analysis is that individual securities will be either more or less risky than the market average in a fairly **predictable** way. The measure of this relationship between market returns and an individual security's returns, reflecting differences in systematic risk characteristics, can be developed into a beta factor for the individual security.

3.7 The equity risk premium

Key term

> **Market risk premium** or **equity risk premium** is the difference between the expected rate of return on a market portfolio and the risk-free rate of return over the same period.

The equity risk premium ($E(r_m - R_f)$) represents the excess of market returns over those associated with investing in risk-free assets.

The CAPM makes use of the principle that **returns on shares** in the **market** as a whole are expected to be higher than the returns on risk-free investments. The difference between market returns and risk-free returns is called an **excess return**. For example, if the return on British Government stocks is 9% and market returns are 13%, the **excess** return on the market's shares as a whole is 4%.

The difference between the risk-free return and the expected return on an individual security can be measured as the **excess return for the market as a whole multiplied** by **the security's beta factor**.

3.8 The CAPM formula 6/08, 12/08

The capital asset pricing model is a statement of the principles explained above. It can be stated as follows.

Exam Formula

$E(r_i) = R_f + \beta_i(E(r_m) - R_f)$

where $E(r_i)$ is the cost of equity capital
R_f is the risk-free rate of return
$E(r_m)$ is the return from the market as a whole
β_i is the beta factor of the individual security

3.9 Example: CAPM (1)

Shares in Louie and Dewie have a beta of 0.9. The expected returns to the market are 10% and the risk-free rate of return is 4%. What is the cost of equity capital for Louie and Dewie?

Solution

$E(r_i) = R_f + \beta_i(E(r_m) - R_f)$

$= 4 + 0.9\ (10 - 4)$

$= 9.4\%$

3.10 Example: CAPM (2)

Investors have an expected rate of return of 8% from ordinary shares in Algol, which have a beta of 1.2. The expected returns to the market are 7%.

What will be the expected rate of return from ordinary shares in Rigel, which have a beta of 1.8?

Solution

Algol: $E(r_i) = R_f + \beta_i(E(r_m) - R_f)$

$8 = R_f + 1.2(7 - R_f)$

$8 = R_f + 8.4 - 1.2\ R_f$

$0.2\ R_f = 0.4$

$R_f = 2$

Rigel: $E(r_i) = 2 + (7 - 2)\ 1.8$

$= 11\%$

Question

Returns

The risk-free rate of return is 7%. The average market return is 11%.

(a) What will be the return expected from a share whose β factor is 0.9?

(b) What would be the share's expected value if it is expected to earn an annual dividend of 5.3c, with no capital growth?

Answer

(a) $7\% + 0.9\ (11\% - 7\%) = 10.6\%$

(b) $\dfrac{5.3c}{10.6\%} = 50c$

3.11 Problems with applying the CAPM in practice 6/08

FAST FORWARD

Problems of CAPM include **unrealistic assumptions** and the **required estimates being difficult to make.**

(a) The need to **determine** the **excess return** ($E(r_m) - R_f$). Expected, rather than historical, returns should be used, although historical returns are often used in practice.

(b) The need to **determine** the **risk-free rate**. A risk-free investment might be a government security. However, interest rates vary with the term of the lending.

(c) **Errors** in the **statistical analysis used** to calculate β values. Betas may also **change over** time.

(d) The CAPM is also **unable to forecast accurately returns** for companies with **low price/earnings** ratios and to take account of seasonal 'month-of-the-year' effects and 'day-of-the-week' effects that appear to influence returns on shares.

Question

Beta factor

(a) What does beta measure, and what do betas of 0.5, 1 and 1.5 mean?

(b) What factors determine the level of beta which a company may have?

Answer

(a) **Beta measures** the systematic risk of a risky investment such as a share in a company. The total risk of the share can be sub-divided into two parts, known as **systematic (or market) risk** and **unsystematic (or unique) risk**. The systematic risk depends on the sensitivity of the return of the share to general economic and market factors such as periods of boom and recession. The capital asset pricing model shows how the return which investors expect from shares should depend only on systematic risk, not on unsystematic risk, which can be eliminated by holding a well-diversified portfolio.

Beta is calibrated such that the average risk of stock market investments has a **beta of 1**. Thus shares with betas of 0.5 or 1.5 would have half or 1½ times the average sensitivity to market variations respectively.

This is reflected by higher volatility of share prices for shares with a beta of 1.5 than for those with a beta of 0.5. For example, a 10% increase in general stock market prices would be expected to be reflected as a 5% increase for a share with a beta of 0.5 and a 15% increase for a share with a beta of 1.5, with a similar effect for price reductions.

(b) The beta of a company will be the **weighted average** of the beta of its shares and the beta of its debt. The beta of debt is very low, but not zero, because corporate debt bears default risk, which in turn is dependent on the volatility of the company's cash flows.

Factors determining the beta of a company's equity shares include:

(i) **Sensitivity** of the company's **cash flows** to economic factors, as stated above. For example sales of new cars are more sensitive than sales of basic foods and necessities.

(ii) The company's **operating gearing**. A high level of fixed costs in the company's cost structure will cause high variations in operating profit compared with variations in sales.

(iii) The company's **financial gearing**. High borrowing and interest costs will cause high variations in equity earnings compared with variations in operating profit, increasing the equity beta as equity returns become more variable in relation to the market as a whole. This effect will be countered by the low beta of debt when computing the weighted average beta of the whole company.

3.12 Dividend growth model and CAPM

The two models will not necessarily give the same cost of equity and you may have to calculate the cost of equity using either, or both, models.

3.12.1 Example : Dividend growth model and CAPM

The following data relates to the ordinary shares of Stilton.

Current market price, 31 December 20X1	250c
Dividend per share, 20X1	3c
Expected growth rate in dividends and earnings	10% pa
Average market return	8%
Risk-free rate of return	5%
Beta factor of Stilton equity shares	1.40

(a) What is the estimated cost of equity using the dividend growth model?
(b) What is the estimated cost of equity using the capital asset pricing model?

Solution

(a) $$k_e = \frac{d_0(1+g)}{P_0} + g$$

$$= \frac{3(1.10)}{250} + 0.10$$

$$= 0.1132 \text{ or } 11.32\%$$

(b) $k_e = 5 + 1.40\ (8 - 5) = 9.2\%$

4 The cost of debt

6/08

FAST FORWARD

The **cost of debt** is the return an enterprise must pay to its lenders.

- For **irredeemable debt**, this is the (post-tax) interest as a percentage of the ex interest market value of the bonds (or preferred shares).
- For **redeemable debt**, the cost is given by the internal rate of return of the cash flows involved.

4.1 The cost of debt capital

The cost of debt capital represents:

(a) The cost of **continuing to use the finance** rather than redeem the securities at their current market price.

(b) The cost of raising **additional fixed interest capital** if we assume that the cost of the additional capital would be equal to the cost of that already issued. If a company has not already issued any fixed interest capital, it may estimate the cost of doing so by making a similar calculation for another company which is judged to be similar as regards risk.

Exam focus point

Remember that different types of debt have different costs. The cost of a bond will not be the same as the cost of a bank loan.

4.2 Irredeemable debt capital

Formula to learn

Cost of irredeemable debt capital, paying interest i in perpetuity, and having a current ex-interest price P_0:

$$k_d = \frac{i}{P_0}$$

4.3 Example: cost of debt capital (1)

Lepus has issued bonds of $100 nominal value with annual interest of 9% per year, based on the nominal value. The current market price of the bonds is $90. What is the cost of the bonds?

Solution

k_d = 9/90 =10%

4.4 Example: cost of debt capital (2)

Henryted has 12% irredeemable bonds in issue with a nominal value of $100. The market price is $95 ex interest. Calculate the cost of capital if interest is paid half-yearly.

Solution

If interest is 12% annually, therefore 6% is payable half-yearly.

Cost of loan capital = $\left(1+\frac{6}{95}\right)^2 - 1$ = 13.0%

4.5 Redeemable debt capital

If the debt is **redeemable** then in the year of redemption the interest payment will be received by the holder as well as the amount payable on redemption, so:

$$P_0 = \frac{i}{(1+k_{d\,net})} + \frac{i}{(1+k_{d\,net})^2} + \ldots\ldots + \frac{i+p_n}{(1+k_{d\,net})^n}$$

where p_n = the amount payable on redemption in year n.

The above equation cannot be simplified, so 'r' will have to be calculated by trial and error, as an **internal rate of return (IRR)**.

The best trial and error figure to start with in calculating the cost of redeemable debt is to take the cost of debt capital as if it were irredeemable and then add the annualised capital profit that will be made from the present time to the time of redemption.

4.6 Example: cost of debt capital (3)

Owen Allot has in issue 10% bonds of a nominal value of $100. The market price is $90 ex interest. Calculate the cost of this capital if the bond is:

(a) Irredeemable
(b) Redeemable at par after 10 years

Ignore taxation.

Solution

(a) **The cost of irredeemable debt capital** is $\frac{i}{P_0} = \frac{\$10}{\$90} \times 100\%$ = 11.1%

(b) **The cost of redeemable debt capital**. The capital profit that will be made from now to the date of redemption is $10 ($100 – $90). This profit will be made over a period of ten years which gives an annualised profit of $1 which is about 1% of current market value. The best trial and error figure to try first is therefore 12%.

Year		*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*PV*	*Discount factor*	*PV*
		$	12%	$	11%	$
0	Market value	(90)	1.000	(90.00)	1.000	(90.00)
1–10	Interest	10	5.650	56.50	5.889	58.89
10	Capital repayment	100	0.322	32.20	0.352	35.20
				(1.30)		+4.09

The approximate cost of redeemable debt capital is, therefore:

$$(11 + \frac{4.09}{(4.09 - -1.30)} \times 1) = 11.76\%$$

4.7 Debt capital and taxation

The interest on debt capital is likely to be an allowable deduction for purposes of taxation and so the cost of debt capital and the cost of share capital are not properly comparable costs. This tax relief on interest ought to be recognised in computations. The after-tax cost of irredeemable debt capital is:

$$k_{d\,net} = \frac{i(1-T)}{P_0}$$

where $k_{d\,net}$ is the cost of debt capital

i is the annual interest payment

P_0 is the current market price of the debt capital ex interest (that is, after payment of the current interest)

T is the rate of corporation tax

Formula to learn

Cost of irredeemable debt capital, paying annual net interest i(1 – T), and having a current ex-interest price P_0:

$$k_{d\,net} = \frac{i(1-T)}{P_0}$$

Therefore if a company pays $10,000 a year interest on irredeemable bonds with a nominal value of $100,000 and a market price of $80,000, and the rate of tax is 30%, the cost of the debt would be:

$$\frac{10{,}000}{80{,}000}(1 - 0.30) = 0.0875 = 8.75\%$$

The higher the rate of tax is, the greater the tax benefits in having debt finance will be compared with equity finance. In the example above, if the rate of tax had been 50%, the cost of debt would have been, after tax:

$$\frac{10{,}000}{80{,}000}(1 - 0.50) = 0.0625 = 6.25\%$$

Exam focus point

Students often don't remember that debt attracts tax relief in most jurisdictions.

In the case of **redeemable debt**, the capital repayment is not allowable for tax. To calculate the cost of the debt capital to include in the weighted average cost of capital, it is necessary to calculate an internal rate of return which takes account of tax relief on the interest.

4.8 Example: cost of debt capital (4)

(a) A company has outstanding $660,000 of 8% bonds on which the interest is payable annually on 31 December. The debt is due for redemption at par on 1 January 20X6. The market price of the bonds at 28 December 20X2 was $95. Ignoring any question of personal taxation, what do you estimate to be the current cost of debt?

(b) If a new expectation emerged that the cost of debt would rise to 12% during 20X3 and 20X4 what effect might this have in theory on the market price at 28 December 20X2?

(c) If the effective rate of tax was 30% what would be the after-tax cost of debt of the bonds in (a) above? Tax is paid each 31 December on profits earned in that year.

Solution

(a) The current cost of debt is found by calculating the pre-tax internal rate of return of the cash flows shown in the table below. A discount rate of 10% is chosen for a trial-and-error start to the calculation.

Item and date		*Year*	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*
			$	10%	$
Market value	28.12.X2	0	(95)	1.000	(95.0)
Interest	31.12.X3	1	8	0.909	7.3
Interest	31.12.X4	2	8	0.826	6.6
Interest	31.12.X5	3	8	0.751	6.0
Redemption	1.1.X6	3	100	0.751	75.1
NPV					0.0

By coincidence, the cost of debt is 10% since the NPV of the cash flows above is zero.

(b) If the cost of debt is expected to rise in 20X3 and 20X4 it is probable that the market price in December 20X2 will fall to reflect the new rates obtainable. The probable market price would be the discounted value of all future cash flows up to 20X6, at a discount rate of 12%.

Item and date		*Year*	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*
			$	12%	$
Interest	31.12.X2	0	8	1.000	8.0
Interest	31.12.X3	1	8	0.893	7.1
Interest	31.12.X4	2	8	0.797	6.4
Interest	31.12.X5	3	8	0.712	5.7
Redemption	1.1.X6	3	100	0.712	71.2
NPV					98.4

The estimated market price would be $98.40.

(c)

Item and date		*Year*	*Cash flow ex int*	*PV 5%*	*PV 10%*
			$	$	$
Market value		0	(95.0)	(95.0)	(95.0)
Interest (8 × (1 – 0.3))	31.12.X3	1	5.6	5.3	5.1
Interest	31.12.X4	2	5.6	5.1	4.6
Interest	31.12.X5	3	5.6	4.8	4.3
Redemption	1. 1.X6	3	100.0	86.4	75.1
NPV				6.6	(5.9)

The estimated after-tax cost of debt is: $5\% + \left(\frac{6.6}{(6.6+5.9)} \times 5\%\right) = 7.6\%$

Exam focus point

Make sure that you know the difference in methods for calculating the cost of irredeemable **and** redeemable debt, as this is often a weakness in exams.

4.9 The cost of floating rate debt

If a firm has variable or **'floating rate' debt**, then the cost of an equivalent fixed interest debt should be substituted. 'Equivalent' usually means fixed interest debt with a similar term to maturity in a firm of similar standing, although if the cost of capital is to be used for project appraisal purposes, there is an argument for using debt of the same duration as the project under consideration.

4.10 The cost of bank debt

The cost of short-term funds such as bank loans and overdrafts is the current interest being charged on such funds. Alternatively, the cost of debt of ordinary or straight bonds could be used.

4.11 The cost of convertible debt

The cost of capital of convertible to debt is harder to determine. The calculation will depend on whether or not conversion is likely to happen.

(a) If conversion is **not** expected, the conversion value is ignored and the bond is treated as **redeemable debt**, using the IRR method described in section 4.6.

(b) If conversion **is** expected, the IRR method for calculating the cost of redeemable debt is used, but the number of years to redemption is replaced by the **number of years to conversion** and the redemption value is replaced by the **conversion value** ie the market value of the shares into which the debt is to be converted.

Formula to learn

Conversion value = $P_0 (1 + g)^n R$

where P_0 is the current ex-dividend ordinary share price
g is the expected annual growth of the ordinary share price
n is the number of years to conversion
R is the number of shares received on conversion

4.12 Example: Cost of convertible debt

A company has issued 8% convertible bonds which are due to be redeemed in five years' time. They are currently quoted at $82 per $100 nominal. The bonds can be converted into 25 shares in five years' time. The share price is currently $3.50 and is expected to grow at a rate of 3% pa. Assume a 30% rate of tax.

Calculate the cost of the convertible debt.

Solution

Conversion value $= P_0(1+g)^n R$

$= 3.50 \times (1+0.03)^5 \times 25$

$= \$101.44$

As the redemption value is $100, investors would **choose to convert** the bonds so the **conversion value** is used in the IRR calculation.

Year	*Cash flow*		*Discount factor 8%*	*PV*	*Discount factor 12%*	*PV*
		$		$		$
0	Market value	(82.00)	1.000	(82.00)	1.000	(82.00)
1 – 5	Interest (8 × (1 – 0.3)	5.60	3.993	22.36	3.605	20.19
5	Conversion value	101.44	0.681	69.08	0.567	57.52
				9.44		(4.29)

Cost of debt = 8% + $\frac{9.44}{9.44 + 4.29}$ (12% - 8%) = 10.75%

4.13 The cost of preference shares

For preference shares the future cash flows are the dividend payments in perpetuity so that:

$$P_0 = \frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})} + \frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})^2} + \frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})^3} + \ldots.$$

where P_0 is the current market price of preference share capital after payment of the current dividend
d is the dividend received
k_{pref} is the cost of preference share capital

$$\frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})} + \frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})^2} + \frac{d}{(1+k_{pref})^3} \ldots..$$

simplifies to $\frac{d}{k_{pref}}$

Formula to learn

The cost of preference shares can be calculated as $k_{pref} = \frac{d}{P_0}$.

Exam focus point

Don't forget however that tax relief is not given for preference share dividends.

When calculating the weighted average cost of capital (see section 5), the cost of preference shares is a separate component and should **not** be combined with the cost of debt or the cost of equity.

5 The weighted average cost of capital 12/07, 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

The **weighted average cost of** capital is calculated by weighting the costs of the individual sources of finance according to their **relative** importance as sources of finance.

5.1 Computing a discount rate

We have looked at the costs of individual sources of capital for a company. But how does this help us to work out the cost of capital as a whole, or the discount rate to apply in DCF investment appraisals?

In many cases it will be difficult to associate a particular project with a particular form of finance. A company's funds may be viewed as a **pool of resources**. Money is withdrawn from this pool of funds to invest in new projects and added to the pool as new finance is raised or profits are retained. Under these circumstances it might seem appropriate to use an average cost of capital as the discount rate.

The correct cost of capital to use in investment appraisal is the **marginal cost of the funds** raised (or earnings retained) to finance the investment. The weighted average cost of capital (WACC) might be considered the most **reliable guide** to the **marginal cost of capital**, but only on the assumption that the company continues to invest in the future, in projects of a standard level of business risk, by raising funds in the same proportions as its existing capital structure.

Key term

Weighted average cost of capital is the average cost of the company's finance (equity, bonds, bank loans) weighted according to the proportion each element bears to the total pool of capital.

5.2 General formula for the WACC

A general formula for the weighted average cost of capital (WACC) k_0 is as follows.

Exam formula

$$\text{WACC} = \left[\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_e + \left[\frac{V_d}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_d\,(1 - T)$$

where k_e is the cost of equity
k_d is the cost of debt
V_e is the market value of equity in the firm
V_d is the market value of debt in the firm
T is the rate of company tax

5.3 Example: weighted average cost of capital

An entity has the following information in its statement of financial position.

	$'000
Ordinary shares of 50¢	2,500
12% unsecured bonds	1,000

The ordinary shares are currently quoted at 130¢ each and the bonds are trading at $72 per $100 nominal. The ordinary dividend of 15¢ has just been paid with an expected growth rate of 10%. Corporation tax is currently 30%.

Calculate the weighted average cost of capital for this entity.

Solution

Market values:

		$'000
Equity (V_e):	$\frac{2,500}{0.5} \times 1.30$	6,500
Bonds (V_d):	$1,000 \times 0.72$	720
		7,220

Cost of equity:

$$k_e = \frac{d_o(1+g)}{P_o} + g = \frac{0.15(1+0.1)}{1.3} + 0.1 = 0.2269 = 22.69\%$$

Cost of debt:

$$k_d = \frac{i}{P_o} = \frac{0.12}{0.72} = 0.1667 = 16.67\%$$

Weighted average cost of capital:

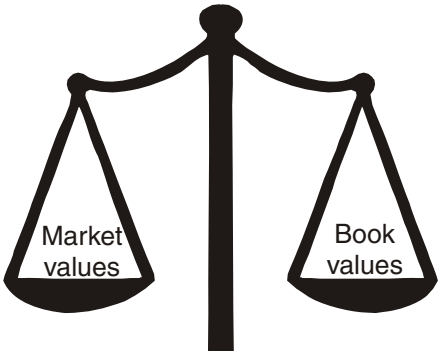
$$\text{WACC} = \left[\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_e + \left[\frac{V_d}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_d\,(1 - T)$$

$V_E + V_D = 7,220$

$$\text{WACC} = \left[\left(\frac{6,500}{7,220}\right) \times 22.69\%\right] + \left[\left(\frac{720}{7,220}\right) \times 16.67\% \times 0.7\right] = 20.43\% + 1.16\% = 21.59\%$$

5.4 Weighting

Two methods of weighting could be used.



Market values should always be used if data is available. Although book values are often easier to obtain, they are based on historical costs and their use will seriously **understate** the impact of the cost of equity finance on the average cost of capital. If the WACC is underestimated, unprofitable projects will be accepted.

5.5 Marginal cost of capital approach

The **marginal cost of capital** approach involves calculating a marginal cut-off rate for acceptable investment projects by:

(a) **Establishing rates of return** for each component of capital structure, except retained earnings, based on its value if it were to be raised under current market conditions.

(b) **Relating dividends or interest** to these values to obtain a marginal cost for each component.

(c) **Applying the marginal cost** to each component depending on its proportionate weight within the capital structure and adding the resultant costs to give a weighted average.

It can be argued that the current weighted average cost of capital should be used to evaluate projects. Where a company's capital structure changes only very **slowly** over time, the marginal cost of new capital should be roughly **equal** to the weighted average cost of current capital.

Where gearing levels fluctuate significantly, or the finance for new project carries a significantly different level of risks to that of the existing company, there is good reason to seek an alternative marginal cost of capital.

5.6 Example: Marginal cost of capital

Georgebear has the following capital structure:

	After tax cost	*Market value*	After tax cost x Market value
Source	%	$m	
Equity	12	10	1.2
Preference	10	2	0.2
Bonds	7.5	8	0.6
		20	2.0

$$\text{Weighted average cost of capital} = \frac{2 \times 100\%}{20}$$

$$= 10\%$$

Georgebear's directors have decided to embark on major capital expenditure, which will be financed by a major issue of funds. The estimated project cost is $3,000,000, 1/3 of which will be financed by equity, 2/3 of which will be financed by bonds. As a result of undertaking the project, the cost of equity (existing and new shares) will rise from 12% to 14%. The cost of preference shares and the cost of existing bonds will remain the same, while the after tax cost of the new bonds will be 9%.

Required

Calculate the company's new weighted average cost of capital, and its marginal cost of capital.

Solution

New weighted average cost of capital

	After tax cost	*Market value*	*After tax cost x Market value*
Source	%	$m	
Equity	14	11	1.54
Preference	10	2	0.20
Existing bonds	7.5	8	0.60
New bonds	9	2	0.18
		23	2.52

$$\text{WACC} = \frac{2.52 \times 100\%}{23}$$

$$= 11.0\%$$

$$\text{Marginal cost of capital} = \frac{(2.52 - 2.0) \times 100\%}{23 - 20}$$

$$= 17.3\%$$

Chapter Roundup

- The **cost of capital** is the rate of return that the enterprise must pay to satisfy the providers of funds, and it reflects the riskiness of providing funds.
- The **dividend growth model** can be used to estimate a cost of equity, on the assumption that the market value of share is directly related to the expected future dividends from the shares.
- The **capital asset pricing model** can be used to calculate a cost of equity and incorporates **risk.**

  The CAPM is based on a comparison of the **systematic risk** of **individual investments** with the **risks of all shares** in the **market**.
- The **risk** involved in holding securities (shares) divides into **risk specific** to the company (unsystematic) and risk due to **variations** in **market activity** (systematic).

  Unsystematic or business risk can be diversified away, while **systematic or market risk** cannot. Investors may mix a diversified market portfolio with risk-free assets to achieve a preferred mix of risk and return.
- The **beta factor** measures a share's volatility in terms of market risk.
- Problems of CAPM include **unrealistic assumptions** and the **required estimates being difficult to make.**
- The **cost of debt** is the return an enterprise must pay to its lenders.
  - For **irredeemable debt**, this is the (post-tax) interest as a percentage of the ex interest market value of the bonds (or preferred shares).
  - For **redeemable debt**, the cost is given by the internal rate of return of the cash flows involved.
- The **weighted average cost of** capital is calculated by weighting the costs of the individual sources of finance according to their **relative** importance as sources of finance.

Quick Quiz

1 **Fill in the blanks**

Cost of capital = (1) ..... + (2) premium for ..... risk + (3) premium for ..... risk.

2 A share has a current market value of 120c and the last dividend was 10c. If the expected annual growth rate of dividends is 5%, calculate the cost of equity capital.

3 What type of risk arises from the existing operations of a business and cannot be diversified away?

4 Which of the following risks can be eliminated by diversification?

A Inherent risk
B Systematic risk
C Market risk
D Unsystematic risk

5 Unsystematic risk is measured by beta factors.

True ☐
False ☐

6 A portfolio consisting entirely of risk-free securities will have a beta factor of (tick one box):

–1 ☐
0 ☐
1 ☐

7 The risk free rate of return is 8%. Average market return is 14%. A share's beta factor is 0.5. What will be its expected return?

8 Identify the variables k_e, k_d, V_e and V_d in the following weighted average cost of capital formula.

$$WACC = \left[\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_e + \left[\frac{V_d}{V_e + V_d}\right] k_d (1 - T)$$

9 When calculating the weighted average cost of capital, which of the following is the preferred method of weighting?

A Book values of debt and equity
B Average levels of the market values of debt and equity (ignoring reserves) over five years
C Current market values of debt and equity (ignoring reserves)
D Current market values of debt and equity (plus reserves)

10 What is the cost of $1 irredeemable debt capital paying an annual rate of interest of 7%, and having a current market price of $1.50?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (1) Risk-free rate of return
(2) Business
(3) Financial

2 $\frac{10(1+0.05)}{120} + 0.05 = 13.75\%$

3 Systematic or market risk

4 D Unsystematic risk is risk that is specific to sectors, companies or projects. Systematic risk (also known as inherent risk or market risk) affects the whole market and therefore cannot be reduced by diversification.

5 False. Beta factors measure systematic risk.

6 Zero

7 Expected return = 8 + 0.5 (14 – 8) = 11%

8 k_e is the cost of equity
k_d is the cost of debt
V_e is the market value of equity in the firm
V_d is the market value of debt in the firm

9 C Current market values of debt and equity (ignoring reserves)

10 Cost of debt = $\frac{0.07}{1.50} = 4.67\%$

Now try the question below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q23	Introductory	N/A	35 mins

16

Capital structure

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Capital structure theories	F5 (a), (b), (c), (d)
2 Impact of cost of capital on investments	F6 (a), (b), (c), (d)

Introduction

This chapter considers the impact of **capital structure** on the cost of capital. The **practical application** of this comes in Section 2 where we consider various ways of incorporating the effects of changing capital structure into cost of capital and net present value calculations.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
F5	**Capital structure theories and practical considerations**	
(a)	Describe the traditional view of capital structure and its assumptions.	2
(b)	Describe the views of Miller and Modigliani on capital structure, both without and with corporate taxation, and their assumptions.	2
(c)	Identify a range of capital market imperfections and describe their impact on the views of Miller and Modigliani on capital structure.	2
(d)	Explain the relevance of pecking order theory to the selection of sources of finance.	1
F6	**Impact of cost of capital on investments**	
(a)	Explain the relationship between company value and cost of capital.	2
(b)	Discuss the circumstances under which WACC can be used in investment appraisal.	2
(c)	Discuss the advantages of the CAPM over WACC in determining a project-specific cost of capital.	2
(d)	Apply the CAPM in calculating a project-specific discount rate.	2

Exam guide

The theories covered in this chapter could be needed in a discussion part of a question. Gearing and ungearing a beta is an essential technique to master using the formula which will be given to you in the exam.

1 Capital structure theories

FAST FORWARD

Some commentators believe that an **optimal mix of finance** exists at which the company's **cost of capital** will be minimised.

When we consider the capital structure decision, the question arises of whether there is an optimal mix of capital and debt which a company should try to achieve. Under the **traditional view** there is an optimal capital mix at which the **average cost of capital**, weighted according to the different forms of capital employed, is **minimised**.

However, the alternative view of **Modigliani and Miller** is that the firm's overall **weighted average cost of capital** is **not influenced** by changes in its **capital structure**.

1.1 The traditional view

FAST FORWARD

Under the **traditional theory of cost of capital**, the cost declines initially and then rises as gearing increases. The **optimal capital structure** will be the point at which WACC is lowest.

The traditional view of capital structure is that there is an **optimal capital structure** and the company can increase its total value by a suitable use of debt finance in its capital structure.

The assumptions on which this theory is based are as follows:

(a) The company **pays out** all its **earnings** as **dividends.**

(b) The **gearing** of the company **can be changed immediately** by issuing debt to repurchase shares, or by issuing shares to repurchase debt. There are no transaction costs for issues.

(c) The earnings of the company are **expected to remain constant in perpetuity** and all investors share the same expectations about these future earnings.

(d) **Business risk** is also **constant**, regardless of how the company invests its funds.

(e) **Taxation**, for the time being, is **ignored**.

The **traditional view** is as follows:

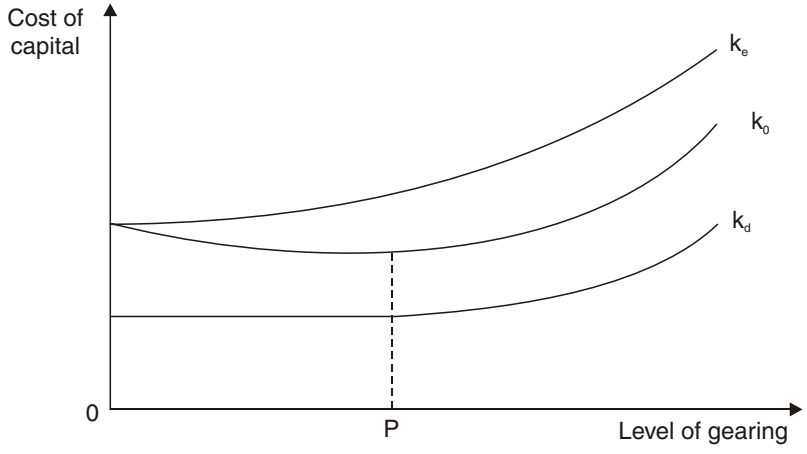
(a) As the **level of gearing increases**, the **cost of debt** remains **unchanged** up to a certain level of gearing. Beyond this level, the cost of debt will increase.

(b) The **cost of equity** rises as the level of **gearing increases** and financial risk increases. There is a non-linear relationship between the cost of equity and gearing.

(c) The **weighted average cost of capital** does **not remain constant**, but rather falls initially as the proportion of debt capital increases, and then begins to increase as the rising cost of equity (and possibly of debt) becomes more significant.

(d) The **optimum level of gearing** is where the **company's weighted average cost of capital is minimised**.

The traditional view about the cost of capital is illustrated in the following figure. It shows that the weighted average cost of capital will be minimised at a particular level of gearing P.



where k_e is the cost of equity in the geared company
k_d is the cost of debt
k_0 is the weighted average cost of capital.

The traditional view is that the weighted average cost of capital, when plotted against the level of gearing, is saucer shaped. The optimum capital structure is where the weighted average cost of capital is lowest, at point P.

1.2 The net operating income (Modigliani-Miller (MM)) view of WACC

FAST FORWARD

Modigliani and Miller stated that, in the absence of tax, a company's **capital structure** would have **no impact** upon its WACC.

The net operating income approach takes a different view of the effect of gearing on WACC. In their 1958 theory, Modigliani and Miller (MM) proposed that the total market value of a company, in the absence of tax, will be determined only by two factors:

- The **total earnings** of the company
- The **level of operating (business) risk** attached to those earnings

The total market value would be computed by discounting the total earnings at a rate that is appropriate to the level of operating risk. This rate would represent the WACC of the company.

Thus Modigliani and Miller concluded that **the capital structure of a company would have no effect on its overall value or WACC**.

1.2.1 Assumptions of net operating income approach

Modigliani and Miller made various assumptions in arriving at this conclusion, including:

(a) A **perfect capital market** exists, in which investors have the same information, upon which they act rationally, to arrive at the same expectations about future earnings and risks.

(b) There are no **tax or transaction costs**.

(c) **Debt is risk-free** and freely available at the same cost to investors and companies alike.

Modigliani and Miller justified their approach by the use of **arbitrage**.

Key term

Arbitrage is when a purchase and sale of a security takes place simultaneously in different markets, with the aim of making a risk-free profit through the exploitation of any price difference between the markets.

Arbitrage can be used to show that once all opportunities for profit have been exploited, the market values of two companies with the same earnings in equivalent business risk classes will have moved to an equal value.

Exam focus point

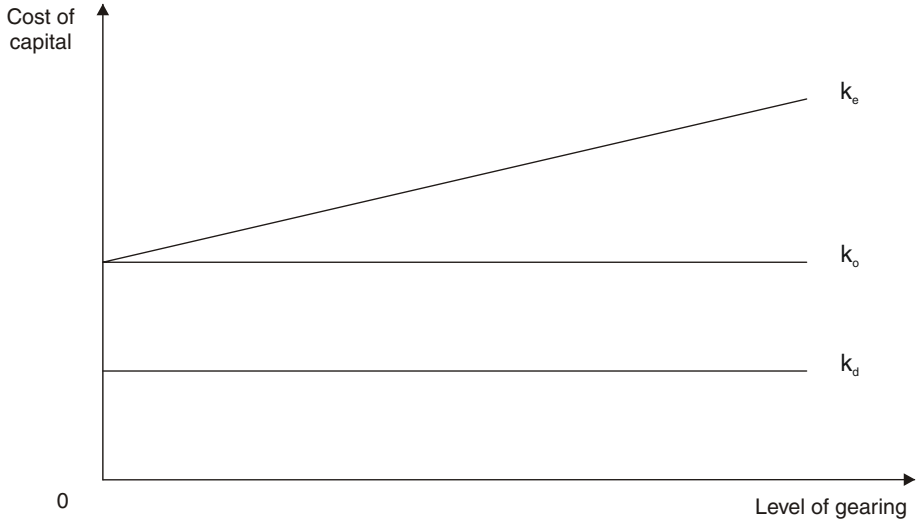
The proof of Modigliani and Miller's theory by arbitrage is not examinable.

If Modigliani and Miller's theory holds, it implies:

(a) The **cost of debt remains unchanged** as the level of gearing increases.

(b) The **cost of equity rises** in such a way as to keep the **weighted average cost of capital constant**.

This would be represented on a graph as shown below.



1.3 Example: net operating income approach

A company has $5,000 of debt at 10% interest, and earns $5,000 a year before interest is paid. There are 2,250 issued shares, and the weighted average cost of capital of the company is 20%.

The market value of the company should be as follows.

Earnings	$5,000
Weighted average cost of capital	0.2
	$
Market value of the company ($5,000 ÷ 0.2)	25,000
Less market value of debt	5,000
Market value of equity	20,000

The cost of equity is therefore $\frac{5{,}000 - 500}{20{,}000} = \frac{4{,}500}{20{,}000} = 22.5\%$

and the market value per share is $\frac{4{,}500}{2{,}250} \times \frac{1}{0.225} = \$8.89$

Suppose that the level of gearing is increased by issuing $5,000 more of debt at 10% interest to repurchase 562 shares (at a market value of $8.89 per share) leaving 1,688 shares in issue.

The weighted average cost of capital will, according to the net operating income approach, remain unchanged at 20%. The market value of the company should still therefore be $25,000.

Earnings	$5,000
Weighted average cost of capital	0.2
	$
Market value of the company	25,000
Less market value of debt	10,000
Market value of equity	15,000

Annual dividends will now be $5,000 – $1,000 interest = $4,000.

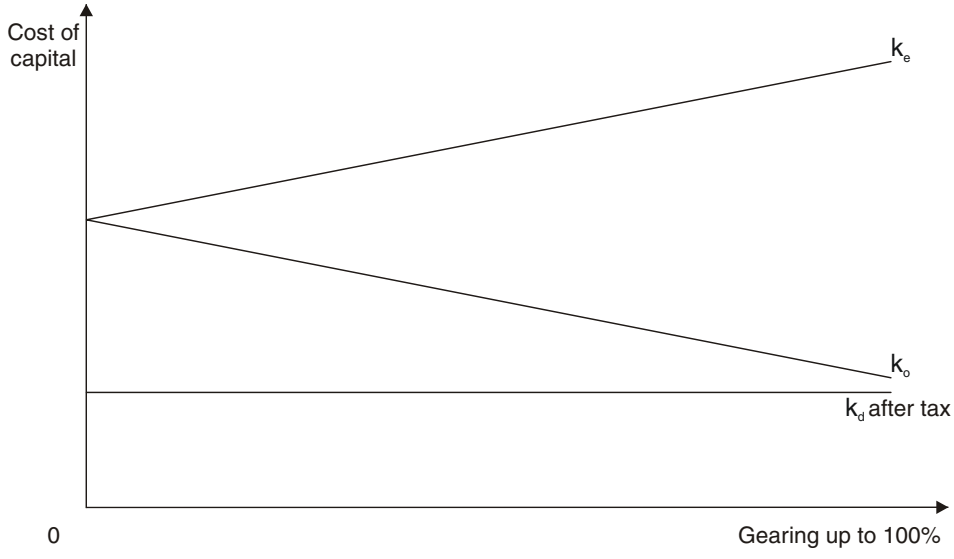
The cost of equity has risen to $\frac{4,000}{15,000}$ = 26.667% and the market value per share is still:

$$\frac{4,000}{1,688} \times \frac{1}{0.2667} = \$8.89$$

The conclusion of the net operating income approach is that the level of gearing is a matter of indifference to an investor, because it does not affect the market value of the company, nor of an individual share. This is because as the level of gearing rises, so does the cost of equity in such a way as to keep both the weighted average cost of capital and the market value of the shares constant. Although, in our example, the dividend per share rises from $2 to $2.37, the increase in the cost of equity is such that the market value per share remains at $8.89.

1.4 Market imperfections

In 1963 Modigliani and Miller modified their theory to admit that **tax relief** on interest payments does lower the weighted average cost of capital. The savings arising from tax relief on debt interest are the **tax shield**. They claimed that the weighted average cost of capital will continue to fall, up to gearing of 100%.



This suggests that companies should have a capital structure made up entirely of debt. This does not happen in practice due to the existence of other **market imperfections** which undermine the tax advantages of debt finance.

1.4.1 Bankruptcy costs

MM's theory assumes perfect capital markets so a company would always be able to raise finance and avoid bankruptcy. In reality however, at higher levels of gearing there is an increasing risk of the company being unable to meet its interest payments and being declared bankrupt. At these higher levels of gearing, the bankruptcy risk means that shareholders will require a higher rate of return as compensation.

1.4.2 Agency costs

At higher levels of gearing there are also agency costs as a result of action taken by concerned debt holders. Providers of debt finance are likely to impose **restrictive covenants** such as restriction of future dividends or the imposition of minimum levels of liquidity in order to protect their investment. They may also increase their level of monitoring and require more financial information.

1.4.3 Tax exhaustion

As companies increase their gearing they may reach a point where there are not enough profits from which to obtain all available tax benefits. They will still be subject to increased bankruptcy and agency costs but will not be able to benefit from the increased tax shield.

1.5 Pecking order theory

Pecking order theory has been developed as an alternative to traditional theory. It states that firms will prefer retained earnings to any other source of finance, and then will choose debt, and last of all equity. The order of preference will be:

- Retained earnings
- Straight debt
- Convertible debt
- Preference shares
- Equity shares

1.5.1 Reasons for following pecking order

(a) It is easier to **use retained earnings** than go to the trouble of obtaining external finance and have to live up to the demands of external finance providers.

(b) There are **no issue costs** if retained earnings are used, and the issue costs of debt are lower than those of equity.

(c) Investors prefer **safer securities**, that is debt with its guaranteed income and priority on liquidation.

(d) Some managers believe that debt issues have a better **signalling effect** than equity issues because the market believes that managers are better informed about shares' true worth than the market itself is. Their view is the market will interpret debt issues as a sign of confidence, that businesses are confident of making sufficient profits to fulfil their obligations on debt and that they believe that the shares are **undervalued**.

By contrast the market will interpret equity issues as a measure of last resort, that managers believe that equity is currently **overvalued** and hence are trying to achieve high proceeds whilst they can.

However an issue of debt may **imply a similar lack of confidence** to an **issue of equity**; managers may issue debt when they believe that the **cost of debt** is **low** due to the market underestimating the risk of default and hence undervaluing the risk premium in the cost of debt. If the market recognises this lack of confidence, it is likely to respond by raising the cost of debt.

The main consequence in this situation will to be **reinforce a preference** for **using retained earnings first**. However debt (particularly less risky, secured debt) will be the next source as the market feels more confident about valuing it than more risky debt or equity.

1.5.2 Consequences of pecking order theory

(a) Businesses will try to match **investment opportunities** with **internal finance** provided this does not mean excessive changes in dividend payout ratios.

(b) If it is **not possible** to **match investment opportunities** with **internal finance**, surplus internal funds will be invested; if there is a deficiency of internal funds, external finance will be issued in the pecking order, starting with straight debt.

(c) Establishing an **ideal debt-equity mix** will be problematic, since internal equity funds will be the first source of finance that businesses choose, and external equity funds the last.

1.5.3 Limitations of pecking order theory

(a) It fails to take into account **taxation**, **financial distress, agency costs** or how the **investment opportunities** that are available may influence the choice of finance.

(b) Pecking order theory is an explanation of what businesses **actually** do, rather than what they **should** do.

Studies suggest that the businesses that are most likely to follow pecking order theory are those that are **operating profitably** in markets where **growth prospects** are **poor.** There will thus be limited opportunities to invest funds, and these businesses will be content to rely on retained earnings for the limited resources that they need.

2 Impact of cost of capital on investments 6/08, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

The lower a company's WACC, the higher the NPV of its future cash flows and the higher its market value.

2.1 The relationship between company value and cost of capital

The market value of a company depends on its cost of capital. The lower a company's WACC, the higher will be the net present value of its future cash flows and therefore the higher will be its market value. We will consider business valuations in more detail in Part G of this study text.

2.2 Using the WACC in investment appraisal

The weighted average cost of capital can be used in investment appraisal if:

(a) The project being appraised is **small relative** to the company.
(b) The **existing capital structure** will be maintained (same financial risk).
(c) The project has the same **business risk** as the company.

2.3 Arguments against using the WACC

(a) New investments undertaken by a company might have different **business risk** characteristics from the company's existing operations. As a consequence, the return required by investors might go up (or down) if the investments are undertaken, because their business risk is perceived to be higher (or lower).

(b) The finance that is raised to fund a new investment might substantially change the capital structure and the perceived **financial risk** of investing in the company. Depending on whether the project is financed by equity or by debt capital, the perceived financial risk of the entire company might change. This must be taken into account when appraising investments.

(c) Many companies raise **floating rate** debt capital as well as fixed interest debt capital. With floating rate debt capital, the interest rate is variable, and is altered every three or six months or so in line with changes in current market interest rates. The cost of debt capital will therefore fluctuate as market conditions vary. Floating rate debt is difficult to incorporate into a WACC computation, and the best that can be done is to substitute an 'equivalent' fixed interest debt capital cost in place of the floating rate debt cost.

2.4 Using CAPM in investment appraisal

We looked at how the CAPM can be used to calculate a cost of equity incorporating risk in Chapter 15. It can also be used to calculate a **project-specific cost of capital**.

The CAPM produces a required return based on the expected return of the market $E(r_m)$, the risk-free interest rate (R_f) and the variability of project returns relative to the market returns (β). Its main advantage when used for investment appraisal is that it produces a discount rate which is based on the **systematic** risk of the individual investment. It can be used to **compare projects of all different risk classes** and is therefore superior to an NPV approach which uses only one discount rate for all projects, regardless of their risk.

The model was developed with respect to securities; by applying it to an investment within the firm, the company is assuming that the shareholder wishes investments to be evaluated as if they were securities in the capital market and thus assumes that all shareholders will hold **diversified portfolios** and will not look to the company to achieve diversification for them.

2.5 Example: required return

Panda is all-equity financed. It wishes to invest in a project with an estimated beta of 1.5. The project has significantly different business risk characteristics from Panda's current operations. The project requires an outlay of $10,000 and will generate expected returns of $12,000.

The market rate of return is 12% and the risk-free rate of return is 6%.

Required

Estimate the minimum return that Panda will require from the project and assess whether the project is worthwhile, based on the figures you are given.

Solution

We do not need to know Panda's current weighted average cost of capital, as the new project has different business characteristics from its current operations. Instead we use the capital asset pricing model so that;

$$\text{Required return} = R_f + \beta\,(E\,(r_m) - R_f)$$
$$= 6 + 1.5(12 - 6)$$
$$= 15\%$$

$$\text{Expected return} = \frac{12{,}000 - 10{,}000}{10{,}000}$$
$$= 20\%$$

Thus the project is worthwhile, as expected return exceeds required return.

2.6 Limitations of using CAPM in investment decisions 12/08

The greatest practical problems with the use of the CAPM in capital investment decisions are as follows.

(a) It is **hard to estimate** returns on projects under different economic environments, market returns under different economic environments and the probabilities of the various environments.

(b) The CAPM is really just a **single period model**. Few investment projects last for one year only and to extend the use of the return estimated from the model to more than one time period would require both project performance relative to the market and the economic environment to be reasonably stable.

In theory, it should be possible to apply the CAPM for each time period, thus arriving at successive discount rates, one for each year of the project's life. In practice, this would exacerbate the estimation problems mentioned above and also make the discounting process much more cumbersome.

(c) It may be **hard to determine the risk-free rate of return**. Government securities are usually taken to be risk-free, but the return on these securities varies according to their term to maturity.

(d) Some experts have argued that betas calculated using complicated statistical techniques often overestimate high betas, and underestimate low betas, particularly for small companies.

2.7 CAPM and MM combined – geared betas 12/08

FAST FORWARD

When an investment has differing business and finance risks from the existing business, **geared betas** may be used to obtain an appropriate required return.

Geared betas are calculated by:

- Ungearing industry betas
- Converting ungeared betas back into a geared beta that reflects the company's own gearing ratio

2.7.1 Beta values and the effect of gearing

The gearing of a company will affect the risk of its equity. If a company is geared and its **financial risk is therefore higher** than the risk of an all-equity company, then the β value of the geared company's equity will be higher than the β value of a similar ungeared company's equity.

The CAPM is consistent with the propositions of Modigliani and Miller. MM argue that as gearing rises, the cost of equity rises to compensate shareholders for the extra financial risk of investing in a geared company. This financial risk is an aspect of systematic risk, and ought to be reflected in a company's beta factor.

2.7.2 Geared betas and ungeared betas

The connection between MM theory and the CAPM means that it is possible to establish a mathematical relationship between the β value of an ungeared company and the β value of a similar, but geared, company. The β value of a geared company will be higher than the β value of a company identical in every respect except that it is all-equity financed. This is because of the extra financial risk. The mathematical relationship between the 'ungeared' (or asset) and 'geared' betas is as follows.

Exam Formulae

$$\beta_a = \left[\frac{V_e}{(V_e + V_d(1-T))}\beta_e\right] + \left[\frac{V_d(1-T)}{(V_e + V_d(1-T))}\beta_d\right]$$

This is the **asset beta formula** on the exam formula sheet.

where β_a is the asset or ungeared beta
β_e is the equity or geared beta
β_d is the beta factor of debt in the geared company
V_D is the market value of the debt capital in the geared company
V_E is the market value of the equity capital in the geared company
T is the rate of corporate tax

Debt is often assumed to be risk-free and its beta (β_d) is then taken as zero, in which case the formula above reduces to the following form.

$$\beta_a = \beta_e \times \frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d(1-T)} \quad \text{or, without tax,} \quad \beta_a = \beta_e \times \frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}$$

2.7.3 Example: CAPM and geared betas

Two companies are identical in every respect except for their capital structure. Their market values are in equilibrium, as follows.

	Geared	*Ungeared*
	$'000	$'000
Annual profit before interest and tax	1,000	1,000
Less interest (4,000 × 8%)	320	0
	680	1,000
Less tax at 30%	204	300
Profit after tax = dividends	476	700
Market value of equity	3,900	6,600
Market value of debt	4,180	0
Total market value of company	8,080	6,600

The total value of Geared is higher than the total value of Ungeared, which is consistent with MM.

All profits after tax are paid out as dividends, and so there is no dividend growth. The beta value of Ungeared has been calculated as 1.0. The debt capital of Geared can be regarded as risk-free.

Calculate:

(a) The cost of equity in Geared
(b) The market return R_m
(c) The beta value of Geared

Solution

(a) Since its market value (MV) is in equilibrium, the cost of equity in Geared can be calculated as:

$$\frac{d}{MV} = \frac{476}{3{,}900} = 12.20\%$$

(b) The beta value of Ungeared is 1.0, which means that the expected returns from Ungeared are exactly the same as the market returns, and R_m = 700/6,600 = 10.6%.

(c) $$\beta_e = \beta_a \times \frac{V_e + V_d(1-T)}{V_e}$$

$$= 1.0 \times \frac{3{,}900 + (4{,}180 \times 0.70)}{3{,}900} = 1.75$$

The beta of Geared, as we should expect, is higher than the beta of Ungeared.

2.7.4 Using the geared and ungeared beta formula to estimate a beta factor

Another way of estimating a beta factor for a company's equity is to use data about the returns of other quoted companies which have similar operating characteristics: that is, to use the beta values of other companies' equity to estimate a beta value for the company under consideration. The beta values estimated for the firm under consideration must be **adjusted to allow for differences in gearing** from the firms whose equity beta values are known. The formula for geared and ungeared beta values can be applied.

If a company plans to invest in a project which involves diversification into a new business, the investment will involve a different level of systematic risk from that applying to the company's existing business. A discount rate should be calculated which is specific to the project, and which takes account of both the project's systematic risk and the company's gearing level. The discount rate can be found using the CAPM.

Step 1 Get an estimate of the systematic risk characteristics of the project's operating cash flows by obtaining published beta values for companies in the industry into which the company is planning to diversify.

Step 2 Adjust these beta values to allow for the company's capital gearing level. This adjustment is done in two stages.

(a) Convert the beta values of other companies in the industry to ungeared betas, using the formula:

$$\beta_a = \beta_e \left(\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d(1-T)} \right)$$

(b) Having obtained an ungeared beta value β_a, convert it back to a geared beta β_e, which reflects the company's own gearing ratio, using the formula:

$$\beta_e = \beta_a \left(\frac{V_e + V_d(1-T)}{V_e} \right)$$

Step 3 Having estimated a project-specific geared beta, use the CAPM to estimate a project-specific cost of equity.

2.7.5 Example: Gearing and ungearing betas

A company's debt:equity ratio, by market values, is 2:5. The corporate debt, which is assumed to be risk-free, yields 11% before tax. The beta value of the company's equity is currently 1.1. The average returns on stock market equity are 16%.

The company is now proposing to invest in a project which would involve diversification into a new industry, and the following information is available about this industry.

(a) Average beta coefficient of equity capital = 1.59
(b) Average debt:equity ratio in the industry = 1:2 (by market value).

The rate of corporation tax is 30%. What would be a suitable cost of capital to apply to the project?

Solution

Step 1 The beta value for the industry is 1.59.

Step 2 (a) Convert the geared beta value for the industry to an ungeared beta for the industry.

$$\beta_a = 1.59 \left(\frac{2}{2+(1(1-0.30))} \right) = 1.18$$

(b) Convert this ungeared industry beta back into a geared beta, which reflects the company's own gearing level of 2:5.

$$\beta_e = 1.18 \left(\frac{5+(2(1-0.30))}{5} \right) = 1.51$$

Step 3 (a) This is a project-specific beta for the firm's equity capital, and so using the CAPM, we can estimate the project-specific cost of equity as:

k_{eg} = 11% + (16% – 11%) 1.51 = 18.55%

(b) The project will presumably be financed in a gearing ratio of 2:5 debt to equity, and so the project-specific cost of capital ought to be:

[5/7 × 18.55%] + [2/7 × 70% × 11%] = 15.45%

Question

Ungeared and geared betas

Two companies are identical in every respect except for their capital structure. XY has a debt: equity ratio of 1:3, and its equity has a β value of 1.20. PQ has a debt: equity ratio of 2:3. Corporation tax is at 30%. Estimate a β value for PQ's equity.

Answer

Estimate an ungeared beta from XY data.

$$\beta_a = 1.20 \frac{3}{3 + (1(1 - 0.30))} = 0.973$$

Estimate a geared beta for PQ using this ungeared beta.

$$\beta_e = 0.973 \ \frac{3 + (2(1 - 0.30))}{3} = 1.427$$

2.7.6 Weaknesses in the formula

The problems with using the geared and ungeared beta formula for calculating a firm's equity beta from data about other firms are as follows.

(a) It is **difficult to identify other firms with identical operating characteristics**.

(b) **Estimates of beta values from share price information are not wholly accurate**. They are based on statistical analysis of historical data, and as the previous example shows, estimates using one firm's data will differ from estimates using another firm's data.

(c) There may be **differences in beta values** between firms caused by:

  (i) Different cost structures (eg, the ratio of fixed costs to variable costs)

  (ii) Size differences between firms

  (iii) Debt capital not being risk-free

(d) If the firm for which an equity beta is being estimated has **opportunities for growth** that are recognised by investors, and which will affect its equity beta, estimates of the equity beta based on other firms' data will be inaccurate, because the opportunities for growth will not be allowed for.

Perhaps the most significant simplifying assumption is that to link MM theory to the CAPM, it must be assumed that the **cost of debt** is a **risk-free rate of return**. This could obviously be unrealistic. Companies may default on interest payments or capital repayments on their loans. It has been estimated that corporate debt has a beta value of 0.2 or 0.3.

The consequence of making the assumption that debt is risk-free is that the formulae tend to **overstate** the financial risk in a geared company and to **understate** the business risk in geared and ungeared companies by a compensating amount.

Question

Gearing and ungearing betas

Backwoods is a major international company with its head office in the UK, wanting to raise £150 million to establish a new production plant in the eastern region of Germany. Backwoods evaluates its investments using NPV, but is not sure what cost of capital to use in the discounting process for this project evaluation.

The company is also proposing to increase its equity finance in the near future for UK expansion, resulting overall in little change in the company's market-weighted capital gearing.

The summarised financial data for the company before the expansion are shown below.

Income statement for the year ended 31 December 20X1

	£m
Revenue	1,984
Gross profit	432
Profit after tax	81
Dividends	37
Retained earnings	44

Statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X1

	£m
Non-current assets	846
Working capital	350
	1,196
Medium term and long term loans (see note below)	210
	986
Shareholders' funds	
Issued ordinary shares of £0.50 each nominal value	225
Reserves	761
	986

Note on borrowings

These include £75m 14% fixed rate bonds due to mature in five years time and redeemable at par. The current market price of these bonds is £120.00 and they have an after-tax cost of debt of 9%. Other medium and long-term loans are floating rate UK bank loans at LIBOR plus 1%, with an after-tax cost of debt of 7%.

Company rate of tax may be assumed to be at the rate of 30%. The company's ordinary shares are currently trading at 376 pence.

The equity beta of Backwoods is estimated to be 1.18. The systematic risk of debt may be assumed to be zero. The risk free rate is 7.75% and market return 14.5%.

The estimated equity beta of the main German competitor in the same industry as the new proposed plant in the eastern region of Germany is 1.5, and the competitor's capital gearing is 35% equity and 65% debt by book values, and 60% equity and 40% debt by market values.

Required

Estimate the cost of capital that the company should use as the discount rate for its proposed investment in eastern Germany. State clearly any assumptions that you make.

Answer

The discount rate that should be used is the weighted average cost of capital (WACC), with weightings based on market values. The cost of capital should take into account the systematic risk of the new investment, and therefore it will not be appropriate to use the company's existing equity beta. Instead, the estimated equity beta of the main German competitor in the same industry as the new proposed plant will be ungeared, and then the capital structure of Backwoods applied to find the WACC to be used for the discount rate.

Since the systematic risk of debt can be assumed to be zero, the German equity beta can be 'ungeared' using the following expression.

$$\beta_a = \beta_e \frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d (1-T)}$$

where: β_a = asset beta
β_e = equity beta
V_e = proportion of equity in capital structure
V_d = proportion of debt in capital structure
T = tax rate

For the German company:

$$\beta_a = 1.5\left(\frac{60}{60+40(1-0.30)}\right) = 1.023$$

The next step is to calculate the debt and equity of Backwoods based on market values.

		£m
Equity	450m shares at 376p	1,692.0
Debt: bank loans	(210 – 75)	135.0
Debt: bonds	(75 million × 1.20)	90.0
Total debt		225.0
Total market value		1,917.0

The beta can now be re-geared

$$\beta_e = \frac{1.023(1{,}692 + 225\,(1-0.3))}{1{,}692} = 1.118$$

This can now be substituted into the capital asset pricing model (CAPM) to find the cost of equity.

$E(r_i) = R_f + \beta\,(E\,(r_m) - R_f)$

where: $E(r_i)$ = cost of equity
R_f = risk free rate of return
$E(r_m)$ = market rate of return
$E(r_i)$ = 7.75% + (14.5% – 7.75%) × 1.118 = 15.30%

The WACC can now be calculated:

$$\left[15.3\times\frac{1{,}692}{1{,}917}\right] + \left[7\times\frac{135}{1{,}917}\right] + \left[9\times\frac{90}{1{,}917}\right] = 14.4\%$$

Exam focus point

An exam question may ask you to explain how CAPM can be used in investment appraisal rather than requiring a calculation.

The examiner has written a series of articles on CAPM which are available on www.accaglobal.com.

Chapter Roundup

- Some commentators believe that an **optimal mix of finance** exists at which the company's **cost of capital** will be minimised.
- Under the **traditional theory of cost of capital**, the cost declines initially and then rises as gearing increases. The **optimal capital structure** will be the point at which WACC is lowest.
- Modigliani and Miller stated that, in the absence of tax, a company's **capital structure** would have **no impact** upon its WACC.
- The lower a company's WACC, the higher the NPV of its future cash flows and the higher its market value.
- When an investment has differing business and finance risks from the existing business, **geared betas** may be used to obtain an appropriate required return.

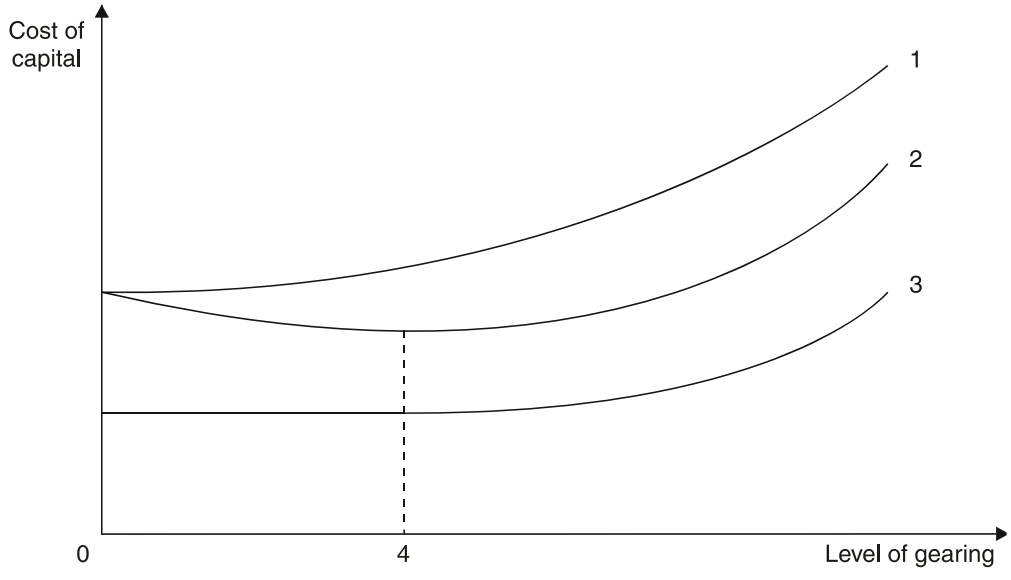
  Geared betas are calculated by:

  – Ungearing industry betas
  – Converting ungeared betas back into a geared beta that reflects the company's own gearing ratio

Quick Quiz

1 What are the main problems in using geared and ungeared Betas to calculate a firm's equity beta?

2 Explain the significance of lines 1 to 3 and point 4 in the diagram below illustrating the traditional view of the WACC.



3 Assuming debt is risk-free β_a = ?

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (a) It is difficult to identify other firms with identical operating characteristics.
(b) Estimates of beta values from share price information are not wholly accurate.
(c) There may be firm-specific causes of differences in beta values.
(d) The market may recognise opportunities for future growth for some firms but not others.

2 Line 1 is the cost of equity in the geared company
Line 2 is the weighted average cost of capital
Line 3 is the cost of debt
Point 4 is the optimal level of gearing

3 $$\beta_a = \beta_e \times \frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d(1-T)}$$

Now try the question below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q24	Examination	25	45 mins

PART G

Business valuations

17 Business valuations

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The nature and purpose of business valuations	G1 (a), (b)
2 Asset valuation bases	G2 (a)
3 Income based valuation bases	G2 (b)
4 Cash flow based valuation models	G2 (c)
5 The valuation of debt	G3 (a)

Introduction

In Part G we shall be concentrating on the valuation of businesses. In this chapter, we shall cover the **reasons** why businesses are valued and the main **methods of valuation.**

Study guide

		Intellectual level
G1	**Nature and purpose of the valuation of business and financial assets**	
(a)	Identify and discuss reasons for valuing businesses and financial assets	2
(b)	Identify information requirements for valuation and discuss the limitations of different types of information.	2
G2	**Models for the valuation of shares**	
(a)	Asset-based valuation models, including:	2
(i)	Net book value (balance sheet basis).	
(ii)	Net realisable value basis.	
(iii)	Net replacement cost basis.	
(b)	Income-based valuation models, including:	2
(i)	Price/earnings ratio method.	
(ii)	Earnings yield method.	
(c)	Cash flow-based valuation models, including:	2
(i)	Dividend valuation model and the dividend growth model.	
(ii)	Discounted cash flow basis.	
G3	**The valuation of debt and other financial assets**	
(a)	Apply appropriate valuation methods to:	2
(i)	Irredeemable debt	
(ii)	Redeemable debt	
(iii)	Convertible debt	
(iv)	Preference shares	

Exam guide

Business valuations are highly examinable. You might be asked to apply different valuation methods and discuss their advantages and disadvantages.

1 The nature and purpose of business valuations

FAST FORWARD

There are a number of different ways of **putting a value on a business**, or on shares in an unquoted company. It makes sense to use **several methods** of valuation, and to compare the values they produce.

1.1 When valuations are required

Given quoted share prices on the Stock Exchange, why devise techniques for estimating the value of a share? A share valuation will be necessary:

(a) For **quoted companies**, when there is a takeover bid and the offer price is an estimated 'fair value' in excess of the current market price of the shares.

Key term

A **takeover** is the acquisition by a company of a controlling interest in the voting share capital of another company, usually achieved by the purchase of a majority of the voting shares.

(b) For **unquoted companies**, when:

(i) The company wishes to 'go public' and must fix an issue price for its shares
(ii) There is a scheme of merger
(iii) Shares are sold
(iv) Shares need to be valued for the purposes of taxation
(v) Shares are pledged as collateral for a loan

(c) For **subsidiary companies**, when the group's holding company is negotiating the sale of the subsidiary to a management buyout team or to an external buyer.

(d) For **any company**, where a shareholder wishes to dispose of his or her holding. Some of the valuation methods we describe will be most appropriate if a large or controlling interest is being sold. However even a small shareholding may be a significant disposal, if the purchasers can increase their holding to a controlling interest as a result of the acquisition.

(e) For **any company**, when the company is being broken up in a liquidation situation or the company needs to obtain additional finance, or re-finance current debt.

1.2 Information requirements for valuation

There is a wide range of information that will be needed in order to value a business.

- Financial statements: Statements of financial position, income statements, statements of changes in financial position and statements of shareholders equity for the past five years
- Summary of non-current assets list and depreciation schedule
- Aged accounts receivable summary
- Aged accounts payable summary
- List of marketable securities
- Inventory summary
- Details of any existing contracts eg leases, supplier agreements
- List of shareholders with number of shares owned by each
- Budgets or projections, for a minimum of five years
- Information about the company's industry and economic environment
- List of major customers by sales
- Organisation chart and management roles and responsibilities

This list is not exhaustive and there are **limitations** of some of the information. For example, statement of financial position values of assets may be out of date and unrealistic, projections may be unduly optimistic or pessimistic and much of the information used in business valuation is **subjective**. We will look at this in more detail under each valuation method.

Exam focus point

In an exam question as well as in practice, it is unlikely that one method would be used in isolation. Several valuations might be made, each using a different technique or different assumptions. The valuations could then be compared, and a final price reached as a compromise between the different values. Remember that some methods may be more appropriate for valuing a small parcel of shares, others for valuing a whole company.

1.3 Market capitalisation 6/08

Key term

Market capitalisation is the market value of a company's shares multiplied by the number of issued shares.

Exam focus point

In June 2008, the examiner used the term 'market capitalisation' to ask for a calculation of the value of a company. Some students were confused by this terminology.

2 Asset valuation bases

FAST FORWARD

The **net assets valuation** method can be used as one of many valuation methods, or to provide a lower limit for the value of a company. By itself it is unlikely to produce the most realistic value.

2.1 The net assets method of share valuation

Using this method of valuation, the value of a share in a particular class is equal to the **net tangible assets** divided by the **number of shares. Intangible assets** (including goodwill) should be excluded, unless they have a market value (for example patents and copyrights, which could be sold).

(a) **Goodwill**, if shown in the accounts, is unlikely to be shown at a true figure for purposes of valuation, and the value of goodwill should be reflected in another method of valuation (for example the earnings basis)

(b) **Development expenditure**, if shown in the accounts, would also have a value which is related to future profits rather than to the worth of the company's physical assets.

2.2 Example: net assets method of share valuation

The summary statement of financial position of Cactus is as follows.

	$	$	$
Non-current assets			
Land and buildings			160,000
Plant and machinery			80,000
Motor vehicles			20,000
			260,000
Goodwill			20,000
Current assets			
Inventory		80,000	
Receivables		60,000	
Short-term investments		15,000	
Cash		5,000	
		160,000	
Current liabilities			
Payables	60,000		
Taxation	20,000		
Proposed ordinary dividend	20,000		
		(100,000)	
			60,000
			340,000
12% bonds			(60,000)
Deferred taxation			(10,000)
			270,000
Ordinary shares of $1			80,000
Reserves			140,000
			220,000
4.9% preference shares of $1			50,000
			270,000

What is the value of an ordinary share using the net assets basis of valuation?

Solution

If the figures given for asset values are not questioned, the valuation would be as follows.

		$	$
Total value of assets less current liabilities			340,000
Less intangible asset (goodwill)			20,000
Total value of assets less current liabilities			320,000
Less:	Preference shares	50,000	
	Bonds	60,000	
	Deferred taxation	10,000	
			120,000
Net asset value of equity			200,000
Number of ordinary shares			80,000
Value per share			$2.50

2.3 Choice of valuation bases

The difficulty in an asset valuation method is establishing the **asset values** to use. Values ought to be realistic. The figure attached to an individual asset may vary considerably depending on whether it is valued on a **going concern** or a **break-up** basis.

Possibilities include:

- **Historic basis** – unlikely to give a realistic value as it is dependent upon the business's depreciation and amortisation policy
- **Replacement basis** – if the assets are to be used on an on-going basis
- **Realisable basis** – if the assets are to be sold, or the business as a whole broken up. This won't be relevant if a minority shareholder is selling his stake, as the assets will continue in the business's use

The following list should give you some idea of the factors that must be considered.

(a) Do the assets need **professional valuation?** If so, how much will this cost?

(b) Have the **liabilities** been accurately quantified, for example deferred taxation? Are there any contingent liabilities? Will any balancing tax charges arise on disposal?

(c) How have the **current assets** been valued? Are all receivables collectable? Is all inventory realisable? Can all the assets be physically located and brought into a saleable condition? This may be difficult in certain circumstances where the assets are situated abroad.

(d) Can any **hidden liabilities** be accurately assessed? Would there be redundancy payments and closure costs?

(e) Is there an **available market** in which the assets can be realised (on a break-up basis)? If so, do the statement of financial position values truly reflect these break-up values?

(f) Are there any **prior charges** on the assets?

(g) Does the business have a regular **revaluation and replacement** policy? What are the bases of the valuation? As a broad rule, valuations will be more useful the better they estimate the **future cash flows** that are derived from the asset.

(h) Are there factors that might indicate that the **going concern valuation** of the business **as a whole** is **significantly higher** than the valuation of the individual assets?

(i) What shareholdings are being sold? If a minority interest is being disposed of, realisable value is of limited relevance as the assets will not be sold.

2.4 Use of net asset basis

The net assets basis of valuation might be used in the following circumstances.

(a) **As a measure of the 'security' in a share value**. A share might be valued using an earnings basis. This valuation might be **higher or lower than the net asset value per share**. If the earnings basis

is higher, then if the company went into liquidation, the investor could not expect to receive the full value of his shares when the underlying assets were realised.

The **asset backing** for shares thus provides a measure of the **possible loss** if the company fails to make the expected earnings or dividend payments. Valuable tangible assets may be a good reason for acquiring a company, especially freehold property which might be expected to increase in value over time.

(b) **As a measure of comparison in a scheme of merger**

Key term

A **merger** is essentially a business combination of two or more companies, of which none obtains control over any other.

For example, if company A, which has a low asset backing, is planning a merger with company B, which has a high asset backing, the shareholders of B might consider that their shares' value ought to reflect this. It might therefore be agreed that a something should be added to the value of the company B shares to allow for this difference in asset backing.

(c) As a **'floor value'** for a business that is up for sale – shareholders will be reluctant to sell for less than the NAV. However, if the sale is essential for cash flow purposes or to realign with corporate strategy, even the asset value may not be realised.

For these reasons, it is always advisable to calculate the net assets per share.

3 Income based valuation bases

FAST FORWARD

P/E ratios are used when a large block of shares, or a whole business, is being valued. This method can be problematic when quoted companies' P/E ratios are used to value unquoted companies.

3.1 The P/E ratio (earnings) method of valuation 12/07, 6/08, 12/08

This is a common method of valuing a **controlling interest** in a company, where the owner can decide on **dividend** and **retentions policy**. The P/E ratio relates earnings per share to a share's value.

Since P/E ratio = $\frac{\text{Market value}}{\text{EPS}}$,

then market value per share = EPS × P/E ratio

Exam focus point

Remember that earnings per share (EPS) = $\frac{\text{Profit /loss attributable to ordinary shareholders}}{\text{Weighted average number of ordinary shares}}$

Examiners have commented in the past that students often calculate earnings per share incorrectly.

The P/E ratio produces an **earnings-based** valuation of shares by deciding a suitable P/E ratio and multiplying this by the EPS for the shares which are being valued.

Market valuation or capitalisation = P/E ratio × Earnings per share or **P/E ratio × Total earnings**

The EPS could be a historical EPS or a prospective future EPS. For a given EPS figure, a higher P/E ratio will result in a higher price.

3.2 Significance of high P/E ratio

A high P/E ratio may indicate:

(a) **Expectations that the EPS will grow rapidly**

A **high price is being paid for future profit prospects**. Many small but successful and fast-growing companies are valued on the stock market on a high P/E ratio. Some stocks (for example those of

some internet companies in the late 1990s) have reached high valuations before making any profits at all, on the strength of expected future earnings.

(b) **Security of earnings**

A well-established low-risk company would be valued on a higher P/E ratio than a similar company whose earnings are subject to greater uncertainty.

(c) **Status**

If a quoted company (the bidder) made a share-for-share takeover bid for an unquoted company (the target), it would normally expect its own shares to be valued on a higher P/E ratio than the target company's shares. This is because a quoted company ought to be a lower-risk company; but in addition, there is an advantage in having shares which are quoted on a stock market: the shares can be readily sold. The P/E ratio of an unquoted company's shares might be around 50% to 60% of the P/E ratio of a similar public company with a full Stock Exchange listing.

3.3 Problems with using P/E ratios

However using the P/E ratios of quoted companies to value unquoted companies may be problematic.

- Finding a quoted company with a **similar range of activities** may be difficult. Quoted companies are often **diversified**
- A **single year's P/E ratio** may not be a good basis, if earnings are volatile, or the quoted company's share price is at an abnormal level, due for example to the expectation of a takeover bid
- If a P/E ratio trend is used, then **historical data** will be being used to value how the unquoted company will do in the future
- The quoted company may have a **different capital structure** to the unquoted company

3.4 Guidelines for a P/E ratio-based valuation

When a company is thinking of acquiring an **unquoted** company in a takeover, the final offer price will be agreed by **negotiation**, but a list of some of the factors affecting the valuer's choice of P/E ratio is given below.

(a) General **economic** and **financial** conditions.

(b) The type of **industry** and the prospects of that industry. Use of current P/E ratios may give an unrealistically low valuation if these ratios are being affected by a lack of confidence throughout the industry.

(c) The **size** of the undertaking and its **status** within its industry. If an unquoted company's earnings are growing annually and are currently around $300,000 or so, then it could probably get a quote in its own right on the Alternative Investment Market, and a higher P/E ratio should therefore be used when valuing its shares.

(d) **Marketability**. The market in shares which do not have a Stock Exchange quotation is always a restricted one and a higher yield is therefore required.

Exam focus point

For examination purposes, you should normally **take a figure around one half to two thirds** of the industry average when valuing an unquoted company.

(e) The **diversity** of shareholdings and the **financial status** of any principal shareholders.

(f) The **reliability** of profit estimates and the past profit record. Use of profits and P/E ratios over time may give a more reliable valuation, especially if they are being compared with industry levels over that time.

(g) **Asset backing** and **liquidity**.

(h) The **nature of the assets**, for example whether some of the non-current assets are of a highly specialised nature, and so have only a small break-up value.

(i) **Gearing**. A relatively high gearing ratio will generally mean greater financial risk for ordinary shareholders and call for a higher rate of return on equity.

(j) The extent to which the business is dependent on the **technical skills** of one or more individuals.

(k) The bidder may need to be particularly careful when valuing an unlisted company of using a P/E ratio of a **'similar' listed company**. The bidder should obtain reasonable evidence that the listed company does have the same risk and growth characteristics, and has similar policies on significant areas such as directors' remuneration.

3.4.1 Use of a bidder's P/E ratio

A bidder company may sometimes use their higher P/E ratio to value a target company. This assumes that the bidder **can improve the target's business**, which may be a dangerous assumption to make. It may be better to use an adjusted industry P/E ratio, or some other method.

3.4.2 Use of forecast earnings

When one company is thinking about taking over another, it should look at the target company's **forecast earnings**, not just its historical results.

Forecasts of **earnings growth** should only be used if:

(a) There are good reasons to believe that earnings growth will be achieved.

(b) A reasonable estimate of growth can be made.

(c) Forecasts supplied by the target company's directors are made in good faith and using reasonable assumptions and fair accounting policies.

Question

Valuations

Flycatcher wishes to make a takeover bid for the shares of an unquoted company, Mayfly. The earnings of Mayfly over the past five years have been as follows.

20X0	$50,000	20X3	$71,000
20X1	$72,000	20X4	$75,000
20X2	$68,000		

The average P/E ratio of quoted companies in the industry in which Mayfly operates is 10. Quoted companies which are similar in many respects to Mayfly are:

(a) Bumblebee, which has a P/E ratio of 15, but is a company with very good growth prospects

(b) Wasp, which has had a poor profit record for several years, and has a P/E ratio of 7

What would be a suitable range of valuations for the shares of Mayfly?

Answer

(a) **Earnings**. Average earnings over the last five years have been $67,200, and over the last four years $71,500. There might appear to be some growth prospects, but estimates of future earnings are uncertain.

A low estimate of earnings in 20X5 would be, perhaps, $71,500.

A high estimate of earnings might be $75,000 or more. This solution will use the most recent earnings figure of $75,000 as the high estimate.

(b) **P/E ratio**. A P/E ratio of 15 (Bumblebee's) would be much too high for Mayfly, because the growth of Mayfly earnings is not as certain, and Mayfly is an unquoted company.

On the other hand, Mayfly's expectations of earnings are probably better than those of Wasp. A suitable P/E ratio might be based on the industry's average, 10; but since Mayfly is an unquoted company and therefore more risky, a lower P/E ratio might be more appropriate: perhaps 60% to 70% of 10 = 6 or 7, or conceivably even as low as 50% of 10 = 5.

The valuation of Mayfly's shares might therefore range between:

high P/E ratio and high earnings: 7 × $75,000 = $525,000; and
low P/E ratio and low earnings: 5 × $71,500 = $357,500.

3.5 The earnings yield valuation method

Another income based valuation model is the earnings yield method.

$$\text{Earnings yield (EY)} = \frac{\text{EPS}}{\text{Market price per share}} \times 100\%$$

This method is effectively a variation on the P/E method (the EY being the reciprocal of the P/E ratio), using an appropriate earnings yield effectively as a discount rate to value the earnings:

$$\text{Market value} = \frac{\text{Earnings}}{\text{EY}}$$

Exactly the same guidelines apply to this method as for the P/E method. Note that where **high growth** is envisaged, **the EY will be low,** as current earnings will be low relative to a market price that has built in future earnings growth. A stable earnings yield may suggest a company with low risk characteristics.

We can incorporate earnings growth into this method in the same way as the growth model that we will discuss in Section 4.2.

$$\text{Market value} = \frac{\text{Earnings} \times (1+g)}{(K_e - g)}$$

This formula is given on your formula sheet as $P_o = \frac{D_o(1+g)}{K_e - g}$.

Question

Value of a company

A company has the following results.

	20X1	*20X2*	*20X3*	*20X4*
	$m	$m	$m	$m
Profit after tax	6.0	6.2	6.3	6.3

The company's cost of capital is 12%.

Required

Calculate the value of the company based on the present value of expected earnings.

Answer

$$\text{Market value} = \frac{\text{Earnings} \times (1+g)}{(K_e - g)}$$

Earnings = $6.3m

K_e = 12%

$$g = \sqrt[3]{\frac{6.3}{6.0}} - 1 = 0.0164 \text{ or } 1.64\%$$

$$\text{Market value} = \frac{6.3 \times 1.0164}{0.12 - 0.0164}$$

= $61.81m

4 Cash flow based valuation models

FAST FORWARD

Cash flow based valuation models include the **dividend valuation model**, the **dividend growth model** and the **discounted cash flow basis**.

4.1 The dividend valuation model 12/07, 6/08

The dividend valuation model is based on the theory that an equilibrium price for any share (or bond) on a stock market is:

- The **future expected stream of income** from the security
- **Discounted** at a suitable **cost of capital**

Equilibrium market price is thus a **present value** of a **future expected income stream**. The annual income stream for a share is the expected dividend every year in perpetuity.

The basic dividend-based formula for the market value of shares is expressed in the **dividend valuation model** as follows:

$$\text{MV (ex div)} = \frac{D}{1+} + \frac{D}{(1+k_e)^2} + \frac{D}{(1+k_e)^3} + ... = \frac{D}{k_e}$$

where MV = Ex dividend market value of the shares
D = Constant annual dividend
k_e = Shareholders' required rate of return

4.2 The dividend growth model 12/08

Using the **dividend growth model** we have:

$$P_0 = \frac{D_0(1+g)}{(1+k_e)} + \frac{D_0(1+g)^2}{(1+k_e)^2} + ... = \frac{D_0(1+g)}{(k_e - g)} = \frac{D_1}{k_e - g}$$

where D_0 = Current year's dividend
g = Growth rate in earnings and dividends
$D_0(1 + g)$ = Expected dividend in one year's time (D_1)
k_e = Shareholders' required rate of return
P_0 = Market value excluding any dividend currently payable

Question DVM

Target paid a dividend of $250,000 this year. The current return to shareholders of companies in the same industry as Target is 12%, although it is expected that an additional risk premium of 2% will be applicable to Target, being a smaller and unquoted company. Compute the expected valuation of Target, if:

(a) The current level of dividend is expected to continue into the foreseeable future, or
(b) The dividend is expected to grow at a rate of 4% pa into the foreseeable future
(c) The dividend is expected to grow at a 3% rate for three years and 2% afterwards.

Answer

k_e = 12% + 2% = 14% (0.14) D_0 = $250,000 g (in (b)) = 4% or 0.04

(a) $P_0 = \frac{d_0}{k_e} = \frac{\$250,000}{0.14} = \$1,785,714$

(b) $P_0 = \frac{d_0(1+g)}{k_e - g} = \frac{\$250,000(1.04)}{0.14 - 0.04} = \$2,600,000$

(c)

Time	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4 onwards*
Dividend ($'000)	258	266	274	279
Annuity to infinity ($1/k_e$ - g)				8.333
Present value at Year 3				2,325
Discount factor @ 14%	0.877	0.769	0.675	0.675
	226	205	185	1,569

Total **$2,185,000**

4.3 Assumptions of dividend models

The dividend models are underpinned by a number of assumptions that you should bear in mind.

(a) Investors act **rationally** and **homogenously**. The model fails to take into account the **different expectations** of shareholders, nor how much they are motivated by dividends vs future capital appreciation on their shares.

(b) The D_0 figure used does **not vary significantly** from the **trend of dividends**. If D_0 does appear to be a rogue figure, it may be better to use an adjusted trend figure, calculated on the basis of the past few years' dividends.

(c) The **estimates** of future dividends and prices used, and also the cost of capital are **reasonable**. As with other methods, it may be difficult to make a confident estimate of the cost of capital. Dividend estimates may be made from historical trends that may not be a good guide for a future, or derived from uncertain forecasts about future earnings.

(d) Investors' attitudes to receiving different cash flows at different times can be modelled using **discounted cashflow arithmetic**.

(e) Directors use dividends to **signal** the strength of the company's position (however companies that pay zero dividends do not have zero share values).

(f) Dividends either show **no growth** or **constant growth**. If the growth rate is calculated using g=bR, then the model assumes that b and R are constant.

(g) **Other influences** on share prices are **ignored**.

(h) The company's **earnings** will **increase** sufficiently to maintain dividend growth levels.

(i) The **discount rate** used exceeds the **dividend growth rate**.

4.4 Discounted cash flow basis of valuation

This method of share valuation may be appropriate when one company intends to buy the assets of another company and to make further investments in order to improve cash flows in the future.

4.4.1 Example: discounted future cash flows method of share valuation

Diversification wishes to make a bid for Tadpole. Tadpole makes after-tax profits of $40,000 a year. Diversification believes that if further money is spent on additional investments, the after-tax cash flows (ignoring the purchase consideration) could be as follows.

Year	*Cash flow (net of tax)*
	$
0	(100,000)
1	(80,000)
2	60,000
3	100,000
4	150,000
5	150,000

The after-tax cost of capital of Diversification is 15% and the company expects all its investments to pay back, in discounted terms, within five years. What is the maximum price that the company should be willing to pay for the shares of Tadpole?

Solution

The maximum price is one which would make the return from the total investment exactly 15% over five years, so that the NPV at 15% would be 0.

Year	*Cash flows ignoring purchase consideration*	*Discount factor (from tables)*	*Present value*
	$	15%	$
0	(100,000)	1.000	(100,000)
1	(80,000)	0.870	(69,600)
2	60,000	0.756	45,360
3	100,000	0.658	65,800
4	150,000	0.572	85,800
5	150,000	0.497	74,550
Maximum purchase price			101,910

4.4.2 Selection of an appropriate cost of capital

In the above example, Diversification used its own cost of capital to discount the cash flows of Tadpole. There are a number of reasons why this may not be appropriate.

(a) The **business risk** of the new investment may not match that of the investing company. If Tadpole is in a completely different line of business from Diversification, its cash flows are likely to be subject to differing degrees of risk, and this should be taken into account when valuing them.

(b) The **method of finance** of the new investment may not match the current debt/equity mix of the investing company, which may have an effect on the cost of capital to be used.

Question

Valuation methods

Profed provides a tuition service to professional students. This includes courses of lectures provided on their own premises and provision of study material for home study. Most of the lecturers are qualified professionals with many years' experience in both their profession and tuition. Study materials are written and word processed in-house, but sent out to an external printers.

The business was started fifteen years ago, and now employs around 40 full-time lecturers, 10 authors and 20 support staff. Freelance lecturers and authors are employed from time to time in times of peak demand.

The shareholders of Profed mainly comprise the original founders of the business who would now like to realise their investment. In order to arrive at an estimate of what they believe the business is worth, they have identified a long-established quoted company, City Tutors, who have a similar business, although they also publish texts for external sale to universities, colleges etc.

Summary financial statistics for the two companies for the most recent financial year are as follows.

	Profed	*City Tutors*
Issued shares (million)	4	10
Net asset values ($m)	7.2	15
Earnings per share (cents)	35	20
Dividend per share (cents)	20	18
Debt: equity ratio	1:7	1:65
Share price (cents)		362
Expected rate of growth in earnings/dividends	9% pa	7.5% pa

Notes

1 The net assets of Profed are the net book values of tangible non-current assets plus net working capital. However:

- A recent valuation of the buildings was $1.5m above book value

- Inventory includes past editions of text books which have a realisable value of $100,000 below their cost
- Due to a dispute with one of their clients, an additional allowance for bad debts of $750,000 could prudently be made

2 Growth rates should be assumed to be constant per annum; Profed's earnings growth rate estimate was provided by the marketing manager, based on expected growth in sales adjusted by normal profit margins. City Tutors' growth rates were gleaned from press reports.

3 Profed uses a discount rate of 15% to appraise its investments, and has done for many years.

Required

(a) Compute a range of valuations for the business of Profed, using the information available and stating any assumptions made.

(b) Comment upon the strengths and weaknesses of the methods you used in (a) and their suitability for valuing Profed.

Answer

(a) The information provided allows us to value Profed on three bases: net assets, P/E ratio and dividend valuation

All three will be computed, even though their validity may be questioned in part (b) of the answer.

Assets based

	$'000
Net assets at book value	7,200
Add: increased valuation of buildings	1,500
Less: decreased value of inventory and receivables	(850)
Net asset value of equity	7,850

Value per share = $1.96

P/E ratio

	Profed	*City Tutors*
Issued shares (million)	4	10
Share price (cents)		362
Market value ($m)		36.2
Earnings per shares (cents)	35	20
P/E ratio (share price ÷ EPS)		18.1

The P/E for a similar quoted company is 18.1. This will take account of factors such as marketability of shares, status of company, growth potential that will differ from those for Profed. Profed's growth rate has been estimated as higher than that of City Tutors, possibly because it is a younger, developing company, although the basis for the estimate may be questionable.

All other things being equal, the P/E ratio for an unquoted company should be taken as between one half to two thirds of that of an equivalent quoted company. Being generous, in view of the possible higher growth prospects of Profed, we might estimate an appropriate P/E ratio of around 12, assuming Profed is to remain a private company.

This will value Profed at 12 × $0.35 = $4.20 per share, a total valuation of $16.8m.

Dividend valuation model

The dividend valuation method gives the share price as

$$\frac{\text{Next year's dividend}}{\text{Cost of equity} - \text{growth rate}}$$

which assumes dividends being paid into perpetuity, and growth at a constant rate.

For Profed, next year's dividend = $0.20 × 1.09 = $0.218 per share

Whilst we are given a discount rate of 15% as being traditionally used by the directors of Profed for investment appraisal, there appears to be no rational basis for this. We can instead use the information for City Tutors to estimate a cost of equity for Profed. This is assuming the business risks to be similar, and ignoring the small difference in their gearing ratio.

Again, from the DVM, cost of equity = $\frac{\text{next year's dividend}}{\text{market price}}$ + growth rate

For City Tutors, cost of equity = $\frac{\$0.18 \times 1.075}{\$3.62} + 0.075 = 12.84\%$

Using, say, 13% as a cost of equity for Profed (it could be argued that this should be higher since Profed is unquoted so riskier than the quoted City Tutors):

Share price = $\frac{\$0.218}{0.13 - 0.09} = \$5.45$

valuing the whole of the share capital at $21.8 million

Range for valuation

The three methods used have thus come up with a range of value of Profed as follows.

	Value per share	*Total valuation*
	$	$m
Net assets	1.96	7.9
P/E ratio	4.20	16.8
Dividend valuation	5.45	21.8

(b) **Comment on relative merits of the methods used, and their suitability**

Asset based valuation

Valuing a company on the **basis of its asset values** alone is rarely appropriate if it is to be sold on a going concern basis. Exceptions would include property investment companies and investment trusts, the market values of the assets of which will bear a close relationship to their earning capacities.

Profed is typical of a lot of service companies, a large part of whose value lies in the **skill**, **knowledge and reputation of its personnel**. This is not reflected in the net asset values, and renders this method quite inappropriate. A potential purchaser of Profed will generally value its intangible assets such as knowledge, expertise, customer/supplier relationships, brands etc more highly than those that can be measured in accounting terms.

Knowledge of the net asset value (NAV) of a company will, however, be important as a **floor value** for a company in financial difficulties or subject to a takeover bid. Shareholders will be reluctant to sell for less than the net asset value even if future prospects are poor.

P/E ratio valuation

The P/E ratio measures the **multiple of the current year's earnings** that is reflected in the **market price** of a share. It is thus a method that reflects the earnings potential of a company from a market point of view. Provided the marketing is efficient, it is likely to give the most meaningful basis for valuation.

One of the first things to say is that the market price of a share at any point in time is determined by supply and demand forces prevalent during small transactions, and will be dependent upon a lot of factors in addition to a realistic appraisal of future prospects. A downturn in the market, economies and political changes can all affect the day-to-day price of a share, and thus its prevailing P/E ratio. it is not known whether the share price given for City Tutors was taken on one particular day, or was some sort of average over a period. The latter would perhaps give a sounder basis from which to compute an applicable P/E ratio.

Even if the P/E ratio of City Tutors can be taken to be **indicative of its true worth**, using it as a basis to value a smaller, unquoted company in the same industry can be problematic.

The status and marketability of shares in a quoted company have tangible effects on value but these are difficult to measure.

The P/E ratio will also be affected by **growth prospects** – the higher the growth expected, the higher the ratio. The growth rate incorporated by the shareholders of City Tutors is probably based on a more rational approach than that used by Profed.

If the growth prospects of Profed, as would be perceived by the market, did not coincide with those of **Profed management** it is difficult to see how the P/E ratio should be adjusted for relative levels of growth. The earnings yield method of valuation could however be useful here.

In the valuation in (a) a crude adjustment has been made to City Tutors' P/E ratio to arrive at a ratio to use to value Profed's earnings. This can result in a very inaccurate result if account has not been taken of all the differences involved.

Dividend based valuation

The dividend valuation model (DVM) is a **cash flow based approach**, which valued the dividends that the shareholders expect to receive from the company by discounting them at their required rate of return. It is perhaps more appropriate for valuing a minority shareholding where the holder has no influence over the level of dividends to be paid than for valuing a whole company, where the total cash flows will be of greater relevance.

The practical problems with the dividend valuation model lie mainly in its **assumptions**. Even accepting that the required 'perfect capital market' assumptions may be satisfied to some extent, in reality, the formula used in (a) assumes constant growth rates and constant required rates of return in perpetuity.

Determination of an **appropriate cost of equity** is particularly difficult for a unquoted company, and the use of an 'equivalent' quoted company's data carries the same drawbacks as discussed above. Similar problems arise in estimating future growth rates, and the results from the model are highly sensitive to changes in both these inputs.

It is also highly dependent upon the **current year's dividend** being a representative base from which to start.

The dividend valuation model valuation provided in (a) results in a higher valuation than that under the P/E ratio approach. Reasons for this may be:

- The **share price** for City Courses may be currently **depressed below its normal level**, resulting in an inappropriately low P/E ratio
- The **adjustment** to get to an **appropriate P/E ratio** for Profed may have been too harsh, particularly in light of its apparently better growth prospects
- The **cost of equity** used in the dividend valuation model was that of City Courses. The validity of this will largely depend upon the relative levels of risk of the two companies. Although they both operate the same type of business, the fact that City Courses sells its material externally means it is perhaps less reliant on a fixed customer base
- Even if business risks and gearing risk may be thought to be comparable a prospective buyer of Profed may consider investment in a **younger, unquoted company** to carry **greater personal risk**. His required return may thus be higher than that envisaged in the dividend valuation model, reducing the valuation

Exam focus point

You must be able to discuss the values you calculate so do not concentrate purely on the calculations and lose valuable marks.

5 The valuation of debt

12/08

In Chapter 15, we looked at how to calculate the cost of debt and other financial assets. The same formulae can be rearranged so that we can calculate their value.

FAST FORWARD

For **irredeemable debt**:

$$\text{Market price, ex interest } (P_0) = \frac{I}{K_d}$$

$$= \frac{i(1-T) \text{ with tax}}{K_{dnet}}$$

For **redeemable debt**, the market value is **the discounted present value of future interest receivable**, up to the year of redemption, plus the **discounted present value of the redemption payment**.

5.1 Debt calculations – a few notes

(a) Debt is always quoted in $**100 nominal units**, or blocks; always use $100 nominal values as the basis to your calculations.

(b) Debt can be quoted in **%** or as a **value**, eg 97% or $97. Both mean that $100 nominal value of debt is worth $97 market value.

(c) Interest on debt is stated as a **percentage** of **nominal value**. This is known as the coupon rate. It is **not** the same as the redemption yield on debt or the cost of debt.

(d) The examiner sometimes quotes an **interest yield**, defined as coupon/market price.

(e) Always use **ex-interest prices** in any calculations.

5.2 Irredeemable debt

For **irredeemable bonds** where the company will go on paying interest every year in perpetuity, without ever having to redeem the loan (ignoring taxation):

Formula to learn

$$P_0 = \frac{i}{K_d}$$

where P_0 is the market price of the bond ex interest, that is, excluding any interest payment that might soon be due

i is the annual interest payment on the bond

K_d is the return required by the bond investors

With taxation, we have the following:

Formula to learn

Irredeemable (undated) debt, paying annual after tax interest $i(1 - T)$ in perpetuity, where P_0 is the ex-interest value:

$$P_0 = \frac{i(1-T)}{K_{dnet}}$$

5.3 Redeemable debt

The valuation of redeemable debt spends on future expected receipts. The market value is the discounted present value of future interest receivable, up to the year of redemption, **plus** the discounted present value of the redemption payment.

Formula to learn

Value of debt = (Interest earnings × annuity factor) + (Redemption value × Discounted cash flow factor)

5.4 Example: Valuation of debt 12/08

Furry has in issue 12% bonds with par value $100,000 and redemption value $110,000, with interest payable quarterly. The redemption yield on the bonds is 8% annually and 2% quarterly. The bonds are redeemable on 30 June 20X4 and it is now 31 December 20X0.

Required

Calculate the market value of the bonds.

Solution

You need to use the redemption yield cost of debt as the discount rate, and remember to use an annuity factor for the interest. We are discounting over 14 periods using the quarterly discount rate (8%/4).

Period		*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	2%	$
1–14	Interest	3,000	12.11	36,330
14	Redemption	110,000	0.758	83,380
				119,710

Market value is $119,710.

Question

Value of redeemable debt

A company has issued some 9% bonds, which are now redeemable at par in three years time. Investors now require a redemption yield of 10%. What will be the current market value of each $100 of bond?

Answer

Year		*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*
		$	10%	$
1	Interest	9	0.909	8.18
2	Interest	9	0.826	7.43
3	Interest	9	0.751	6.76
3	Redemption value	100	0.751	75.10
				97.47

Each $100 of bond will have a market value of $97.47.

5.5 Convertible debt 6/08

Convertible bonds were discussed in Section 2 of Chapter 12. As a reminder, when convertible bonds are traded on a stock market, its **minimum market price** will be the price of straight bonds with the same coupon rate of interest. If the market value falls to this minimum, it follows that the market attaches no value to the conversion rights.

The actual market price of convertible bonds will depend on:

- The price of straight debt
- The current conversion value
- The length of time before conversion may take place
- The market's expectation as to future equity returns and the associated risk

If the conversion value rises above the straight debt value then the price of convertible bonds will normally reflect this increase.

Formula to learn

Conversion value = $P_0 (1 + g)^n R$

where P_0 is the current ex-dividend ordinary share price
g is the expected annual growth of the ordinary share price
n is the number of years to conversion
R is the number of shares received on conversion

The current **market value** of a convertible bond where conversion is expected is the sum of the present values of the future interest payments and the present value of the bond's conversion value.

5.6 Example: Valuation of convertible debt

What is the value of a 9% convertible bond if it can be converted in five years time into 35 ordinary shares or redeemed at par on the same date? An investor's required return is 10% and the current market price of the underlying share is $2.50 which is expected to grow by 4% per annum.

Solution

Conversion value = $P_0 (1 + g)^n R = 2.50 \times 1.04^5 \times 35 = \$106.46$

Present value of $9 interest per annum for five years at 10% = $9 \times 3.791 = \$34.12$

Present value of the conversion value = $106.46 \times 0.621 = \$66.11$

Current market value of convertible bond = $34.12 + 66.11 = \$100.23$

5.7 Preference shares

Preference shares pay a fixed rate dividend which is not tax-deductible for the company.

Formula to learn

The current ex-dividend value P_0, paying a constant annual dividend d and having a cost of capital k_{pref}:

$$P_0 = \frac{d}{K_{pref}}$$

Chapter Roundup

- There are a number of different ways of **putting a value on a business**, or on shares in an unquoted company. It makes sense to use **several methods** of valuation, and to compare the values they produce.
- The **net assets valuation** method can be used as one of many valuation methods, or to provide a lower limit for the value of a company. By itself it is unlikely to produce the most realistic value.
- **P/E ratios** are used when a large block of shares, or a whole business, is being valued. This method can be problematic when quoted companies' P/E ratios are used to value unquoted companies.
- Cash flow based valuation models include the **dividend valuation model**, the **dividend growth model** and the **discounted cash flow basis**.
- For **irredeemable debt**:

  Market price, ex interest (P_0) $= \dfrac{I}{K_d}$

  $= \dfrac{i(1-T) \text{ with tax}}{K_{dnet}}$

  For **redeemable debt**, the market value is **the discounted present value of future interest receivable**, up to the year of redemption, plus the **discounted present value of the redemption payment**.

Quick Quiz

1 Give four circumstances in which the shares of an unquoted company might need to be valued.

2 How is the P/E ratio related to EPS?

3 What is meant by 'multiples' in the context of share valuation?

4 Suggest two circumstances in which net assets might be used as a basis for valuation of a company.

5 Cum interest prices should always be used in calculations involving debt. True/False?

6 **Fill in the blanks.** For redeemable debentures:

Market value = ... + ...

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (a) Setting an issue price if the company is floating its shares
(b) When shares are sold
(c) For tax purposes
(d) When shares are pledged as collateral for a loan

2 P/E ratio = Share price/EPS

3 The P/E ratio: the multiple of earnings at which a company's shares are traded

4 (a) As a measure of asset backing
(b) For comparison, in a scheme of merger

5 False. Ex interest prices should be used

6 Market value

= Discounted present value of future interest receivable up to year of redemption
+ Discounted present value of redemption payment

Now try the question below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q25	Introductory	N/A	45 mins
Q26	Examination	25	45 mins

18 Market efficiency

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 The efficient market hypothesis	G4 (a)
2 The valuation of shares	G4 (b), (c)

Introduction

This chapter deals with the determination of share prices. As we shall see, there are various theories which seek to provide a rationale for share price movement. The most important of these is the **efficient market hypothesis**, which provides theoretical underpinning for how markets take into account new information.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
G4	**Efficient Market Hypothesis (EMH) and practical considerations in the valuation of shares**	
(a)	Distinguish between and discuss weak form efficiency, semi-strong form efficiency and strong form efficiency	
(b)	Discuss practical considerations in the valuation of shares and businesses, including:	
(i)	Marketability and liquidity of shares	
(ii)	Availability and sources of information	
(iii)	Market imperfections and pricing anomalies	
(iv)	Market capitalisation	
(c)	Describe the significance of investor speculation and the explanations of investor decisions offered by behavioural finance	

Exam guide

Market efficiency may need to be discussed as part of a business valuation question.

1 The efficient market hypothesis 12/07, 6/08

FAST FORWARD

The theory behind share price movements can be explained by the three forms of the **efficient market hypothesis.**

- **Weak form efficiency** implies that prices reflect all relevant information about past price movements and their implications
- **Semi-strong form efficiency** implies that prices reflect past price movements and publicly available knowledge
- **Strong form efficiency** implies that prices reflect past price movements, publicly available knowledge and inside knowledge

Key term

The **efficient market hypothesis** is the hypothesis that the stock market reacts immediately to all the information that is available. Thus a long term investor cannot obtain higher than average returns from a well diversified share portfolio.

1.1 The definition of efficiency

Different types of efficiency can be distinguished in the context of the operation of financial markets.

(a) **Allocative efficiency**

If financial markets allow funds to be directed towards firms which make the most productive use of them, then there is **allocative efficiency** in these markets.

(b) **Operational efficiency**

Transaction costs are incurred by **participants** in financial markets, for example commissions on share transactions, margins between interest rates for lending and for borrowing, and loan arrangement fees. Financial markets have **operational efficiency** if transaction costs are kept as low as possible. Transaction costs are kept low where there is open competition between brokers and other market participants.

(c) **Informational processing efficiency**

The **information processing efficiency** of a stock market means the ability of a stock market to price stocks and shares fairly and quickly. An efficient market in this sense is one in which the market prices of all securities reflect all the available information.

1.2 Features of efficient markets

It has been argued that the UK and US stock markets are **efficient** capital markets, that is, markets in which:

(a) The prices of securities bought and sold **reflect all the relevant information** which is available to the buyers and sellers: in other words, share prices change quickly to reflect all new information about future prospects

(b) No **individual dominates** the market.

(c) **Transaction costs** of buying and selling are not so high as to discourage trading significantly.

(d) Investors are **rational.**

(e) There are low, or no, costs of **acquiring information.**

1.3 Impact of efficiency on share prices

If the stock market is efficient, share prices should vary in a rational way.

(a) If a company makes an investment with a **positive net present value** (NPV), shareholders will get to know about it and the market price of its shares will rise in anticipation of future dividend increases.

(b) If a company makes a **bad investment** shareholders will find out and so the **price** of its **shares will fall**.

(c) If interest rates rise, **shareholders will want a higher return** from their investments, so market prices will fall.

1.4 Varying degrees of efficiency

There are three degrees or 'forms' of **efficiency**: **weak form**, **semi-strong form** and **strong form**.

1.4.1 Weak form efficiency

Under the weak form hypothesis of market efficiency, share prices reflect all available information about **past** changes in the share price.

Since new information arrives unexpectedly, changes in share prices should occur in a **random fashion.** If it is correct, then using technical analysis (see Section 2.2 below) to study past share price movements will not give anyone an advantage, because the information they use to predict share prices is already reflected in the share price.

1.4.2 Semi-strong form efficiency

If a stock market displays semi-strong efficiency, current share prices reflect both:

- **All relevant information** about **past price movements** and their implications, and
- All **knowledge** which is **available publicly**

This means that individuals cannot 'beat the market' by reading the newspapers or annual reports, since the information contained in these will be reflected in the share price.

Tests to prove semi-strong efficiency have concentrated on the speed and accuracy of stock market response to information and on the ability of the market to **anticipate share price changes** before new information is formally announced. For example, if two companies plan a merger, share prices of the two companies will inevitably change once the merger plans are formally announced. The market would show

semi-strong efficiency, however, if it were able to anticipate such an announcement, so that share prices of the companies concerned would change in advance of the merger plans being confirmed.

Research in both the UK and the USA has suggested that market prices anticipate mergers several months before they are formally announced, and the conclusion drawn is that the stock markets in these countries **do** exhibit semi-strong efficiency.

1.4.3 Strong form efficiency

If a stock market displays a strong form of efficiency, share prices reflect **all** information whether publicly available or not:

- From past price changes
- From public knowledge or anticipation
- From specialists' or experts' insider knowledge (eg investment managers)

1.5 Implications of efficient market hypothesis for the financial manager

If the markets are quite strongly efficient, the main consequence for financial managers will be that they simply need to **concentrate** on **maximising the net present value** of the **company's investments** in order to maximise the wealth of shareholders. Managers need not worry, for example, about the effect on share prices of financial results in the published accounts because investors will make **allowances** for **low profits** or **dividends** in the current year if higher profits or dividends are expected in the future.

If the market is strongly efficient, there is little point in financial managers attempting strategies that will attempt to mislead the markets.

(a) There is no point for example in trying to identify a correct date when **shares** should be **issued**, since share prices will always reflect the true worth of the company.

(b) The market will identify any attempts to **window dress the accounts** and put an optimistic spin on the figures.

(c) The market will decide what **level of return** it requires for the risk involved in making an investment in the company. It is pointless for the company to try to change the market's view by issuing different types of capital instruments.

Similarly if the company is looking to expand, the directors will be wasting their time if they seek as **takeover targets** companies whose shares are undervalued, since the market will fairly value all companies' shares.

Only if the market is semi-strongly efficient, and the financial managers possess **inside information** that would significantly alter the price of the company's shares if released to the market, could they perhaps gain an advantage. However attempts to take account of this inside information may breach insider dealing laws.

The different characteristics of a semi-strong form and a strong form efficient market thus affect the **timing** of share price movements, in cases where the relevant information becomes available to the market eventually. The difference between the two forms of market efficiency concerns **when** the share prices change, not by how much prices eventually change.

Exam focus point

The point that share prices may depend to some extent on the efficiency of the markets is important when you discuss company valuations.

2 The valuation of shares

FAST FORWARD

Fundamental analysis is based on the theory that share prices can be derived from an analysis of **future dividends**.

Technical analysts or **chartists** work on the basis that past price patterns will be repeated.

Random walk theory is based on the idea that share prices will alter when new information becomes available.

Share prices are also affected by **marketability** and **liquidity** of shares, availability and sources of **information**, **market imperfections** and **pricing anomalies**, **market capitalisation** and **investor speculation**.

2.1 The fundamental theory of share values

We discussed the fundamental theory of share values in the last chapter. Remember that it is based on the theory that the realistic market price of a share can be derived from a valuation of estimated future dividends. The value of a share will be the discounted present value of all future expected dividends on the shares, discounted at the shareholders' cost of capital.

If the fundamental analysis theory of share values is correct, the price of any share will be **predictable**, provided that all investors have the same information about a company's expected future profits and dividends, and a known cost of capital.

Question

Share valuation

The management of Crocus are trying to decide on the dividend policy of the company.

There are two options that are being considered.

(a) The company could pay a constant annual dividend of 8c per share.

(b) The company could pay a dividend of 6c per share this year, and use the retained earnings to achieve an annual growth of 3% in dividends for each year after that.

The shareholders' cost of capital is thought to be 10%. Which dividend policy would maximise the wealth of shareholders, by maximising the share price?

Answer

(a) With a constant annual dividend

$$\text{Share price} = \frac{8}{0.1} = 80\text{c}$$

(b) With dividend growth

$$\text{Share price} = \frac{6(1.03)}{(0.1-0.03)} = \frac{6.18}{0.07} = 88\text{c}$$

The dividend of 6c per share with 3% annual growth would be preferred.

2.2 Charting or technical analysis

Chartists or **'technical analysts'** attempt to predict share price movements by assuming that past price patterns will be repeated. There is no real theoretical justification for this approach, but it can at times be spectacularly successful. Studies have suggested that the degree of success is greater than could be expected merely from chance.

Chartists do not attempt to predict every price change. They are primarily interested in trend reversals, for example when the price of a share has been rising for several months but suddenly starts to fall.

Moving averages help the chartist to examine overall trends. For example, he may calculate and plot moving averages of share prices for 20 days, 60 days and 240 days. The 20 day figures will give a reasonable representation of the actual movement in share prices after eliminating day to day fluctuations. The other two moving averages give a good idea of longer term trends.

One of the main problems with chartism is that it is **often difficult to see a new trend until after it has happened**. By the time the chartist has detected a signal, other chartists will have as well, and the resulting mass movement to buy or sell will push the price so as to eliminate any advantage.

With the use of sophisticated computer programs to simulate the work of a chartist, academic studies have found that the **results obtained were no better or worse** than those obtained from a simple 'buy and hold' strategy of a **well diversified portfolio of shares.**

This may be explained by research that has found that there are no regular patterns or cycles in share price movements over time – they follow a **random walk.**

2.3 Random walk theory

Random walk theory is consistent with the fundamental theory of share values. It accepts that a share should have an intrinsic price dependent on the fortunes of the company and the expectations of investors. One of its underlying assumptions is that **all relevant information about a company is available to all potential investors** who will act upon the information in a **rational** manner.

The key feature of random walk theory is that although share prices will have an **intrinsic or fundamental value**, this value will be altered as new information becomes available, and that the behaviour of investors is such that the actual share price will fluctuate from day to day around the intrinsic value.

2.4 Marketability and liquidity of shares

In financial markets, **liquidity** is the **ease of dealing** in the shares, how easily can the shares can be bought and sold without significantly moving the price?

In general, large companies, with hundreds of millions of shares in issue, and high numbers of shares changing hands every day, have good liquidity. In contrast, small companies with few shares in issue and thin trading volumes, can have very poor liquidity.

The **marketability** of shares in a private company, particularly a minority shareholding, is generally very limited, a consequence being that the price can be difficult to determine.

Shares with restricted marketability may be subject to sudden and large falls in value and companies may act to improve the marketability of their shares with a **stock split**. A stock split occurs where, for example, each ordinary share of $1 each is split into two shares of 50c each, thus creating cheaper shares with **greater marketability**. There is possibly an added psychological advantage, in that investors may expect a company which splits its shares in this way to be planning for substantial earnings growth and dividend growth in the future.

As a consequence, the market price of shares may benefit. For example, if one existing share of $1 has a market value of $6, and is then split into two shares of 50c each, the market value of the new shares might settle at, say, $3.10 instead of the expected $3, in anticipation of strong future growth in earnings and dividends.

2.5 Availability and sources of information

In Section 1 of this chapter it was stated that an efficient market is one where the prices of securities bought and sold reflect all the **relevant information** available. Efficiency relates to how quickly and how accurately prices adjust to new information.

Information comes from financial statements, financial databases, the financial press and the internet.

2.5.1 Dividend information

It has been argued that shareholders see dividend decisions as passing on **new information** about the company and its prospects. A dividend increase is usually seen by markets to be good news and a dividend decrease to be bad news, but it may be that the market will react to the difference between the actual dividend payments and the market's **expectations** of the level of dividend. For example, the market may be expecting a cut in dividend but if the actual decrease is less than expected, the share price may rise.

2.6 Market imperfections and pricing anomalies

Various types of anomaly appear to support the views that irrationality often drives the stock market, including the following.

(a) **Seasonal month-of-the-year effects**, day-of-the-week effects and also hour-of-the-day effects seem to occur, so that share prices might tend to rise or fall at a particular time of the year, week or day.

(b) There may be a **short-run overreaction** to recent events. For example, the stock market crash in 1987 when the market went into a free fall, losing 20% in a few hours.

(c) Individual shares or shares in small companies may be neglected.

2.7 Market capitalisation

The **market capitalisation** is the market value of a company's shares multiplied by the number of issued shares.

The market capitalisation or **size** of a company has also produced some pricing anomalies.

The return from investing in **smaller** companies has been shown to be **greater** than the average return from all companies in the long run. This increased return may compensate for the greater risk associated with smaller companies, or it may be due to a start from a lower base.

Case Study

Extracted from an article in The Times, August 12th 2006

'During the bear market of 2000 to March 2003, the FTSE 250 index fared no worse than the blue-chip FTSE 100. The smaller companies' share prices have since risen by an average 140 per cent, double the 70 per cent rise of the bluechips.

Those companies are conventionally more volatile. They race away in good times and come back sharply in corrections such as that of May and early June. They are like fast cars that have to brake hard when approaching traffic lights, then speed up again on the other side.

In one sense, it is natural that smaller stocks should rise faster in aggregate. Individual smaller stocks tend to be riskier. We buy them for their individual prospects, not as a way of buying into the market. Taken together, however, you expect them to earn higher returns over time to compensate for the higher risk.'

2.8 Behavioural finance

Speculation by investors and market sentiment is a major factor in the behaviour of share prices. **Behavioural finance** is an alternative view to the efficient market hypothesis. It attempts to explain the market implications of the **psychological** factors behind investor decisions and suggests that **irrational investor behaviour** may significantly affect share price movements. These factors may explain why share prices appear sometimes to over-react to past price changes.

Case Study

Extracted from an article in The Times, September 30th 2006

'The month of October tends to scare the living daylights out of investors because it heralded the Wall Street Crash of 1929 and, more recently, the sharp fall in share prices during the hurricane autumn of 1987.

Each time it comes round many private investors get slightly jittery. However, if you look at the figures, October's reputation as a poor month for shares is undeserved, says David Schwartz, the stock market historian.

October's reputation as a stormy month for stocks may be undeserved, but there are plenty of forecasters out there who feel that autumn headwinds are building up.

No less a luminary than Anthony Bolton, the outgoing manager of the Fidelity Special Situations Fund, told me recently that May's correction in share prices had failed to rid the market of its excesses. His conviction, he said, was not as strong as at the beginning of the year, but the implication was clear that he would not be surprised if there were a further downward lurch.

He is not the only fund manager who is cautious right now. Ted Scott, manager of F&C's Stewardship Growth fund, says that markets may not have factored in the greater economic risks we are facing. "There is a greater than 50-50 chance that there will be a further rise in interest rates before the end of the year," he says. "A further rise will have quite a significant impact on the consumer in the UK."

At the company level, he says: "You have also seen in the months since the market fell that cyclical companies have struggled and defensive ones – such as telecoms businesses, food retailers and manufacturers – have performed well.

"That tells you that the market believes that 2007 will be a difficult year for companies and the economy in general. I don't think there will be a recession, but there is further downside risk in the market."

Chapter Roundup

- The theory behind share price movements can be explained by the three forms of the **efficient market hypothesis.**
  - **Weak form efficiency** implies that prices reflect all relevant information about past price movements and their implications
  - **Semi-strong form efficiency** implies that prices reflect past price movements and publicly available knowledge
  - **Strong form efficiency** implies that prices reflect past price movements, publicly available knowledge and inside knowledge
- **Fundamental analysis** is based on the theory that share prices can be derived from an analysis of **future dividends**.

  Technical analysts or **chartists** work on the basis that past price patterns will be repeated.

  Random walk theory is based on the idea that share prices will alter when new information becomes available.

  Share prices are also affected by **marketability** and **liquidity** of shares, availability and sources of **information**, **market imperfections** and **pricing anomalies**, **market capitalisation** and **investor speculation**.

Quick Quiz

1 Which theory of share price behaviour does the following statement describe?

'The analysis of external and internal influences upon the operations of a company with a view to assisting in investment decisions.'

A Technical analysis
B Random walk theory
C Fundamental analysis theory
D Chartism

2 What is meant by 'efficiency', in the context of the efficient market hypothesis?

3 The different 'forms' of the efficient market hypothesis state that share prices reflect *which* types of information? Tick all that apply.

	Form of EMH		
	Weak	*Semi-strong*	*Strong*
No information	☐	☐	☐
All information in past share price record	☐	☐	☐
All other publicly available information	☐	☐	☐
Specialists' and experts' 'insider' knowledge	☐	☐	☐

4 Which theory makes which assertions?

(a)	Chartism	(i)	A share price can be expected to fluctuate around its 'intrinsic' value.
(b)	Random walk theory	(ii)	Past share price patterns tend to be repeated.
(c)	Fundamental analysis theory	(iii)	The value of a share is the discounted present value of all future expected dividends on the share, discounted at the shareholders' cost of capital.

5 List three factors affecting share price behaviour.

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 C Fundamental analysis theory

2 Efficiency in processing information in the pricing of stocks and shares

3

	Form of EMH		
	Weak	*Semi-strong*	*Strong*
No information	☐	☐	☐
All information in past share price record	✓	✓	✓
All other publicly available information	☐	✓	✓
Specialists' and experts' 'insider' knowledge	☐	☐	✓

4 (a) (ii)
(b) (i)
(c) (iii)

5 Any three of:

(a) Investor speculation
(b) Marketability and liquidity of shares
(c) Information
(d) Market imperfections
(e) Pricing anomalies
(f) Market capitalisation.

Now try the question below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q27	Introductory	N/A	30 mins

PART H

Risk management

19

Foreign currency risk

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Exchange rates	H1 (a)
2 Foreign currency risk	H1 (a)
3 The causes of exchange rate fluctuations	H2 (a), (b)
4 Foreign currency risk management	H3 (a), (b)
5 Foreign currency derivatives	H3 (c)

Introduction

In Part H, we look at various techniques for the management of **risk**, in particular **foreign currency risk** and **interest rate risk**. In this chapter, we are particularly concerned with risks related to **exchange rate fluctuations**.

The first section contains some very important basic concepts so make sure you're happy with how foreign exchange rates are quoted and the **causes** of exchange rate fluctuations.

The techniques to **hedge** foreign currency risk are covered in Section 4. Forward exchange rate calculations are straightforward, but you need to use a step-by-step approach to tackle money market hedges. Don't feel overwhelmed by the terminology in the derivatives section, you need to identify the main types of derivatives and will not need to perform any calculations.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
H1	**The nature and types of risk and approaches to risk management**	
(a)	Describe and discuss different types of foreign currency risk:	2
(i)	Translation risk	
(ii)	Transaction risk	
(iii)	Economic risk	
H2	**Causes of exchange rate differences**	
(a)	Describe the causes of exchange rate fluctuations, including:	
(i)	Balance of payments	1
(ii)	Purchasing power parity theory	2
(iii)	Interest rate parity theory	2
(iv)	Four-way equivalence	2
(b)	Forecast exchange rates using:	2
(i)	Purchasing power parity	
(ii)	Interest rate parity	
H3	**Hedging techniques for foreign currency risk**	
(a)	Discuss and apply traditional and basic methods of foreign currency risk management, including:	
(i)	Currency of invoice	1
(ii)	Netting and matching	2
(iii)	Leading and lagging	2
(iv)	Forward exchange contracts	2
(v)	Money market hedging	2
(vi)	Asset and liability management	1
(b)	Compare and evaluate traditional methods of foreign currency risk management.	2
(c)	Identify the main types of foreign currency derivates used to hedge foreign currency risk and explain how they are used in hedging	1

Exam guide

This is an important chapter. You need to have a good understanding of various hedging methods, and be able to determine in a given situation what exposure needs hedging and how best to do it.

1 Exchange rates

1.1 Exchange rates

Key terms

An **exchange rate** is the rate at which one country's currency can be traded in exchange for another country's currency.

The **spot rate** is the exchange or interest rate currently offered on a particular currency or security. The **spot rate** is the rate of exchange in currency for **immediate delivery.**

The **forward rate** is an exchange rate set now for currencies to be exchanged at a future date.

Every traded currency in fact has many exchange rates. There is an exchange rate with every other traded currency on the foreign exchange markets. Foreign exchange dealers make their profit by buying currency for less than they sell it, and so there are really two exchange rates, a selling rate and a buying rate.

1.2 Foreign exchange demand

If an importer has to pay a foreign supplier in a foreign currency, he might ask his bank to sell him the required amount of the currency. For example, suppose that a bank's customer, a trading company, has imported goods for which it must now pay US $10,000.

(a) The company will ask the bank to sell it US $10,000. If the company is buying currency, the bank is selling it.

(b) When the bank agrees to sell US $10,000 to the company, it will tell the company what the spot rate of exchange will be for the transaction. If the bank's selling rate (known as the **'offer'**, or **'ask'** price) is, say $1.7935 per £1 for the currency, the bank will charge the company:

$$\frac{\$10,000}{\$1.7935 \text{ per } £1} = £5,575.69$$

Similarly, if an exporter is paid, say, $10,000 by a foreign customer in the USA, he may wish to exchange the dollars to obtain sterling. He will therefore ask his bank to buy the dollars from him. Since the exporter is selling currency to the bank, the bank is buying the currency.

If the bank quotes a buying rate (known as the **bid** price) of, say $1.8075 per £1, for the currency the bank will pay the exporter:

$$\frac{\$10,000}{\$1.8075 \text{ per } £1} = £5,532.50$$

A bank expects to make a profit from selling and buying currency, and it does so by offering a rate for selling a currency which is different from the rate for buying the currency.

If a bank were to buy a quantity of foreign currency from a customer, and then were to re-sell it to another customer, it would charge the second customer more (in sterling) for the currency than it would pay the first customer. The difference would be profit. For example, the figures used for illustration in the previous paragraphs show a bank selling some dollars for £5,575.69 and buying the same quantity of dollars for £5,532.50, at selling and buying rates that might be in use at the same time. The bank would make a profit of £43.19.

Question — Sterling receipts

Calculate how much sterling exporters would receive or how much sterling importers would pay, ignoring the bank's commission, in each of the following situations, if they were to exchange currency and sterling at the spot rate.

(a) A UK exporter receives a payment from a Danish customer of 150,000 kroners.
(b) A UK importer buys goods from a Japanese supplier and pays 1 million yen.

Spot rates are as follows.

	Bank sells (offer)		*Bank buys (bid)*
Danish Kr/£	9.4340	–	9.5380
Japan Y/£	203.650	–	205.781

Answer

(a) The bank is being asked to buy the Danish kroners and will give the exporter:

$$\frac{150,000}{9.5380} = £15,726.57 \text{ in exchange}$$

(b) The bank is being asked to sell the yen to the importer and will charge for the currency:

$$\frac{1,000,000}{203.650} = £4,910.39$$

1.3 The foreign exchange (FX) markets

Banks buy currency from customers and sell currency to customers – typically, **exporting and importing firms**. Banks may buy currency from the **government** or sell currency to the government – this is how a government builds up its official reserves. Banks also buy and sell currency **between themselves**.

International trade involves foreign currency, for either the buyer, the seller, or both (for example, a Saudi Arabian firm might sell goods to a UK buyer and invoice for the goods in US dollars). As a consequence, it is quite likely that exporters might want to sell foreign currency earnings to a bank in exchange for domestic currency, and that importers might want to buy foreign currency from a bank in order to pay a foreign supplier.

Since most foreign exchange rates are not fixed but are allowed to vary, rates are continually changing and each bank will offer new rates for new customer enquiries according to how its dealers judge the market situation.

2 Foreign currency risk **Pilot Paper**

FAST FORWARD

Currency risk occurs in three forms: **transaction exposure** (short-term), **economic exposure** (effect on present value of longer term cash flows) and **translation exposure** (book gains or losses).

2.1 Translation risk

This is the risk that the organisation will make exchange losses when the accounting results of its foreign branches or subsidiaries are **translated** into the home currency. Translation losses can result, for example, from restating the book value of a foreign subsidiary's assets at the exchange rate on the statement of financial position date.

2.2 Transaction risk

This is the risk of adverse exchange rate movements occurring in the course of **normal international trading transactions**. This arises when the prices of imports or exports are fixed in foreign currency terms and there is movement in the exchange rate between the date when the price is agreed and the date when the cash is paid or received in settlement.

Much international trade involves credit. An importer will take credit often for several months and sometimes longer, and an exporter will grant credit. One consequence of taking and granting credit is that international traders will know in advance about the receipts and payments arising from their trade. They will know:

- What foreign currency they will receive or pay
- When the receipt or payment will occur
- How much of the currency will be received or paid

The great danger to profit margins is in the **movement in exchange rates**. The risk faces (i) exporters who invoice in a foreign currency and (ii) importers who pay in a foreign currency.

Question

Changes in exchange rates

Bulldog Ltd, a UK company, buys goods from Redland which cost 100,000 Reds (the local currency). The goods are re-sold in the UK for £32,000. At the time of the import purchase the exchange rate for Reds against sterling is 3.5650 – 3.5800.

Required

(a) What is the expected profit on the re-sale?

(b) What would the actual profit be if the spot rate at the time when the currency is received has moved to:

(i) 3.0800 – 3.0950

(ii) 4.0650 – 4.0800?

Ignore bank commission charges.

Answer

(a) Bulldog must buy Reds to pay the supplier, and so the bank is selling Reds. The expected profit is as follows.

	£
Revenue from re-sale of goods	32,000.00
Less cost of 100,000 Reds in sterling (÷ 3.5650)	28,050.49
Expected profit	3,949.51

(b) (i) If the actual spot rate for Bulldog to buy and the bank to sell the Reds is 3.0800, the result is as follows.

	£
Revenue from re-sale	32,000.00
Less cost (100,000 ÷ 3.0800)	32,467.53
Loss	(467.53)

(ii) If the actual spot rate for Bulldog to buy and the bank to sell the Reds is 4.0650, the result is as follows.

	£
Revenue from re-sale	32,000.00
Less cost (100,000 ÷ 4.0650)	24,600.25
Profit	7,399.75

This variation in the final sterling cost of the goods (and thus the profit) illustrated the concept of transaction risk.

2.3 Economic risk

This refers to the effect of exchange rate movements on the **international competitiveness** of a company and refers to the effect on the present value of longer term cash flows. For example, a UK company might use raw materials which are priced in US dollars, but export its products mainly within the EU. A depreciation of sterling against the dollar or an appreciation of sterling against other EU currencies will both erode the competitiveness of the company. Economic exposure can be difficult to avoid, although **diversification of the supplier and customer base** across different countries will reduce this kind of exposure to risk.

3 The causes of exchange rate fluctuations

3.1 Currency supply and demand

FAST FORWARD

Factors influencing the exchange rate include the comparative rates of inflation in different countries (**purchasing power parity**), comparative interest rates in different countries (**interest rate parity**), the underlying balance of payments, speculation and government policy on managing or fixing exchange rates.

The exchange rate between two currencies – ie the buying and selling rates, both 'spot' and forward – is determined primarily by **supply and demand** in the foreign exchange markets. Demand comes from individuals, firms and governments who want to buy a currency and supply comes from those who want to sell it.

Supply and demand for currencies are in turn influenced by:

- The rate of inflation, compared with the rate of inflation in other countries
- Interest rates, compared with interest rates in other countries
- The balance of payments
- Sentiment of foreign exchange market participants regarding economic prospects
- Speculation
- Government policy on intervention to influence the exchange rate

3.2 Interest rate parity

Key term

Interest rate parity is a method of predicting foreign exchange rates based on the hypothesis that the difference between the interest rates in the two countries should offset the difference between the spot rates and the forward foreign exchange rates over the same period.

The difference between spot and forward rates reflects differences in interest rates. If this were not so, then investors holding the currency with the lower interest rates would switch to the other currency for (say) three months, ensuring that they would not lose on returning to the original currency by fixing the exchange rate in advance at the forward rate. If enough investors acted in this way (known as **arbitrage**), forces of supply and demand would lead to a change in the forward rate to prevent such risk-free profit making.

The principle of **interest rate parity** links the foreign exchange markets and the international money markets. The principle can be stated as follows.

Exam formula

$$F_0 = S_0 \times \frac{(1+i_c)}{(1+i_b)}$$

Where F_0 = forward rate
S_0 = current spot rate
i_c = interest rate in country c
i_b = interest rate in country b

3.2.1 Example: interest rate parity

Exchange rates between two currencies, the Northland florin (NF) and the Southland dollar (S$) are listed in the financial press as follows.

Spot rates	4.7250	NF/$S
	0.21164	$S/NF
90 day forward rates	4.7506	NF/$S
	0.21050	$S/NF

The money market interest rate for 90 day deposits in Northland florins is 7.5% annualised. What is implied about interest rates in Southland?

Assume a 365-day year. (*Note*. In practice, foreign currency interest rates are often calculated on an alternative **360-day** basis, one month being treated as 30 days.)

Solution

Today, $S1.000 buys NF4.7250.

NF4.7250 could be placed on deposit for 90 days to earn interest of NF(4.7250 × 0.075 × 90/365) = NF0.0874, thus growing to NF(4.7250 + 0.0874) = NF4.8124.

This is then worth $S1.0130 at the 90 day forward exchange rate (4.8124/4.7506).

This tells us that the annualised expected interest rate on 90 day deposits in Southland is 0.013 × 365/90 = 5.3%.

Alternatively, applying the formula given earlier, we have the following.

Northland interest rate on 90 day deposit = i_n = 7.5% × 90/365 = 1.85%

Southland interest rate on 90 day deposit = i_s

90 day forward exchange rate = S_f = 0.21050

Spot exchange rate = S_0 = 0.21164

$$\frac{1+i_s}{1+0.0185} = \frac{0.21050}{0.21164}$$

$1 + i_s = 1.0185 \times 0.21050 \div 0.21164 = 1.013$

$i_s = 0.013$, or 1.3%

Annualised, this is 0.013 × 365/90 = 5.3%

3.2.2 Using interest rate parity to forecast future exchange rates

As seen above, the **interest rate parity** formula links the forward exchange rate with interest rates in a fairly exact relationship, because risk-free gains are possible if the rates are out of alignment. The forward rate tends to be an unbiased predictor of the future exchange rate, so does this mean that future exchange rates can be predicted using interest rate parity?

The simple answer is 'yes', but of course the prediction is subject to very large inaccuracies, because events which arise in the future can cause large currency swings in the opposite direction to that predicted by interest rate parity.

The general formula for interest rate parity can be rearranged as:

$$\frac{1+i_c}{1+i_b} = \frac{\text{Forward rate}}{\text{Spot rate}} = \frac{\text{Expected future exchange rate}}{\text{Spot rate}}$$

3.2.3 Example: Interest rate parity

A Canadian company is expecting to receive Kuwaiti dinars in one year's time. The spot rate is Canadian dollar/dinar 5.4670. The company could borrow in dinars at 9% or in Canadian dollars at 14%. There is no forward rate for one year's time. Predict what the exchange rate is likely to be in one year.

Solution

Using interest rate parity, the Canadian dollar is the numerator and the Kuwaiti dinar is the denominator. So the expected future exchange rate dollar/dinar is given by:

$$5.4670 \times \frac{1.14}{1.09} = 5.7178$$

This prediction is subject to great inaccuracy, but note that the company could 'lock into' this exchange rate, working a money market hedge by borrowing today in dinars at 9%, converting the cash to dollars at spot and repaying any 14% dollar debt. When the dinar cash is received from the customer, the dinar loan is repaid.

3.3 Purchasing power parity **Pilot Paper**

Key term

> **Purchasing power parity** theory states that the exchange rate between two currencies is the same in equilibrium when the purchasing power of currency is the same in each country.

Interest rate parity should not be confused with **purchasing power parity**. Purchasing power parity theory predicts that the exchange value of foreign currency depends on the relative purchasing power of each currency in its own country and that **spot exchange rates will vary over time according to relative price changes.**

Formally, purchasing power parity can be expressed in the following formula.

Exam formula

$$S_1 = S_0 \times \frac{(1+h_c)}{(1+h_b)}$$

Where S_1 = expected spot rate
S_0 = current spot rate
h_c = expected inflation rate in country c
h_b = expected inflation rate in country b

Note that the expected future spot rate will not necessarily coincide with the 'forward exchange rate' currently quoted.

3.4 Example: Purchasing power parity

The spot exchange rate between UK sterling and the Danish kroner is £1 = 8.00 kroners. Assuming that there is now purchasing parity, an amount of a commodity costing £110 in the UK will cost 880 kroners in Denmark. Over the next year, price inflation in Denmark is expected to be 5% while inflation in the UK is expected to be 8%. What is the 'expected spot exchange rate' at the end of the year?

Using the formula above:

$$\text{Future (forward) rate, } S_1 = 8 \times \frac{1.05}{1.08}$$

$$= 7.78$$

This is the same figure as we get if we compare the inflated prices for the commodity. At the end of the year:

UK price	=	£110 × 1.08 = £118.80
Denmark price	=	Kr880 × 1.05 = Kr924
S_t	=	924 ÷ 118.80 = 7.78

In the real world, exchange rates move towards purchasing power parity only over the **long term**. However, the theory is sometimes used to predict future exchange rates in **investment appraisal problems** where forecasts of relative inflation rates are available.

Case Study

An amusing example of purchasing power parity is the Economist's Big Mac index. Under PPP movements in countries' exchange rates should in the long-term mean that the prices of an identical basket of goods or services are equalised. The McDonalds Big Mac represents this basket.

The index compares local Big Mac prices with the price of Big Macs in America. This comparison is used to forecast what exchange rates should be, and this is then compared with the actual exchange rates to decide which currencies are over and under-valued.

3.5 The Fisher effect

The term **Fisher effect** is sometimes used in looking at the relationship between **interest** rates and expected rates of **inflation** (see Chapter 9, Section 1).

The rate of interest can be seen as made up of two parts: the real required rate of return (real interest rate) plus a premium for inflation. Then:

Exam formula

[1 + nominal (money) rate] = [1 + real interest rate] [1 + inflation rate]

$(1 + i) = (1 + r)(1 + h)$

Countries with relatively **high** rates of inflation will generally have high nominal rates of interest, partly because high interest rates are a mechanism for reducing inflation, and partly because of the Fisher effect: higher nominal interest rates serve to allow investors to obtain a high enough real rate of return where inflation is relatively high.

According to the **international Fisher effect**, interest rate differentials between countries provide an unbiased predictor of future changes in spot exchange rates. The currency of countries with relatively high interest rates is expected to depreciate against currencies with lower interest rates, because the higher interest rates are considered necessary to compensate for the anticipated currency depreciation. Given free movement of capital internationally, this idea suggests that the real rate of return in different countries will equalise as a result of adjustments to spot exchange rates.

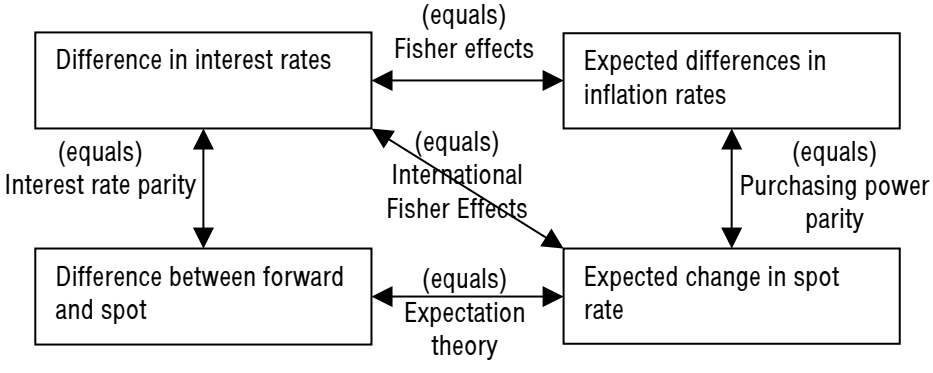
The international Fisher effect can be expressed as:

$$\frac{1+i_a}{1+i_b} = \frac{1+h_a}{1+h_b}$$

where i_a is the nominal interest rate in country a
i_b is the nominal interest rate in country b
h_a is the inflation rate in country a
h_b is the inflation rate in country b

3.6 Four-way equivalence

The **four-way equivalence model** states that in equilibrium, differences between forward and spot rates, differences in interest rates, expected differences in inflation rates and expected changes in spot rates are **equal** to one another.



4 Foreign currency risk management

12/07, 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Basic methods of hedging risk include **matching receipts and payments**, **invoicing in own currency**, and **leading and lagging** the times that cash is received and paid.

4.1 Risk and risk management

Risk management describes the policies which a firm may adopt and the techniques it may use to manage the risks it faces. **Exposure** means being open to or vulnerable to risk. If entrepreneurship is about risk, why should businesses want to 'manage' risk? Broadly, there are two reasons why risk management makes good business sense.

(a) Firstly, a business may wish to reduce **risks** to which it is exposed to acceptable levels. What is an acceptable level of risk may depend upon various factors, including the scale of operations of the business and the degree to which its proprietors or shareholders are risk-averse.

(b) Secondly, a business may wish to avoid **particular kinds of risks**. For example, a business may be averse to taking risks with exchange rates. The reasons may include the fact that the risks are simply **too great** for the business to bear, for example if exchange rate movements could easily bankrupt the business.

4.2 Currency of invoice

One way of avoiding exchange risk is for an exporter to **invoice his foreign customer in his domestic currency**, or for an importer to arrange with his **foreign supplier to be invoiced in his domestic currency**. However, although either the exporter or the importer can avoid any exchange risk in this way, only one of them can deal in his domestic currency. The other must accept the exchange risk, since there will be a period of time elapsing between agreeing a contract and paying for the goods (unless payment is made with the order).

If a UK exporter is able to quote and invoice an overseas buyer in sterling, then the foreign exchange risk is in effect **transferred** to the overseas buyer. An alternative method of achieving the same result is to negotiate contracts expressed in the foreign currency but specifying a fixed rate of exchange as a condition of the contract.

There are certain advantages in invoicing in a foreign currency which might persuade an exporter to take on the exchange risk.

(a) There is the possible **marketing advantage** by proposing to invoice in the buyer's own currency, when there is competition for the sales contract.

(b) The exporter may also be able to **offset** payments to his own suppliers in a particular foreign currency against receipts in that currency.

(c) By arranging to sell goods to customers in a foreign currency, a UK exporter might be able to **obtain a loan** in that currency at a **lower rate of interest** than in the UK, and at the same time obtain cover against exchange risks by arranging to repay the loan out of the proceeds from the sales in that currency.

4.3 Matching receipts and payments

A company can reduce or eliminate its foreign exchange transaction exposure by **matching** receipts and payments. Wherever possible, a company that expects to make payments and have receipts in the same foreign currency should plan to **offset its payments against its receipts in the currency**. Since the company will be setting off foreign currency receipts against foreign currency payments, it does not matter whether the currency strengthens or weakens against the company's 'domestic' currency because there will be no purchase or sale of the currency.

The process of matching is made simpler by having **foreign currency accounts** with a bank. Receipts of foreign currency can be credited to the account pending subsequent payments in the currency. (Alternatively, a company might invest its foreign currency income in the country of the currency – for example it might have a bank deposit account abroad – and make payments with these overseas assets/deposits.)

4.4 Matching assets and liabilities

A company which expects to receive a substantial amount of income in a foreign currency will be concerned that this currency may weaken. It can hedge against this possibility by borrowing in the foreign currency and using the foreign receipts to repay the loan. For example, US dollar debtors can be hedged by taking out a US dollar overdraft. In the same way, US dollar trade creditors can be matched against a US dollar bank account which is used to pay the creditors.

A company which has a long-term foreign investment, for example an overseas subsidiary, will similarly try to **match its foreign assets** (property, plant etc) by a **long-term loan in the foreign currency**.

4.5 Leading and lagging

Companies might try to use:

- **Lead payments** (payments in advance)
- **Lagged payments** (delaying payments beyond their due date)

in order to take advantage of foreign exchange rate movements. With a lead payment, paying in advance of the due date, there is a **finance cost** to consider. This is the interest cost on the money used to make the payment, but early settlement discounts may be available.

4.6 Netting

Unlike matching, netting is not technically a method of managing exchange risk. However, it is conveniently dealt with at this stage. The objective is simply to save transactions costs by netting off inter-company balances before arranging payment. Many **multinational groups** of companies engage in **intra-group trading**. Where related companies located in different countries trade with one another, there is likely to be inter-company indebtedness denominated in different currencies.

Key term

> **Netting** is a process in which credit balances are netted off against debit balances so that only the reduced net amounts remain due to be paid by actual currency flows.

Netting has the following advantages.

(a) **Foreign exchange purchase** costs, including commission and the spread between selling and buying rates, and money transmission costs are **reduced**.

(b) There is **less loss in interest** from having money in transit.

Local laws and regulations need to be considered before netting is used, as netting is restricted by some countries.

4.6.1 Example: Netting

A and B are respectively UK and US based subsidiaries of a Swiss based holding company. At 31 March 20X5, A owed B SFr300,000 and B owed A SFr220,000. Netting can reduce the value of the intercompany debts: the two intercompany balances are set against each other, leaving a net debt owed by A to B of SFr 80,000 (SFr300,000 – 220,000).

4.7 Forward exchange contracts 12/08

FAST FORWARD

> A **forward contract** specifies in advance the rate at which a specified quantity of currency will be bought and sold.

4.7.1 Forward exchange rates

As you will already appreciate, a forward exchange rate might be higher or lower than the spot rate. If it is higher, the quoted currency will be cheaper forward than spot. For example, if in the case of Swiss francs against sterling (i) the spot rate is 2.1560 – 2.1660 and (ii) the three months forward rate is 2.2070 – 2.2220:

(a) A bank would sell 2,000 Swiss francs:

(i) At the spot rate, now, for £927.64

$$\left(\frac{2,000}{2.1560}\right)$$

(ii) In three months time, under a forward contract, for £906.21

$$\left(\frac{2,000}{2.2070}\right)$$

(b) A bank would buy 2,000 Swiss francs

(i) At the spot rate, now, for £923.36

$$\left(\frac{2,000}{2.1660}\right)$$

(ii) In three months time, under a forward contract, for £900.09

$$\left(\frac{2,000}{2.2220}\right)$$

In both cases, the quoted currency (Swiss franc) would be worth less against sterling in a forward contract than at the current spot rate. This is because it is quoted forward 'at a discount', against sterling.

If the forward rate is thus higher than the spot rate, then it is 'at a discount' to the spot rate.

The forward rate can be calculated today without making any estimates of future exchange rates. **Future exchange rates** depend largely on future events and will often turn out to be very different from the forward rate. However, the forward rate is probably an **unbiased predictor of the expected value of the future exchange rate**, based on the information available today. It is also likely that the spot rate will move in the direction indicated by the forward rate.

4.7.2 Forward exchange contracts

Forward exchange contracts hedge against transaction exposure by allowing the importer or exporter to arrange for a bank to sell or buy a quantity of foreign currency at a future date, at a **rate of exchange determined** when the **forward contract is made**. The trader will know in advance either how much local currency he will receive (if he is selling foreign currency to the bank) or how much local currency he must pay (if he is buying foreign currency from the bank).

Forward contracts are very popular with small companies. The current spot price is irrelevant to the outcome of a forward contract.

Key term

A **forward exchange contract** is:

(a) An immediately firm and binding contract, eg between a bank and its customer
(b) For the purchase or sale of a specified quantity of a stated foreign currency
(c) At a rate of exchange fixed at the time the contract is made
(d) For performance (delivery of the currency and payment for it) at a future time which is agreed when making the contract (This future time will be either a specified date, or any time between two specified dates.)

4.7.3 Example: Forward exchange contracts (1)

A UK importer knows on 1 April that he must pay a foreign seller 26,500 Swiss francs in one month's time, on 1 May. He can arrange a forward exchange contract with his bank on 1 April, whereby the bank undertakes to sell the importer 26,500 Swiss francs on 1 May, at a fixed rate of say 2.6400 to the £.

The UK importer can be certain that whatever the spot rate is between Swiss francs and sterling on 1 May, he will have to pay on that date, at this forward rate:

$$\frac{26,500}{2.6400} = £10,037.88$$

(a) If the spot rate is **lower than 2.6400**, the importer would have successfully protected himself against a weakening of sterling, and would have avoided paying more sterling to obtain the Swiss francs.

(b) If the spot rate is **higher than 2.6400**, sterling's value against the Swiss franc would mean that the importer would pay more under the forward exchange contract than he would have had to pay if he had obtained the francs at the spot rate on 1 May. He cannot avoid this extra cost, because a forward contract is binding.

Thus a foreign currency liability (SFr payment) has been hedged by a foreign currency asset (SFr deposit).

4.7.4 What happens if a customer cannot satisfy a forward contract?

A customer might be unable to satisfy a forward contract for any one of a number of reasons.

(a) An **importer** might find that:

  (i) His supplier **fails to deliver the goods** as specified, so the importer will not accept the goods delivered and will not agree to pay for them

  (ii) The **supplier sends fewer goods** than expected, perhaps because of supply shortages, and so the importer has less to pay for

  (iii) The supplier is **late with the delivery**, and so the importer does not have to pay for the goods until later than expected

(b) An **exporter** might find the same types of situation, but in reverse, so that he does not receive any payment at all, or he receives more or less than originally expected, or he receives the expected amount, but only after some delay.

4.7.5 Close-out of forward contracts

If a customer cannot satisfy a forward exchange contract, the bank will make the customer fulfil the contract.

(a) If the customer has arranged for the bank to buy currency but then cannot deliver the currency for the bank to buy, the bank will:

  (i) **Sell currency** to the **customer** at the **spot rate** (when the contract falls due for performance)

  (ii) **Buy** the **currency back**, under the terms of the **forward exchange contract**

(b) If the customer has contracted for the bank to sell him currency, the bank will:

  (i) **Sell** the customer the **specified amount of currency** at the **forward exchange rate**

  (ii) **Buy back** the **unwanted currency** at the **spot rate**

Thus, the bank arranges for the customer to perform his part of the forward exchange contract by either selling or buying the 'missing' currency at the spot rate. These arrangements are known as **closing out** a forward exchange contract.

4.8 Money market hedging 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Money market hedging involves borrowing in one currency, converting the money borrowed into another currency and putting the money on deposit until the time the transaction is completed, hoping to take advantage of favourable exchange rate movements.

Because of the close relationship between forward exchange rates and the interest rates in the two currencies, it is possible to 'manufacture' a forward rate by using the spot exchange rate and money market lending or borrowing. This technique is known as a **money market hedge** or **synthetic forward**.

4.8.1 Setting up a money market hedge for a foreign currency payment

Suppose a British company needs to **pay** a Swiss creditor in Swiss francs in three months time. It does not have enough cash to pay now, but will have sufficient in three months time. Instead of negotiating a forward contract, the company could:

Step 1 Borrow the appropriate amount in pounds now

Step 2 Convert the pounds to francs immediately

Step 3 Put the francs on deposit in a Swiss franc bank account

Step 4 When the time comes to pay the company:

(a) Pays the creditor out of the franc bank account
(b) Repays the pound loan account

The effect is exactly the same as using a forward contract, and will usually cost almost exactly the same amount. If the results from a money market hedge were very different from a forward hedge, speculators could make money without taking a risk. Therefore market forces ensure that the two hedges produce very similar results.

4.8.2 Example: Money market hedge (1)

A UK company owes a Danish creditor Kr3,500,000 in three months time. The spot exchange rate is Kr/£ 7.5509 – 7.5548. The company can borrow in Sterling for 3 months at 8.60% per annum and can deposit kroners for 3 months at 10% per annum. What is the cost in pounds with a money market hedge and what effective forward rate would this represent?

Solution

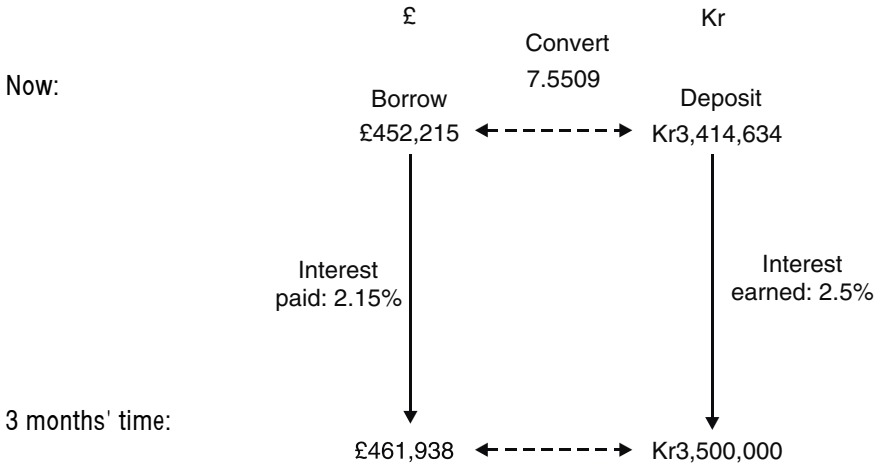
The interest rates for 3 months are 2.15% to borrow in pounds and 2.5% to deposit in kroners. The company needs to deposit enough kroners now so that the total including interest will be Kr3,500,000 in three months' time. This means depositing:

Kr3,500,000/(1 + 0.025) = Kr3,414,634.

These kroners will cost £452,215 (spot rate 7.5509). The company must borrow this amount and, with three months interest of 2.15%, will have to repay:

£452,215 × (1 + 0.0215) = £461,938.

Thus, in three months, the Danish creditor will be paid out of the Danish bank account and the company will effectively be paying £461,938 to satisfy this debt. The effective forward rate which the company has 'manufactured' is 3,500,000/461,938 = 7.5768. This effective forward rate shows the kroner at a discount to the pound because the kroner interest rate is higher than the sterling rate.



The foreign currency **asset hedges** the foreign currency **liability**.

4.8.3 Setting up a money market hedge for a foreign currency receipt

A similar technique can be used to cover a foreign currency **receipt** from a debtor. To manufacture a forward exchange rate, follow the steps below.

Step 1 Borrow an appropriate amount in the foreign currency today

Step 2 Convert it immediately to home currency

Step 3 Place it on deposit in the home currency

Step 4 When the debtor's cash is received:

(a) Repay the foreign currency loan

(b) Take the cash from the home currency deposit account

4.8.4 Example: money market hedge (2)

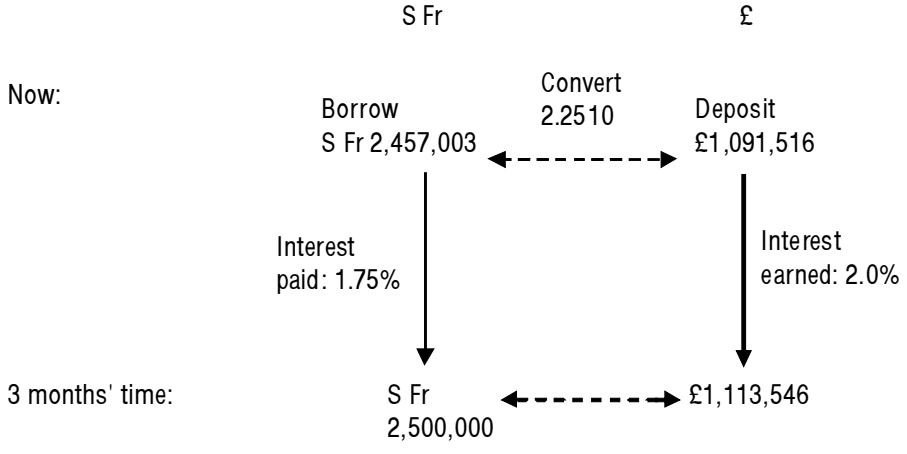
A UK company is owed SFr 2,500,000 in three months time by a Swiss company. The spot exchange rate is SFr/£ 2.2498 – 2.2510. The company can deposit in Sterling for 3 months at 8.00% per annum and can borrow Swiss Francs for 3 months at 7.00% per annum. What is the receipt in pounds with a money market hedge and what effective forward rate would this represent?

Solution

The interest rates for 3 months are 2.00% to deposit in pounds and 1.75% to borrow in Swiss francs. The company needs to borrow SFr2,500,000/1.0175 = SFr 2,457,003 today. These Swiss francs will be converted to £ at 2,457,003/2.2510 = £1,091,516. The company must deposit this amount and, with three months interest of 2.00%, will have earned

£1,091,516 × (1 + 0.02) = £1,113,346

Thus, in three months, the loan will be paid out of the proceeds from the debtor and the company will receive £1,113,346. The effective forward rate which the company has 'manufactured' is 2,500,000/1,113,346 = 2.2455. This effective forward rate shows the Swiss franc at a premium to the pound because the Swiss franc interest rate is lower than the sterling rate.



4.9 Choosing between a forward contract and a money market hedge

FAST FORWARD

The choice between forward and money markets is generally made on the basis of which method is **cheaper,** with other factors being of limited significance.

4.9.1 Choosing the hedging method

When a company expects to receive or pay a sum of foreign currency in the next few months, it can choose between using the **forward exchange market** and the **money market** to hedge against the foreign exchange risk. Other methods may also be possible, such as **making lead payments**. The cheapest method available is the one that ought to be chosen.

4.9.2 Example: Choosing the cheapest method

Trumpton plc has bought goods from a US supplier, and must pay $4,000,000 for them in three months time. The company's finance director wishes to hedge against the foreign exchange risk, and the three methods which the company usually considers are:

- Using **forward exchange contracts**
- Using **money market borrowing or lending**
- Making **lead payments**

The following annual interest rates and exchange rates are currently available.

	US dollar		*Sterling*	
	Deposit rate	*Borrowing rate*	*Deposit rate*	*Borrowing rate*
	%	%	%	%
1 month	7	10.25	10.75	14.00
3 months	7	10.75	11.00	14.25

	$/£ exchange rate ($ = £1)
Spot	1.8625 – 1.8635
1 month forward	1.8565 – 1.8577
3 months forward	1.8445 – 1.8460

Which is the cheapest method for Trumpton plc? Ignore commission costs (the bank charges for arranging a forward contract or a loan).

Solution

The three choices must be compared on a similar basis, which means working out the cost of each to Trumpton either now or in three months time. In the following paragraphs, the cost to Trumpton now will be determined.

Choice 1: the forward exchange market

Trumpton must buy dollars in order to pay the US supplier. The exchange rate in a forward exchange contract to buy $4,000,000 in three months time (bank sells) is 1.8445.

The cost of the $4,000,000 to Trumpton in three months time will be:

$$\frac{\$4{,}000{,}000}{1.8445} = £2{,}168{,}609.38$$

This is the cost in **three months**. To work out the cost now, we could say that by deferring payment for three months, the company is:

- Saving having to borrow money now at 14.25% a year to make the payment now, or
- Avoiding the loss of interest on cash on deposit, earning 11% a year

The choice between (a) and (b) depends on whether Trumpton plc needs to borrow to make any current payment (a) or is cash rich (b). Here, assumption (a) is selected, but (b) might in fact apply.

At an annual interest rate of 14.25% the rate for three months is 14.25/4 = 3.5625%. The 'present cost' of £2,168,609.38 in three months time is:

$$\frac{£2{,}168{,}609.38}{1.035625} = £2{,}094{,}010.26$$

Choice 2: the money markets

Using the money markets involves

(a) **Borrowing in the foreign currency**, if the company will eventually receive the currency

(b) **Lending in the foreign currency**, if the company will eventually pay the currency. Here, Trumpton will pay $4,000,000 and so it would lend US dollars.

It would lend enough US dollars for three months, so that the principal repaid in three months time plus interest will amount to the payment due of $4,000,000.

(a) Since the US dollar deposit rate is 7%, the rate for three months is approximately 7/4 = 1.75%.

(b) To earn $4,000,000 in three months time at 1.75% interest, Trumpton would have to lend now:

$$\frac{\$4,000,000}{1.0175} = \$3,931,203.93$$

These dollars would have to be purchased now at the spot rate of (bank sells) $1.8625. The cost would be:

$$\frac{\$3,931,203.93}{1.8625} = £2,11,713.52$$

By lending US dollars for three months, Trumpton is matching eventual receipts and payments in US dollars, and so has hedged against foreign exchange risk.

Choice 3: lead payments

Lead payments should be considered when the currency of payment is expected to strengthen over time, and is quoted forward at a premium on the foreign exchange market. Here, the cost of a lead payment (paying $4,000,000 now) would be $4,000,000 ÷ 1.8625 = £2,147,651.01.

Summary

	£
Forward exchange contract	2,094,010.26 (cheapest)
Currency lending	2,110,713.52
Lead payment	2,147,651.01

5 Foreign currency derivatives 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Foreign currency derivatives can be used to hedge foreign currency risk. **Futures contracts, options** and **swaps** are types of derivative.

5.1 Currency futures

FAST FORWARD

Currency futures are standardised contracts for the sale or purchase at a set future date of a set quantity of currency.

A **future** represents a commitment to an additional transaction in the future **that limits the risk** of existing commitments.

Currency futures are not nearly as common as forward contracts, and their market is much smaller.

Key term

A currency future is a standardised contract to buy or sell a specified quantity of foreign currency.

A currency future is essentially a standardised, market-traded forward exchange contract.

A Futures market is an exchange-traded market for the purchase or sale of a standard quantity of an underlying item such as currencies, commodities or shares, for settlement at a future date at an agreed price.

The **contract size** is the fixed minimum quantity of commodity which can be bought or sold using a futures contract. In general, dealing on futures markets must be in a **whole number** of contracts.

The **contract price** is the price at which the futures contract can be bought or sold. For all currency futures the contract price is in US dollars. The contract price is the figure which is traded on the futures exchange. It changes continuously and is the basis for computing gains or losses.

The **settlement date** (or delivery date, or expiry date) is the date when trading on a particular futures contract stops and all accounts are settled. On the International Monetary Market (IMM), the settlement dates for all currency futures are at the end of March, June, September and December.

A future's price may be different from the spot price, and this difference is the **basis**.

Basis = spot price – futures price

One **tick** is the smallest measured movement in the contract price. For currency futures this is a movement in the fourth decimal place.

Market traders will compute gains or losses on their futures positions by reference to the number of ticks by which the contract price has moved.

5.1.1 Example: futures contract

Exam focus point

> You will **not** be expected to do futures calculations in the exam but the following example will help you to understand how they work.

A US company buys goods worth €720,000 from a German company payable in 30 days. The US company wants to hedge against the € strengthening against the dollar.

Current spot is 0.9215 – 0.9221 $/€ and the € futures rate is 0.9245 $/€.

The standard size of a 3 month € futures contract is €125,000.

In 30 days time the spot is 0.9345 – 0.9351 $/€.

Closing futures price will be 0.9367.

Evaluate the hedge.

Solution

Step 1 **Setup**

(a) **Which contract?**

We assume that the three month contract is the best available.

(b) **Type of contract**

We need to buy € or sell $.

As the futures contract is in €, we need to buy futures.

(c) **Number of contracts**

$$\frac{720{,}000}{125{,}000} = 5.76, \text{ say 6 contracts}$$

(d) **Tick size**

Minimum price movement × contract size = 0.0001 × 125,000 = $12.50

Step 2 **Closing futures price**

We're told it will be 0.9367

Step 3 **Hedge outcome**

(a) **Outcome in futures market**

Opening futures price	0.9245	Buy at low price
Closing futures price	0.9367	Sell at high price
Movement in ticks	122 ticks	Profit
Futures profit/loss	122 × $12.50 × 6 contracts = $9,150	

(b) **Net outcome**

	$
Spot market payment (720,000 × 0.9351 $/£)	673,272
Futures market profit	(9,150)
	664,122

5.1.2 Advantages of futures to hedge risks

(a) **Transaction** costs should be **lower** than other hedging methods.

(b) Futures are **tradeable** and can be bought and sold on a secondary market so there is **pricing transparency,** unlike forward contracts where prices are set by financial institutions**.**

(c) The **exact date** of **receipt** or **payment** of the currency does **not have to be known**, because the futures contract does not have to be closed out until the actual cash receipt or payment is made.

5.1.3 Disadvantages of futures

(a) The **contracts cannot be tailored** to the user's exact requirements.

(b) **Hedge inefficiencies** are caused by having to deal in a **whole number of contracts** and by **basis risk** (the risk that the futures contract price may move by a different amount from the price of the underlying currency or commodity) .

(c) Only a **limited number of currencies** are the subject of futures contracts (although the number of currencies is growing, especially with the rapid development of Asian economies).

(d) Unlike options (see below), they do not allow a company to take advantage of favourable currency movements.

5.2 Currency options

FAST FORWARD

Currency options protect against **adverse exchange rate movements** while allowing the investor to take advantage of favourable exchange rate movements. They are particularly useful in situations where the cash flow is not certain to occur (eg when tendering for overseas contracts).

Key term

A currency **option** is a right of an option holder to buy (call) or sell (put) foreign currency at a specific exchange rate at a future date.

The exercise price for the option may be the same as the current spot rate, or it may be more favourable or less favourable to the option holder than the current spot rate.

Companies can choose whether to buy:

(a) A tailor-made currency option from a bank, suited to the company's specific needs. These are **over-the-counter** (OTC) or **negotiated** options, or

(b) A standard option, in certain currencies only, from an options exchange. Such options are **traded** or **exchange-traded** options.

Buying a currency option involves **paying a premium**, which is the most the buyer of the option can lose.

5.2.1 The purposes of currency options

The purpose of currency options is to reduce or eliminate exposure to currency risks, and they are particularly useful for companies in the following situations:

(a) Where there is **uncertainty** about **foreign currency receipts or payments**, either in timing or amount. Should the foreign exchange transaction not materialise, the option can be sold on the market (if it has any value) or exercised if this would make a profit.

(b) To **support the tender** for an **overseas contract**, priced in a foreign currency

(c) To allow **the publication of price lists** for its goods in a foreign currency

(d) To protect the import or export of **price-sensitive goods**.

In both situations (b) and (c), the company would not know whether it had won any export sales or would have any foreign currency income at the time that it announces its selling prices. It cannot make a forward exchange contract to sell foreign currency without becoming exposed in the currency.

5.2.2 Drawbacks of currency options

- The **cost** depends on the **expected volatility** of the **exchange rate**.
- Options must be paid for **as soon** as they are **bought**.
- **Tailor-made** options **lack negotiability**.
- Traded options are **not available** in **every currency**.

5.3 Currency swaps

FAST FORWARD

Currency swaps effectively involve the exchange of debt from one currency to another.

Currency swaps can provide a **hedge** against exchange rate movements for longer periods than the forward market, and can be a means of obtaining finance from new countries.

Key term

A **swap** is a formal agreement whereby two organisations contractually agree to exchange payments on different terms, eg in different currencies, or one at a fixed rate and the other at a floating rate' .

In a **currency swap**, the parties agree to swap equivalent amounts of currency for a period. This effectively involves the exchange of debt from one currency to another. Liability on the main debt (the principal) is not transferred and the parties are liable to **counterparty risk**: if the other party defaults on the agreement to pay interest, the original borrower remains liable to the lender.

Consider a UK company X with a subsidiary Y in France which owns vineyards. Assume a spot rate of £1 = 1.6 Euros. Suppose the parent company X wishes to raise a loan of 1.6 million Euros for the purpose of buying another French wine company. At the same time, the French subsidiary Y wishes to raise £1 million to pay for new up-to-date capital equipment imported from the UK. The UK parent company X could borrow the £1 million sterling and the French subsidiary Y could borrow the 1.6 million euros, each effectively borrowing on the other's behalf. They would then swap currencies.

5.3.1 Benefits of currency swaps

(a) Swaps are **easy to arrange** and are **flexible** since they can be arranged in any size and are reversible.

(b) **Transaction costs are low**, only amounting to legal fees, since there is no commission or premium to be paid.

(c) The parties can **obtain the currency they require** without subjecting themselves to the **uncertainties** of the foreign exchange markets.

(d) The company can gain **access to debt finance in another country** and currency where it is little known, and consequently has a poorer credit rating, than in its home country. It can therefore take advantage of lower interest rates than it could obtain if it arranged the currency loan itself.

(e) Currency swaps may be used to **restructure the currency base** of the company's liabilities. This may be important where the company is trading overseas and receiving revenues in foreign currencies, but its borrowings are denominated in the currency of its home country. Currency swaps therefore provide a means of reducing exchange rate exposure.

(f) At the same time as exchanging currency, the company may also be able to **convert fixed rate debt** to **floating rate or vice versa**. Thus it may obtain some of the benefits of an interest rate swap in addition to achieving the other purposes of a currency swap.

(g) A currency swap could be used to **absorb excess liquidity** in one currency which is not needed immediately, to create funds in another where there is a need.

In practice, most currency swaps are conducted between banks and their customers. An agreement may only be necessary if the swap were for longer than, say, one year.

5.3.2 Example: Currency swap

Step 1 Edted, a UK company, wishes to invest in Germany. It borrows £20 million from its bank and pays interest at 5%. To invest in Germany, the £20 million will be converted into euros at a spot rate of £1 = €1.5. The earnings from the German investment will be in euros, but Edted will have to pay interest on the swap. The company arranges to swap the £20 million for €30 million with Gordonbear, a company in the Euro currency zone. Gordonbear is thus the counterparty in this transaction. Interest of 6% is payable on the €30 million. Edted can use the €30 million it receives to invest in Germany.

Step 2 Each year when interest is due:

(a) Edted receives from its German investment cash remittances of €1.8 million (€30 million × 6%).

(b) Edted passes this €1.8 million to Gordonbear so that Gordonbear can settle its interest liability.

(c) Gordonbear passes to Edted £1 million (£20 million × 5%).

(d) Edted settles its interest liability of £1 million with its lender.

Step 3 At the end of the useful life of the investment the original payments are reversed with Edted paying back the €30 million it originally received and receiving back from Gordonbear the £20 million. Edted uses this £20 million to repay the loan it originally received from its UK lender.

Chapter roundup

- **Currency risk** occurs in three forms: **transaction exposure** (short-term), **economic exposure** (effect on present value of longer term cash flows) and **translation exposure** (book gains or losses).
- Factors influencing the exchange rate include the comparative rates of inflation in different countries (**purchasing power parity**), comparative interest rates in different countries (**interest rate parity**), the underlying balance of payments, speculation and government policy on managing or fixing exchange rates.
- Basic methods of hedging risk include **matching receipts and payments**, **invoicing in own currency**, and **leading and lagging** the times that cash is received and paid.
- A **forward contract** specifies in advance the rate at which a specified quantity of currency will be bought and sold.
- **Money market hedging** involves borrowing in one currency, converting the money borrowed into another currency and putting the money on deposit until the time the transaction is completed, hoping to take advantage of favourable exchange rate movements.
- The choice between forward and money markets is generally made on the basis of which method is **cheaper,** with other factors being of limited significance.
- **Foreign currency derivatives** can be used to hedge foreign currency risk. **Futures contracts, options** and **swaps** are types of derivative.
- **Currency futures** are standardised contracts for the sale or purchase at a set future date of a set quantity of currency.
- **Currency options** protect against **adverse exchange rate movements** while allowing the investor to take advantage of favourable exchange rate movements. They are particularly useful in situations where the cash flow is not certain to occur (eg when tendering for overseas contracts).
- **Currency swaps** effectively involve the exchange of debt from one currency to another.

  Currency swaps can provide a **hedge** against exchange rate movements for longer periods than the forward market, and can be a means of obtaining finance from new countries.

Quick Quiz

1 Identify the three types of currency risk.

2 Define a 'forward exchange rate'.

3 The principle of purchasing power parity must always hold.

True ☐

False ☐

4 **Fill in the blanks**

(a) Forward rate higher than spot rate is quoted at a _____

(b) Forward rate lower than spot rate is quoted at a _____

5 Name three methods of foreign currency risk management

6 Name three types of foreign currency derivatives used to hedge foreign currency risk.

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 (a) Transaction risk
(b) Translation risk
(c) Economic risk

2 An exchange rate set for the exchange of currencies at some future date

3 False. In reality commodity prices do differ significantly in different countries.

4 (a) Discount
(b) Premium

5 Any three of:

(a) Currency of invoice
(b) Netting and matching
(c) Leading and lagging
(d) Forward exchange contracts
(e) Money market hedging
(f) Asset and liability management

6 (a) Currency futures
(b) Currency options
(c) Currency swaps

Now try the question below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q28	Examination	25	45 mins

20

Interest rate risk

Topic list	Syllabus reference
1 Interest rates	H1 (b)
2 Interest rate risk	H1 (b)
3 The causes of interest rate fluctuations	H2 (c)
4 Interest rate risk management	H4 (a)
5 Interest rate derivatives	H4 (b)

Introduction

Here we consider **interest rate risk** and some of the financial instruments which are now available for managing financial risks, including **derivatives** such as **options**. The risk of interest rate changes is however less significant in most cases than the risk of currency fluctuations which, in some circumstances, can fairly easily wipe out profits entirely if it is not hedged.

Study guide

		Intellectual level
H1	**The nature and types of risk and approaches to risk management**	
(b)	Describe and discuss different types of interest rate risk:	1
(i)	Gap exposure	
(ii)	Basis risk	
H2	**Causes of interest rate fluctuations**	
(c)	Describe the causes of interest rate fluctuations, including:	2
(i)	Structure of interest rates and yield curves	
(ii)	Expectations theory	
(iii)	Liquidity preference theory	
(iv)	Market segmentation	
H4	**Hedging techniques for interest rate risk**	
(a)	Discuss and apply traditional and basic methods of interest rate risk management, including:	
(i)	Matching and smoothing	1
(ii)	Asset and liability management	1
(iii)	Forward rate agreements	2
(b)	Identify the main types of interest rate derivatives used to hedge interest rate risk and explain how they are used in hedging.	1

Exam guide

The material in this chapter will be examined almost entirely as a discussion question and it is important you understand and can explain the terminology.

1 Interest rates

FAST FORWARD

The **pattern of interest rates** on financial assets is influenced by the **risk** of the assets, the **duration** of the lending, and the **size** of the loan.

There is a **trade-off** between **risk and return**. Investors in riskier assets expect to be compensated for the risk

Interest rates are effectively the 'prices' governing lending and borrowing. We discussed the pattern of interest rates in Section 4 of Chapter 3.

2 Interest rate risk

FAST FORWARD

Interest rate risk is faced by companies with floating and fixed rate debt. It can arise from **gap exposure** and **basis risk.**

Interest rate risk relates to the sensitivity of profit and cash flows to changes in interest rates. An organisation will need to analyse how profits and cash flows are likely to be affected by forecast changes in interest rates and decide whether to take action.

2.1 Floating interest rate debt

The most common form of interest rate risk faced by a company is the **volatility of cash flows** associated with a high proportion of **floating** interest rate debt. Floating interest rates, of course, change according to general market conditions.

Some of the interest rate risks to which a firm is exposed may **cancel each other out**, where there are both assets and liabilities with which there is exposure to interest rate changes. If interest rates rise, more interest will be payable on loans and other liabilities, but this will be **compensated for** by higher interest received on assets such as money market deposits.

2.2 Fixed interest rate debt

A company with a high proportion of fixed interest rate debt has a commitment to fixed interest payments. If interest rates fall sharply, the company will suffer from a loss of **competitive advantage** compared with companies using floating rate borrowing whose interest costs and cost of capital will fall.

2.3 Gap exposure

The degree to which a firm is exposed to interest rate risk can be identified by using the method of **gap analysis**. Gap analysis is based on the principle of **grouping together** assets and liabilities which are sensitive to interest rate changes according to their maturity dates. Two different types of 'gap' may occur.

(a) **A negative gap**

A negative gap occurs when a firm has a larger amount of interest-sensitive liabilities maturing at a certain time or in a certain period than it has interest-sensitive assets maturing at the same time. The difference between the two amounts indicates the net exposure.

(b) **A positive gap**

There is a positive gap if the amount of interest-sensitive assets maturing in a particular time exceeds the amount of interest-sensitive liabilities maturing at the same time.

With a **negative** gap, the company faces exposure if interest rates **rise** by the time of maturity. With a **positive** gap, the company will lose out if interest rates **fall** by maturity.

2.4 Basis risk

It may appear that a company which has size-matched assets and liabilities, and is both receiving and paying interest, may not have any interest rate exposure. However, the two floating rates may not be determined using the same **basis.** For example, one may be linked to LIBOR but the other is not.

Key term

LIBOR or the London Inter-Bank Offered Rate is the rate of interest applying to wholesale money market lending between London banks.

This makes it unlikely that the two floating rates will move perfectly **in line** with each other. As one rate increases, the other rate might change by a different amount or might change later.

3 The causes of interest rate fluctuations

FAST FORWARD

The **causes** of interest rate fluctuations include the **structure of interest rates and yield curves** and **changing economic factors**.

3.1 The structure of interest rates

There are several reasons why interest rates differ in different markets and market segments.

(a) **Risk**

Higher risk borrowers must pay higher rates on their borrowing, to compensate lenders for the greater risk involved.

(b) **The need to make a profit on re-lending**

Financial intermediaries make their profits from re-lending at a higher rate of interest than the cost of their borrowing.

(c) **The size of the loan**

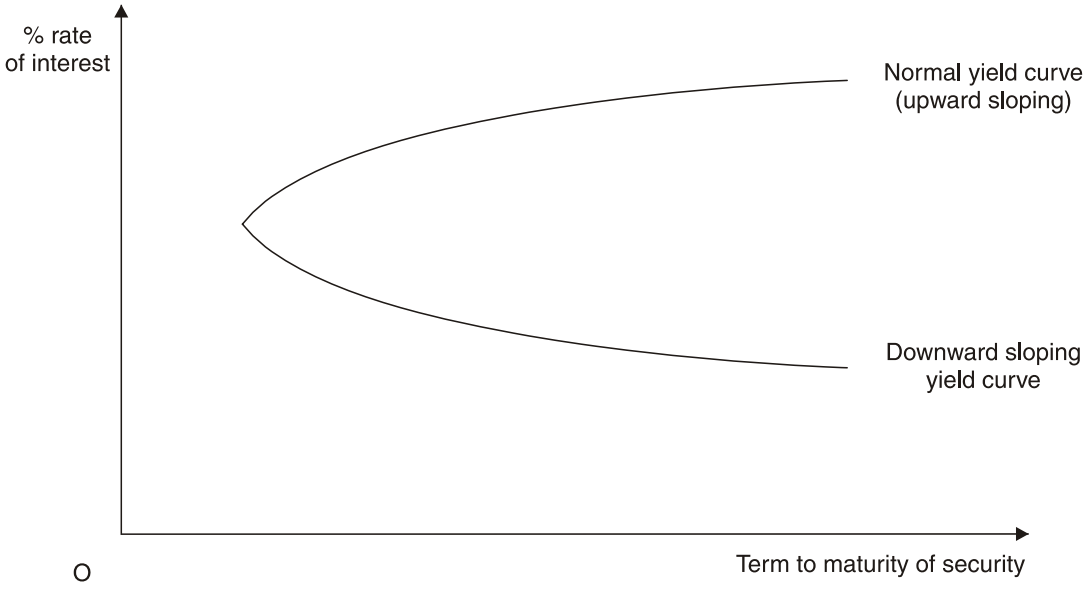
Deposits above a certain amount with a bank or building society might attract higher rates of interest than smaller deposits.

(d) **Different types of financial asset**

Different types of financial asset attract different rates of interest. This is largely because of the competition for deposits between different types of financial institution.

(e) **The duration of the lending**

The **term structure of interest rates** refers to the way in which the yield on a security varies according to the term of the borrowing, that is the length of time until the debt will be repaid as shown by the **yield curve**. Normally, the longer the term of an asset to maturity, the higher the rate of interest paid on the asset.



Liquidity preference theory tells us the reasons why, in theory, the yield curve will normally be upward sloping, so that long-term financial assets offer a higher yield than short-term assets.

Liquidity preference means investors prefer cash now to later and want **compensation** in the form of a **higher return** for being unable to use their cash now. Long-term interest rates therefore not only reflect investors' assumptions about future interest rates but also include a premium for holding long-term bonds. This premium compensates investors for the added **risk** of having their money tied up for a longer period, including the greater price uncertainty. Because of this premium, long-term bond yields tend to be higher than short-term yields, and the yield curve slopes upward.

(f) **Expectations theory** states that the forward interest rate is due only to expectations of interest rate movements. When interest rates are expected to fall, short-term rates might be higher than long-term rates, and the yield curve would be downward sloping. Thus, the shape of the yield curve gives an indication to the financial manager about how interest rates are expected to move in the future.

(g) The **market segmentation theory** of interest rates suggests that the slope of the yield curve will reflect conditions in different segments of the market. This theory holds that the major investors are confined to a particular segment of the market and will not switch segment even if the forecast of likely future interests rates changes.

(h) **Government policy** on interest rates might be significant too. A policy of keeping interest rates relatively high might therefore have the effect of forcing short-term interest rates higher than long-term rates.

3.2 The general level of interest rates

Interest rates on any one type of financial asset will vary over time. In other words, the general level of interest rates might go up or down. The general level of interest rates is affected by several factors.

(a) **Need for a real return**

Investors normally want to **earn a 'real' rate of return** on their investment. The appropriate 'real' rate of return will depend on factors such as investment risk.

(b) **Inflation**

Nominal rates of interest should be sufficient to **cover expected rates of inflation** over the term of the investment and to provide a real return.

(c) **Uncertainty about future rates of inflation**

When investors are uncertain about inflation and therefore about what future nominal and real interest rates will be, they are likely to require **higher interest yields** to persuade them to take the risk of investing, especially in the longer term.

(d) **Liquidity preference of investors and the demand for borrowing**

Higher interest rates have to be offered to persuade savers to invest their surplus money. When the demand to borrow increases, interest rates will rise.

(e) **Balance of payments**

When a country has a continuing deficit on the current account of its balance of payments, and the authorities are unwilling to allow the exchange rate to depreciate by more than a certain amount, interest rates may have to be raised to **attract capital** into the country. The country can then finance the deficit by borrowing from abroad.

(f) **Monetary policy**

From mid-1997, decisions over UK interest rate policy have been made by the Monetary Policy Committee of the Bank of England. The Bank of England influences very short-term money market rates by means of op**en market operations**. Usually longer term money market rates, and then banks' base rates, will respond to the authorities' wish for interest rate changes.

(g) **Interest rates abroad**

The rate of interest in one country will be influenced by **external factors**, such as interest rates in other countries and expectations about the exchange rate. When interest rates in overseas countries are high, interest rates on domestic currency investments must also be comparably high, to avoid capital transfers abroad and a fall in the exchange rate of the domestic currency.

4 Interest rate risk management 12/08

FAST FORWARD

Interest rate risk can be managed using **internal hedging** in the form of asset and liability management, matching and smoothing or using **external hedging** instruments such as forward rate agreements and derivatives.

4.1 Matching and smoothing

Matching and smoothing are two methods of **internal hedging** used to manage interest rate risk.

Key term

Matching is where liabilities and assets with a common interest rate are matched.

For example subsidiary A of a company might be investing in the money markets at LIBOR and subsidiary B is borrowing through the same market at LIBOR. If LIBOR increases, subsidiary A's borrowing cost increases and subsidiary B's returns increase. The **interest rates** on the assets and liabilities are therefore **matched**.

This method is most widely used by financial institutions such as banks, who find it easier to match the magnitudes and characteristics of their assets and liabilities than commercial or industrial companies.

Key term

Smoothing is where a company keeps a **balance** between its fixed rate and floating rate borrowing.

A rise in interest rates will make the floating rate loan more expensive but this will be **compensated** for by the less expensive fixed rate loan. The company may however incur increased transaction and arrangement costs.

4.2 Forward rate agreements (FRAs)

FAST FORWARD

Forward rate agreements hedge risk by **fixing the interest rate** on future borrowing.

A company can enter into a FRA with a bank that **fixes the rate of interest** for borrowing at a certain time in the future. If the actual interest rate proves to be higher than the rate agreed, the bank pays the company the difference. If the actual interest rate is lower than the rate agreed, the company pays the bank the difference. The FRA does not need to be with the same bank as the loan as the FRA is a hedging method independent of any loan agreement.

One **limitation** of FRAs is that they are usually only available on loans of at least £500,000. They are also likely to be **difficult to obtain for periods of over one year**.

An **advantage** of FRAs is that, for the period of the FRA at least, they **protect the borrower** from adverse market interest rate movements to levels above the rate negotiated for the FRA. With a normal variable rate loan (for example linked to a bank's base rate or to LIBOR) the borrower is exposed to the risk of such adverse market movements. On the other hand, the borrower will similarly not benefit from the effects of favourable market interest rate movements.

The **interest rates** which banks will be willing to set for FRAs will reflect their current expectations of interest rate movements. If it is expected that interest rates are going to rise during the term for which the FRA is being negotiated, the bank is likely to seek a higher fixed rate of interest than the variable rate of interest which is current at the time of negotiating the FRA.

4.2.1 FRA terminology

The terminology is as follows:

(a) 5.75-5.70 means that you can fix a borrowing rate at 5.75%.
(b) A '3-6' forward rate agreement is one that starts in three months and lasts for three months.
(c) A basis point is 0.01%.

4.2.2 Example: Forward rate agreement

It is 30 June. Lynn plc will need a £10 million 6 month fixed rate loan from 1 October. Lynn wants to hedge using an FRA. The relevant FRA rate is 6% on 30 June.

(a) State what FRA is required.
(b) What is the result of the FRA and the effective loan rate if the 6 month FRA benchmark rate has moved to
    (i) 5%
    (ii) 9%

Solution

(a) The Forward Rate Agreement required is '3-9'.

(b) (i) At 5% because interest rates have fallen, Lynn plc will make a payment to the bank.

	£
FRA payment £10 million × (6% – 5%) × $^{6}/_{12}$	(50,000)
Payment on underlying loan 5% × £10 million × $^{6}/_{12}$	(250,000)
Net payment on loan	(300,000)
Effective interest rate on loan	6%

(ii) At 9% because interest rates have risen, the bank will make a payment to Lynn plc.

	£
FRA receipt £10 million × (9% – 6%) × $^{6}/_{12}$	150,000
Payment on underlying loan at market rate 9% × £10 million × $^{6}/_{12}$	(450,000)
Net payment on loan	(300,000)
Effective interest rate on loan	6%

Note that the FRA and loan need not be with the same bank.

5 Interest rate derivatives

FAST FORWARD

Interest rate futures can be used to hedge against interest rate changes between the current date and the date at which the interest rate on the lending or borrowing is set. Borrowers **sell futures** to hedge against **interest rate rises;** lenders **buy futures** to hedge against **interest rate falls.**

5.1 Futures contracts

Most LIFFE (London International Financial Futures and Options Exchange) futures contracts involve interest rates (**interest rate futures**), and these offer a means of hedging against the risk of interest rate movements. Such contracts are effectively a gamble on whether interest rates will rise or fall. Like other futures contracts, interest rate futures offer a way in which **speculators can 'bet'** on market movements just as they offer others who are more risk-averse a way of **hedging risks.**

Interest rate futures are similar in effect to FRAs, except that the terms, amounts and periods are **standardised**. For example, a company can contract to buy (or sell) £100,000 of a notional 30-year Treasury bond bearing an 8% coupon, in say, 6 months time, at an agreed price. The basic principles behind such a decision are:

(a) The futures price is likely to vary with changes in interest rates, and this acts as a **hedge** against adverse interest rate movements.

(b) The outlay to buy futures is much less than for buying the financial instrument itself, and so a company can hedge large exposures of cash with a relatively **small initial employment of cash.**

5.1.1 Nature of contracts

The **standardised nature** of interest rate futures is a limitation on their use by the corporate treasurer as a means of hedging, because they **cannot always be matched** with specific interest rate exposures. However, their use is growing. Futures contracts are frequently used by banks and other financial institutions as a means of hedging their portfolios: such institutions are often not concerned with achieving an exact match with their underlying exposure.

5.1.2 Entitlement with contracts

With interest rate futures what we **buy** is the entitlement to **interest receipts** and what we **sell** is the promise to make **interest payments**. So when a lender buys one 3-month sterling contract he has the right to receive interest for three months in pounds. When a borrower sells a 3-month sterling contract he incurs an obligation to make interest payments for three months.

(a) **Borrowers** will wish to hedge against an interest rate rise by **selling futures now** and **buying futures** on the day that the interest rate is fixed.

(b) **Lenders** will wish to hedge against the possibility of falling interest rates by **buying futures now** and **selling futures** on the date that the actual lending starts.

5.1.3 Other factors to consider

(a) **Short-term interest rate futures** contracts normally represent interest receivable or payable on notional lending or borrowing **for a three month period** beginning on a standard future date. The contract size depends on the currency in which the lending or borrowing takes place. For example, the 3-month sterling interest rate futures March contract represents the interest on notional lending or borrowing of £500,000 for three months, starting at the end of March. £500,000 is the contract size.

(b) As with all futures, a **whole number of contracts** must be dealt with. Note that the notional **period of lending or borrowing starts** when the **contract expires**, at the **end of March**.

(c) On LIFFE, futures contracts are available with **maturity dates** at the end of March, June, September and December. The 3-month eurodollar interest rate futures contract is for notional lending or borrowing in US dollars. The contract size is $1 million.

5.2 Interest rate options

FAST FORWARD

Interest rate options allow an organisation to limit its exposure to adverse interest rate movements, while allowing it to take advantage of favourable interest rate movements.

Key term

An **interest rate option** grants the buyer of it the right, but **not the obligation**, to deal at an agreed interest rate (strike rate) at a future maturity date. On the date of expiry of the option, the buyer must decide whether or not to exercise the right.

Clearly, a buyer of an **option to borrow** will **not wish to exercise** it if the **market interest rate** is now **below** that specified in the option agreement. Conversely, an **option to lend** will not be worth exercising if **market rates** have **risen above** the rate specified in the option by the time the option has expired.

Tailor-made **'over-the-counter' interest rate options** can be purchased from major banks, with specific values, periods of maturity, denominated currencies and rates of agreed interest. The cost of the option is the 'premium'. Interest rate options offer more **flexibility** than and are more **expensive** than FRAs.

5.3 Interest rate caps, collars and floors

FAST FORWARD

Caps set a ceiling to the interest rate; a **floor** sets a lower limit. A **collar** is the simultaneous purchase of a cap and sale of floor.

Various **cap** and **collar** agreements are possible.

Key term

(a) An interest rate **cap** is an option which sets an interest rate ceiling.

(b) A **floor** is an option which sets a lower limit to interest rates.

(c) Using a **'collar'** arrangement, the borrower can buy an interest rate cap and at the same time sell an interest rate floor. This limits the cost for the company as it receives a premium for the option it's sold.

The cost of a collar is lower than for buying an option alone. However, the borrowing company forgoes the benefit of movements in interest rates **below the floor limit** in exchange for this cost reduction and an investing company forgoes the benefit of **movements in interest rates above the cap level**. A **zero cost collar** can even be negotiated sometimes, if the **premium paid** for buying the cap **equals** the **premium received** for selling the floor.

5.4 Interest rate swaps

FAST FORWARD

Interest rate swaps are where two parties agree to exchange interest rate payments.

Interest rate swaps can act as a means of **switching** from paying one type of interest to another, raising **less expensive loans** and **securing better** deposit **rates**.

A **fixed to floating rate currency swap** is a combination of a currency and interest rate swap.

Key term

Interest rate swap is an agreement whereby the parties to the agreement exchange interest rate commitments.

5.4.1 Swap procedures

Interest rate swaps involve two parties agreeing to exchange interest payments with each other over an agreed period. In practice, however, the major players in the swaps market are banks and many other types of institution can become involved, for example national and local governments and international institutions.

In the simplest form of interest rate swap, party A agrees to pay the interest on party B's loan, while party B reciprocates by paying the interest on A's loan. If the swap is to make sense, **the two parties must swap interest which has different characteristics**. Assuming that the interest swapped is in the same currency, the most common motivation for the swap is to switch from paying floating rate interest to fixed interest or *vice versa*. This type of swap is known as a **'plain vanilla'** or **generic** swap.

5.4.2 Why bother to swap?

Obvious questions to ask are:

- Why do the companies bother swapping interest payments with each other?
- Why don't they just terminate their original loan and take out a new one?

The answer is that **transaction costs** may be too high. Terminating an original loan early may involve a significant termination fee and taking out a new loan will involve issue costs. Arranging a swap can be significantly cheaper, even if a banker is used as an intermediary. Because the banker is simply acting as an agent on the swap arrangement and has to bear no default risk, the arrangement fee can be kept low.

Exam focus point

If you have to discuss which instrument should be used to hedge interest rate risk, consider **cost**, **flexibility**, **expectations** and **ability to benefit** from favourable interest rate movements.

Chapter Roundup

- The **pattern of interest rates** on financial assets is influenced by the **risk** of the assets, the **duration** of the lending, and the **size** of the loan.

  There is a **trade-off** between **risk and return**. Investors in riskier assets expect to be compensated for the risk
- **Interest rate risk** is faced by companies with floating and fixed rate debt. It can arise from **gap exposure** and **basis risk.**
- The **causes** of interest rate fluctuations include the **structure of interest rates and yield curves** and **changing economic factors**.
- Interest rate risk can be managed using **internal hedging** in the form of asset and liability management, matching and smoothing or using **external hedging** instruments such as forward rate agreements and derivatives.
- **Forward rate agreements** hedge risk by **fixing the interest rate** on future borrowing.
- **Interest rate futures** can be used to hedge against interest rate changes between the current date and the date at which the interest rate on the lending or borrowing is set. Borrowers **sell futures** to hedge against **interest rate rises;** lenders **buy futures** to hedge against **interest rate falls.**
- **Interest rate options** allow an organisation to limit its exposure to adverse interest rate movements, while allowing it to take advantage of favourable interest rate movements.
- **Caps** set a ceiling to the interest rate; a **floor** sets a lower limit. A **collar** is the simultaneous purchase of a cap and sale of floor.
- **Interest rate swaps** are where two parties agree to exchange interest rate payments.

  Interest rate swaps can act as a means of **switching** from paying one type of interest to another, raising **less expensive loans** and **securing better** deposit **rates**.

  A **fixed to floating rate currency swap** is a combination of a currency and interest rate swap.

Quick Quiz

1 What is LIBOR?

2 Which of the following is **no**t an explanation for a downward slope in the yield curve?

A Liquidity preference
B Expectations
C Government policy
D Market segmentation

3 What is basis risk?

4 How do forward rate agreements hedge risk?

5 **Fill in the blanks**

With a *collar*, the borrower buys (1) …..... and at the same time sells (2) .....

6 What is gap exposure?

7 Name three types of interest rate derivative used to hedge interest rate risk.

Answers to Quick Quiz

1 The rate of interest that applies to wholesale money market lending between London banks

2 A Liquidity preference (and thus compensating investors for a longer period of time) is an explanation of why the liquidity curve slopes upwards.

3 Basis risk is where a company has assets and liabilities of similar sizes, both with floating rates but the rates are not determined using the same basis.

4 Forward rate agreements hedge risk by fixing the interest rate on future borrowing.

5 (1) An interest rate cap
(2) An interest rate floor

6 Gap exposure is where a firm is exposed to interest rate risk form differing maturities of interest-sensitive assets and liabilities.

7 (a) Futures contracts
(b) Interest rate options
(c) Caps, collars and floors
(d) Interest rate swaps

Now try the questions below from the Exam Question Bank

Number	Level	Marks	Time
Q29	Examination	25	45 mins

Mathematical tables

Present Value Table

Present value of 1 i.e. $(1 + r)^{-n}$

Where r = discount rate
n = number of periods until payment

Discount rate (r)

Periods (n)	1%	2%	3%	4%	5%	6%	7%	8%	9%	10%	
1	0·990	0·980	0·971	0·962	0·952	0·943	0·935	0·926	0·917	0·909	1
2	0·980	0·961	0·943	0·925	0·907	0·890	0·873	0·857	0·842	0·826	2
3	0·971	0·942	0·915	0·889	0·864	0·840	0·816	0·794	0·772	0·751	3
4	0·961	0·924	0·888	0·855	0·823	0·792	0·763	0·735	0·708	0·683	4
5	0·951	0·906	0·863	0·822	0·784	0·747	0·713	0·681	0·650	0·621	5
6	0·942	0·888	0·837	0·790	0·746	0·705	0·666	0·630	0·596	0·564	6
7	0·933	0·871	0·813	0·760	0·711	0·665	0·623	0·583	0·547	0·513	7
8	0·923	0·853	0·789	0·731	0·677	0·627	0·582	0·540	0·502	0·467	8
9	0·914	0·837	0·766	0·703	0·645	0·592	0·544	0·500	0·460	0·424	9
10	0·905	0·820	0·744	0·676	0·614	0·558	0·508	0·463	0·422	0·386	10
11	0·896	0·804	0·722	0·650	0·585	0·527	0·475	0·429	0·388	0·350	11
12	0·887	0·788	0·701	0·625	0·557	0·497	0·444	0·397	0·356	0·319	12
13	0·879	0·773	0·681	0·601	0·530	0·469	0·415	0·368	0·326	0·290	13
14	0·870	0·758	0·661	0·577	0·505	0·442	0·388	0·340	0·299	0·263	14
15	0·861	0·743	0·642	0·555	0·481	0·417	0·362	0·315	0·275	0·239	15

(n)	11%	12%	13%	14%	15%	16%	17%	18%	19%	20%	
1	0·901	0·893	0·885	0·877	0·870	0·862	0·855	0·847	0·840	0·833	1
2	0·812	0·797	0·783	0·769	0·756	0·743	0·731	0·718	0·706	0·694	2
3	0·731	0·712	0·693	0·675	0·658	0·641	0·624	0·609	0·593	0·579	3
4	0·659	0·636	0·613	0·592	0·572	0·552	0·534	0·516	0·499	0·482	4
5	0·593	0·567	0·543	0·519	0·497	0·476	0·456	0·437	0·419	0·402	5
6	0·535	0·507	0·480	0·456	0·432	0·410	0·390	0·370	0·352	0·335	6
7	0·482	0·452	0·425	0·400	0·376	0·354	0·333	0·314	0·296	0·279	7
8	0·434	0·404	0·376	0·351	0·327	0·305	0·285	0·266	0·249	0·233	8
9	0·391	0·361	0·333	0·308	0·284	0·263	0·243	0·225	0·209	0·194	9
10	0·352	0·322	0·295	0·270	0·247	0·227	0·208	0·191	0·176	0·162	10
11	0·317	0·287	0·261	0·237	0·215	0·195	0·178	0·162	0·148	0·135	11
12	0·286	0·257	0·231	0·208	0·187	0·168	0·152	0·137	0·124	0·112	12
13	0·258	0·229	0·204	0·182	0·163	0·145	0·130	0·116	0·104	0·093	13
14	0·232	0·205	0·181	0·160	0·141	0·125	0·111	0·099	0·088	0·078	14
15	0·209	0·183	0·160	0·140	0·123	0·108	0·095	0·084	0·074	0·065	15

Annuity Table

Present value of an annuity of 1 i.e. $\frac{1-(1+r)^{-n}}{r}$

Where r = discount rate
n = number of periods

Discount rate (r)

Periods (n)	1%	2%	3%	4%	5%	6%	7%	8%	9%	10%	
1	0·990	0·980	0·971	0·962	0·952	0·943	0·935	0·926	0·917	0·909	1
2	1·970	1·942	1·913	1·886	1·859	1·833	1·808	1·783	1·759	1·736	2
3	2·941	2·884	2·829	2·775	2·723	2·673	2·624	2·577	2·531	2·487	3
4	3·902	3·808	3·717	3·630	3·546	3·465	3·387	3·312	3·240	3·170	4
5	4·853	4·713	4·580	4·452	4·329	4·212	4·100	3·993	3·890	3·791	5
6	5·795	5·601	5·417	5·242	5·076	4·917	4·767	4·623	4·486	4·355	6
7	6·728	6·472	6·230	6·002	5·786	5·582	5·389	5·206	5·033	4·868	7
8	7·652	7·325	7·020	6·733	6·463	6·210	5·971	5·747	5·535	5·335	8
9	8·566	8·162	7·786	7·435	7·108	6·802	6·515	6·247	5·995	5·759	9
10	9·471	8·983	8·530	8·111	7·722	7·360	7·024	6·710	6·418	6·145	10
11	10·37	9·787	9·253	8·760	8·306	7·887	7·499	7·139	6·805	6·495	11
12	11·26	10·58	9·954	9·385	8·863	8·384	7·943	7·536	7·161	6·814	12
13	12·13	11·35	10·63	9·986	9·394	8·853	8·358	7·904	7·487	7·103	13
14	13·00	12·11	11·30	10·56	9·899	9·295	8·745	8·244	7·786	7·367	14
15	13·87	12·85	11·94	11·12	10·38	9·712	9·108	8·559	8·061	7·606	15

(n)	11%	12%	13%	14%	15%	16%	17%	18%	19%	20%	
1	0·901	0·893	0·885	0·877	0·870	0·862	0·855	0·847	0·840	0·833	1
2	1·713	1·690	1·668	1·647	1·626	1·605	1·585	1·566	1·547	1·528	2
3	2·444	2·402	2·361	2·322	2·283	2·246	2·210	2·174	2·140	2·106	3
4	3·102	3·037	2·974	2·914	2·855	2·798	2·743	2·690	2·639	2·589	4
5	3·696	3·605	3·517	3·433	3·352	3·274	3·199	3·127	3·058	2·991	5
6	4·231	4·111	3·998	3·889	3·784	3·685	3·589	3·498	3·410	3·326	6
7	4·712	4·564	4·423	4·288	4·160	4·039	3·922	3·812	3·706	3·605	7
8	5·146	4·968	4·799	4·639	4·487	4·344	4·207	4·078	3·954	3·837	8
9	5·537	5·328	5·132	4·946	4·772	4·607	4·451	4·303	4·163	4·031	9
10	5·889	5·650	5·426	5·216	5·019	4·833	4·659	4·494	4·339	4·192	10
11	6·207	5·938	5·687	5·453	5·234	5·029	4·836	4·656	4·486	4·327	11
12	6·492	6·194	5·918	5·660	5·421	5·197	4·988	4·793	4·611	4·439	12
13	6·750	6·424	6·122	5·842	5·583	5·342	5·118	4·910	4·715	4·533	13
14	6·982	6·628	6·302	6·002	5·724	5·468	5·229	5·008	4·802	4·611	14
15	7·191	6·811	6·462	6·142	5·847	5·575	5·324	5·092	4·876	4·675	15

Exam question and answer bank

1 Earnings per share **45 mins**

(a) 'Financial managers need only concentrate on meeting the needs of shareholders by maximising earnings per share - no other group matters.'

Discuss. **(10 marks)**

(b) Many decisions in financial management are taken in a framework of conflicting stakeholder viewpoints. Identify the stakeholders and some of the financial management issues involved in the following situations.

(i) A private company converting into a public company.

(ii) A highly geared company, such as Eurotunnel, attempting to restructure its capital finance.

(iii) A large conglomerate 'spinning off' its numerous divisions by selling them, or setting them up as separate companies (eg Hanson).

(iv) Japanese car-makers, such as Nissan and Honda, building new car plants in other countries. **(15 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

2 News for you **45 mins**

News For You operate a chain of newsagents and confectioners shops in the south of England, and is considering the possibility of expanding its business across a wide geographical area. The business was started in 20X2 and annual turnover grew to $10 million by the end of 20X6. Between 20X6 and 20X9 turnover grew at an average rate of 2% per year.

The business still remains under family control, but the high cost of expansion via the purchase or building of new outlets would mean that the family would need to raise $2 million in equity or debt finance. One of the possible risks of expansion lies in the fact that both tobacco and newspaper sales are falling. New income is being generated by expanding the product range inventoried by the stores, to include basic foodstuffs such as bread and milk. News For You purchases all of its products from a large wholesale distributor which is convenient, but the wholesale prices leave News For You with a relatively small gross margin. The key to profit growth for News For You lies in the ability to generate sales growth, but the company recognises that it faces stiff competition from large food retailers in respect of the prices that it charges for several of its products.

In planning its future, News For You was advised to look carefully at a number of external factors which may affect the business including government economic policy, and in recent months the following information has been published in respect of key economic data.

(i) Bank base rate has been reduced from 5% to 4.5%, and the forecast is for a further 0.5% reduction within six months.

(ii) The annual rate of inflation is now 1.2%, down from 1.3% in the previous quarter, and 1.7% 12 months ago. The rate is now at its lowest for twenty-five years, and no further falls in the rate are expected over the medium/long term.

(iii) Personal and corporation tax rates are expected to remain unchanged for at least twelve months.

(iv) Taxes on tobacco have been increased by 10% over the last twelve months, although no further increases are anticipated.

(v) The government has initiated an investigation into the food retail sector, focusing on the problems of 'excessive' profits on certain foodstuffs created by the high prices being charged for these goods by the large retail food stores.

Required

(a) Explain the relevance of each of the items of economic data listed above to News For You. **(13 marks)**

(b) Explain whether News For You should continue with its expansion plans. Clearly justify your arguments for or against the expansion. **(12 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

3 Financial intermediaries **20 mins**

Explain in detail the various functions performed by financial intermediaries in the financial markets.

4 Gustaffson **45 mins**

(a) Define what is meant by the term 'overtrading' and describe some of the typical symptoms.

(8 marks)

(b) Gustaffson is a toy manufacturing company. It manufactures Polly Playtime, the latest doll craze amongst young girls. The company is now at full production of the doll. The final accounts for 20X9 have just been published and are as follows. 20X8's accounts are also shown for comparison purposes.

INCOME STATEMENT Y/E 31 DECEMBER

	20X9	*20X8*
	$'000	$'000
Sales	30,000	20,000
Cost of sales	20,000	11,000
Operating profit	10,000	9,000
Interest	450	400
Profit before tax	9,550	8,600
Tax	2,000	1,200
Profit after tax	7,550	7,400
Dividends	2,500	2,500
Retained profit	5,050	4,900

STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 31 DECEMBER

	20X9		*20X8*	
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Non-current assets		1,500		1,400
Current assets				
Inventory	7,350		3,000	
Accounts receivable	10,000		6,000	
Cash	2,500		4,500	
		19,850		13,500
		21,350		14,900
Ordinary shares (25c)		5,000		5,000
Profit		6,450		1,400
8% bonds		1,200		3,500
Current liabilities				
Overdraft	2,000		–	
Dividends owing	2,500		2,500	
Trade accounts payable	4,200		2,500	
		8,700		5,000
		21,350		14,900

(i) By studying the above accounts and using ratio analysis, identify the main problems facing Gustaffson. **(13 marks)**

(ii) Provide possible solutions to the problems identified in (i). **(4 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

5 H Finance **30 mins**

H Finance Co is prepared to advance 80% of D Co's sales invoicing, provided its specialist collection services are used by D Co. H Finance Co would charge an additional 0.5% of D Co's turnover for this service. D Co would avoid administration costs it currently incurs amounting to $80,000 per annum.

The history of D Co's accounts receivable ledgers may be summarised as follows:

	20X8	*20X9*	*20Y0*
Turnover ($'000)	78,147	81,941	98,714
% accounts receivable at year end	17	20	22
% accounts receivable of 90+ days (of turnover)	1.5	2	2.5
Bad debts ($'000)	340	497	615

D Co estimates that the aggressive collection procedures adopted by the finance company are likely to result in lost turnover of some 10% of otherwise expected levels.

Currently, each $1 of turnover generates 18 cents additional profit before taxation. D Co turns its capital over, on average, three times each year. On receipt by H Finance Co of amounts due from D Co's customers, a further 15% of the amounts are to be remitted to D Co. The cheapest alternative form of finance would cost 20% per annum.

Required

(a) Calculate whether the factoring of D Co's accounts receivable ledger would be worthwhile.
(b) Explain how the factoring of sales invoicing may assist a firm's financial performance.

6 Victory **35 mins**

Victory is a retailer, specialising in vitamin supplements and health foods claimed to enhance performance. One of the products purchased by Victory for resale is a performance enhancing vitamin drink called 'Buzz'.

Victory sells a fixed quantity of 200 bottles of Buzz per week. The estimated storage costs for a bottle of Buzz are $2.00 per annum per bottle.

Delivery from Victory's existing supplier takes two weeks and the purchase price per bottle delivered is $20. The current supplier charges a fixed $75 order processing charge for each order, regardless of the order size.

Victory has recently been approached by another supplier of Buzz with the following offer:

1 The cost to Victory per bottle will be $19 each.
2 There will be a fixed order processing charge of $250 regardless of order size.
3 Delivery time will be one week.
4 Victory estimates that due to packaging differences, the storage cost per bottle will be $1.80 per annum per bottle.

Note

The economic order quantity Q, which will minimise costs, is:

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{2C_0D}{Ch}}$$

Where C_0 = The cost of making one order
D = Annual demand
Ch = The holding cost per unit per annum

Required

(a) Assuming Victory continues to purchase from the existing supplier, calculate:
  (i) Economic order quantity
  (ii) Reorder level
  (iii) Total cost of stocking Buzz for one year to the nearest $ **(6 marks)**
(b) (i) Calculate the economic order quantity if Victory changes to the new supplier and determine if it would be financially viable to change to this new supplier. **(4 marks)**
  (ii) Discuss TWO limitations of the above calculations and briefly describe THREE other non-financial factors to be taken into account before a final decision is made. **(5 marks)**
(c) Explain what is meant by a Just-in-Time (JIT) system and briefly describe FOUR of its main features. **(5 marks)**

(Total = 20 marks)

7 SF

45 mins

SF is a family-owned private company with five main shareholders.

SF has just prepared its cash budget for the year ahead, details of which are shown below. The current overdraft facility is $50,000 and the bank has stated that it would not be willing to increase the facility at present, without a substantial increase in the interest rate charged, due to the lack of assets to offer as security.

The shareholders are concerned by the cash projections, and have sought advice from external consultants.

All figures, $'000	*Month*											
	J	*F*	*M*	*A*	*M*	*J*	*J*	*A*	*S*	*O*	*N*	*D*
Collections from customers	55	60	30	10	15	20	20	25	30	40	55	80
Dividend on investment						10						
Total inflows	55	60	30	10	15	30	20	25	30	40	55	80
Payments to suppliers		20		20		25		28		27		25
Wages and salaries	15	15	15	15	15	20	20	15	15	15	15	15
Payments for fixed assets			2		5	10		15				
Dividend payable				25								
Corporation tax									30			
Other operating expenses	5	5	5	5	7	7	7	7	7	7	8	8
Total outflows	20	40	22	65	27	62	27	65	52	49	23	48
Net in or (out)	35	20	8	(55)	(12)	(32)	(7)	(40)	(22)	(9)	32	32
Bank balance (overdraft)												
Opening	20	55	75	83	28	16	(16)	(23)	(63)	(85)	(94)	(62)
Closing	55	75	83	28	16	(16)	(23)	(63)	(85)	(94)	(62)	(30)

The following additional information relating to the cash budget has been provided by SF.

(a) All sales are on credit. Two months' credit on average is granted to customers.

(b) Production is scheduled evenly throughout the year. Year-end inventories of finished goods are forecast to be $30,000 higher than at the beginning of the year.

(c) Purchases of raw materials are made at two-monthly intervals. SF typically takes up to 90 days to pay for goods supplied. Other expenses are paid in the month in which they arise.

(d) The capital expenditure budget comprises:

Office furniture	March	$2,000
Progress payments on building extensions	May	$5,000
Car	June	$10,000
New equipment	August	$15,000

Required

Assume you are an external consultant employed by SF. Prepare a report for the board advising on the possible actions it might take to improve its budgeted cash flow for the year, and consider the possible impact of these actions on the company's business. Your report should also identify possible short-term investment opportunities for the cash surpluses identified in the first part of the budget year.

(25 marks)

8 ZX

45 mins

ZX is a relatively small US-based company in the agricultural industry. It is highly mechanised and uses modern techniques and equipment. In the past, it has operated a very conservative policy in respect of the management of its working capital. Assume that you are a newly recruited management accountant. The finance director, who is responsible for both financial control and treasury functions, has asked you to review this policy.

You assemble the following information about the company's forecast end-of-year financial outcomes. The company's year end is in six months' time.

	US$'000
Receivables	2,500
Inventory	2,000
Cash at bank	500
Current assets	5,000
Non-current assets	1,250
Current liabilities	1,850
Forecast sales for the full year	8,000
Forecast operating profit (18% of sales)	1,440

You wish to evaluate the likely effect on the company if it introduced one or two alternative approaches to working capital management. The finance director suggests you adjust the figures in accordance with the following parameters.

	'Moderate' policy	*'Aggressive' policy*
Receivables and inventory	–20%	–30%
Cash	Reduce to $250,000	Reduce to $100,000
Non-current assets	No change	No change
Current liabilities	+10%	+20%
Forecast sales	+2%	+4%
Forecast profit	No change in percentage profit/sales	

Required

Write a report to the finance director that includes the following.

(a) A discussion of the main aspects to consider when determining policy in respect of the investment in, and financing of, working capital, in general and in the circumstances of ZX. **(10 marks)**

(b) Calculations of the return on net assets and the current ratio under each of three scenarios shown below.

- The company continues with its present policy.
- The company adopts the 'moderate' policy.
- The company adopts the 'aggressive' policy. **(8 marks)**

(c) A recommendation for the company of a proposed course of action. Your recommendation should be based on your evaluation as discussed above and on your opinion of what further action is necessary before a final decision can be taken. **(7 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

9 Project appraisal 22 mins

A company is considering two capital expenditure proposals. Both proposals are for similar products and both are expected to operate for four years. Only one proposal can be accepted.

The following information is available.

	Profit/(loss)	
	Proposal A	*Proposal B*
	$	$
Initial investment	46,000	46,000
Year 1	6,500	4,500
Year 2	3,500	2,500
Year 3	13,500	4,500
Year 4	(1,500)	14,500
Estimated scrap value at the end of year 4	4,000	4,000

Depreciation is charged on the straight line basis.

The company estimates its cost of capital at 20% pa.

	Discount factor
Year 1	0.833
Year 2	0.694
Year 3	0.579
Year 4	0.482

Required

(a) Calculate the following for both proposals.

(1) The payback period to one decimal place **(5 marks)**

(2) The return on capital employed on average **(2 marks)**

(b) Give two advantages for each of the methods of appraisal used in (i) above. **(5 marks)**

(Total = 12 marks)

10 Knuckle Down 45 mins

The management of Knuckle Down are reviewing the company's capital investment options for the coming year, and are considering six projects.

Project A would cost $29,000 now, and would earn the following cash profits.

1st year	$8,000	3rd year	$10,000
2nd year	$12,000	4th year	$ 6,000

The capital equipment purchased at the start of the project could be resold for $5,000 at the start of the fifth year.

Project B would involve a current outlay of $44,000 on capital equipment and $20,000 on working capital. The profits from the project would be as follows.

Year	*Sales*	*Variable costs*	*Contribution*	*Fixed costs*	*Profit*
	$	$	$	$	$
1	75,000	50,000	25,000	10,000	15,000
2	90,000	60,000	30,000	10,000	20,000
3	42,000	28,000	14,000	8,000	6,000

Fixed costs include an annual charge of $4,000 for depreciation. At the end of the third year the working capital investment would be recovered and the equipment would be sold for $5,000.

Project C would involve a current outlay of $50,000 on equipment and $15,000 on working capital. The investment in working capital would be increased to $21,000 at the end of the first year. Annual cash profits would be $18,000 for five years, at the end of which the investment in working capital would be recovered.

Project D would involve an outlay of $20,000 now and a further outlay of $20,000 after one year. Cash profits thereafter would be as follows.

2nd year	$15,000
3rd year	$12,000
4th to 8th years	$8,000 pa

Project E is a long-term project, involving an immediate outlay of $32,000 and annual cash profits of $4,500 in perpetuity.

Project F is another long-term project, involving an immediate outlay of $20,000 and annual cash profits as follows.

1st to 5th years	$5,000
6th to 10th years	$4,000
11th year onwards for ever	$3,000

The company discounts all projects of ten years duration or less at a cost of capital of 12%, and all other projects at a cost of 15%.

Ignore taxation.

Required

(a) Calculate the NPV of each project, and determine which should be undertaken by the company on financial grounds.

(b) Calculate the IRR of projects A, C and E.

11 Mezen **45 mins**

Mezen is currently considering the launch of a new product. A market survey was recently commissioned to assess the likely demand for the product and this showed that the product has an expected life of four years. The survey cost $30,000 and this is due for payment in four months' time. On the basis of the survey information as well as internal management accounting information relating to costs, the assistant accountant prepared the following profit forecasts for the product.

Year	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Sales	180	200	160	120
Cost of sales	(115)	(140)	(110)	(85)
Gross profit	65	60	50	35
Variable overheads	(27)	(30)	(24)	(18)
Fixed overheads	(25)	(25)	(25)	(25)
Market survey written off	(30)	–	–	–
Net profit/(loss)	(17)	5	1	(8)

These profit forecasts were viewed with disappointment by the directors and there was a general feeling that the new product should not be launched. The Chief Executive pointed out that the product achieved profits in only two years of its four-year life and that over the four-year period as a whole, a net loss was expected. However, before a meeting that had been arranged to decide formally the future of the product, the following additional information became available:

(i) The new product will require the use of an existing machine. This has a written down value of $80,000 but could be sold for $70,000 immediately if the new product is not launched. If the product is launched, it will be sold at the end of the four-year period for $10,000.

(ii) Additional working capital of $20,000 will be required immediately and will be needed over the four-year period. It will be released at the end of the period.

(iii) The fixed overheads include a figure of $15,000 per year for depreciation of the machine and $5,000 per year for the re-allocation of existing overheads of the business.

The company has a cost of capital of 10%.

Ignore taxation.

Required

(a) Calculate the net present value of the new product. **(10 marks)**

(b) Calculate the approximate internal rate of return of the product. **(5 marks)**

(c) Explain, with reasons, whether or not the product should be launched. **(3 marks)**

(d) Outline the strengths and weaknesses of the internal rate of return method as a basis for investment appraisal. **(7 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

12 Auriga **45 mins**

Auriga (Healthcare) has invested $220,000 over the past two years in the development of a personal stress-monitoring device (PSMD). The device is designed for busy individuals wishing to check their stress levels. Market research that was commissioned earlier in the year at a cost of $45,000 suggests that the price for the PSMD should be $22 per unit and that the expected product life cycle of the device is four years.

In order to produce the device, the business must purchase immediately specialist machinery and equipment at a cost of $300,000. This machinery and equipment has an expected life of four years and will have no residual value at the end of this period. The machinery and equipment can produce a maximum of 15,000 PSMDs per year over four years. To ensure that the maximum output is achieved, the business will spend $50,000 a year in advertising the device over the next four years.

Based on the maximum output of 15,000 units per year, the PSMD has the following expected costs per unit (excluding the advertising costs above):

	Notes	$
Materials	(1)	6.50
Labour	(2)	5.50
Overheads	(3)	8.50
		20.50

Notes

(1) The materials figure above includes a charge of $2 for a polymer that is currently in stock and can be used for this project. Each PSMD requires 200 grams of the polymer and the charge is based on the original cost of $1 per 100 grams for the polymer. It is a material that is currently used in other areas of the business and the cost of replacing the polymer is $1.50 per 100 grams. The polymer could easily be sold at a price of $1.25 per 100 grams.

(2) The labour costs relate to payments made to employees that will be directly involved in producing the PSMD. These employees have no work at present and, if the PSMD is not produced, they will be made redundant immediately at a cost of $230,000. If, however, the PSMD is produced, the employees are likely to be found other work at the end of the four-year period and so no redundancy costs will be incurred.

(3) The figure includes a depreciation charge for the new machinery and equipment. The policy of the business is to depreciate non-current assets in equal instalments over their expected life. All other overheads included in the above figure are incurred in production of the new device.

(4) Auriga uses a cost of capital of 10% to assess projects.

Ignore taxation.

Required

(a) Calculate the net present value of the project. **(15 marks)**

(b) Calculate the required reduction in annual net cash flows from operations before the project becomes unprofitable. **(6 marks)**

(c) Discuss your findings in (a) and (b) above. **(4 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

13 Bridgeford **27 mins**

Bridgeford is considering whether or not to invest in the development of a new product, which would have an expected market life of 5 years.

The managing director is in favour of the project, because its estimated accounting rate of return (ARR) would be over 15%.

His estimates for the project are as follows:

Year	*0*	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Cost of equipment	2,000					
Total investment in working capital	200	250	300	350	350	
Sales		2,500	3,000	3,500	3,500	3,000
Materials costs		500	600	700	700	600
Labour costs		750	900	1,100	1,100	1,000
Overhead costs		300	350	350	350	350
Interest		240	240	240	240	240
Depreciation		400	400	400	400	400
Total costs		2,190	2,490	2,790	2,790	2,590
Profit		310	510	710	710	410

The average annual profit before tax is $530,000 and with corporation tax at 35%, the average annual profit after tax is $344,500. This gives an ARR of 15.7% on the initial investment of $2,200,000.

As finance director, you have some criticisms of the managing director's estimates. His figures ignore both inflation and capital allowances on the equipment, and you decide to prepare an amended assessment of the project with the following data.

(a) Selling prices and overhead expenses will increase with inflation by 5% pa.

(b) Materials costs, labour costs and the working capital requirements, will increase by 10% pa.

(c) For taxation purposes, capital allowances will be available against the taxable profits of the project, at 25% pa on a reducing balance basis.

(d) The rate of corporation tax on taxable profits is 35% and tax is paid one year in arrears.

(e) The equipment will have a zero salvage value at the end of the project's life.

(f) The company's real after-tax weighted average cost of capital is estimated to be 7% pa, and its nominal after-tax weighted average cost of capital is 12%.

Required

Estimate the net present value of the project, and recommend, on the basis of the NPV, whether or not the project should be undertaken.

(15 marks)

14 Dinard **45 mins**

(a) Explain the difference between real rates of return and nominal rates of return and outline the circumstances in which the use of each would be appropriate when appraising capital projects under inflationary conditions. **(8 marks)**

(b) Dinard Co has just developed a new product to be called Rance and is now considering whether to put it into production. The following information is available.

(i) Costs incurred in the development of Rance amount to $480,000.

(ii) Production of Rance will require the purchase of new machinery at a cost of $2,400,000 payable immediately. This machinery is specific to the production of Rance and will be obsolete and valueless when that production ceases. The machinery has a production life of four years and a production capacity of 30,000 units per annum.

(iii) Production costs of Rance (at year 1 prices) are estimated as follows.

	$
Variable materials	8.00
Variable labour	12.00
Variable overheads	12.00

In addition, fixed production costs (at year 1 prices), including straight line depreciation on plant and machinery, will amount to $800,000 per annum.

(iv) The selling price of Rance will be $80.00 per unit (at year 1 prices). Demand is expected to be 25,000 units per annum for the next four years.

(v) The retail price index is expected to increase at 5% per annum for the next four years and the selling price of Rance is expected to increase at the same rate. Annual inflation rates for production costs are expected to be as follows.

	%
Variable materials	4
Variable labour	10
Variable overheads	4
Fixed costs	5

(vi) The company's weighted average cost of capital in nominal terms is expected to be 15%.

Required

Advise the directors of Dinard Co whether it should produce Rance on the basis of the information above. **(17 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

Note. Unless otherwise specified all costs and revenues should be assumed to rise at the end of each year. Ignore taxation.

15 Muggins 30 mins

Muggins is evaluating a project to produce a new product. The product has an expected life of four years. Costs associated with the product are expected to be as follows.

Variable costs per unit

Labour: $30

Materials

6 kg of material X at $1.64 per kg
3 units of component Y at $4.20 per unit

Other variable costs: $4.40

Indirect cost each year

Apportionment of head office salaries $118,000
Apportionment of general building occupancy $168,000

Other overheads $80,000, of which $60,000 represent additional cash expenditures (including rent of machinery)

To manufacture the product, a product manager will have to be recruited at an annual gross cost of $34,000, and one assistant manager, whose current annual salary is $30,000, will be transferred from another department, where he will be replaced by a new appointee at a cost of $27,000 a year.

The necessary machinery will be rented. It will be installed in the company's factory. This will take up space that would otherwise be rented to another local company for $135,000 a year. This rent (for the factory space) is not subject to any uncertainty, as a binding four-year lease would be created.

60,000 kg of material X are already in inventory, at a purchase value of $98,400. They have no use other than the manufacture of the new product. Their disposal value is $50,000.

Expected sales volumes of the product, at the proposed selling price of $125 a unit, are as follows.

Year	*Expected sales*
	Units
1	10,000
2	18,000
3	18,000
4	19,000

All sales and costs will be on a cash basis and should be assumed to occur at the end of the year. Ignore taxation.

The company requires that certainty-equivalent cash flows have a positive NPV at a discount rate of 5%. Adjustment factors to arrive at certainty-equivalent amounts are as follows.

Year	*Costs*	*Benefits*
1	1.1	0.9
2	1.3	0.8
3	1.4	0.7
4	1.5	0.6

Required

Assess on financial grounds whether the project is acceptable.

16 Banden 45 mins

Banden is a highly geared company that wishes to expand its operations. Six possible capital investments have been identified, but the company only has access to a total of $620,000. The projects are not divisible and may not be postponed until a future period. After the project's end it is unlikely that similar investment opportunities will occur.

Expected net cash inflows (including salvage value)

Project	*Year 1*	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*	*Year 5*	*Initial outlay*
	$	$	$	$	$	$
A	70,000	70,000	70,000	70,000	70,000	246,000
B	75,000	87,000	64,000			180,000
C	48,000	48,000	63,000	73,000		175,000
D	62,000	62,000	62,000	62,000		180,000
E	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	40,000	180,000
F	35,000	82,000	82,000			150,000

Projects A and E are mutually exclusive. All projects are believed to be of similar risk to the company's existing capital investments.

Any surplus funds may be invested in the money market to earn a return of 9% per year. The money market may be assumed to be an efficient market.

Banden's cost of capital is 12% a year.

Required

(a) (i) Calculate the expected net present value for each of the six projects.

(ii) Calculate the expected profitability index associated with each of the six projects.

(iii) Rank the projects according to both of these investment appraisal methods. Explain briefly why these rankings differ. **(12 marks)**

(b) Give reasoned advice to Banden recommending which projects should be selected. **(7 marks)**

(c) A director of the company has suggested that using the company's normal cost of capital might not be appropriate in a capital rationing situation. Explain whether you agree with the director. **(6 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

17 Flocks 45 mins

The management of Flocks is trying to decide which of two machines to purchase, to help with production. Only one of the two machines will be purchased.

Machine X costs $63,000 and machine Y costs $110,000. Both machines would require a working capital investment of $12,500 throughout their operational life, which is four years for machine X and six years for machine Y. The expected scrap value of either machine would be zero.

The estimated pre-tax operating net cash inflows with each machine are as follows.

Year	*Machine X*	*Machine Y*
	$	$
1	25,900	40,300
2	28,800	32,900
3	30,500	32,000
4	29,500	32,700
5	–	48,500
6	–	44,200

With machine Y, there is some doubt about its design features, and consequently there is some risk that it might prove unsuitable. Because of the higher business risk with machine Y, the machine Y project cash flows should be discounted at 15%, whereas machine X cash flows should be discounted at only 13%.

Flocks intends to finance the machine it eventually selects, X or Y, by borrowing at 10%.

Tax is payable at 30% on operating cash flows one year in arrears. Capital allowances are available at 25% a year on a reducing balance basis.

Required

(a) For both machine X and machine Y, calculate:

(i) The (undiscounted) payback period

(ii) The net present value

and recommend which of the two machines Flocks should purchase. **(16 marks)**

(b) Suppose that Flocks has the opportunity to lease machine X under a finance lease arrangement, at an annual rent of $20,000 for four years, payable at the end of each year. Recommend whether the company should lease or buy the machine, assuming it chooses machine X. **(9 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

18 ANT 45 mins

ANT, a multi-product company, is considering four investment projects, details of which are given below.

Development costs already incurred on the projects are as follows.

A	*B*	*C*	*D*
$	$	$	$
100,000	75,000	80,000	60,000

Each project will require an immediate outlay on plant and machinery, the cost of which is estimated as follows.

A	*B*	*C*	*D*
$	$	$	$
2,100,000	1,400,000	2,400,000	600,000

In all four cases the plant and machinery has a useful life of five years at the end of which it will be valueless.

Unit sales per annum, for each project, are expected to be as follows.

A	*B*	*C*	*D*
150,000	75,000	80,000	120,000

Selling price and variable costs per unit for each project are estimated below.

	A	*B*	*C*	*D*
	$	$	$	$
Selling price	30.00	40.00	25.00	50.00
Materials	7.60	12.00	4.50	25.00
Labour	9.80	12.00	5.00	10.00
Variable overheads	6.00	7.00	2.50	10.50

The company charges depreciation on plant and machinery on a straight line basis over the useful life of the plant and machinery. Development costs of projects are written off in the year that they are incurred. The company apportions general administration costs to projects at a rate of 5% of selling price. None of the above projects will lead to any actual increase in the company's administration costs.

Working capital requirements for each project will amount to 20% of the expected annual sales value. In each case this investment will be made immediately and will be recovered in full when the projects end in five years time.

Funds available for investment are limited to $5,200,000. The company's cost of capital is estimated to be 18%.

Required

(a) Calculate the NPV of each project. **(12 marks)**

(b) Calculate the profitability index for each project and advise the company which of the new projects, if any, to undertake. You may assume that each of the projects can be undertaken on a reduced scale for a proportionate reduction in cash flows. Your advice should state clearly your order of preference for the four projects, what proportion you would take of any project that is scaled down, and the total NPV generated by your choice. **(5 marks)**

(c) Discuss the limitations of the profitability index as a means of dealing with capital rationing problems. **(8 marks)**

Ignore taxation. **(Total = 25 marks)**

19 Sagitta 27 mins

Sagitta is a large fashion retailer that opened stores in India and China three years ago. This has proved to be less successful than expected and so the directors of the company have decided to withdraw from the overseas market and to concentrate on the home market. To raise the finance necessary to close the overseas stores, the directors have also decided to make a one-for-five rights issue at a discount of 30% on the current market value. The most recent income statement of the business is as follows.

Income statement for the year ended 31 May 20X4

	$m
Sales	1,400.00
Net profit before interest and taxation	52.0
Interest payable	24.0
Net profit before taxation	28.0
Company tax	7.0
Net profit after taxation	21.0
Ordinary dividends payable	14.0
Accumulated profit	7.0

The capital and reserves of the business as at 31 May 20X4 are as follows.

	$m
$0.25 ordinary shares	60.0
Revaluation reserve	140.0
Accumulated profits	320.0
	520.0

The shares of the business are currently traded on the Stock Exchange at a P/E ratio of 16 times. An investor owning 10,000 ordinary shares in the business has received information of the forthcoming rights issue but cannot decide whether to take up the rights issue, sell the rights or allow the rights offer to lapse.

Required

(a) Calculate the theoretical ex-rights price of an ordinary share in Sagitta. **(3 marks)**

(b) Calculate the price at which the rights in Sagitta are likely to be traded. **(3 marks)**

(c) Evaluate each of the options available to the investor with 10,000 ordinary shares. **(4 marks)**

(d) Discuss, from the viewpoint of the business, how critical the pricing of a rights issue is likely to be. **(5 marks)**

(Total = 15 marks)

20 Headwater 45 mins

It is now August 20X6. In 20X0, the current management team of Headwater, a manufacturer of car and motorcycle parts, bought the company from its conglomerate parent company in a management buyout deal. Six years on, the managers are considering the possibility of obtaining a listing for the company's shares on the stock market. The following information is available.

HEADWATER
INCOME STATEMENT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 JUNE 20X6

	$ million
Turnover	36.5
Cost of sales	(31.6)
Profit before interest and taxation	4.9
Interest	(1.3)
Profit before taxation	3.6
Taxation	(0.5)
Profit attributable to ordinary shareholders	3.1
Dividends	(0.3)
Retained profit	2.8

STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 30 JUNE 20X6

	$ million	$ million
Non-current assets (at cost less accumulated depreciation)		
Land and buildings		3.6
Plant and machinery		9.9
		13.5
Current assets		
Inventories	4.4	
Accounts receivable	4.7	
Cash at bank	1.0	
		10.1
		23.6
Ordinary $1 shares		
Voting		1.8
'A' shares (non-voting)		0.9
Reserves		9.7
Accounts payable due after more than one year: 12% Debenture 20X8		2.2
Current liabilities		
Trade accounts payable	7.0	
Bank overdraft	2.0	
		9.0
		23.6

Average performance ratios for the industry sector in which Headwater operates are given below.

Industry sector ratios

Return before interest and tax on long-term capital employed	24%
Return after tax on equity	16%
Operating profit as percentage of sales	11%
Current ratio	1.6:1
Quick (acid test) ratio	1.0:1
Total debt: equity (gearing)	24%
Dividend cover	4.0
Interest cover	4.5
Price/earnings ratio	10.0

Required

(a) Evaluate the financial state and performance of Headwater by comparing it with that of its industry sector. **(10 marks)**

(b) Discuss the probable reasons why the management of Headwater is considering a Stock Exchange listing. **(5 marks)**

(c) Explain how you think Headwater should restructure its statement of financial position before becoming a listed company. **(6 marks)**

(d) Discuss changes in financial policy which the company would be advised to adopt once it has been floated on the Stock Exchange. **(4 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

21 ABC — 20 mins

The managing directors of three profitable listed companies discussed their company's dividend policies at a business lunch.

Company A has deliberately paid no dividends for the last five years.

Company B always pays a dividend of 50% of earnings after taxation.

Company C maintains a low but constant dividend per share (after adjusting for the general price index), and offers regular scrip issues and shareholder concessions.

Each managing director is convinced that his company's policy is maximising shareholder wealth.

Required

Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative dividend policies of the three, and the circumstances under which each managing director might be correct in his belief that his company's dividend policy is maximising shareholder wealth. State clearly any assumptions that you make.

22 DF — 45 mins

DF is a manufacturer of sports equipment. All of the shares of DF are held by the Wong family.

The company has recently won a major 3-year contract to supply FF with a range of sports equipment. FF is a large company with over 100 sports shops. The contract may be renewed after 3 years.

The new contract is expected to double DF's existing total annual sales, but demand from FF will vary considerably from month to month.

The contract will, however, mean a significant additional investment in both non-current and current assets. A loan from the bank is to be used to finance the additional fixed assets, as the Wong family is currently unable to supply any further share capital. Also, the Wong family does not wish to raise new capital by issuing shares to non-family members.

The financing of the additional current assets is yet to be decided. In particular, the contract with FF will require orders to be delivered within two days. This delivery period gives DF insufficient time to manufacture items, thus significant inventories need to be held at all times. Also, FF requires 90 days' credit from its suppliers. This will result in a significant additional investment in accounts receivable by DF.

If the company borrows from the bank to finance current assets, either using a loan or an overdraft, it expects to be charged annual interest at 12%. Consequently, DF is considering alternative methods of financing current assets. These include debt factoring, invoice discounting and offering a 3% cash discount to FF for settlement within 10 days rather than the normal 90 days.

Required

(a) Calculate the annual equivalent rate of interest implicit in offering a 3% discount to FF for settlement of debts within 10 days rather than 90 days.

Briefly explain the factors, other than the rate of interest, that DF would need to consider before deciding on whether to offer a cash discount. **(6 marks)**

(b) Write a report to the Wong family shareholders explaining the various methods of financing available to DF to finance the additional current assets arising from the new FF contract. The report should include the following headings:

- Bank loan
- Overdraft
- Debt factoring
- Invoice discounting **(14 marks)**

(c) Discuss the factors that a venture capital organisation will take into account when deciding whether to invest in DF. **(5 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

23 CRY 35 mins

The following figures have been extracted from the most recent accounts of CRY

STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS ON 30 JUNE 20X9

	$'000	$'000
Non-current assets		10,115
Investments		821
Current assets	3,658	
Less current liabilities	1,735	
		1,923
		12,859

Ordinary share capital	$'000	$'000
3,000,000 shares of $1		3,000
Reserves		7,125
Shareholders' funds		10,125
7% Bonds		1,300
Corporation tax		1,434
		12,859

Summary of profits and dividends

Year ended 30 June:	*20X5*	*20X6*	*20X7*	*20X8*	*20X9*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Profit after interest and before tax	1,737	2,090	1,940	1,866	2,179
Less tax	573	690	640	616	719
Profit after interest and tax	1,164	1,400	1,300	1,250	1,460
Less dividends	620	680	740	740	810
Retained earnings	544	720	560	510	650

The current (1 July 20X9) market value of CRY's ordinary shares is $3.00 per share ex div. The bonds are redeemable at par in ten years time. Their current market value is $77.10. Annual interest has just been paid on the bonds. There have been no issues or redemptions of ordinary shares or bonds during the past five years.

The current rate of corporation tax is 30%. Assume that there have been no changes in the system or rates of taxation during the last five years.

Required

(a) Calculate the cost of capital which CRY should use as a discount rate when appraising new investment opportunities.

(b) Discuss any difficulties and uncertainties in your estimates.

24 Katash — 45 mins

Katash is a major international company with its head office in the UK. Its shares and bonds are quoted on a major international stock exchange.

Katash is evaluating the potential for investment in an area in which it has not previously been involved. This investment will require £900 million to purchase premises, equipment and provide working capital.

Extracts from the most recent (20X1) statement of financial position of Katash are shown below:

	£million
Non-current assets	2,880
Current assets	3,760
	6,640
Equity	
Share capital (Shares of £1)	450
Retained earnings	2,290
	2,740
Non-current liabilities	
10% Secured bonds repayable at par 20X6	1,800
Current liabilities	2,100
	6,640
Current share price (pence)	500
Bond price (£100)	105
Equity beta	1.2

Katash proposes to finance the £900 million investment with a combination of debt and equity as follows:

- £390 million in debt paying interest at 9.5% per annum, secured on the new premises and repayable in 20X8.
- £510 million in equity via a rights issue. A discount of 15% on the current share price is likely.

A marginally positive NPV of the proposed investment has been calculated using a discount rate of 15%. This is the entity's cost of equity plus a small premium, a rate judged to reflect the risk of this venture. The Chief Executive of Katash thinks this is too marginal and is doubtful whether the investment should go ahead. However, there is some disagreement among the Directors about how this project was evaluated, in particular about the discount rate that has been used.

Director A: Suggests the entity's current WACC is more appropriate.

Director B: Suggests calculating a discount rate using data from Chlopop, a quoted entity, the main competitor in the new business area. Relevant data for this entity is as follows:

- Shares in issue: 600 million currently quoted at 560 pence each
- Debt outstanding: £525 million variable rate bank loan
- Equity beta: 1.6

Other relevant information

- The risk-free rate is estimated at 5% per annum and the return on the market 12% per annum. These rates are not expected to change in the foreseeable future.
- Katash pays corporate tax at 30% and this rate is not expected to change in the foreseeable future.
- Issue costs should be ignored.

Required

(a) Calculate the current WACC for Katash. **(7 marks)**

(b) Calculate a project specific cost of equity for the new investment. **(6 marks)**

(c) Discuss the views of the two directors. **(4 marks)**

(d) Discuss whether financial management theory suggests that Katash can reduce its WACC to a minimum level. **(8 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

25 Black Raven 45 mins

Black Raven is a prosperous private company, whose owners are also the directors. The directors have decided to sell their business, and have begun a search for organisations interested in its purchase. They have asked for your assessment of the price per ordinary share a purchaser might be expected to offer. Relevant information is as follows.

MOST RECENT STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION

	$'000	$'000
Non-current assets (net book value)		
Land and buildings		800
Plant and equipment		450
Motor vehicles		55
Patents		2
		1,307
Current assets		
Inventory	250	
Receivables	125	
Cash	8	
		383
		1,690
Share capital (300,000 ordinary shares of $1)		300
Reserves		760
Long-term liability		
Loan secured on property		400
Current liabilities		
Payables	180	
Taxation	50	
		230
		1,690

The profits after tax and interest but before dividends over the last five years have been as follows.

Year	$
1	90,000
2	80,000
3	105,000
4	90,000
5 (most recent)	100,000

The company's five year plan forecasts an after-tax profit of $100,000 for the next 12 months, with an increase of 4% a year over each of the next four years. The annual dividend has been $45,000 (gross) for the last six years.

As part of their preparations to sell the company, the directors of Black Raven have had the non-current assets revalued by an independent expert, with the following results.

	$
Land and buildings	1,075,000
Plant and equipment	480,000
Motor vehicles	45,000

The gross dividend yields and P/E ratios of three quoted companies in the same industry as Black Raven Ltd over the last three years have been as follows.

	Albatross		*Bullfinch*		*Crow*	
	Div. yield	*P/E ratio*	*Div. yield*	*P/E ratio*	*Div. yield*	*P/E ratio*
	%		%		%	
Recent year	12	8.5	11.0	9.0	13.0	10.0
Previous year	12	8.0	10.6	8.5	12.6	9.5
Three years ago	12	8.5	9.3	8.0	12.4	9.0
Average	12	8.33	10.3	8.5	12.7	9.5

Large companies in the industry apply an after-tax cost of capital of about 18% to acquisition proposals when the investment is not backed by tangible assets, as opposed to a rate of only 14% on the net tangible assets.

Your assessment of the net cash flows which would accrue to a purchasing company, allowing for taxation and the capital expenditure required after the acquisition to achieve the company's target five year plan, is as follows.

	$
Year 1	120,000
Year 2	120,000
Year 3	140,000
Year 4	70,000
Year 5	120,000

Required

Use the information provided to suggest a range of valuations which prospective purchasers might make.

26 Bases of valuation **45 mins**

The directors of Carmen, a large conglomerate, are considering the acquisition of the entire share capital of Manon, which manufactures a range of engineering machinery. Neither company has any long-term debt capital. The directors of Carmen believe that if Manon is taken over, the business risk of Carmen will not be affected.

The accounting reference date of Manon is 31 July. Its statement of financial position as on 31 July 20X4 is expected to be as follows.

		$	$
Non-current assets (net of depreciation)			651,600
Current assets:	inventory and work in progress	515,900	
	receivables	745,000	
	bank balances	158,100	
			1,419,000
			2,070,600
Current liabilities:	payables	753,600	
	bank overdraft	862,900	
			1,616,500
Capital and reserves:	issued ordinary shares of $1 each		50,000
	distributable reserves		404,100
			2,070,600

Manon's summarised financial record for the five years to 31 July 20X4 is as follows.

Year ended 31 July	*20X0*	*20X1*	*20X2*	*20X3*	*20X4 (estimated)*
	$	$	$	$	$
Profit before non recurring items	30,400	69,000	49,400	48,200	53,200
Non recurring items	2,900	(2,200)	(6,100)	(9,800)	(1,000)
Profit after non recurring items	33,300	66,800	43,300	38,400	52,200
Less dividends	20,500	22,600	25,000	25,000	25,000
Added to reserves	12,800	44,200	18,300	13,400	27,200

The following additional information is available.

(1) There have been no changes in the issued share capital of Manon during the past five years.

(2) The estimated values of Manon's non-current assets and inventory and work in progress as on 31 July 20X4 are as follows.

	Replacement cost	*Realisable value*
	$	$
Non-current assets	725,000	450,000
Inventory and work in progress	550,000	570,000

(3) It is expected that 2% of Manon's receivables at 31 July 20X4 will be uncollectable if the company is liquidated.

(4) The cost of capital of Carmen plc is 9%. The directors of Manon estimate that the shareholders of Manon require a minimum return of 12% per annum from their investment in the company.

(5) The current P/E ratio of Carmen is 12. Quoted companies with business activities and profitability similar to those of Manon have P/E ratios of approximately 10, although these companies tend to be much larger than Manon.

Required

(a) Estimate the value of the total equity of Manon as on 31 July 20X4 using each of the following bases:

(i) Statement of financial position value;
(ii) Replacement cost of the assets;
(iii) Realisable value of the assets;
(iv) The dividend valuation model;
(v) The P/E ratio model. **(13 marks)**

(b) Explain the role and limitations of each of the above five valuation bases in the process by which a price might be agreed for the purchase by Carmen of the total equity capital of Manon. **(6 marks)**

(c) State and justify briefly the approximate range within which the purchase price is likely to be agreed. **(6 marks)**

Ignore taxation. **(Total = 25 marks)**

27 Market efficiency 30 mins

Describe the various forms of market efficiency and explain whether it is possible for institutions to out-perform the market.

28 Expo plc 45 mins

Expo plc is an importer/exporter of textiles and textile machinery. It is based in the UK but trades extensively with countries throughout Europe. It has a small subsidiary based in Switzerland. The company is about to invoice a customer in Switzerland 750,000 Swiss francs, payable in three months' time. Expo plc's treasurer is considering two methods of hedging the exchange risk. These are:

Method 1: Borrow Swiss Francs now, converting the loan into sterling and repaying the Swiss Franc loan from the expected receipt in three months' time.

Method 2: Enter into a 3-month forward exchange contract with the company's bank to sell Fr 750,000.

The spot rate of exchange is Fr 2.3834 to £1. The 3-month forward rate of exchange is Fr 2.3688 to £1. Annual interest rates for 3 months' borrowing in: Switzerland is 3% for investing in UK, 5%.

Required

(a) Advise the treasurer on:

(i) Which of the two methods is the most financially advantageous for Expo plc, and
(ii) The factors to consider before deciding whether to hedge the risk using the foreign currency markets

Include relevant calculations in your advice. **(10 marks)**

(b) Explain the causes of exchange rate fluctuations. **(6 marks)**

(c) Advise the treasurer on other methods to hedge exchange rate risk. **(9 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

29 Yields 45 mins

(a) Describe what a yield curve is. **(6 marks)**

(b) Explain the extent to which the shape of the yield curve depends on expectations about the future. **(13 marks)**

(c) Explain the likely implications for a typical company of lower interest rates. **(6 marks)**

(Total = 25 marks)

1 Earnings per share

Top tips. You would not get a complete question on stakeholders, but might well need to bring them into discussions about the consequences of a merger or the results of an investment. You could take a less even-handed approach than we have in (a) provided you justified your arguments and gave some attention to opposing arguments. However if you take a fairly extreme position, you have to discuss the problems of doing so. On the one hand will government wish to intervene to prevent anti-social behaviour; on the other hand how do you measure success in fulfilling the requirements of stakeholders? What happens if those requirements conflict?

In (b) note how the interests of stakeholders who are **not directly involved** in decisions may be affected. Note also the potential **conflicts –** a sell-off may benefit shareholders but not employees. Instead of trying to avoid damaging stakeholder interests, a more practical solution may be to **compensate** them for damage incurred. Alternatively the damage may spur them to action – for example competitors damaged by a new car plant.

(a) **Profit maximisation**

One of the principles of the market economy is that if the owners of businesses attempt to achieve **maximum profitability** and **earnings** this will help to increase the wealth of society. As a result, it is usually assumed that a proper objective for private sector organisations is profit maximisation. This view is substantially correct. In general, the market economy has out-performed planned economies in most places in the world. Two key objectives of financial managers must therefore be the **effective management** of shareholders' funds and the provision of financial information which will help to increase shareholder wealth.

Problems with profit maximisation

However, profit-seeking organisations can also cause problems for society. For example, **monopolists** are able to earn large returns which are disproportionate to the benefits they bring to society. The **costs of pollution** fall on society rather than on the company which is causing it. A company may increase profitability by making some of its work-force redundant but the costs of unemployed people fall on society through the social security system.

The question that then follows is 'Should individual companies be concerned with these market imperfections?'

Government's role

There are two opposing viewpoints. On the one hand it can be argued that companies should only be concerned with **maximisation of shareholders' wealth**. It is the role of government to pick up the problems of market imperfections (eg by breaking up monopolies, by fining polluters and by paying social security benefits).

Stakeholder interests

An alternative viewpoint is that a company is a coalition of **different stakeholder** groups: shareholders, lenders, managers, employees, customers, suppliers, government and society as a whole. The objectives of all these groups, which are often in conflict, need to be considered by company managers when making decisions. From this viewpoint, financial managers cannot be content with meeting the needs of shareholders only.

Consideration of stakeholders

The truth is somewhere in between. The over-riding objective of companies is to create **long-term wealth for shareholders**. However this can only be done if we consider the likely behaviour of other stakeholders. For example, if we create extra short-term profits by cutting employee benefits or delaying payments to creditors there are likely to be **repercussions** which reduce longer term shareholder wealth. Or if we fail to motivate managers and employees adequately, the costs of the resulting inefficiencies will ultimately be borne by shareholders.

Conclusion

In summary, the financial manager is concerned with **managing the company's funds** on behalf of shareholders, and **producing information** which shows the likely effect of management decisions on shareholder wealth. However management decisions will be made after also considering other stakeholder groups and a good financial manager will be aware that financial information is only one input to the final decision.

(b) (i) **A private company converting into a public company**

When a private company converts into a public company, some of the existing shareholder/managers will sell their shares to outside investors. In addition, new shares may be issued. The **dilution of ownership** might cause loss of control by the existing management.

The stakeholders involved in potential conflicts are as follows.

(1) **Existing shareholder/managers**

They will want to sell some of their shareholding at as high a price as possible. This may motivate them to overstate their company's prospects. Those shareholder/ managers who wish to retire from the business may be in conflict with those who wish to stay in control – the latter may oppose the conversion into a public company.

(2) **New outside shareholders**

Most of these will hold **minority stakes** in the company and will receive their rewards as **dividends only**. This may put them in conflict with the existing shareholder/ managers who receive rewards as salaries as well as dividends. On conversion to a public company there should be clear policies on dividends and directors' remuneration.

(3) **Employees, including managers who are not shareholders**

Part of the reason for the success of the company will be the efforts made by employees. They may feel that they should benefit when the company goes public. One way of organising this is to create **employee share options** or other bonus schemes.

(ii) **A highly geared company attempting to restructure its capital finance**

The major conflict here is between **shareholders** and **lenders**. If a company is very highly geared, the shareholders may be tempted to take very high risks. If the gamble fails, they have limited liability and can only lose the value of their shares. If they are lucky, they may make returns many times the value of their shares. The problem is that the shareholders are effectively gambling with money provided by lenders, but those lenders will get no extra return to compensate for the risk.

Removal of risk

In restructuring the company, something must be done either to shift risk away from the lenders or to reward the lenders for taking a risk.

Risk can be **shifted away** from lenders by taking **security** on previously unsecured loans or by **writing restrictive covenants** into loan agreements (eg the company agrees to set a ceiling to dividend pay-outs until gearing is reduced, and to confine its business to agreed activities).

Lenders can be **compensated** for taking risks by either negotiating increased interest rates or by the issue of 'sweeteners' with the loans, such as share warrants or the issue of convertible loan stock.

Other stakeholders

Other stakeholders who will be interested in the arrangements include **trade creditors** (who will be interested that loan creditors do not improve their position at the expense of themselves) and **managers**, who are likely to be more risk averse than shareholders if their livelihood depends on the company's continuing existence.

(iii) **A large conglomerate spinning off its divisions**

Large conglomerates may sometimes have a market capitalisation which is less than the total realisable value of the subsidiaries. It arises because more synergy could be found by the combination of the group's businesses with competitors than by running a diversified group where there is no obvious benefit from remaining together.

For many years, Hanson Trust was the exception to this situation, but subsequently it decided to break up the group.

The stakeholders involved in potential conflicts are as follows.

(1) **Shareholders**

They will see the chance of immediate gains in share price if subsidiaries are sold.

(2) **Subsidiary company directors and employees**

They may either gain opportunities (eg if their company becomes independent) or suffer the threat of job loss (eg if their company is sold to a competitor).

(iv) **Japanese car makers building new car plants in other countries**

The stakeholders involved in potential conflicts are as follows.

(1) **The shareholders and management of the Japanese company**

They will be able to gain from the combination of advanced technology with a cheaper workforce.

(2) **Local employees and managers engaged by the Japanese company**

They will gain **enhanced skills** and better **work prospects**.

(3) **The government of the local country, representing the tax payers**

The **reduction** in **unemployment** will ease the taxpayers' burden and increase the government's popularity (provided that subsidies offered by the government do not outweigh the benefits!)

(4) **Shareholders, managers and employees of local car-making firms**

These will be in **conflict** with the **other stakeholders** above as existing manufacturers lose market share.

(5) **Employees of car plants based in Japan**

These are likely to **lose work** if car-making is relocated to lower wage areas. They will need to compete on the basis of **higher efficiency**.

2 News for you

Top tips. In (a) you may find it helpful to look at each of the circumstances separately, and then to consider the positive and negative effects of each, before concluding what is the most likely overall effect of that circumstance. Bear in mind the particular nature of News For You's business eg type of products sold, profit margins, major competitors.

In (b) you should not only consider the pros and cons of expansion, but also try to draw some conclusions and make recommendations. You could also think about some alternative developments that News For You could consider.

(a) (i) **Reduction in bank base rate**

(1) **Change in costs of borrowing**

Directly through the change in the cost of borrowing and therefore the cost of capital. A **fall in interest rates** will make borrowing cheaper, and therefore reduce the cost of **raising the finance** for the proposed expansion. This is likely to apply to whatever means of finance News for You chooses, since corporate borrowing rates are generally set at a certain **premium above base rate.** If News For You applies DCF techniques in evaluating the expansion, the reduction in the cost of capital will lead to an increase in the level of the NPV for the proposals.

(2) **Level of demand**

Indirectly through the effect of interest rates on the level of demand within the economy. Economic theory contends that a fall in the level of interest rates will increase the **demand for money**, and hence the overall level of demand within the economy. Other theories, on the other hand, believe that the level of consumer demand is unaffected by changes in interest rates. New For You is trading in **low value basic products** for which the level of demand is relatively inelastic. Even if a fall in interest rates does increase overall demand, this is unlikely to have any significant effect on the level of demand for News For You's products.

(3) **Economic confidence**

Economic theory would also suggest that the reduction in the interest rate will **increase general economic confidence and encourage expansion.** Again though it is likely that the level of confidence will not have much impact on the type of products News For You sells.

(4) **Summary**

To summarise, the reduction in the bank's base rate is likely to reduce the cost of the expansion plans, but will probably have little effect on the level of sales.

(ii) **Effects of present and forecast rates of inflation**

(1) **Interest rates**

Interest rates are **unlikely to rise** if inflation remains so low.

(2) **Costs of purchases**

The **cost of the products** that News For You purchases should **remain stable**. **Wage rates** may be less affected; there may be pressures other than inflation rates that cause wage increases.

(3) **Price increases**

In conditions of low inflation, it is **hard to make** any **price increases** without losing business. News For You is vulnerable to supermarket chains using basic products such as bread and milk as loss leaders, thereby reducing its ability to compete.

Low inflation is therefore likely to present more of a threat than an opportunity to News For You.

(iii) **Effects of stable tax rates**

(1) **Consumer demand**

Changes in personal tax rates can affect **consumer demand**, but as was discussed above, demand for News For You's products is inelastic, and therefore the stability or otherwise of tax rates is unlikely to have much effect on sales.

(2) **Tax relief**

When planning the expansion, it is easier to plan with confidence since the levels of **tax relief available** to both the company and individual equity investors are **known**.

Stable personal and corporate tax rates will therefore help in developing the expansion plans.

(iv) **Price sensitivity of consumers**

It is not clear whether the recent drop in demand for tobacco products is due to the recent tax increases or to other factors. These products are one of the higher value items sold in the shops, and therefore customers are likely to be **more price sensitive**. There is a risk that other retailers such as supermarkets and garages could use their superior buying power to offset the increase in tax with price reductions, with which News For You may find it hard to compete. **Health issues,** including strengthening of government health warnings on cigarettes, may also be significant.

(v) **Competition in supermarket sector**

Food retailing is a relatively new area for News For You, and has been entered with a view to increase sales. However, basic foodstuffs carry a **very low margin** and there is a risk that the supermarkets may respond to the government investigation by cutting prices in an attempt to prove their competitiveness. This could have severe repercussions for News For You, since it does not have large and profitable higher value product ranges over which to spread the loss. Recent growth figures suggest that prospects for expansion are limited.

(b) **Arguments in favour of expansion**

(i) **Need to increase sales**

Due to the low level of gross margins, News For You needs to **increase the level of sales** in order to trade profitably. In view of the low level of recent sales growth, in spite of the addition of new products, it seems that the only way to increase sales significantly is by the opening of new outlets.

(ii) **Bulk order discounts**

Expansion of the business will **increase the level of purchases and** could lead to an improvement in the level of buying power with suppliers, and the ability to take advantage of **bulk order discounts**. This would in turn have a positive impact on gross margins and profitability.

(iii) **Wider geographical spread**

A wider geographical spread will make the business **less vulnerable to local events**, such as an increase in the level of unemployment or the opening of a new superstore.

(iv) **Economies of scale**

Expansion could lead to some **economies of scale**, for instance in the wider deployment of regional management.

Arguments against expansion

(i) **Nature of products**

Expansion will not change the fundamental weakness of the business, which is that most of the business is in **low value products** with **strong price competition**. There is limited potential to grow, and other factors, the greater convenience of being able to **buy practically all products** required at a **single large store**, are working against the business.

(ii) **Long-term demand for newspapers**

The expansion of electronic and other mass media make it likely that demand for newspapers will continue to decline. Businesses such as News For You depend on customers for newspapers **making other purchases** on their regular visits. If these visits are reduced, then the pressure on sales is likely to continue, regardless of any expansion.

(iii) **Competitive pressures**

Strong price competition due to **low inflation** and the **position of the supermarket sector** is likely to continue for the foreseeable future.

Conclusion

In conclusion, News for You should think very carefully before committing to the expansion, since this is unlikely to do much to increase margins and profitability, given the current competitive climate for newspapers, tobacco and basic foodstuffs. The company could perhaps consider an alternative strategy of selling **different higher added value products**, and changing the whole style of the operation. For example it could think about expanding into areas such as hand made chocolates, or supplying local organic produce.

3 Financial intermediaries

The following functions are performed by financial intermediaries.

(a) **Go-between**

Firms with economically desirable projects might want funds to finance these projects, but might not know where to go to find willing lenders. Similarly, savers might have funds that they would be willing to invest for a suitable return, but might not know where to find firms which want to borrow and would offer such a return. Financial intermediaries are an obvious place to go to, when a saver has funds to save or lend, and a borrower wants to obtain more funds. They act in the role of **go-between**, and in doing so, save time, effort and transaction costs for savers and borrowers.

(b) **Maturity transformation**

Lenders tend to want to be able to realise their investment and get their money back at fairly short notice. Borrowers, on the other hand, tend to want loans for fixed terms with predictable repayment schedules. Financial intermediaries provide **maturity transformation**, because savers are able to lend their money with the option to withdraw at short notice, and yet borrowers are able to raise loans for a fixed term and with a predictable repayment schedule. Financial intermediaries such as banks and building societies are able to do this because of the volume of business they carry out.

(c) **Risk transformation**

When a lender provides funds to a borrower, he must accept a risk that the borrower will be unable to repay. Financial intermediaries provide **risk transformation**. When a saver puts money into a financial intermediary, his savings are secure provided that the intermediary is financially sound.

The financial intermediary is able to bear the risks of lending because of the wide portfolio of investments it should have.

(d) **Parcelling up**

Borrowers tend to want larger loans than individual savers can provide. For example, a firm might want to borrow $10,000, but the only savers it finds might be able to lend no more than $1,000 each so that the firm would have to find ten such savers to obtain the total loan that it wants. Financial intermediaries are able to **'parcel up' small savings** into big loans, so that the discrepancy between small lenders and large borrowers is removed by the intermediary.

4 Gustaffson

Top tips. The eight marks available for (a) is a lot for a definition part question so your description in (a) needs to be fairly full. Although you are directed to describe the symptoms of overtrading, you would have mentioned them even if you had not been asked.

(b) should be approached by using your calculations to determine whether overtrading exists rather than just calculating random ratios. This means examining the short-term ratios in company finance, as well as sales growth, profit margins, liquidity ratios and working capital ratios. Do not be surprised however if not all the ratios show the same results; here the company is keeping up its payment schedule to accounts payable despite its other problems.

(b) concludes by highlighting the most important indicators of overtrading. It is important to do this in an answer where you have given a lot of detail, as you need to pick out where the greatest threats to the business lie. In this question the threats highlighted at the end of part (b) will be those for which remedies are identified in (c).

(a) **Overtrading**

'Overtrading' refers to the situation where a company is **over-reliant** on **short-term finance** to support its operations. This is risky because short-term finance may be withdrawn relatively quickly if accounts payable **lose confidence** in the business, or if there is a general tightening of credit in the economy, and this may result in a liquidity crisis and even bankruptcy, even though the firm is profitable. The fundamental solution to overtrading is to replace short term finance with longer term finance such as term loans or equity funds.

Problems of rapid expansion

The term overtrading is used because the condition commonly arises when a company is expanding rapidly. In this situation, because of increasing volumes, **more cash** is frequently **needed to pay input costs** such as wages or purchases than is currently being collected from accounts receivable. The result is that the company runs up its overdraft to the limit and sometimes there is **insufficient time** to arrange an **increase in facilities** to pay other accounts payable on the due dates.

Lack of control

These problems are often compounded by a general lack of attention to **cost control** and **working capital management**, such as debt collection, because most management time is spent **organising selling or production**. The result is an unnecessary **drop in profit margins**.

Under-capitalisation

When the overdraft limit is reached the company frequently raises funds from other **expensive short term sources**, such as debt factoring or accounts receivable prompt payment discounts, and delays payment to accounts payable, instead of underpinning its financial position with equity funds or a longer term loan. The consequent under-capitalisation **delays investment in fixed assets and staff** and can further harm the quality of the firm's operations.

(b) (i) The company has become significantly more reliant on short term liabilities to finance its operations as shown by the following analysis:

	20X9		*20X8*	
	$'000		$'000	
Total assets	21,350		14,900	
Short-term liabilities	8,700	40.7%	5,000	33.6%
Long term funds (equity and debt)	12,650	59.3%	9,900	66.4%
	21,350		14,900	

Overtrading

A major reason for this is classic overtrading: sales increased by 50% in one year, but the operating profit margin fell from 9,000/20,000 = 45% in 20X8 to 10,000/30,000 = 33% in 20X9.

Refinancing

However, the effect is **compounded** by the **repayment** of $2.3 million (66%) of the 8% bonds and replacement with a $2 million bank overdraft and increased trade creditor finance. Although this may be because the interest rate on the overdraft is cheaper than on the bonds, it is generally not advisable in the context of the risk of short term debt.

However, if it is felt that the current sales volume is abnormal and that, when the Polly Playtime doll reaches the end of its product life cycle, sales will stabilise at a lower level, the use of shorter term debt is justified.

Liquidity ratios

As a result of overtrading, the company's **current ratio** has deteriorated from 13,500/5000 = 2.7 in 20X8 to 19,850/8700 = 2.28 in 20X9. The **quick assets ratio** (or 'acid test') has deteriorated from 10,500/5,000 = 2.1 to 12,500/8,700 = 1.44. However these figures are acceptable and only if they continue to deteriorate is there likely to be a liquidity problem. In the 20X9 accounts the company continues to have a healthy bank balance, although this has been achieved partly by halting dividend growth.

Investment in non-current assets

The company has **not maintained an investment in non-current assets** to match its sales growth. Sales/non-current assets has increased from 20,000/1,400 = 14.3 times to 30,000/1,500 = 20 times. This may be putting the quality of production at risk, but may be justified, however, if sales are expected to decline when the doll loses popularity.

Working capital ratios

An investigation of working capital ratios shows that:

(1) **Inventory turnover** has **decreased** from 11,000/3,000 = 3.67 times to 20,000/7,350 = 2.72 times. This indicates that there has been a large investment in inventory. The question of whether this is justified again depends on expected future sales, but the strategy appears to be the opposite of that adopted for non-current assets.

(2) The **average accounts receivable payment period has increased** from 6,000/20,000 × 365 = 110 days to 10,000/30,000 × 365 = 122 days, indicating a lack of credit control. This has contributed to a weakening of the cash position. There appears to be no evidence of prompt payment discounts to accounts receivable.

(3) The **payment period to accounts payable** (roughly estimated) has **decreased** from 2,500/11,000 × 365 = 83 days to 4,200/20,000 × 365 = 77 days. This result is unexpected, indicating that there has been no increase in delaying payment to accounts payable over the year. Accounts payable are being paid in a significantly shorter period than the period of credit taken by customers.

(4) The sales/net working capital ratio has **increased** from 20,000/8,500 = 2.35 times to 30,000/11,150 = 2.69 times. This indicates that working capital has not increased in line with sales and this may indicate future liquidity problems.

Conclusion

In summary, the main problem facing Gustaffson is its increasing overdependence on short term finance, caused in the main by:

(1) A major investment in inventory to satisfy a rapid increase in sales volumes
(2) Deteriorating profit margins
(3) Poor credit control of accounts receivable
(4) Repayment of bond capital

(ii) **Future sales**

Possible solutions to the above problems depend on **future sales** and **product projections**. If the rapid increase in sales has been a one-product phenomenon, there is little point in over-capitalising by borrowing long term and investing in a major expansion of non-current assets. If, however, sales of this and future products are expected to continue increasing, and further investment is needed, the company's growth should be underpinned by an injection of equity capital and an issue of longer term debt.

Better working capital management

Regardless of the above, various working capital strategies could be improved. **Accounts receivable** should be encouraged to **pay more promptly**. This is best done by instituting **proper credit control procedures**. **Longer credit periods** could probably be negotiated with accounts payable and quantity discounts should be investigated.

5 H Finance

Top tips. In the exam you probably would not get a complete question on factoring. The arrangement would most likely be examined in combination with other methods such as invoice discounting or credit insurance.

However the question is typical of the sort of things that might be asked about factoring, combining calculation with discussion of the general issues involved. When comparing the costs of two possibilities, sometimes as here you would calculate the total costs of each arrangement. On other occasions you would use the differences between each method in your calculation. (a) shows where the differences are likely to lie.

To answer (b) well you needed to bring out benefits in different areas (factoring as a source of finance, use of factors as means of improving working capital management and decreasing administration time and costs.) As far as the effect on the accounts is concerned, the gearing point is significant but note the uncertain effect on return on capital employed.

(a) Assuming that the historical data presented is a reasonable guide to what will happen in the future, we can use some approximate calculations to assess whether the factoring of the debts would be worthwhile as follows. The 20Y0 figures are assumed below to be typical.

Cost	$000s	*Benefit*	$000s
(1) Cost of funds advanced	4,442	(2) Saved administration costs	80
(2) Administration costs	444	(3) Possible savings in bad debts	615
(3) Lost profits	1,777	(1) Saved finance costs	3,909
Total	6,663	Total	4,604

Cost exceeds benefit so using the factor would not be worthwhile.

(1) **Cost of finance**

The cost of the finance provided by the factor is 5% of sales, since 80% and then a further 15% is remitted by the factor. If sales are 10% lower due to the aggressive collection procedures, then this is 0.05 × 98,714 × 0.9 = 4,442.

Assuming that 80% of receivables will be factored, and that these will be lower in the future because of the lost sales of 0.22 × 98,714 × 0.9 = 19,545, this will save the finance cost associated with these receivables of 19,545 × 0.2 = 3,909.

(2) **Administration costs**

In addition, there would be administration costs of 0.5% × 98.7m × 0.9 = 444. This amounts to considerably more than the amount of $80,000 saved in D's own administration costs.

(3) **Bad debts**

There may be some saving through a reduction in bad debts, which in 20Y0 amounted to 615 which is 0.6% of revenue. However there is against this a loss of contribution amounting to 18% × 10% × 98,714 = 1,777 as a result of the factor's aggressive collection procedures.

(b) **Aspects of factoring**

The three main aspects of factoring are as follows.

(i) **Administration** of the client's invoicing, sales accounting and debt collection service.

(ii) **Credit protection** for the client's debts, whereby the factor takes over the risk of loss from bad debts and so 'insures' the client against such losses. This service is also referred to as 'debt underwriting' or the 'purchase of a client's debts'. The factor usually purchases these debts 'without recourse' to the client, which means that in the event that the client's accounts receivable are unable to pay what they owe, the factor will not ask for his money back from the client.

(iii) **Making payments** to the client in **advance** of collecting the debts. This might be referred to as 'factor finance' because the factor is providing cash to the client against outstanding debts.

Benefits of factoring

The benefits of factoring for a business customer include the following.

(i) The business can **pay** its **suppliers promptly**, and so can take advantage of any early payment discounts that are available.

(ii) **Optimum inventory** levels can be **maintained**, because the business will have enough cash to pay for the inventories it needs.

(iii) **Growth** can be **financed** through sales rather than by injecting fresh external capital.

(iv) The business gets **finance linked** to its **volume of sales**. In contrast, overdraft limits tend to be determined by historical statements of financial position.

(v) The managers of the business do **not have to spend their time** on the **problems** of slow-paying accounts receivable.

(vi) The business does **not incur the costs** of **running its own sales ledger department**.

Effect on accounts

Factoring of sales invoicing leads to a **reduction of accounts receivable** and therefore of assets employed in the business, accompanied by a reduction in profit as a result of the costs involved. Part of these 'costs' are generally reflected in the fact that less than 100% of the debt is paid to the

company by the factor. The effect on the **return on capital employed** will depend upon the cost of factoring and the level of profits without factoring relative to assets employed.

Since they reduce assets, the funds advanced by the factor do not show up as **borrowings** in the statement of financial position. The apparent gearing will therefore improve. Factoring is attractive to some companies as a method of avoiding borrowing limits or covenants being breached. It provides a means of financing accounts receivable, which are otherwise unsuitable for secured lending because of their volatility.

Disadvantages of factoring

The main disadvantage of factoring is that it is a **relatively expensive form** of finance compared to loan finance. Some businesses will also find it undesirable for customer relations if the administration of debt collection is passed to a third party.

6 Victory

Top tips. Always note how long it will take to deliver orders as this is an important detail, even though it isn't brought into the economic order quantity calculation.

In (a) (iii) and (b) (i) you need to bring purchasing costs in as they will be affected by the discount.

For questions like (b) (ii) focus on what might differ in the real world from what is assumed to happen for the purposes of the calculation, and think about non-financial factors.

Remember for questions such as (c) that just-in-time is a philosophy that impacts upon the whole production process, not just delivery of inventory. That said, relationships with suppliers are critical and do need to be stressed.

(a) (i) Using the economic order quantity (EOQ) model:

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{2C_0D}{C_h}}$$

where: C_0 = cost of making one order = \$75

D = annual demand = $200 \times 52 = 10{,}400$

C_h = holding cost per unit per annum = \$2

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{(2 \times \$75 \times 10{,}400)}{\$2}}$$

$$Q = \sqrt{780{,}000}$$

$$Q = 883.2 \text{ units}$$

The economic order quantity is therefore 883 units (to the nearest unit).

(ii) Demand is fixed at 200 bottles per week, and delivery from the supplier takes two weeks. Victory must therefore reorder when inventory falls to 400 units (2 weeks demand).

(iii) The total cost of stocking Buzz for one year will be:

		$
Purchase cost		
10,400 units $20 each		208,000
Ordering cost		
Annual demand (units)	10,400	
Order size (units)	883	
Number of orders per year	11.78	
Cost of placing one order	$75	
Annual ordering cost		883
Holding cost		
Average inventory (883/2)	441.5	
Holding cost per unit pa	$2	
Annual holding cost		883
Total annual cost		209,766

(b) (i) The factors for the new supplier are as follows:

$$C_0 = \$250$$

$$D = 10{,}400$$

$$C_h = \$1.80$$

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{(2 \times \$250 \times 10{,}400)}{\$1.80}}$$

$$= 1{,}699.7$$

The economic order quantity is therefore 1,700 units (to the nearest unit).

To determine whether it is financially viable to change supplier we must calculate the total annual cost of ordering from this supplier and to compare this with the existing annual cost.

		$
Purchase cost		
10,400 units $19 each		197,600
Ordering cost		
Annual demand (units)	10,400	
Order size (units)	1,700	
Number of orders per year	6.12	
Cost of placing one order	$250	
Annual ordering cost		1,530
Holding cost		
Average inventory (1,700/2)	850	
Holding cost per unit pa	$1.80	
Annual holding cost		1,530
Total annual cost		200,660

This is $9,106 less than the existing annual purchasing cost, and therefore it would be financially beneficial to switch suppliers.

(ii) Limitations of the calculations include the following:

(1) **Demand is assumed to be the same** throughout the year. In practice, there are likely to be variations.

(2) **It is assumed that the lead-time is constant** and that the **suppliers** are both **completely dependable**.

(3) **It is assumed that purchase costs are constant**. In practice it is necessary to allow for the effects of differing discount and credit policies.

Non-financial factors to be considered include:

(1) **Quality** must be consistent and reliable from both suppliers.

(2) **Packaging differences** must be acceptable, and the product from both suppliers must be equally attractive to consumers.

(3) **Flexibility**. Both suppliers must be able to respond quickly and efficiently to variations in the level of demand.

(4) **Environmental effects**. Victory must ensure that the suppliers' production facilities meet any agreed environmental standards that the company requires.

(c) **Just-in-time (JIT) manufacturing** involves obtaining goods from suppliers at the **latest possible time** (ie when they are needed on the production line), thereby **avoiding the need to carry** any materials or components inventory. Reduced inventory levels mean that a **lower level of investment in working capital** will be required. In certain environments where the cost of a stock-out is high, JIT is inappropriate, eg in a hospital, the cost of a stock-out for certain items could be fatal.

The main features of a JIT system include the following:

(i) **Deliveries** will be **small and frequent**, rather than in bulk. **Production runs** will also be shorter.

(ii) **Supplier relationships** must **be close**, since high demands will be placed on suppliers to deliver on time and with 100% quality.

(iii) **Unit purchasing prices** may need to be **higher** than in a conventional system to compensate suppliers for their need to hold higher inventories and to meet more rigorous quality and delivery requirements. However, savings in production costs and reductions in working capital should offset these costs.

(iv) **Improved labour productivity** should result from a smoother flow of materials through the process.

(v) **Production process improvements** may be required for a JIT system to function to full effectiveness. In particular set-up time for machinery may have to be reduced, workforce teams reorganised, and movement of materials within the production process minimised.

7 SF

Top tips. The first thing to pick up when you read part (a) of this question is that the company is a **small family owned private** company and not a large plc listed on the Stock Exchange. Your suggestions should reflect this and be ones that such a company might reasonably be expected to adopt.

You need to approach this question by making an assessment of the **underlying profitability** of the business, and trying to understand the key reasons for the cash flow problems before proposing possible solutions.

The solution works down the statement of financial position suggesting possible ways of improving each element of working capital and obtaining further finance. The suggestions you put forward should make as much use as possible of the data given in the question, for example highlighting the implications of the seasonal nature of sales. At the same time there are also other general suggestions that can be made; a company in financial difficulties can almost always think about tightening its credit control procedures for example. Note that the answer includes assessment of how effective the various ways of improving the situation could be.

The conclusion highlights the most urgent action required as well as commenting on the company's overall state of health.

To: Board of Directors, SF
From: External consultant
Date: 12 November 20X1
Subject: Cash flow budget

Introduction

The budget shows that the company will experience a **positive cash position** for the first quarter of the year, there being a net inflow of cash during this time as well as no use of the overdraft facility. However, thereafter the position deteriorates, with the company being forecast to exceed its overdraft limit from August to November. By the end of the year, the company's cash reserves will be $50,000 lower than at the start of the period.

Possible remedial actions

(1) **Production scheduling**

Sales show a cyclical movement, with receipts from customers being highest during the winter months. However, production is scheduled evenly throughout the year. If production could be **scheduled** to **match the pattern of demand**, the cash balance would remain more even throughout the year. Any resulting increase in the overall level of production costs could be quantified and compared with the savings in interest costs to assess the viability of such a proposal.

(2) **Reduce the inventory holding period**

At present it is forecast that inventories will be $30,000 higher by the end of the year. This represents three months' worth of purchases from suppliers. It is not clear to what extent this increase is predicated upon **increasing sales**, although since the building is being extended it is assumed that there will be some increase in the level of production and sales in the near future. However, the size of the increase seems excessive.

(3) **Reducing the debt collection period**

SF currently allows its customers two months' credit. It is not known how this compares with the industry norms, but it is unlikely to be excessive. However, there may be some scope for **reducing the credit period** for at least some of the customers, and thereby reducing the average for the business as a whole.

(4) **Tightening the credit control procedures**

It is not known what level of bad debts is incurred by SF, but even if it is low, **tightening up** the **credit control** and **debt collection procedures** could improve the speed with which money is collected.

(5) **Factoring the sales ledger**

The use of a factor to administer the sales ledger might **reduce the collection period** and **save administration costs**. An **evaluation** of the **relevant costs and benefits** could be undertaken to see whether it is worth pursuing this option.

(6) **Increase the credit period taken**

Since SF already takes 90 days credit, it is unlikely that it will be able to increase this further without **jeopardising** the **relationship** with its suppliers.

(7) **Defer payment for fixed assets**

(a) Presumably the **purchase** of the **office furniture** could be deferred, although the sums involved are relatively insignificant.

(b) The **progress payment** on the **building extension** is likely to be a contractual commitment that cannot be deferred.

(c) The **purchase of the car** could reasonably be **deferred** until the cash position improves. If it is essential to the needs of the business, the company could consider spreading the cost through some form of leasing or hire purchase agreement.

(d) It is not clear why the new **equipment** is being **purchased**. Presumably some form of investment appraisal has been undertaken to establish the financial benefits of the acquisition. However, if it is being purchased in advance of an increase in production then it may be possible to defer it slightly. The company could also look at alternative methods of financing it, as have been suggested in the case of the car.

(8) **Dividend**

SF is a private company, and therefore the shareholders could agree to **forego** or **defer the dividend**. The practicality of this will depend on the personal situation of the five shareholders.

(9) **Defer the corporation tax payment**

This might be possible by **agreement with the Inland Revenue**. The company should consider the relative **costs of the interest** that would be charged if this were done, and the **cost of financing** the payment through some form of debt.

(10) **Realise the investment**

The dividend from this is $10,000, and therefore assuming an interest rate of, say, 5%, it could be worth in the region of $200,000. It is not clear **what form** this takes or for **what purpose** it is being held, but it may be possible to dispose of a part of it without jeopardising the long-term strategic future of the business.

(11) **Inject additional long-term capital**

The budget assumes that both fixed and working capital will increase by $30,000 during the year, and the directors should therefore consider seeking **additional long term capital** to finance at least the fixed asset acquisitions. Possible sources of capital include:

- Injection of funds from the existing shareholders
- The use of venture capital
- Long-term bank loan, debenture or mortgage

Conclusions

(1) It can be seen that there are a number of avenues that SF could explore. It appears that the company is **fundamentally profitable**, given the size of the corporation tax bill, and the fact that were it not for the fixed asset additions and the investment in inventory the cash balance would increase by $10,000 during the year. However, the liquidity issues must be addressed now to avoid exceeding the overdraft limit.

(2) The company should also consider **investing its cash surpluses** during the first quarter of the year to earn at **least some interest**, although this will be restricted by the short periods for which funds are likely to be available . Possible investments include:

- Bank deposits
- Short-term gilts
- Bills of exchange

8 ZX

Top tips. The key point to emphasise is that holding too much working capital is expensive whereas holding too little can result in system breakdown. However, modern manufacturing techniques and re-engineering of business processes can help achieve the best of both worlds: low working capital *and* efficient production and sales systems.

Important aspects in part (a) are the term of debt and safety inventory (each worth a couple of marks) and investment and financing (worth a mark), with other aspects accounting for the rest of the marks. In (b) you need to show the effects on assets and liabilities, sales and profits, and current ratios and return on assets to score maximum marks. In (c) a couple of marks are available specifically for a recommendation, with the remaining marks being available for the effect on various stakeholders (staff, customers and suppliers) and possible disadvantages.

To: Finance Director
From: Financial Manager
Date: 4 December 20X1
Subject: Working capital policy

(a) **Policy for investment and financing of working capital**

Choice of policies

The level of investment in working capital should be chosen after considering **manufacturing**, **marketing** and **financing factors** and other relevant stakeholder relationships. There is a range of possible investment policies, lying along a spectrum from conservative to aggressive.

Conservative policy

A conservative policy, such as we adopt at present, aims to **reduce the risk of system breakdown** by holding high levels of working capital. Thus customers are allowed **generous payment terms** to stimulate demand, **inventory** of finished goods is **high** to ensure availability for customers, and raw materials and work in progress are high to minimise the risk of running out of inventory and consequent downtime in the manufacturing process. Suppliers are paid promptly to ensure their goodwill, again to minimise the chance of stock-outs.

Effects of conservative policy

However, the cumulative effect on these policies can be that the firm carries a high burden of **unproductive assets**, resulting in a **financing cost** that can destroy profitability. A period of rapid expansion may also cause **severe cash flow problems** as working capital requirements outstrip available finance. Further problems may arise from inventory obsolescence and lack of flexibility to customer demands.

Aggressive working capital policy

An aggressive working capital investment policy aims to reduce this financing cost and increase profitability by **cutting inventory**, **speeding up collections from customers**, and **delaying payments to suppliers**. The potential disadvantage of this policy is an increase in the chances of **system breakdown** through **running out of inventory** or **loss of goodwill** with customers and suppliers. However, modern manufacturing techniques encourage inventory and work in progress reductions through just–in–time policies, flexible production facilities and improved quality management. Improved customer satisfaction through quality and effective response to customer demand can also enable the shortening of credit periods. Our **modern production facility** gives the company the potential to implement radical new management techniques, including those mentioned above, and to move along the working capital policy spectrum towards a more aggressive stance.

Short-term or long-term finance

Whatever the level of working capital in the business, there is a choice as to whether the investment is financed by short term or longer term funds. In this sense, a **conservative policy** would finance using **longer term loans or share capital** whereas an **aggressive policy** would

finance using **shorter term measures** such as **bank overdraft**, **factoring of debts**, or **invoice discounting**. The advantage of short term finance is that it can be cheaper but its disadvantage is that it is more easily withdrawn in the event of a cash crisis.

(b) **Ratio analysis**

Policy:	*Conservative (present)*	*Change*	*Moderate*	*Change*	*Aggressive*
	$'000	%	$'000	%	$'000
Receivables	2,500	–20	2,000	–30	1,750
Inventory	2,000	–20	1,600	–30	1,400
Cash at bank	500		250		100
Current assets	5,000		3,850		3,250
Current liabilities	(1,850)	10	(2,035)	20	(2,220)
Net current assets	3,150		1,815		1,030
Non-current assets	1,250		1,250		1,250
Net assets	4,400		3,065		2,280
Forecast sales	8,000	2	8,160	4	8,320
Operating profit margin	18%		18%		18%
Forecast operating profit	1,440		1,469		1,498
Return on net assets	33%		48%		66%
Current ratio	2.70		1.89		1.46

Notes

(1) Return on net assets = $\frac{\text{operating profit}}{\text{net assets}}$.

(2) There is no logical reason why sales should increase as a result of a more aggressive working capital policy. The reasoning behind this assumption is unclear.

(c) **Recommended course of action**

The conclusion to be drawn from the figures in (b) above is that **substantial funds** can be released by moving from a conservative to an aggressive working capital position ($4.40m – $2.28m = $2.12m). These funds could be **repaid to shareholders**, **invested** or used to **reduce borrowings** depending on the company's situation.

Moderate working capital position

My first recommendation is that the company should attempt to move towards a moderate working capital position by **tightening up** its **debt collection procedures**, **buying inventory** in **smaller batches** and **negotiating longer credit periods** from suppliers. Our small size does not help us in this respect but, if achievable, this would result in a significant increase in return on net assets and an acceptable current ratio.

Use of modern techniques

However, further moves towards more aggressive working capital arrangements should be the outcome rather than the driver of policy changes. The key changes that need to be made in our firm are concerned with the adoption of **modern supply chain** and **manufacturing techniques**. These will enable us not only to reduce working capital while avoiding system breakdown but also to improve quality and flexibility and to increase customer demand. At the moment, we have modern equipment but are not taking full advantage of its potential. I therefore recommend that a **comprehensive study** of our **key business processes** is undertaken. I will be happy to evaluate the financial effects of the possible scenarios.

9 Project appraisal

Top tips. This would be a typical part question on these methods of investment appraisal; the rest of the question might well go on to cover net present value and internal rate of return (covered in the next chapter).

(a) Depreciation must first be **added back** to the **annual profit figures**, to arrive at the annual cash flows.

$$\text{Depreciation} = \frac{\text{Initial investment \$46,000} - \text{scrap value \$4,000}}{\text{4 years}} = \$10{,}500$$

Adding $10,500 per annum to the profit figures produces the cash flows for each proposal.

	Proposal A		*Proposal B*	
Year	*Annual cash flow*	*Cumulative cash flow*	*Annual cash flow*	*Cumulative cash flow*
	$	$	$	$
0	(46,000)	(46,000)	(46,000)	(46,000)
1	17,000	(29,000)	15,000	31,000
2	14,000	(15,000)	13,000	(18,000)
3	24,000	9,000	15,000	(3,000)
4	9,000	18,000	25,000	22,000
4	4,000	22,000	4,000	26,000

(1) *Proposal A*

$$\text{Payback period} = 2 + \left(\frac{15{,}000}{24{,}000} \times 1 \text{ year}\right) = 2.6 \text{ years}$$

Proposal B

$$\text{Payback period} = 3 + \left(\frac{3{,}000}{25{,}000} \times 1 \text{ year}\right) = 3.1 \text{ years}$$

(2) The return on capital employed (ROCE) is calculated using the accounting profits given in the question.

$$\text{Average investment} = \frac{46{,}000 + 4{,}000}{2} = 25{,}000$$

Proposal A

$$\text{Average profit} = \frac{\$(6{,}500 + 3{,}500 + 13{,}500 - 1{,}500)}{4} = \frac{\$22{,}000}{4} = \$5{,}500$$

$$\text{ROCE on average investment} = \frac{\$5{,}500}{\$25{,}000} \times 100\% = 22\%$$

Proposal B

$$\text{Average profit} = \frac{\$(4{,}500 + 2{,}500 + 4{,}500 + 14{,}500)}{4} = \frac{\$26{,}000}{4} = \$6{,}500$$

$$\text{ROCE on average investment} = \frac{\$6{,}500}{\$25{,}000} \times 100\% = 26\%$$

(b) Two advantages of each of the methods of appraisal can be selected from the following.

Payback period

(1) It is simple to calculate.
(2) It **preserves liquidity** by preferring early cash flows.
(3) It **uses cash flows** instead of more arbitrary accounting profits.
(4) It **reduces risk** by preferring early cash flows.

Return on capital employed

(1) It uses readily available **accounting profits**.
(2) It is **understood** by **non-financial managers**.
(3) It is a measure used by **external analysts** which should therefore be monitored by the company.

10 Knuckle down

Top tips. Although this question should take you 45 minutes (the amount of time a question in the exam will take you), an exam question would not consist purely of calculations; it would also most likely include discussion of the benefits and drawbacks of the NPV and IRR methods.

The question nevertheless does give you lots of practice in the techniques and highlights common traps. Depreciation is not a cash flow and should be eliminated. If you have to deal with working capital you need to read the question very carefully. In C the increase in working capital from $15,000 to $21,000 at the end of year 1 is an increase of the **difference** between the figures ($6,000) at the end of year 1. The question also tells you that the working capital investment will be recovered, so that figure ultimately has to be included as a receipt.

The question also requires you to calculate annuities and perpetuities, and deal with cash flows that are constant over a number of years but do not start at year 1. The treatment of the discount rate may have caught you out if you didn't read the question carefully. The discount rate of 15% should be used throughout the duration of all projects lasting more than ten years, and not just from year 10 onwards.

You can use the NPV calculations for A and C as the first rates in the IRR estimation process. The fact that the NPV for C was rather larger than A indicates that you should try a different second rate. The main thing is to pick two higher rates as the NPVs were positive; you would get equal credit if you had chosen any rate in the 15 – 20% band for your second IRR calculation. (Below 15% would probably be a bit too near to the 12%, but you would be unlikely to be penalised very heavily for using 13% or 14%).

(a) (i) *Project A*

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(29,000)	1.000	(29,000)
1	8,000	0.893	7,144
2	12,000	0.797	9,564
3	10,000	0.712	7,120
4	11,000	0.636	6,996
		Net present value =	1,824

(ii) *Project B*

Year	*Equipment*	*Working capital*	*Cash profit*	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value*
	$	$	$	$		$
0	(44,000)	(20,000)		(64,000)	1.000	(64,000)
1			19,000	19,000	0.893	16,967
2			24,000	24,000	0.797	19,128
3	5,000	20,000	10,000	35,000	0.712	24,920
					Net present value =	(2,985)

(iii) *Project C*

Year	*Equipment*	*Working capital*	*Cash profit*	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value*
	$	$	$	$		$
0	(50,000)	(15,000)		(65,000)	1.000	(65,000)
1		(6,000)		(6,000)	0.893	(5,358)
1–5			18,000	18,000	3.605	64,890
5		21,000		21,000	0.567	11,907
					Net present value =	6,439

(iv) *Project D*

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(20,000)	1.000	(20,000)
1	(20,000)	0.893	(17,860)
2	15,000	0.797	11,955
3	12,000	0.712	8,544
4–8	8,000	2.566	20,528
		Net present value =	3,167

Discount factor at 12%, years 1 to 8	4.968
Less discount factor at 12%, years 1 to 3	2.402
Discount factor at 12%, years 4 to 8	2.566

(v) *Project E*

The cumulative discount factor for a perpetuity at 15% is 1/0.15 = 6.667.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 15%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(32,000)	1.000	(32,000)
1–∞	4,500	6.667	30,000
		Net present value =	(2,000)

(vi) *Project F*

		$
1	Present value (at 15%) of $3,000 a year from year 1 in perpetuity	20,000
	Less present value of $3,000 a year for years 1 to 10 (× 5.019)	15,057
	Present value of $3,000 a year from year 11 in perpetuity	4,943

2	Discount factor at 15%, years 1 to 10	5.019
	Less discount factor at 15%, years 1 to 5	3.352
	Discount factor at 15%, years 6 to 10	1.667

3

Year	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor 15%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(20,000)	1.000	(20,000)
1–5	5,000	3.352	16,760
6–10	4,000	1.667	6,668
11–∞	3,000	See above	4,943
		Net present value =	8,371

(vii) Projects A, C, D and F have positive net present values and should be undertaken. Projects B and E should not be undertaken.

(b) (i) The IRR of project A is above 12% (where the NPV is $1,826). We will calculate the NPV at 15%.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 15%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(29,000)	1.000	(29,000)
1	8,000	0.870	6,960
2	12,000	0.756	9,072
3	10,000	0.658	6,580
4	11,000	0.572	6,292
		Net present value =	(96)

The IRR is between 12% and 15%. By interpolation, we can estimate the IRR as about

$$12\% + \left[\frac{1{,}826}{(1{,}826 - -96)} \times (15 - 12)\right]\% = 14.85\%$$

(ii) The IRR of project C is above 12%, where the NPV is $6,439. Try 20%.

Year	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor 20%*	*Present value*
	$		$
0	(65,000)	1.000	(65,000)
1	(6,000)	0.833	(4,998)
1–5	18,000	2.991	53,838
5	21,000	0.402	8,442
		Net present value =	(7,718)

The IRR is approximately $12\% + \left[\frac{6{,}439}{(6{,}439 - -7{,}718)} \times (20 - 12)\right]\% = 15.6\%$

(iii) The IRR, r, of project E is found as follows.

$$\text{PV of cost} = \text{PV of benefits}$$

$$(32{,}000) = \frac{4{,}500}{r}$$

$$r = \frac{4{,}500}{32{,}000} = 0.140625$$

$$\text{IRR} = 14.0625\%$$

11 Mezen

Top tips. In (a), if you failed to identify which costs were relevant correctly, make sure you understand why. (c) makes the important point about sensitivity of cash flows. Even if a project has a positive NPV, or an acceptable IRR, a company may not go ahead if the profits are felt to be too marginal, and the risk of loss too great.

(a) **Incremental cash flows**

The survey has been undertaken already, even though it has not yet been paid for, and therefore the $30,000 is a sunk cost.

The depreciation charge of $15,000 is not a cash-flow. The re-allocated fixed overheads will be incurred whether or Mezen goes ahead with the product. Both of these amounts may be subtracted from the $25,000 of fixed overheads in the original calculations.

The company forgoes $70,000 of immediate income from the sale of the machine.

	Time 0 $'000	*Time 1* $'000	*Time 2* $'000	*Time 3* $'000	*Time 4* $'000	*NPV* $'000
Sales		180	200	160	120	
Cost of sales		(115)	(140)	(110)	(85)	
Variable overheads		(27)	(30)	(24)	(18)	
Fixed overheads		(5)	(5)	(5)	(5)	
Machine	(70)				10	
Working capital	(20)				20	
Incremental cash flows	(90)	33	25	21	42	
× 10% discount factor	1.00	0.909	0.826	0.751	0.683	
Present value	(90.00)	30.00	20.65	15.77	28.69	5.11

(b) **Approximate internal rate of return**

	Time 0 $'000	*Time 1* $'000	*Time 2* $'000	*Time 3* $'000	*Time 4* $'000	*NPV* $'000
Incremental cash flows	(90)	33	25	21	42	
× 14% discount factor	1.000	0.877	0.769	0.675	0.592	
Present value	(90.00)	28.94	19.23	14.18	24.86	(2.79)

$$\text{IRR} = a + \left[\frac{\text{NPV}_a}{\text{NPV}_a - \text{NPV}_b} \times (b - a)\right]\%$$

where a is the lower rate of return, b is the higher rate of return, NPV_a is the NPV discounted at a, and NPV_b is the NPV discounted at b.

$$\text{IRR} = 10 + \left[\frac{5.11}{5.11 - (-2.79)} \times (14 - 10)\right]\% = 12.59\%$$

(c) The product has a positive net present value and an IRR that exceeds the company's cost of capital, and this suggests that it should be launched.

The decision is very marginal, however. It would certainly not be worthwhile if the market survey had not yet been commissioned, in which case the cost of $30,000 would need to be included. A relatively small drop in sales or a small increase in costs would result in a negative NPV. The company may well be able to find better uses for the $20,000 that will be spent now, and for the immediate income of $70,000 on the sale of the machine.

(d) The **internal rate of return (IRR)** is the rate of return that results in a NPV of zero. The rule with the **internal rate of return (IRR)** method of project evaluation is that a project should be undertaken if it is expected to achieve a return in excess of the company's cost of capital. A project that has an IRR in excess of the cost of capital must have a positive NPV.

Strengths

The main **advantage** of the IRR method is that the information it provides may be more easily understood by managers, especially non-financial managers.

It is sometimes said that IRR is difficult to calculate, but **both** NPV and IRR are actually **very easy to calculate** with a **spreadsheet**.

Weaknesses

However, it might be tempting for some managers to **confuse IRR** and **accounting return** on capital employed (ROCE). The accounting ROCE and the IRR are two completely different measures. If managers were given information about both ROCE (or ROI) and IRR, it might be easy to get their relative meaning and significance mixed up.

The IRR method also ignores the **relative size of investments**: for example a project with an annual return of $50 on an initial investment of $100 would have the same IRR as a project with an annual return of $5,000 on an initial investment of $10,000, although the latter is clearly preferable.

IRR **favours projects that are less sensitive to increases in the discount rate** and therefore the IRR method may sometimes indicate that a project that yields a smaller increase in shareholder wealth should be preferred to one that yields a larger increase, whereas the opposite is the case. NPV should therefore be used to **decide** between **mutually exclusive projects**.

12 Auriga

Top tips. (a) is another question that requires careful identification of relevant costs.
Work carefully through part (b).

(a) **Net present value**

	Time				
	0	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Machinery	(300.00)				
Advertising		(50.00)	(50.00)	(50.00)	(50.00)
Sales ($22 × 15,000)		330.00	330.00	330.00	330.00
Materials (W1)		(112.50)	(112.50)	(112.50)	(112.50)
Labour ($5.50 × 15,000)		(82.50)	(82.50)	(82.50)	(82.50)
Redundancy cost saving	230.00				
Overheads (W2)		(52.50)	(52.50)	(52.50)	(52.50)
Net cash flow	(70.00)	32.50	32.50	32.50	32.50
Discount factor @ 10%	1.00	0.91	0.83	0.75	0.68
Present value	(70.00)	29.60	27.00	24.40	22.10
Net present value	33.10				

Workings

1 *Materials*

	$
Cost per unit	
Without polymer (6.50 – 2.0)	4.50
Replacement cost (2 × $1.50)	3.00
	7.50

Total material cost 15,000 × $7.50 = $112,500

2 *Overheads*

	$
Total overheads ($8.50 × 15,000)	127,500
Depreciation (300,000/4)	(75,000)
Cash flow	(52,500)

(b) X = annual net cash flow from operations

Project becomes unprofitable when NPV is zero ie where net present value of annual cash flows is equal to the initial cash outflow of $70,000.

(X × 4 year annuity factor) = $70,000
X × (0.91 + 0.83 + 0.75 + 0.68) = $70,000
3.17X = $70,000
X = $22,082

Therefore if the net cash flows reduce from $32,500 per annum to $22,082 per annum the net present value will be zero. This is a reduction of $10,418.

(c) The initial net present value calculation shows that the project is worthwhile: when all of the relevant cash flows are taken into consideration the project has a positive net present value of just over $33,000. Therefore this project will increase shareholder wealth by this amount.

The figures are highly **sensitive to change**, however. Even assuming costs can be fixed at the predicted levels by means of contractual agreements a fall of less than 4% in annual demand (about 600 units) would result in a negative NPV. If extra advertising or a price reduction is required to achieve the maximum sales level this will further impair the viability of the project.

If the appraisal had been conducted **before development and market research costs** had been incurred it would have been **rejected from the outset**, and this would have been more beneficial for shareholders.

13 Bridgeford

NPV calculations

It is assumed that the after-tax nominal weighted average cost of capital is the appropriate cost of capital to use, although the method of financing implied in the managing director's estimates of interest charges for the project raises questions about what the most appropriate cost of capital should be.

Year	*0*	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	
Sales		2,625	3,308	4,052	4,254	3,829	
Operating costs (W1)		(1,690)	(2,201)	(2,801)	(3,061)	(3,024)	
Contribution		935	1,107	1,251	1,193	805	
Tax @ 35%			(327)	(387)	(438)	(418)	(282)
Capital expenditure	(2,000)						
Working capital (W2)	(200)	(75)	(88)	(103)	(46)	512	
Tax benefit of tax depreciation (W3)			175	131	98	74	222
Net cash flow	(2,200)	860	867	892	807	973	(60)
Discount factor @ 12%	1.000	0.893	0.797	0.712	0.636	0.567	0.507
Present value	(2,200)	768	691	635	513	552	(30)
NPV	**929**						

* Assumed that working capital as at the end of year 5 will all be recovered at the beginning of year 6, giving a total net cash inflow of $512,000.

The NPV is positive, + $929,000, and so the project should be undertaken.

Workings

1 *Operating costs*

Year	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Materials costs	550	726	932	1,025	966
Labour costs	825	1,089	1,464	1,611	1,611
Overhead costs	315	386	405	425	447
Total operating costs	1,690	2,201	2,801	3,061	3,024

2 *Working capital*

Year	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Total investment in working capital*	275	363	466	512	
Cash flow effect of working capital changes	(75)	(88)	(103)	(46)	
Sales	2,625	3,308	4,052	4,254	3,829
Materials costs	550	726	932	1,025	966
Labour costs	825	1,089	1,464	1,611	1,611
Overhead costs**	315	386	405	425	447
Total operating costs – cash outflows	1,690	2,201	2,801	3,061	3,024

* Working capital in Year 1 = 250 × 1.1, in Year 2 = 300 × 1.1^2 etc

** All are assumed to involve cash outflows.

3 *Tax depreciation*

It is assumed that the capital allowances will be claimed from year 1, and will have an effect on cash flows one year later.

Year of claim		*Allowance*	*Tax benefit*
		$'000	$'000
1	(25% of $2,000)	500	175
2	(75% of $500)	375	131
3	(75% of $375)	281	98
4	(75% of $281)	211	74
		1,367	
5	(2,000 – 1,367)	633	222

14 Dinard

Top tips. (a) allows you to demonstrate that you understand the topic of real and nominal returns by explaining the difference between them.

(b) introduces the complication of what you should do if you are told what current (or year 1) prices are but are also given information about price increases over the period of investment. Because the costs are increasing at different rates, the nominal rate (which you are given) has to be used, and the revenues and costs inflated each year. If the rate of increase for everything had been the same, you could either have used the nominal rate (and inflated costs and revenues), or calculated the real rate (and used uninflated costs and revenues). Since calculating the real rate only involves one calculation, you should really have chosen that option.

Again don't forget to exclude depreciation as it is not a cash flow. Development costs of $480,000 are sunk costs and should also be excluded from the calculation. Because you are told to confine your answer to the information given, you should not discuss any wider issues that might be involved in the investment.

(a) The **real rate of return** is the rate of return which an investment would show in the **absence of inflation**. For example, if a company invests $100, inflation is 0%, and the investment at the end of the year is worth $110, then the real rate of return is 10%.

In reality however, there is likely to be an element of inflation in the returns due to the change in the purchasing power of money over the period. In the example above, if inflation was running at 5%, then to show a real rate of return of 10%, the investment would need to be worth $115.50 at the end of the year. In this case the nominal rate of return is 15.5% which is made up of the real return of 10% and inflation at 5%.

The relationship between the nominal ('money') rate of return and the real rate of return can be expressed as follows:

(1 + nominal rate) = (1 + real rate) × (1 + inflation rate)

The rate to be used in discounting cash flows for capital project appraisal will depend on the **way** in which the **expected cash flows** are calculated. If the cash flows are expressed in terms of the **actual number of dollars** that will be received or paid on the various future dates, then the **nominal rate** must be used. If however they are expressed in **terms** of the **value of the dollars at year 0**, then the **real rate must be used**.

(b) *Workings*

	Year 1	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*
Sales volume	25,000	25,000	25,000	25,000
Unit price ($)	80	84	88	93
Variable material cost ($)	8.00	8.32	8.65	9.00
Variable labour cost ($)	12.00	13.20	14.52	15.97
Variable overhead ($)	12.00	12.48	12.98	13.50

Notes. Evaluation of investment

(All figures $'000)

	Year 0	*Year 1*	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*
Capital outlay	(2,400)				
Sales		2,000	2,100	2,205	2,315
Direct costs					
Materials		(200)	(208)	(216)	(225)
Labour		(300)	(330)	(363)	(399)
Overhead		(300)	(312)	(324)	(337)
Fixed overheads		(200)	(210)	(221)	(232)
Gross cash flow	(2,400)	1,000	1,040	1,081	1,122
Discount at 15%	1.000	0.870	0.756	0.658	0.572
Present value	(2,400)	870	786	711	642
Cumulative PV	(2,400)	(1,530)	(744)	(33)	608

The investment yields a net present value at the end of four years of $608,000. In the absence of other factors such as a capital rationing situation, production of the Rance should be undertaken.

15 Muggins

Top tips. A methodical set of workings is key to answering this question well (also not confusing the adjustment factors for costs and benefits).

Apart from testing your ability to use the certainty-equivalent approach, the question is a good test of your understanding of relevant costs and opportunity costs.

- Apportioned costs are not incurred by the project and should not be included.
- Only the additional element of other overheads should be included.
- The current assistant manager's salary of $30,000 will be incurred anyway and should not be included; the $27,000 salary of the new manager should however be included since it has been incurred because the current assistant manager is needed on the project.
- The company will not be able to obtain the rental of $135,000 on the factory space if it undertakes the project; thus the rental is an opportunity cost which should be included.
- The 60,000 kg of material X currently in inventory should not be included at purchase price since this is a sunk cost. However by undertaking the project, the company forgoes the opportunity to sell the raw materials in inventory, and they should thus be included at selling price.

Certainty-equivalent cash flows

	Year 1	*Year 2*	*Year 3*	*Year 4*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Sales (W1)	1,125	1,800	1,575	1,425
Material X (W2)	50	230	248	280
Other variable costs (W3)	517	1,100	1,184	1,340
Management salaries (W4)	67	79	85	92
Rental: opportunity cost	135	135	135	135
Other overheads (× 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5)	66	78	84	90
	835	1,622	1,736	1,937
Sales less cash costs	290	178	(161)	(512)
Discount factor at 5%	0.952	0.907	0.864	0.823
Present value	276	161	(139)	(421)

The net present value is –$123,000, so the project is not acceptable.

Workings

1	*Sales*	Year 1	10,000 × $125 × 0.9
		Year 2	18,000 × $125 × 0.8
		Year 3	18,000 × $125 × 0.7
		Year 4	19,000 × $125 × 0.6
2	*Material X*	Year 1	$50,000 opportunity cost
		Year 2	18,000 × 6 × $1.64 × 1.3
		Year 3	18,000 × 6 × $1.64 × 1.4
		Year 4	19,000 × 6 × $1.64 × 1.5
3	*Other variable costs*	Per unit: $30 + (3 × $4.20) + $4.40 = $47	
		Year 1	10,000 × $47 × 1.1
		Year 2	18,000 × $47 × 1.3
		Year 3	18,000 × $47 × 1.4
		Year 4	19,000 × $47 × 1.5
4	*Management salaries*	Year 1	$34,000 + $27,000 = $61,000 x 1.1
		Year 2	$61,000 × 1.3
		Year 3	$61,000 × 1.4
		Year 4	$61,000 × 1.5

16 Banden

Top tips. This question gives you practice in doing NPV calculations rapidly. Note how the NPV calculations are laid out in a way that enables you to show clearly how the profitability index is calculated. It would be less time consuming to use the proforma we have used than to do the NPV calculations, and then separately to do the profitability index calculations. What this emphasises is the usefulness of taking a few moments to plan the most efficient way of carrying out calculations.

In (b) because of the constraints you have to calculate the combined NPV of various possible combinations. It is obvious looking at the figures that the company will be undertaking some combination of three of the projects. However you would be penalised (and waste time) if you calculated the NPV of all combinations of three of the six. Any combinations including C should be excluded as the project makes a loss. It is also not possible for a combination to include A and E as they are mutually exclusive.

Our answer shows only those possible combinations of projects that cost less than $620,000. It would also be fine if you showed the cost of combinations that cost more than $620,000; however you should have then stated that they could not be undertaken, and should not have calculated their NPV.

(c) demonstrates why the cost of capital is used as an approximation, but you also need to demonstrate your understanding of its theoretical limitations.

(a) The profitability index will be calculated as the ratio of the PV of net cash inflows to the year 0 capital outlay.

	Year	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor 12%*	*Present value* $	*Profitability index*
Project A	1–5	70,000	3.605	252,350	252,350
	0	(246,000)	1.000	(246,000)	246,000
				NPV = 6,350	= 1.026
Project B	1	75,000	0.893	66,975	
	2	87,000	0.797	69,339	
	3	64,000	0.712	45,568	
				181,882	181,882
	0	(180,000)	1.000	(180,000)	180,000
				NPV = 1,882	= 1.010
Project C	1	48,000	0.893	42,864	
	2	48,000	0.797	38,256	
	3	63,000	0.712	44,856	
	4	73,000	0.636	46,428	
				172,404	172,404
	0	(175,000)	1.000	(175,000)	175,000
				NPV = (2,596)	= 0.985
Project D	1–4	62,000	3.037	188,294	188,294
	0	(180,000)	1.000	(180,000)	180,000
				NPV = 8,294	= 1.046

Ranking	*NPV*	*Profitability index*
1st	D	D
2nd	A	F
3rd	E	E
4th	F	A
5th	B	B
6th	C	C

The rankings differ because the project's capital outlays differ. NPV shows the absolute benefit from a project, while profitability index scales that benefit according to the project's size.

(b) Project C comes sixth and last in the ranking according to both NPV and profitability index. It has a negative NPV and should not be undertaken.

Banden cannot afford to undertake more than three projects, given the maximum available capital of $620,000. It should not undertake project C, and it cannot undertake A and E simultaneously. The various feasible options are as follows.

Capital outlay

Projects	*In total* $	*NPV in total* $
D, F, E	510,000	18,777
D, F, A	576,000	19,637
D, F, B	510,000	15,169
D, E, B	540,000	15,666
D, A, B	606,000	16,526
F, A, B	576,000	13,225
F, E, B	510,000	12,365

Banden should not invest any funds in the money markets, because the return would only be 9% pa and the cost of capital for Banden is higher, at 12% pa.

It is assumed that the company does not have to use more funds than it needs to, and so there will not be any surplus funds which have to be invested somewhere.

Recommendation. The company should use $576,000 and invest in projects D, F and A.

(c) When there is **capital rationing**, there is **not enough capital to invest** in all the projects which have a positive NPV, when their NPVs are calculated by discounting the estimated cash flows at the company's cost of capital. The financial director is correct in theory to say that the company's cost of capital is inappropriate. The marginal cost of capital, which will be higher than the company's cost of capital, would be more appropriate for calculating project NPVs and deciding which projects would yield the best returns, given the shortage of capital.

However, the marginal cost of capital cannot be calculated easily, and a practical way of making decisions in a capital rationing situation is to **calculate** the **NPV** of **each project** using the company's normal cost of capital, and then to rank the projects in order of desirability, as in parts (a) and (b) of this solution.

17 Flocks

Top tips. This question splits clearly the investment decision ((a)) and the finance decision ((b)).

(a) requires careful planning of layout. Having separate columns for the items of income and expenditure and including a net cash flow column means you only have to do one net present value calculation per year. This is clearer and more economical than listing in one column all the year 0 figures, then all the year 1 figures, and having to do a net present value calculation for each figure.

The layout of the main calculations can also be simplified by just including the net tax payable figure rather than separate figures for tax on profits and tax saved on tax allowable depreciation.

The cumulative cash flow column enables you to work out the payback period easily.

You should not have calculated a writing down allowance for the years of disposal (4 and 6), but a balancing allowance.

In (b) the relevant items are the lease/buy costs and the tax savings.

An exam question on this area might well include a written part asking you to discuss other implications of the choice between leasing and buying.

(a) *Workings*

(i) **Tax allowable depreciation**

Year		*Machine X depreciation* $	*Year*		*Machine Y depreciation* $
	(25% of $63,000)	15,750	1	(25% of $110,000)	27,500
	(75% of $15,750)	11,813	2	(75% of $27,500)	20,625
	(75% of $11,813)	8,859	3	(75% of $20,625)	15,469
		36,422	4	(75% of $15,469)	11,602
	($63,000 – $36,422)	26,578	5	(75% of $11,602)	8,702
					83,898
			6	($110,000 – $83,898)	26,102

(ii) **Taxable profits and tax liabilities**

Machine X

Year	*Tax depreciation* $	*Tax saved at 30% (one year later)* $
1	15,750	4,725
2	11,813	3,544
3	8,859	2,658
4	26,578	7,973

Machine Y

Year	*Tax depreciation*	*Tax saved at 30% (one year later)*
	$	$
1	27,500	8,250
2	20,625	6,188
3	15,469	4,641
4	11,602	3,481
5	8,702	2,611
6	26,102	7,831

NPV and payback calculations

Machine X

Year	*Machine cost*	*Working capital*	*Cash profits*	*Tax paid*	*Tax saved*	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*	*Cumulative cash flow*
	$	$	$	$	$	$	13%	$	$
0	(63,000)	(12,500)				(75,500)	1.000	(75,500)	(75,500)
1			25,900			25,900	0.885	22,922	(49,600)
2			28,800	(7,770)	4,725	25,755	0.783	20,166	(23,845)
3			30,500	(8,640)	3,544	25,404	0.693	17,605	1,559
4		12,500	29,500	(9,150)	2,658	35,508	0.613	21,766	
5				(8,850)	7,973	(877)	0.543	(476)	
							NPV =	6,483	

The NPV for machine X is + $6,483, and the payback period is about three years.

Machine Y

Year	*Machine cost*	*Working capital*	*Cash profits*	*Tax paid*	*Tax saved*	*Net cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*Present value*	*Cumulative cash flow*
	$	$	$	$	$	$	15%	$	$
0	(110,000)	(12,500)				(122,500)	1.000	(122,500)	(122,500)
1			40,300			40,300	0.870	35,061	(82,200)
2			32,900	(12,090)	8,250	29,060	0.756	21,969	(53,140)
3			32,000	(9,870)	6,188	28,317	0.658	18,633	(24,823)
4			32,700	(9,600)	4,641	27,741	0.572	15,868	2,918
5			48,500	(9,810)	3,481	42,171	0.497	20,959	
6		12,500	44,200	(14,550)	2,611	44,761	0.432	19,337	
7				(13,260)	7,831	(5,429)	0.376	(2,041)	
							NPV =	7,286	

The NPV for machine Y is + $7,286 and the payback period is about four years.

Machine Y would appear to be the preferable option.

(b) The financing decision will be appraised by discounting the relevant cash flows at the after-tax cost of borrowing, which is 10% × 70% = 7%.

(i) **Purchase option**

Year	*Item*	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor 7%*	*Present value*
		$		$
0	Cost of machine	(63,000)	1.000	(63,000)
	Tax saved from tax depreciation			
2	30% × $15,750	4,725	0.873	4,125
3	30% × $11,813	3,544	0.816	2,892
4	30% × $8,859	2,658	0.763	2,028
5	30% × $26,578	7,973	0.713	5,685
				(48,270)

(ii) **Leasing option**

Years	*Item*	*Cash flow* $	*Discount factor 7%*	*Present value* $
1–4	Lease costs	(20,000)	3.387	(67,740)
2–5	Tax savings on lease costs (× 30%)	6,000	3.165	18,990
				(48,750)

The purchase option is marginally cheaper, using a cost of capital based on the after-tax cost of borrowing.

On the assumption that investors would regard borrowing and leasing as equally risky finance options, the purchase option is recommended.

18 ANT

Top tips. A table setting out each element of unit cost is helpful. When doing the NPV calculations it is important to show them, but show them in a way that minimises the writing you have to do. If you were not able to fit your answer to (a) across the page, you could have stated the discount factors at the start of the answer and then done the calculations. Note also that we have taken the short cut of using annuity factors. Don't forget the 'reclaiming of working capital' in year 5.

In (b) you are using **total inflows** to calculate the profitability index, not net present value. When setting out your workings a column on cumulative outlay should help you ensure you take the correct proportion of the partial project.

(c) starts off by stating the **assumptions**, and then goes on to discuss **complications** in which the NPV approach could not be used.

(a) The first step is to calculate the **annual contribution** from each project, together with the working capital cash flows. These cash flows, together with the initial outlay, can then be **discounted** at the **cost of capital** to arrive at the NPV of each project. Development costs already incurred are irrelevant. There are no additional administration costs associated with the projects, and depreciation is also irrelevant since it has no cash effect.

First, calculate annual contribution.

	A	*B*	*C*	*D*
Unit sales	150,000	75,000	80,000	120,000
	$	$	$	$
Selling price per unit	30.00	40.00	25.00	50.00
Material cost per unit	7.60	12.00	4.50	25.00
Labour cost per unit	9.80	12.00	5.00	10.00
Variable overheads per unit	6.00	7.00	2.50	10.50
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Sales per annum	4,500	3,000	2,000	6,000
Materials	1,140	900	360	3,000
Labour	1,470	900	400	1,200
Variable overheads	900	525	200	1,260
Annual contribution	990	675	1,040	540

	A	B	C	D
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000
Working capital requirement (20% annual sales value)	900	600	400	1,200

It is assumed that working capital will be recovered at the end of year 5. The initial outlay will be made in year 0.

The NPV of each project can now be calculated.

	Cash flows								
Year	*A*		*B*		*C*		*D*		*Discount*
	Gross pa	*Net*	*Gross pa*	*Net*	*Gross pa*	*Net*	*Gross pa*	*Net*	*factor*
	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	$'000	18%
0	(3,000)	(3,000)	(2,000)	(2,000)	(2,800)	(2,800)	(1,800)	(1,800)	1
1–4	990	2,663	675	1,816	1,040	2,798	540	1,453	2.690
5	1,890	826	1,275	557	1,440	629	1,740	760	0.437
		489		373		627		413	

(b) The **profitability** index provides a **means** of **optimising the NPV** when there are more projects available which yield a positive NPV than funds to invest in them. The profitability index measures the ratio of the present value of **cash inflows** to the **initial outlay** and represents the net present value per $1 invested.

Project	*PV of inflows*	*Initial outlay*	*Ratio*	*Ranking*
	$'000	$'000		
A	3,489	3,000	1.163	4
B	2,373	2,000	1.187	3
C	3,427	2,800	1.224	2
D	2,213	1,800	1.229	1

Project D has the highest PI ranking and is therefore the first choice for investment. On this basis the funds available should be invested as follows.

Project	*Initial outlay*	*Total NPV*	*% taken*	*Cumulative outlay*	*Actual NPV*
	$'000	$'000		$'000	$'000
D	1,800	413	100	1,800	413
C	2,800	627	100	4,600	627
B	2,000	373	30	5,200	112
A	3,000	491	0	5,200	0
Total NPV generated					1,152

(c) The profitability index (PI) approach can be applied only if the projects under consideration fulfil certain criteria, as follows.

(i) There is **only one constraint on investment**, in this case capital. The PI ensures that maximum return per unit of scarce resource (capital) is obtained.

(ii) **Each investment** can be **accepted** or **rejected** in its entirety or alternatively accepted on a partial basis.

(iii) The NPV generated by a given project is **directly proportional** to the percentage of the investment undertaken.

(iv) Each investment can only be **made once** and not repeated.

(v) The company's aim is to **maximise overall NPV**.

If **additional funds** are **available** but at a higher cost, then the simple PI approach cannot be used since it is not possible to calculate unambiguous individual NPVs.

If certain of the projects that may be undertaken are **mutually exclusive** then **sub-problems** must be **defined** and **calculations made** for different combinations of projects. This can become a very lengthy process. These assumptions place limitations on the use of the ratio approach. It is not appropriate to multi-constraint situations when linear programming techniques must be used. Each project must be infinitely divisible and the company must accept that it may need to undertake a small proportion of a given project. This is frequently not possible in practice. It is also very unlikely that there is a simple linear relationship between the NPV and the proportion of the project undertaken; it is much more likely that there will be discontinuities in returns.

Possibly a more serious constraint is the assumption that the company's only concern is to **maximise NPV**. It is possible that there may be long-term strategic reasons which mean that an investment with a

lower NPV should be undertaken instead of one with a higher NPV, and the ratio approach takes no account of the relative degrees of risk associated with making the different investments.

19 Sagitta

Top tips. Remember in (b) that the value of rights is **not** the cost of the rights share. (c) emphasises that taking up and selling the rights should have identical effects.

(a) Current total market value = \$21m × 16
= \$336m

Market value per share = \$336m/(60m × 4)
= \$1.40

Rights issue price = \$1.40 × 0.70
= \$0.98

Theoretical ex-rights price

	$
5 shares @ \$1.40	7.00
1 share @ \$0.98	0.98
6 shares	7.98

Theoretical ex-rights price = \$7.98/6
= \$1.33

(b) **Rights price**

	$
Theoretical ex-rights price	1.33
Cost of rights share	0.98
Value of rights	0.35

(c) **Take up rights issue**

	$
Value of shares after rights issue (10,000 × 6/5 × \$1.33)	15,960
Cost of rights (2,000 × \$0.98)	(1,960)
	14,000

(d) **Sell rights**

	$
Value of shares (10,000 × \$1.33)	13,300
Sale of rights (2,000 × \$0.35)	700
	14,000

Allow rights offer to lapse

	$
Value of shares (10,000 × \$1.33)	13,300

If the investor either takes up the rights issue or sells his rights then his wealth will remain the same. The difference is that if he takes up the rights issue he will maintain his relative shareholding but if he sells his rights his percentage shareholding will fall, although he will gain \$700 in cash.

However if the investor allows the rights to lapse his wealth will decrease by \$700.

(e) Sagitta clearly needs to raise \$47.04 million which is why it was decided to make a 1 for 5 rights issue of 48 million additional shares at a price of \$0.98. Provided that this amount is raised it could have been done (for example) by issuing 96 million new shares as a two for five rights issue with the issue price at \$0.49 per share.

The **price of the issue** and the **number of shares should not be important** in a competitive market as the value of the business will not change and nor will the shareholders' percentage shareholding.

However the critical factor about the **price of the rights issue** is that it **must be below the market value** at the time of the rights issue. If the rights issue price is higher than the market value then there is no incentive to shareholders to purchase the additional shares and the rights issue will fail. As far as the business is concerned the details of the rights issue including the price must be determined a considerable time before the rights issue actually takes place, therefore there is always the risk that the share price might fall in the intervening period.

20 Headwater

Top tips. The bulk of the marks in (a) would be available for the written comparisons with the rest of the industry, particularly as you are told which ratios to calculate rather than having to select them yourself. You need to provide sensible explanations for differences with the industry and highlight areas for concern, in particular here the problems over sources of finance.

In (b) you need to show that the company can gain more funds not only because more investors can put money in, but also that listed status provides more reasons for investors to buy a stake (improved marketability of shares being probably the most important).

When answering (c) you should examine the statement of financial position and consider how different elements might be made more attractive to investors. This includes looking at share capital and considering whether the issue price of each share is likely to be too high.

(d) brings out the primary pressure that will face the company after floating, to maintain or improve dividend levels. The market will also be sensitive to attempts to massage the statement of financial position artificially, for example by using share proceeds to pay off debentures.

(a) The performance and financial health of Headwater in relation to that of the industry sector as a whole can be evaluated by comparing its financial ratios with the industry averages, as follows.

Headwater	*Industry average*
Return on (long-term) capital employed Operating profit (PBIT): Equity + long-term debt $4.9m: ($12.4m + $2.2m) = 33.6%	24%
Return on equity Profit attributable to ordinary shareholders: Equity $3.1m: $12.4m = 25%	16%
Operating profit margin Operating profit : Sales $4.9m: $36.5m = 13.4%	11%
Current ratio Current assets: Current liabilities $10.1m: $9.0m = 1.12:1	1.6:1
Acid test Current assets excluding inventory: Current liabilities $5.7m: $9.0m = 0.63:1	1.0:1
Gearing Debt: Equity ($2m + $2.2m): $12.4m = 33.9%	24%
Dividend cover Profit attributable to equity: Dividends $3.1m: $0.3m = 10.3 times	4.0
Interest cover Profit before interest and tax (PBIT): Interest $4.9m: $1.3m = 3.77 times	4.5

These ratios can be used to evaluate performance in terms of profitability, liquidity and financial security.

Profitability

Headwater's return on capital employed, return on equity and operating profit margin are all significantly above the industry averages. Although the first two measures could be inflated due to assets being shown at low book values, the profit margin indicates that Headwater is managing to make good profits, which could be due to successful marketing, a low cost base or to its occupation of a particularly profitable niche in the market.

Liquidity

Both the current and the quick (acid test) ratios are well below the industry averages. This suggests that Headwater is either short of liquid resources or is managing its working capital poorly. However, the three key working capital ratios modify this impression.

Receivables days: $365 \times 4.7/36.5 = 47$ days
Inventory turnover: $365 \times 4.4/31.6 = 51$ days
Payment period: $365 \times 7.0/31.6 = 81$ days

Although the industry averages are not known, these ratios appear to be very good by general standards. It therefore appears that Headwater has become under-capitalised, perhaps through the use of working capital to finance growth.

Financial security

Gearing is **high** in comparison with the rest of the industry, and 48% of the debt is in the form of overdraft which is generally repayable on demand. This is therefore a risky form of debt to use in large amounts. The debenture is repayable in two years and will need to be refinanced since Headwater cannot redeem it out of existing resources. Interest cover is also poor, and this together with the poor liquidity probably account for the low payout ratio (the inverse of the dividend cover).

In summary, profit performance is strong, but there are significant weaknesses in both the liquidity and the financial structure. These problems need to be addressed if Headwater is to be able to maintain its record of strong and consistent growth.

(b) A company such as Headwater may seek a stock market listing for the following reasons.

(i) To **allow access** to a **wider pool of finance:** companies that are growing fast may need to raise larger sums than is possible privately. Obtaining a listing widens the potential number of equity investors, and may also result in an improved credit rating, thus reducing the cost of additional debt finance.

(ii) To **improve the marketability of the shares:** shares that are traded on the stock market can be bought and sold in relatively small quantities at any time. This means that it is easier for existing investors to realise a part of their holding.

(iii) To **allow capital to be transferred** to other ventures: founder owners may wish to liquidate the major part of their holding either for personal reasons or for investment in other new business opportunities.

(iv) To **improve the company image:** quoted companies are commonly believed to be more financially stable, and this may improve the image of the company with its customers and suppliers, allowing it to gain additional business and to improve its buying power.

(v) **Growth by acquisition** is easier: a listed company is in a better position to make a paper offer for a target company than an unlisted one.

(c) Restructuring its statement of financial position prior to flotation will help to make Headwater appear a sounder prospect to potential investors who know little about its past performance. Methods available include the following.

Disposal of surplus assets. This will improve both gearing and liquidity.

Non-current asset revaluation. Land and buildings may well be shown in the accounts at values that are significantly below the current market valuation. Adjustment to market values will improve

the gearing ratio and the value of shareholders' funds, although the effect of this will be to depress the reported return on capital employed and return on equity. However, since these are currently well above industry averages this should not present too much of a problem.

Liquidity improvement. Although there does not appear to be much scope for tightening the control of working capital, Headwater may be able to improve its cash flow by other means, for example by reducing overheads and delaying the purchase of additional fixed assets.

Sale and leaseback. If Headwater owns valuable freehold premises it may be able to release cash by selling them and exchanging the freehold for an operating lease. This would improve both the liquidity position and the reported return on capital employed although the gearing would be little affected.

Elimination of non-voting 'A' shares. These are not permitted by the Inventory Exchange for companies newly entering the market.

Share split. On the basis of the industry average P/E of 10, the shares would be priced at $11.48 (= 10 × 3.1m/(1.8m + 0.9m)). A highly priced new issue is likely to deter potential small investors. This problem could be overcome by reducing the nominal value of the shares by means of a share split.

(d) Following the flotation Headwater is likely to come under pressure to **improve** the **payout ratio** and **dividend performance** of the shares. If it wishes to maintain a good share price and the ability to raise further finance in the future then it would be well advised to consider this seriously. It could also work towards **lowering the gearing ratio**, perhaps by using a part of the issue proceeds to **redeem some** or all of the **debentures**. However this should not appear to be the prime reason for the float or the attractiveness of the issue will be diminished.

21 ABC

Top tips. The wisdom of the dividend policy each company adopts is somewhat dependent upon its current and future plans – whether in fact it can make 'better' use of the profits by re-investing them. The answer stresses the importance of stability in dividend payments – this is a very important 'real-world' issue. The scrip issues and other concessions by C are unlikely to be harmful, although their positive effect may not be very great.

The key element in the second part of the question is the **clientele effect**. You need to stress the importance of the shareholders' tax position here.

A's policy

Company A, which has deliberately avoided paying any dividends in the last five years, is pursuing a sensible policy for a rapidly growing company. All its post-tax profits are being **reinvested** in the company's business. By adopting this strategy, Company A reduces to a minimum its need to raise new capital from the market. **Issue costs** are **reduced** or **eliminated** and the company has **greater** flexibility in its investment programme since decision taking is not dependent on gaining market approval. Furthermore, since the company is probably investing heavily its taxation liability may well be small.

B's policy

At first sight the policy pursued by Company B, of distributing 50% of post-tax profits, appears to offer the shareholders **predictability**. In fact, however, with changes in the company's operating profits and in the tax regime, the post-tax earnings may fluctuate considerably. **Reducing** the **dividend** of a quoted company normally causes its **share price** to **fall sharply**, since the market takes this as casting considerable doubt on its future earnings potential. But, the more **mature** and **predictable** that Company B's business is, the **greater the merit** in its **dividend policy**. A mature business usually needs less new capital investment than a growing one and so a higher level of dividend is justified. Distributing profits allows shareholders to make some adjustment to the risk and return profile of their portfolios without incurring the transaction costs of buying and selling.

C's policy

Company C's policy falls between those of A and B in that a dividend is paid, albeit a small one. The **predictability** of the dividend will be welcomed by shareholders, since it allows them to make their

financial plans with more certainty than would otherwise be possible. It also gives C part of A's advantage; **retained earnings** can be used as the principal source of investment capital. To the extent that they are relevant at all, **scrip issues** are likely to increase a company's market value, since they are often made to increase the **marketability** of the shares. Shareholder concessions are simply a means of attracting the 'small' shareholder who can benefit from them personally, and have no impact on dividend policy.

Effect on shareholders

In addition to looking at the cash flows of each company, we must also consider the impact of these dividend policies on the after tax wealth of shareholders. Shareholders can be divided into groups or '**clienteles**'. Different clienteles may be attracted to invest in each of the three firms, depending on their tax situation. It is worth noting that one clientele is as good as another in terms of the valuation it implies for the firm.

Company A would be particularly attractive to individuals who do not require an income stream from their investment and prefer to obtain a **return** through **capital growth**. Company B's clientele prefer a much higher proportion of their return to be in the form of **income**, although it would not be income on which they rely since it may be very variable from year to year. **Tax exempt funds**, such as pension funds, are indifferent between returns in the form of income or capital and might well invest in B since they need a flow of income to meet their day to day obligations. A large, diversified portfolio would reduce the effect of variability in the dividend. Company C is more likely to appeal to the **private investor** since most of the return is in the form of capital growth and there are shareholder concessions too.

So, each company may maximise the wealth of its shareholders. If the theorists are right, A, B and C all **maximise shareholder wealth** because the value of the companies is unaffected by dividend policy. Alternatively, each company's group of shareholders may favour their company's policy (and so their wealth is maximised) because the dividend policy is appropriate to their tax position and so maximises their post-tax returns.

22 DF

Top tips. The nature of the calculation in (a) should have suggested to you that the majority of marks would be available for the discussion. The answer looks well beyond the relationship with FF, considering the effect on relations with other customers, the effect on DF itself, and whether there are alternative sources of finance for DF.

(b) goes on to cover those alternative sources of finance. Various criteria can be used to consider them:

- **Costs** (including costs saved)
- **Flexibility** (a company knows when and how much interest and principal it has to pay on a loan but still has to pay it; by contrast an overdraft facility only has interest charged on it if it is used, but it is repayable on demand.)
- **Commitment** (security that has to be given, how much the company is tied into the arrangement)
- **Appearances** (effect on gearing, effect on accounts receivable if factor organisation is employed)

Although the question directs you towards discussing certain sources of finance, it does not confine you to those sources. Therefore, although the bulk of your answer to (b) should discuss the sources listed, a section briefly mentioning other sources should also be included.

Don't forget also in (b) to bear in mind the likely level of financial knowledge of the recipients of your report; don't assume a high level of understanding.

(c) is a summary list of the key factors venture capitalists will take into account. As well as the company's market prospects, venture capitalists are also interested in the involvement of management (level of commitment and expertise).

(a) **Cost of discount**

The **percentage cost** of an **early settlement discount** to the company giving it can be estimated by the formula:

$$1-\left[\frac{100}{100-d}\right]^{\frac{365}{t}}$$

Where d is the size of discount (%)
t is the reduction in payment period in days necessary to achieve discount

d = 3%
t = 90 – 10 = 80

$$\%\ \text{cost} = 1-\left[\frac{100}{100-3}\right]^{\frac{365}{80}} = 14.9\%$$

The **annual equivalent rate of interest** in offering a 3% cash discount is therefore 14.9%.

Offer of discount

Other factors that DF should take into account before deciding on whether to offer a discount include:

(i) The **attractiveness** of the **discount** to FF, and the probability that it will be taken up

(ii) Whether the **discount** will encourage FF to **purchase larger volumes** than it would if the discount was not available

(iii) The **relative effect** of the **different financing alternatives** on the administration costs of DF

(iv) The **ease** with which DF will be **able to raise alternative sources of finance,** the effect on **gearing** of these sources and the need for **security**

(v) The interest **other customers** might show in taking a discount

(vi) The possibility of **withdrawing** from the discount arrangement without loss of FF's goodwill in the future

(b) To: Shareholders in DF
From: Management Accountant
Date: 11 December 20X1
Subject: Alternative methods of financing current assets

Introduction

The contract to supply FF means that DF will need to make a **significant additional permanent investment** in **current assets** (in the form of additional inventories and higher accounts receivable). There will also be an additional temporary element which **fluctuates** with the level of sales. This will increase the amount of money needed by the company to finance these assets. There are a number of different sources of finance that could be considered.

Bank loan

A bank loan would normally be for a **fixed amount of money** for a fixed term and at a fixed rate of interest. It is not clear whether or not the company has any existing debt finance. However, it has already been decided to use a bank loan to fund the purchase of the additional fixed assets. The **size of this loan** and the **quality of security** available will be key factors in determining whether the bank is willing to make a further advance to cover the investment in current assets. Assuming that a further loan is forthcoming, the company will need to evaluate the effect of this in terms of **cost** and the **effect on the capital structure**.

Advantages of bank loan

(i) **Bank finance** is **cheaper** than the cost of allowing a 3% **settlement discount**, and is also likely to be cheaper than using debt factoring or invoice discounting.

(ii) The **loan** can be **negotiated** for a **fixed term** and a **fixed amount**, and this is less risky than for example using an overdraft, which is repayable on demand.

Disadvantages of bank loan

(i) The company will have to **pay interest** on the **full amount of the loan** for the entire period. This could make it more expensive in absolute terms than using an alternative source of finance where interest is only payable on the amount outstanding.

(ii) The loan will **increase the level** of the company's **financial gearing**. This means that there could be greater volatility in the returns attributable to the ordinary shareholders.

(iii) The bank is likely to **require security**. If there are questions as to the quality of the asset base, the bank may also require personal guarantees or additional security from the directors or shareholders.

Overdraft

An overdraft is a form of lending that is **repayable on demand**. The bank grants the customer a **facility** up to a certain limit, and the customer can take advantage of this as necessary. Overdrafts are essentially short-term finance, but are renewable and may become a near-permanent source.

Advantages of overdraft

The attraction of using an overdraft to finance current assets is that **interest** is only **payable** on the **amount of the facility actually in use** at any one time. This means that the **effective cost of the overdraft** will be **lower** than that of the **bank loan**. This is particularly attractive for a company such as DF, where demand is expected to fluctuate significantly from month to month, and consequently there are likely to be large variations in the level of working capital. It is also likely to be cheaper than the other alternatives being considered.

Disadvantages of overdraft

The main drawback to using an overdraft is that it will be **repayable on demand**, and therefore the company is in a more vulnerable position than it would be if a bank loan were used instead. A long-term overdraft may be included in the **gearing** calculations, and the bank may require **security.**

Debt factoring

Factoring is an arrangement to have **debts collected** by a **factor company**, which advances a proportion of the money it is due to collect. Services offered by the factor would normally include the following:

(i) **Administration** of the client's invoicing, sales accounting and debt collection service.

(ii) **Credit protection** for the client's debts, whereby the factor takes over the risk of loss from bad debts and so 'insures' the client against such losses.

(iii) **Making advance payments** to the client before the debts are collected.

Benefits of factoring

(i) **Growth** is **effectively financed through sales**, which provide the security to the factor. DF would not have to provide the additional security that might be required by the bank.

(ii) The **managers** of the business will **not** have to **spend time** on the problem of **slow paying accounts receivable**.

(iii) **Administration costs** will be **reduced** since the company will not have to run its own sales ledger department.

Disadvantages of factoring

(i) The **level of finance** is **geared** to the **level of sales**; in other words, finance lags sales. In practice, DF will need finance ahead of sales in order to build up sufficient inventorys to meet demand.

(ii) Factoring may be **more expensive** than bank finance. Service charges are generally around 2% of total invoice value, in addition to finance charges at levels comparable to bank overdraft rates.

(iii) The fact that accounts receivable will be making payments direct to the factor may present a **negative picture** of the firm.

Invoice discounting

Invoice discounting is related to factoring and many factors will provide an invoice discounting service. Invoice discounting is the **purchase of a selection of invoices**, at a discount. The discounter does **not take over** the **administration** of the client's sales ledger, and the arrangement is purely for the advance of cash.

Advantages of discounting

The arrangement is thus a **purely financial transaction** that can be used to release working capital, and therefore shares some of the benefits of factoring in that **further security** is **not required**. The discounter will make an assessment of the risk involved, and only good quality invoices will be purchased, but this should not be a problem to DF since FF is a large well established company.

Disadvantages of discounting

The main disadvantage is that **invoice discounting** is likely to be **more expensive** than any of the other alternatives. It is normally only used to cover a temporary cash shortage, and not for the routine provision of working capital.

Other options

(i) Finance can be obtained by **delaying payment to accounts payable.** In theory this is potentially a **cheap source of finance.** The main disadvantage may be a **loss of supplier goodwill,** at a time when the company needs supplier co-operation to fulfil the new order.

(ii) Other methods of loan finance, notably debenture issue, are not appropriate as they are essentially **long-term,** and the **debenture holders** may require **security** that the company is unable to give.

(iii) Although we are told that **increased inventory levels** will be needed to **fulfil FF's requirements,** there may be scope for **reducing the inventory levels** necessary to fulfil other customers' requirements.

Conclusions

Of the options considered, factoring or some form of bank finance is likely to be the most appropriate. The final decision must take into account the full cost implications, and not just the relative rates of interest on the finance. DF must also consider the effect of the type of finance selected on the statement of financial position, and the type of security that will be required. This could also impact on the ability of the company to raise further finance in the future.

(c) A **venture capital organisation** (below, 'VC') is likely to take the following factors into account when deciding whether or not to invest in DF.

The nature of the company's product

The VC will consider whether the good or service can be produced viably and has potential to sell, in the light of any market research which the company has carried out.

Expertise in production

The VC will want to be sure that the company has the necessary technical ability to implement production plans with efficiency.

Expertise in management

Venture capitalists pay much attention to the quality of management, since they believe that this is crucial to the success of the enterprise. Not only should the management team be committed to the enterprise; they should also have appropriate skills and experience.

The market and competition

The nature of the market for the product will be considered, including the threat which rival producers or future new entrants to the market may present.

Future prospects

The VC will want to be sure that the possible prospects of profits in the future compensate for the risks involved in the enterprise. The VC will expect the company to have prepared a detailed business plan detailing its future strategy.

Board membership

The VC is likely to require a place on the Board of Directors. Board representation will ensure that the VC's interests will be taken account of, and that the VC has a say in matters relating to the future strategy of the business.

Risk borne by the existing owners

The VC is likely to wish to ensure that the existing owners of the business bear a significant part of the investment risk relating to the expansion. If they are owner-managers, bearing part of the risk will provide an incentive for them to ensure the success of the venture. Although the VC may be providing most of the investment, the amounts provided by the owners should be significant in relation to their overall personal wealth.

Exit routes

The means by which the VC can eventually realise its investment are called 'exit routes'. Ideally, the VC will try to ensure that there are a number of exit routes.

23 CRY

Top tips. (a) demonstrates the complications that may occur in weighted average cost of capital calculations.

With bonds, the most serious mistake you can make is to treat redeemable bonds as irredeemable. Because the bonds are redeemable, you need to carry out an IRR analysis. Remember this calculation is done from the viewpoint of the investor. The investor pays the market price for the bonds at time 0, and then receives the interest and the conversion value in subsequent years. You must bring tax into your calculation, although you could have assumed that tax was paid with a one year time delay.

Lastly don't forget that the weightings in the WACC calculation are based on **market values, not book values**.
(b) demonstrates that the calculation of the weighted average cost of capital is not a purely mechanical process. It makes assumptions about the shareholders, the proposed investment and the company's capital structure and future dividend prospects. Given all the assumptions involved, the result of the calculations may need to be taken with a large pinch of salt!

(a) The post-tax weighted average cost of capital should first be calculated.

(i) **Ordinary shares**

The formula for calculating the cost of equity when there is dividend growth is:

$$k_e = \frac{D_0(1 + g)}{P_0} + g$$

where k_e = cost of equity
D_0 = current dividend
g = rate of growth
P_0 = current ex div market value.

In this case we shall estimate the future rate of growth (g) from the average growth in dividends over the past four years.

$810 = 620\ (1 + g)^4$

$$(1 + g)^4 = \frac{810}{620}$$

$$= 1.3065$$

$$(1 + g) = 1.069$$

$$g = 0.069 = 6.9\%$$

$$k_e = \frac{0.27 \times 1.069}{3} + 0.069 = 16.5\%$$

(ii) **7% Bonds**

In order to find the post-tax cost of the bonds, which are redeemable in ten years time, it is necessary to find the discount rate (IRR) which will give the future post-tax cash flows a present value of $77.10.

The relevant cash flows for a single bond with a nominal value of $100 are:

(1) Annual interest payments, net of tax, which are $100 × 7% × 70% = $4.90 (for ten years)

(2) A capital repayment of $100 (in ten years time)

It is assumed that tax relief on the bond interest arises at the same time as the interest payment. In practice the cash flow effect is unlikely to be felt for about a year, but this will have no significant effect on the calculations.

Try 10%

	Present value
	$'000
Current market value of bonds	(77.1)
Annual interest payments net of tax $4.90 × 6.145 (10% for 10 years)	30.1
Capital repayment $100 × 0.386 (10% in ten years time)	38.6
NPV	(8.4)

Try 5%

	$'000
Current market value of bonds	(77.1)
Annual interest payments net of tax $4.90 × 7.722	37.8
Capital repayment 100 × 0.614	61.4
NPV	22.1

$$\text{IRR} = 5\% + \left[\frac{22.1}{22.1 - -8.4} \times (10 - 5)\right]\% = 8.6\%$$

(iii) **The weighted average cost of capital**

	Market value	*Cost*
	$'000	%
Equity	9,000	16.5
7% Bonds	1,002	8.6
	10,002	

$$\text{WACC} = \left(\frac{V_e}{V_e + V_d}\right) K_e + \left(\frac{V_d}{V_e + V_d}\right) K_d\ (I - T)$$

$$\text{WACC} = \left(\frac{9{,}000}{10{,}002}\right) \times 16.5 + \left(\frac{1{,}002}{10{,}002}\right) \times 8.6$$

(The K_d is already post-tax so it is not multiplied by I – T)

= 14.85 + 0.86 = 15.7%

The above calculations suggest that a discount rate in the region of 16% might be appropriate for the appraisal of new investment opportunities.

(b) Difficulties and uncertainties in the above estimates arise in a number of areas.

(i) **The cost of equity**. The above calculation assumes that all shareholders have the same marginal cost of capital and the same dividend expectations, which is unrealistic. In addition, it is assumed that dividend growth has been and will be at a constant rate of 6.9%. In fact, actual growth in the years 20X5/6 and 20X8/9 was in excess of 9%, while in the year 20X7/8 there was no dividend growth. 6.9% is merely the average rate of growth for the past four years. The rate of future growth will depend more on the return from future projects undertaken than on the past dividend record.

(ii) **The use of the weighted average cost of capital**. Use of the weighted average cost of capital as a discount rate is only justified where the company in question has achieved what it believes to be the **optimal capital structure** (the mix of debt and equity) and where it intends to maintain this structure in the long term.

(iii) **The projects themselves**. The weighted average cost of capital makes **no allowance** for the **business risk** of **individual projects**. In practice some companies, having calculated the WACC, then add a premium for risk. In this case, for example, if one used a risk premium of 5% the final discount rate would be 21%. Ideally the risk premium should vary from project to project, since not all projects are equally risky. In general, the riskier the project the higher the discount rate which should be used.

24 Katash

Top tips. Use clear workings and a logical approach to the calculations in parts (a) and (b). They should be straightforward if you have done enough practice but make sure you do not spend too long on them.

The discussion in part (d) covers a very important and highly examinable area. You must be familiar with both the traditional view and that of Modigliani and Miller.

Easy marks. There are plenty of marks available for some straightforward calculations.

(a) **Current WACC**

Cost of debt

Year		*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*PV*	*Discount factor*	*PV*
		£	7%	£	5%	£
0	Debenture price	(105.00)	1.000	(105.00)	1.000	(105.00)
1-5	Interest (10 × (1 – 0.3))	7.00	4.100	28.70	4.329	30.30
5	Repayment	100.00	0.713	71.30	0.784	78.40
				(5.00)		3.70

Calculate the cost of debt using an IRR calculation.

$$\text{IRR} = a\% + \left[\frac{NPV_a}{NPV_a - NPV_b} \times (b - a)\right]\%$$

$$\text{Cost of debt} = 5 + \left[\frac{3.7}{3.7+5}\ (7-5)\right]$$

= 5.85%

Cost of equity

$k_e = R_f + (R_m - R_f)\beta$

R_f = 5%
R_m = 12%
β = 1.2
k_e = 5% + (12% – 5%)1.2
= 13.40%

Weighted average cost of capital

$V_E = 450 \times 5 = £2{,}250m$

$V_D = 1{,}800 \times 1.05 = £1{,}890m$

$$\text{WACC} = k_e\left[\frac{V_E}{V_E + V_D}\right] + k_d\left[\frac{V_D}{V_E + V_D}\right]$$

$$= \left[13.40\% \times \frac{2.250}{4{,}140}\right] + \left[5.85\% \times \frac{1{,}890}{4{,}140}\right]$$

= 7.28% + 2.67%

= 9.95%

(b) **Project specific cost of equity**

Ungear Chlopop beta

$$\beta_u = \beta_g\ \frac{V_E}{V_E + V_D\,(1-t)}$$

For Chlopop:
V_E = 600 x 5.60 = £3,360m
V_D = £525m

$\beta_u = 1.6 \times (3{,}360/(3{,}360 + (525 \times 0.7))$

= 1.44

Re-gearing

V_E = £510m
V_D = £390m

$$\beta_g = \beta_u \times \frac{V_E + V_D(1-t)}{V_E}$$

$$\beta_g = 1.44 \times \frac{510 + (390 \times 0.7)}{510} = 2.211$$

Cost of equity

$k_e = R_f + (R_m - R_f)\ \beta$
= 5% + (12% – 5%)2.211
= 20.48%

(c) **Appropriateness of the discount rates**

The project specific cost of capital is **higher** than the current WACC. This reflects the additional **business and financial risk** of the new investment.

Business risk

The new investment is an industry in which Katash has not previously been involved. The equity beta of Chlopop is higher than that of Katash, and when this beta is re-geared to reflect Katash's gearing ratio, it is **considerably higher**. This presumably reflects the additional risk of the industry in which Chlopop operates and the **return required by investors** in Katash is likely to go up. However, a number of factors contribute to the beta value, not all of which will apply to Katash.

Financial risk

The finance that is raised to fund a new investment might substantially **change the capital structure** and the perceived financial risk of investing in the company. For this investment the proportion of debt is 43% (390/900 × 100%) whereas it was previously 46% (1,890/4,140 × 100%). The financial risk has therefore not substantially changed and it could therefore be argued that the current WACC is an acceptable discount rate.

Recommendation

The current WACC does not reflect the additional business risk that arises from undertaking an investment in a new, risky sector.

15% is **too high** a rate to use as it is based only on the cost of equity and ignores the amount of debt that will be used to finance the investment. It is therefore recommended that a **project specific cost of capital** is used.

(d) **Sources of finance**

The sources of long-term finance for Katash are ordinary shares and bonds and the rate of return expected by investors depends on the **relative risks** of each type of finance. Equity is the most risky and therefore has the highest cost of capital. The bonds are the least risky with the lowest cost of capital.

Therefore, if we ignore taxation, the weighted average cost of capital would be expected to decrease if equity is replaced by debt.

Traditional view

In the **traditional view** of capital structure, ordinary shareholders are relatively **indifferent** to the addition of small amounts of debt so the WACC falls as a company gears up.

However, as equity is replaced by debt and gearing increases, **financial risk** will increase so the cost of equity will rise and this will offset the effect of cheaper debt.

The before-tax cost of debt will also increase at high levels of gearing due to the risk of bankruptcy. This **bankruptcy risk** will further increase the cost of equity.

A company can therefore gear up using debt and reduce its WACC to a **minimum**. When the WACC is minimised, the **market value** of the company, equal to the present value of its cash flows, will be maximised.

Beyond this minimum point, the WACC will increase due to the effect of increasing financial and bankruptcy risk.

Modigliani and Miller

In contrast to this traditional view, **Modigliani and Miller**, assuming a perfect market and ignoring tax, demonstrated that the WACC remained constant as a company increased its gearing. They argued that the increase in the cost of equity due to financial risk **exactly balanced** the decrease in WACC caused by the lower before-tax cost of debt.

In a perfect capital market, there is no bankruptcy risk so the WACC and therefore the market value of the company is constant at all gearing levels. The market value of a company depends on its **business risk** only. This means that Katash cannot change its WACC.

However, corporate tax does exist and interest payments on debt reduce tax liability. It could thus be argued that WACC falls as gearing increases, and Katash could therefore reduce its WACC to a minimum by taking on as much debt as possible.

The assumption of a perfect capital market is unrealistic. Bankruptcy risk and other costs of servicing debt will increase as gearing increases and this will offset the value of the tax shield.

Conclusion

In conclusion, Katash should be able to reduce its WACC by gearing up, but the minimum WACC achievable may be hard to determine.

25 Black Raven

Top tips. This question provides comprehensive practice of valuation techniques. In the exam you would most likely be expected to use these techniques to carry out calculations that would form the basis of discussions. Even in this question, you do need to make clear the basis of your calculations and the assumptions you are making (in (a) the assumption is that the purchaser will accept the valuation, in (b) that the last five years are an appropriate indicator and so on).

Other important issues which this question raises include:

- Valuation (if any) of intangible assets
- Lack of likelihood that asset valuation basis would be used
- Adjustment to P/E ratios used in calculations because company is unquoted

Don't take all of the figures used in this answer as the only possibilities. You could for example have made adjustments to estimated earnings in (c) to allow for uncertainty, or used a different figure to 17% in (d).

(a) **An assets basis valuation**

If we assume that a purchaser would accept the revaluation of assets by the independent valuer, an assets valuation of equity would be as follows.

		$	$
Non-current assets			
(ignore patents, assumed to have no market value)			
Land and buildings			1,075,000
Plant and equipment			480,000
Motor vehicles			45,000
			1,600,000
Current assets			383,000
			1,983,000
Less:	current liabilities	230,000	
	loan	400,000	
			630,000
Asset value of equity (300,000 shares)			1,353,000

Value per share = $4.51

Unless the purchasing company intends to sell the assets acquired, it is more likely that a valuation would be based on earnings.

(b) **Earnings basis valuations**

If the purchaser believes that earnings over the last five years are an appropriate measure for valuation, we could take average earnings in these years, which were:

$$\frac{\$465,000}{5} = \$93,000$$

An appropriate P/E ratio for an earnings basis valuation might be the average of the three publicly quoted companies for the recent year. (A trend towards an increase in the P/E ratio over three years is assumed, and even though average earnings have been taken, the most recent year's P/E ratios are considered to be the only figures which are appropriate.)

	P/E ratio
Albatross	8.5
Bullfinch	9.0
Crow	10.0
Average	9.167 (i)
Reduce by about 40% to allow for unquoted status	5.5 (ii)

Share valuations on a past earnings basis are as follows.

	P/E ratio	*Earnings*	*Valuation*	*Number of shares*	*Value per share*
		$'000	$'000		$
(i)	9.167	93	852.5	300,000	2.84
(ii)	5.5	93	511.5	300,000	1.71

Because of the unquoted status of Black Raven, purchasers would probably apply a lower P/E ratio, and an offer of about $1.71 per share would be more likely than one of $2.84.

Future earnings might be used. Forecast earnings based on the company's five year plan will be used.

		$	
Expected earnings:	Year 1	100,000	
	Year 2	104,000	
	Year 3	108,160	
	Year 4	112,486	
	Year 5	116,986	
	Average	108,326.4	(say $108,000)

A share valuation on an expected earnings basis would be as follows.

P/E ratio	*Average future earnings*	*Valuation*	*Value per share*
5.5	$108,000	$594,000	$1.98

It is not clear whether the purchasing company would accept Black Raven's own estimates of earnings.

(c) **A dividend yield basis of valuation with no growth**

There seems to have been a general pattern of increase in dividend yields to shareholders in quoted companies, and it is reasonable to suppose that investors in Black Raven would require at least the same yield.

An average yield for the recent year for the three quoted companies will be used. This is 12%. The only reliable dividend figure for Black Raven is $45,000 a year gross, in spite of the expected increase in future earnings. A yield basis valuation would therefore be:

$$\frac{\$45,000}{12\%} = \$375,000 \text{ or } \$1.25 \text{ per share}$$

A purchasing company would, however, be more concerned with earnings than with dividends if it intended to buy the entire company, and an offer price of $1.25 should be considered too low. On the other hand, since Black Raven is an unquoted company, a higher yield than 12% might be expected.

(d) **A dividend yield basis of valuation, with growth**

Since earnings are expected to increase by 4% a year, it could be argued that a similar growth rate in dividends would be expected. We shall assume that the required yield is 17%, rather more than the 12% for quoted companies because Black Raven is unquoted. However, in the absence of information about the expected growth of dividends in the quoted companies, the choice of 12%, 17% or whatever, is not much better than a guess.

$$P_0 = \frac{D_0(1+g)}{(r-g)} = \frac{45{,}000(1.04)}{(0.17-0.04)} = \$360{,}000 \text{ or } \$1.20 \text{ per share}$$

(e) **The discounted value of future cash flows**

The present value of cash inflows from an investment by a purchaser of Black Raven's shares would be discounted at either 18% or 14%, depending on the view taken of Black Raven's assets. Although the loan of $400,000 is secured on some of the company's property, there are enough assets against which there is no charge to assume that a purchaser would consider the investment to be backed by tangible assets.

The present value of the benefits from the investment would be as follows.

Year	*Cash flow*	*Discount factor*	*PV of cash flow*
	$'000	14%	$'000
1	120	0.877	105.24
2	120	0.769	92.28
3	140	0.675	94.50
4	70	0.592	41.44
5	120	0.519	62.28
			395.74

A valuation per share of $1.32 might therefore be made. This basis of valuation is one which a purchasing company ought to consider. It might be argued that cash flows beyond year 5 should be considered and a higher valuation could be appropriate, but a figure of less than $2 per share would be offered on a DCF valuation basis.

Summary

Any of the preceding valuations might be made, but since share valuation is largely a subjective matter, many other prices might be offered. In view of the high asset values of the company an asset stripping purchaser might come forward.

26 Bases of valuation

(a) (i) **Statement of financial position value** = $ (2,070,600 – 1,616,500) = $454,100.

(ii) **Replacement cost value** = $454,100 + $(725,000 – 651,600) + $(550,000 – 515,900) = $561,600.

(iii) **Realisable value** = $454,100 + $(450,000 – 651,600) + (570,000-515,900)-$14,900 = $291,700.

Bad debts are 2% × $745,000 = $14,900. Bad debts are assumed not to be relevant to statement of financial position and replacement cost values.

(iv) The **dividend growth model value** depends on an estimate of growth, which is far from clear given the wide variations in earnings over the five years.

1 The lowest possible value, assuming zero growth, is as follows.

$$\text{Value ex div} = \frac{\$25{,}000}{0.12} = \$208{,}333$$

It is not likely that this will be the basis taken.

2 Looking at dividend growth over the past five years we have:

20X4 dividend = $25,000

20X0 dividend = $20,500.

If the annual growth rate in dividends is g

$$(1 + g)^4 = \frac{(25,000)}{20,500} = 1.2195$$

$$1 + g = 1.0508$$

$$g = 0.0508, \text{ say } 5.1\%$$

$$\text{Then, MV ex div} = \frac{\text{Dividend in 1 year}}{0.12 - g}$$

$$= \frac{25,000(1.051)}{0.069}$$

$$= \$380,797$$

3 Using the rb model, we have:

Average proportion retained =

$$\frac{12,800 + 44,200 + 18,300 + 13,400 + 27,000}{33,300 + 66,800 + 43,300 + 38,400 + 52,200} = 0.495 \text{ (say } b = 0.5)$$

$$\text{Return on investment this year} = \frac{53,200}{\text{average investment}}$$

$$= \frac{53,200}{(454,100 + (454,100 - 27,200)}$$

$$= 0.1208 \text{ (say } r = 12\%).$$

Then g = 0.5 × 12% = 6%

$$\text{so MV ex div} = \frac{\$25,000(1.06)}{0.06} = \$441,667$$

(v) **P/E ratio model**

Comparable quoted companies to Manon have P/E ratios of about 10. Manon is much smaller and being unquoted its P/E ratio would be less than 10, but how much less?

If we take a P/E ratio of 5, we have MV = $53,200 × 5 = $266,000.

If we take a P/E ratio of 10 × 2/3, we have MV = $53,200 × 10 × 2/3 = $354,667.

If we take a P/E ratio of 10, we have MV = $532,000.

(b) (i) **The statement of financial position value**

The balance sheet value should not play a part in the negotiation process. Historical costs are not relevant to a decision on the future value of the company.

(ii) **The replacement cost**

This gives the cost of setting up a similar business. Since this gives a higher figure than any other valuation in this case, it could show the maximum price for Carmen to offer. There is clearly no goodwill to value.

(iii) **The realisable value**

This shows the cash which the shareholders in Manon could get by liquidating the business. It is therefore the minimum price which they would accept.

All the methods (i) to (iii) suffer from the limitation that they do not look at the going concern value of the business as a whole. Methods (iv) and (v) do consider this value. However, the realisable value is of use in assessing the risk attached to the business as a going concern, as it gives the base value if things go wrong and the business has to be abandoned.

(iv) **The dividend model**

The figures have been calculated using Manon's K_e (12%). If (2) or (3) were followed, the value would be the minimum that Manon's shareholders would accept, as the value in use exceeds scrap value in (iii). The relevance of a dividend valuation to Carmen will depend on whether the current retention and reinvestment policies would be continued. Certainly the value to Carmen should be based on 9% rather than 12%. Both companies are ungeared and in the same risk class so the different required returns must be due to their relative sizes and the fact that Carmen's shares are more marketable.

One of the main limitations on the dividend growth model is the problem of estimating the future value of g.

(v) **The P/E ratio model**

The P/E ratio model is an attempt to get at the value which the market would put on a company like Manon. It does provide an external yardstick, but is a very crude measure. As already stated, the P/E ratio which applies to larger quoted companies must be lowered to allow for the size of Manon and the non-marketability of its shares. Another limitation of P/E ratios is that the ratio is very dependent on the expected future growth of the firm. It is therefore not easy to find a P/E ratio of a 'similar firm'. However, in practice the P/E model may well feature in the negotiations over price simply because it is an easily understood yardstick.

(c) The range within which the purchase price is likely to be agreed will be the minimum price which the shareholders of Manon will accept and the maximum price which the directors of Carmen will pay.

The minimum price which the shareholders of Manor will accept will be the realisable value of the assets $291,700. The maximum price Carmen will pay is the earnings basis using a P/E of 10 at $532,000. The dividend basis gives a value of $380,797. This looks optimistic given the lack of dividend growth over the last couple of years.

The eventual purchase price will therefore probably be in the range $291,700 to $375,000.

27 Market efficiency

Top tips. The efficient market hypothesis may be the subject of a part question in this exam. An answer focusing on a technical concept should always start with a clear definition of that concept, including as appropriate the key assumptions. Here the answer goes on to discuss the various forms of the efficient market hypothesis, concentrating on the differences between them (the amount of information available).

It is also important when discussing a theory that attempts to model actual behaviour to bring in evidence of how much it applies in practice. Here that is a key distinction between the strong form and other forms.

If a theory does not appear to work in practice, you need to indicate why this might be so, or at least that there is no obvious explanation why the theory does not work. Here the strong form hypothesis does not work, so you consider why when discussing the hypothesis. In addition there is the general point that some financial institutions do perform better than expected. Because this applies to all forms of the efficient market hypothesis, and because the subject is highlighted in the question you need a separate paragraph covering why performance of financial institutions might deviate from what is anticipated.

Generally written questions will benefit from a conclusion that sums up the answer and is supported by the preceding discussion.

The **efficient market hypothesis** contends that some capital markets (in the UK and US for instance) are 'efficient markets' in which the prices at which securities are traded reflect all the **relevant information** available. In other words, this information is freely available to all participants in the market and is fully reflected in share prices. Further, it is assumed that **transaction costs** are **insignificant** and do not discourage trading in shares, and that no single individual or group of individuals dominates the market.

The theory exists in three forms: weak form, semi-strong form and strong form.

Weak form efficiency

Weak form efficiency contends that prices only change when new factual information becomes available. Information about past prices is in the public domain and equally available to all players in the market, and thus if this form of the hypothesis is correct, no one player should be able to outperform the market consistently. Thus the fact that financial institutions rarely outperform the market on a regular basis lends weight to this form of the theory.

Semi strong efficiency

The semi-strong form of the theory holds that in addition to responding to information that is publicly available, the market also reflects all other knowledge that is publicly available and relevant to the share valuation. Thus to take the example used above, the share prices of companies involved in a takeover bid will change in **advance of the bid** being **formally announced** as the market anticipates the bid. Once again, this form of the theory is based upon the assumption that all the knowledge upon which share price movements are based is in **the public domain** and **freely available**. Thus no single player or group of players should be able consistently to outperform the market. This form of the theory is supported by empirical research which suggests that share price movements do anticipate merger announcements. The fact that the neither the financial institutions nor any other group of investors regularly beat the market also supports this version of the hypothesis.

Strong form efficiency

The strong form of the theory holds that the market price of securities reflects **all information** that is **available**. This includes knowledge of past performance and anticipated events as in the semi-strong form, and also **'insider' knowledge** not publicly available. This form can be tested by investigating the effect on the share price of the effect of releasing a piece of information previously confidential to the firm; if the strong form of the hypothesis is valid, then this should already be factored into the share value and a significant price movement should not result. The implication is that this sort of information is only available to specialists who are in regular contact with the company, such as investment trust managers, and that as a result they could use their privileged position to outperform other investors. Empirical work suggests that this form of the hypothesis is not valid, and this is what one would expect since insider dealing is illegal in the UK.

Why institutions may perform well

If an institution **does consistently perform well**, it is probably more related to the fund managers' understanding of the structure of the industries and markets in which they invest, and their ability to hold a more widely diversified portfolio than the small investor. This means that they are in a better position to avoid the risk of large losses. The fact that they are in daily contact with the markets also means that they are in practice able to react more quickly to new information that becomes available than is the small investor.

Conclusion

Thus the fact that the financial institutions in general do **not consistently outperform** the **market supports** both the weak and semi-strong forms of the efficient market hypothesis.

28 Expo plc

Top tips. This question is a good example of how you might be tested on calculations involving forward and money market alternatives to hedging. You can expect to have to also answer discussion questions on this topic.

(a) To: The Treasurer
From: Assistant
Date: 12 November 20X7

(i) Comparison of two methods of hedging exchange risk

Method 1

3 month borrowing rate = $3 \times \frac{3}{12} = 0.75\%$

750,000/1.0075 = 744,417 SFr

Sterling at spot rate = $\frac{744,417}{2.3834}$ = £312,334

3 month sterling deposit rate = $5 \times \frac{3}{12} = 1.25\%$

Sterling value of deposit in 3 months = £312,334 × 1.0125 = £316,238

Method 2

The exchange rate is agreed in advance. Cash received in three months is converted to produce 750,000/2.3688 = £316,616.

Conclusion

On the basis of the above calculations, Method 2 gives a slightly better receipt. Banker's commission has been omitted from the figures.

(ii) **Factors to consider before deciding whether to hedge foreign exchange risk using the foreign currency markets**

Risk-averse strategy

The company should have a clear strategy concerning how much foreign exchange risk it is prepared to bear. A highly **risk-averse** or **'defensive'** strategy of **hedging all transactions** is expensive in terms of commission costs but recognises that floating exchange rates are very unpredictable and can cause losses high enough to bankrupt the company.

Predictive strategy

An alternative 'predictive' strategy recognises that if all transactions are hedged, then the chance of currency gains is lost. The company could therefore attempt to forecast foreign exchange movements and only **hedge those transactions** where **currency losses** are **predicted**. The fact is that some currencies are relatively predictable (for example, if inflation is high the currency will devalue and there is little to be gained by hedging payments in that currency).

This is, of course, a much more risky strategy but in the long run, if predictions are made sensibly, the strategy should lead to a higher expected value than that of hedging everything and will incur lower commission costs as well. The risk remains, though, that a single large uncovered transaction could cause severe problems if the currency moves in the opposite direction to that predicted.

Best strategy

A sensible strategy for our company could be to set a **cash size** for a foreign currency exposure above which all amounts must be hedged, but below this limit a predictive approach is taken or even, possibly, all amounts are left unhedged.

(b) Exchange rate fluctuations primarily occur due to fluctuations in currency **supply and demand.** Demand comes from individuals, firms and governments who want to buy a currency and supply comes from those who want to sell it.

Supply and demand for currencies are in turn influenced by:

(i) The rate of inflation, compared with the rate of inflation in other countries
(ii) Interest rates, compared with interest rates in other countries
(iii) The balance of payments
(iv) Sentiment of foreign exchange market participants regarding economic prospects
(v) Speculation
(vi) Government policy on intervention to influence the exchange rate

(c) The other methods used to hedge exchange rate risk include the following.

Currency of invoice which is where an exporter invoices his foreign customer in his domestic currency, or an importer arranges with his foreign supplier to be invoiced in his domestic currency. However, although either the exporter or the importer can avoid any exchange risk in this way, only one of them can deal in his domestic currency. The other must accept the exchange risk, since there will be a period of time elapsing between agreeing a contract and paying for the goods (unless payment is made with the order).

Matching receipts and payments is where a company that expects to make payments and have receipts in the same foreign currency **offsets its payments against its receipts in the currency**. Since the company will be setting off foreign currency receipts against foreign currency payments, it does not matter whether the currency strengthens or weakens against the company's 'domestic' currency because there will be no purchase or sale of the currency.

Matching assets and liabilities is where a company which expects to receive a substantial amount of income in a foreign currency hedges against a weakening of the currency by borrowing in the foreign currency and using the foreign receipts to repay the loan. For example, US dollar debtors can be hedged by taking out a US dollar overdraft. In the same way, US dollar trade creditors can be matched against a US dollar bank account which is used to pay the creditors.

Leading and lagging is where a company makes payments in advance or delays payments beyond their due date in order to take advantage of foreign exchange movements.

Netting is where inter-company balances are netted off before arranging payment. It reduces foreign exchange purchase costs and there is less loss in interest from having money in transit.

Foreign currency derivatives such as futures contracts, options and swaps can be used to hedge foreign currency risk.

29 Yields

Top tips. You would probably not get a full question on the yield curve, but both parts (a) and (b) represent the sort of part questions that might be set on this area. In (a) your explanation does need to be supplemented by a diagram, although you also need to explain about maturities.

(b) firstly explains why expectations are so important (because other possible influences tend to remain constant). The answer then explains how expectations impact upon investor behaviour. Expectations of changes in inflation need to be discussed separately.

(c) is a standard question in the area of corporate finance. Note that the discussion covers investment appraisal as well as the effects on capital structure.

(a) A **yield curve** is a curve that can be drawn showing the relationship between the **yield on an asset** (usually long-term government stocks) and the **term to maturity** of that same asset. It shows how the rate of interest (yield) varies with different maturities. To construct a yield curve you need to gather information about the interest rates on short-term stocks, medium-term stocks and long-

term stocks. These rates can then be **plotted on a diagram** against the maturity dates of those same stocks.

A normal yield curve looks like Figure 1.

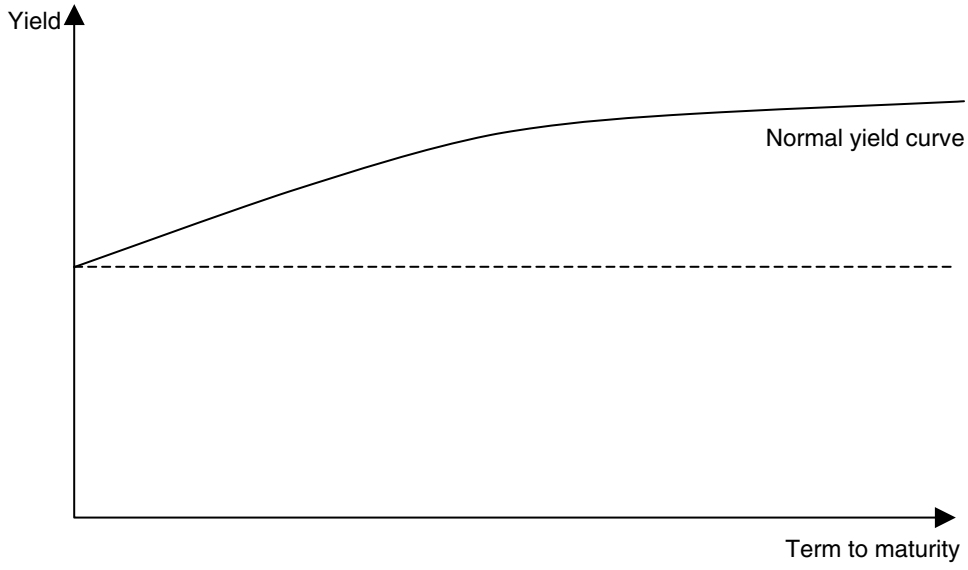


Figure 1

(b) **Importance of expectations**

The **shape of the yield curve** depends very much on **expectations about the future.** Reward for loss of liquidity is likely to remain fairly constant. Reward for possible default is likely to remain constant also. Reward for the risk of having to cash in before maturity and suffering a loss are also likely to stay fairly constant. The only factor which will vary widely is expectations - in particular, expectations about future short-term interest rates.

Expectations about the future level of short-term interest rates are the most important factor in determining the shape of the yield curve. Although the normal yield curve is upward sloping, with higher yields being expected for longer maturity periods, expectations of rises in future interest rates can cause the yield curve to be steeper than the normal curve. Expectations of falls in interest rates can cause the yield to flatten, or, if substantial falls are expected, to become downward-sloping (Figure 2).

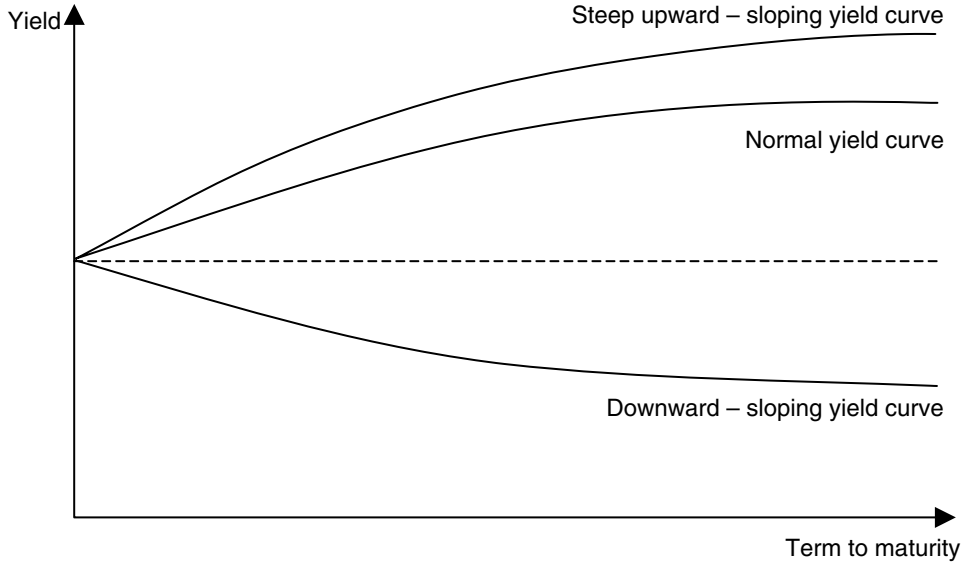


Figure 2

Rising interest rates

If interest rates are now **expected to rise**, investors will not wish to lock in to lower interest rates and will therefore sell short. Borrowers will wish to borrow at lower long-term rates to avoid exposure to the higher rates expected in the future. These demand and supply factors will result in a shortage of long-term funds, which will push up long-term money market rates, and to an excess supply of short-term funds, which will lead to a reduction in short-term rates. The resulting yield curve will be more steeply upward-sloping than the normal curve.

Falling interest rates

If there are **new expectations that interest rates will fall,** investors will prefer to lock in at higher long rates, while borrowers will not wish to be committed to higher long term rates and will prefer to borrow short. There will be an excess supply of funds at long maturities and a shortage of funds at short maturities. This will tend to lower the yield curve, possibly resulting in a flat curve or even in a downward-sloping curve.

Inflation

Short-term interest rates are in turn determined partly by **expectations of inflation** rates in the near future. If high inflation is expected, investors will seek higher nominal rates of interest in order to achieve a real return. If people believe that inflation is falling, then they will not require such a high return.

(c) The implications of a fall in interest rates for a typical company are:

(i) The cost of **floating rate borrowing** will fall, making it more attractive than fixed rate borrowing. For most companies with borrowings, interest charges will be reduced, resulting in higher profitability and earnings per share.

(ii) The **value of the company's** shares will **rise**, both because of the higher level of company profitability and also because of the lower alternative returns that investors could earn from banks and deposits, if interest rates are expected to remain low in the longer term.

(iii) The **higher share value** results in a **lower cost of equity capital**, and hence a lower **overall cost of capital** for the company. Investment opportunities that were previously rejected may now become viable.

(iv) As interest rates fall, consumers have **more disposable income**. This may increase demand for the company's products. Falling returns on deposits may, however, encourage many people to save more, rather than spend.

Index

Note. **Key Terms** and their page references are given in **bold**.

Accounting rate of return method, 136
Accounts receivable payment period, 70
Accounts payable payment period, 71
Acid test ratio, **70**
Adjusted payback, 177
Agency problem, **23**
Agency relationship, **15**
Aggregate demand, 39
Aggressive approach to financing working capital, 121
Allocative efficiency, 47, 314
Alternative Investment Market (AIM), 56
Annuity tables, 146
Arbitrage, **278**, 330
ARR and the comparison of mutually exclusive projects, 137
Assessing creditworthiness, 88
Asset beta formula, **283**
Asset replacement decisions, 188
Asset turnover, 18
Asset valuation bases, 295
Average inventory, **83**
Average production period, **71**

Bad debt risk, 93
Balanced portfolio, 259
Bank of England, 353
Basic earnings per share, **239**
Basis risk, 351
Baumol model, 114
Behavioural finance, 319
Benefits
Beta factor, **260**
Bonds, 207
Break-up basis, 9
Buffer safety inventory, 83
Bulk discounts, 84
Business angel financing, 245
Business risk, 281, 286

Cap, **356**
Capital allowances, 162
Capital asset pricing model (CAPM), 259, 282
Capital budgeting process, 130
Capital budgets, 129
Capital employed, **18**
Capital expenditure, **128**
Capital rationing, **190**
Capital structure theories, 276
Capital structure, 245
Cash budgets, 110
Cash cycle, 68
Cash flow based valuation models, 301
Cash flow forecast, **105**, 112
Cash flow problems, 105
Cash flow, 68
Cash management models, 114
Cash operating cycle, **68**
Centralised treasury department, 113
Certainty-equivalent approach, 173
Certificates of deposit (CDs), 118
Chartists, 317
Collar, **356**
Collecting amounts owing, 91
Competition Commission, 45
Competition policy, 45
Compounding, 142
Conservative approach to financing working capital, 121
Contract price, 341
Contract size, 341
Conversion premium, 208
Conversion value, 208
Convertible bonds, 208
Corporate bonds, 56
Corporate governance regulation, 50
Corporate governance, **24**
Corporate objectives, 8
Cost of bank debt, 268
Cost of capital, **144**, 239, 254, 269
Cost of convertible debt, 268
Cost of debt, 264, 286
Cost of floating rate debt, 267
Cost of preference shares, 269
Countertrade, 98
Coupon, 207
Credit control, 87
Credit insurance, 94
Credit ratings, 89
Credit utilisation report, 89
Creditor hierarchy, 255
Creditworthiness, 88
Cum div, **20**
Currency future, **341**
Currency of invoice, 334
Current ratio, **70**

Day-of-the-week effects, 263, 319
Debentures, **208**
Debt collection policy, 91
Debt finance, 206
Debt ratio, 19, 236
Deep discount bonds, **208**

Deregulation, 47
Discount rate, 269
Discount tables, 145
Discounted cash flow basis of valuation, 303
Discounted cash flow, 142
Discounts, 84
Dividend cover, **240**
Dividend decision, 5
Dividend growth model, 257, 258, 302
Dividend policy, 225
Dividend valuation model, 256, 302
Dividend yield, **20**, **241**
Dividends, 117
Du Pont system of ratio analysis, 17

Early settlement discounts, 92
Earnings per share, **10**, **21**, 239
Earnings yield valuation method, 300
Economic exposure, 329
Economic order quantity (EOQ), **81**
Economic policy, 16, 36
Economy, **27**
Effectiveness, **27**
Efficiency, **27**
Efficient market hypothesis, **314**
Employees, 15
Enterprise Initiative, 49
Environmental ('green') policies, 49
Equity finance, 213, 244
Equity gap, 244
Equity risk premium, 261
Equivalent annual benefit, 189
Equivalent annual cost method, 188
Ethical investment funds, 50
Eurobond, **58**
Eurocurrency, **57**
Euro-equity, 58
European Union, 47
Ex div, **20**
Exchange rate policy, 38
Exchange rate, **41**, **326**
Exchange-traded options, 343
Executive share options plans (ESOPs), 23
Expectations theory, 352
Expected cash flows, 112, 174
Export credit insurance, **98**
External trade policy, 38
Externalities, **49**

Factoring, **94**
Finance house deposits, 118
Finance lease, 183
Financial accounts, 6
Financial analysis of long-term decisions, 131
Financial control, 5
Financial gearing, 233
Financial intermediary, **54**
Financial management, 5
Financial objectives, 8
Financial performance, 17
Financial planning, 5
Financial risk, 232, 281, 286
Financial strategy, 7
Financial targets, 11
Financing decision, 5
Fiscal policy, **39**
Fisher effect, 333
Fisher formula, 158
Fixed charge, 210
Fixed exchange rates, 42
Floating charge, 210
Floating exchange rates, **43**
Floating rate debt capital, 281
Floor, **356**
Fluctuating current assets, 120
Foreign currency derivatives, 341
Foreign currency risk management, 333
Foreign exchange (FX) markets, 328
Foreign exchange risk management, 113
Forward exchange contract, 335, **336**
Forward interest rate agreements (FRAs), 353, 354
Forward rate, **327**
Four-way equivalence, 333
Fundamental theory of share values, 257
Futures market, 341

Gap analysis of interest rate risk, 351
Gap exposure, 351
Geared betas, 283
Gearing ratios, 19
Gearing, 12, 226, 229, 232, 283, 299
Go/no go decision, 132
Goal congruence, **23**
Gordon's growth approximation, 258
Government aid, 245
Government assistance for business, 48
Government incentives, 49
Government, 15, 16
Grants, 48
Green policies, 49
Growth in dividends, 258

Hard capital rationing, 130, **190**
Hedging, 113
Hour-of-the-day effects, 319

Impact of cost of capital on investments, 281
Income based valuation bases, 298
Inflation, 158
Information processing efficiency, 315
Initial public offer (IPO), **214**
Institutional investors, 57
Interest cover, 236
Interest rate derivatives, 355
Interest rate futures, 355
Interest rate option, **356**
Interest rate parity, **330**, 331
Interest rate risk management, 353
Interest rate swap, **357**
Interest rates, 40, 59, 350
Interest yield, 309
Internal rate of return (IRR) method, 148
Internal sources of finance, 224
International capital markets, 57
International Fisher effect, 333
International money markets, 57
Inventory approach to cash management, 114
Inventory management, 80
Inventory turnover period, **70**
Inventory turnover, **70**
Investing surplus cash, 116
Investment appraisal, 131
Investment by not-for-profit organisations, 129
Investment decision-making process, 130
Investment decisions, 6
Investment, 128
Invoice currency, 334
Invoice discounting, 91, **96**
Irredeemable debentures, 308
Irredeemable debt capital, 264
Issue price for a rights issue, 216

Just-in-time procurement, 85

Keynes, 104

Leading and lagging, 335
Lease or buy decisions, 184
Leasing, **182**, 206
Legislation, 16
Lessee, **182**
Lessor, **182**
LIBOR, **60**, **351**, 354
Liquidity preference theory, 352
Liquidity ratios, 20
Liquidity, 226
Listing, 213
Loan Guarantee Scheme, 245
Local authority deposits, 118
Long range planning, 11

Macroeconomics, **36**
Management accounts, 6
Management buyout, 23
Management of cash, 104
Management, 15
Managerial reward schemes, 23
Managing accounts payable, 98
Managing accounts receivable, 86
Managing foreign accounts payable, 100
Marginal cost of capital, 269, 271
Market capitalisation, **319**
Market failure, **44**
Market imperfections and pricing anomalies, 319
Market imperfections, 279
Market risk premium, **261**
Market risk, **259**
Market segmentation theory of interest rates, 352
Market values, 9
Marketability and liquidity of shares, 318
Matching and smoothing, 353
Matching assets and liabilities, 335
Matching receipts and payments, 334
Maturity gap, 244
Maturity matching, 121
Maximum inventory level, **83**
Merger, 45, **297**
Microeconomics, **36**
Miller-Orr model, 115
Modigliani and Miller, 226, 276, 283
Monetary Policy Committee, 353
Monetary policy, 38, **40**
Money market hedge, 337
Monopoly, **45**
Month-of-the-year effects, 319

Nature of working capital, 66
Net assets method of share valuation, 295
Net operating income, 277
Net present value, **144**
Net working capital, **66**
Netting, 335
Nominal rates of interest, 158
Non-divisible projects, 194
Non-financial objectives, 13
Non-systematic risk, **259**
Not-for-profit organisation, **26**, 129
NPV, **144**

Objectives of working capital, 67
Operating cycle, 68
Operating lease, **183**
Operational efficiency, 314
Operational gearing, 236
Option, **343**
Ordinary shares, 213
Origination of proposals, 130
Over the counter (OTC) options, 343
Over-capitalisation, 72
Overdraft, 104, 202
Overseas factor, 97
Overtrading, 73

P/E ratio (earnings) method of valuation, 298
Payables, 14, 98
Payback, **135**
Pecking order theory, 280
Performance-related pay, 23
Permanent current assets, 120
Perpetuity, 147
Pollution, 49
Precautionary motive, 104
Present value, **143**
Price earnings (P/E) ratio, **21**, **240**
Prior charge capital, 233
Privatisation, 48
Probability analysis, 174
Probability distribution, 174
Profit margin, 18
Profit maximisation, 9, 10
Profitability index, **191**
Profitability, 11, 17
Project-specific cost of capital, 282
Purchasing power parity, **332**

Qualitative issues in long-term decisions, 132
Quantitative controls, 40
Quantity discounts, 84
Quick ratio, **70**

Random walk theory, 318
Ratio analysis, 17
Raw materials inventory holding period, **70**
Real interest rate, 158
Redeemable debt capital, 265
Redemption, **210**
Regulation of markets, 44
Regulatory requirements, 24
Relationship between company value and cost of capital, 281
Relative costs of sources of finance, 255
Relevant cash flows, 132
Re-order level, **82**
Replacement decisions, 188
Repurchase of shares, 229
Residual theory of dividend policy, 226
Restrictive practices, 46
Return on capital employed (ROCE), 11, **18**, 136
Return on equity, **19**
Return on investment (ROI) method), 136
Revenue expenditure, **128**
Reverse yield gap, 60
Rights issues, 216
Risk and uncertainty, 170
Risk management, 334
Risk-adjusted discount rates, 177
Risk-free rate of return, 255
Risk-free securities, 259
Risk-return trade-off, 60
Role of working capital management, 67

Safety inventory, 83
Sale and leaseback, **184**, 206
Sales revenue/net working capital ratio, 71
Savings, 133
Scrip dividend, **228**
Secondary ratios, 18
Semi-strong form efficiency, 315
Sensitivity analysis, **171**
Settlement date, 342
Settlement discount, 92
Share option scheme, 23
Share ownership, 16
Share repurchase, 229
Share valuation, 294
Shareholder wealth maximisation, 8, 148
Shareholders and management, 15
Shareholders, 14, 225
Short-term debt instruments, 118
Short-term deposits, 117
Short-term interest rate futures, 356
Short-term investments, 117
Short-term loans, 204
Signalling, 226
Simulation model, 176
Single period capital rationing, 191
Small and medium-sized entities, **243**
Soft capital rationing, 130, **190**
Sources of finance for SMEs, 244
Special dividend payment, 117
Speculation, 42
Speculative motive, 105
Spot rate, **326**
Stakeholders, **14**
Stock Exchange introduction, 215
Stock Exchange listing regulations, 25
Stock Exchange, 56
Stock market ratios, 20

Stock markets, 56
Stock split, 228
Strategy, 7
Strong form efficiency, 316
Structure of interest rates, 351
Subjective judgement, 28
Surplus cash, 116
Swap, **344**
Systematic risk, **259**, 283

Takeover, **294**
Taxation, 162, 266
Theoretical ex rights price (TERP), 217
Tick size, 342
Time value of money, 154
Timing of cash flows, 145
Total shareholder return, **9**, 225
Trade accounts payable, 98
Trade credit, 99, 205
Trade payables, 14
Trading cycle, 68
Traditional view of dividend policy, 226
Transaction exposure, 328
Transactions motive, 104
Translation exposure, 328
Treasury bills, 118
Treasury management, **113**

Underwriters, 215
Ungeared betas, 283
Unit cost measurements, 28
Unsystematic risk, **259**

Value for money, **27**
Value of rights, 218
Venture capital, **211**

Weak form efficiency, 315
Weighted average cost of capital, **269**, 276
Working capital cycle, 68
Working capital financing, 120
Working capital funding strategies, 118
Working capital investment, 129
Working capital requirement, 118
Working capital, 165

Yield curve, 352

Zero cost collar, 356
Zero coupon bonds, **208**

Review Form & Free Prize Draw – Paper F9 Financial Management (6/09)

All original review forms from the entire BPP range, completed with genuine comments, will be entered into one of two draws on 31 January 2010 and 31 July 2010. The names on the first four forms picked out on each occasion will be sent a cheque for £50.

Name: _____ **Address:** _____

_____

_____

How have you used this Text?
(Tick one box only)

- ☐ Home study (book only)
- ☐ On a course: college _____
- ☐ With 'correspondence' package
- ☐ Other _____

Why did you decide to purchase this Text? *(Tick one box only)*

- ☐ Have used BPP Texts in the past
- ☐ Recommendation by friend/colleague
- ☐ Recommendation by a lecturer at college
- ☐ Saw advertising
- ☐ Saw information on BPP website
- ☐ Other _____

During the past six months do you recall seeing/receiving any of the following?
(Tick as many boxes as are relevant)

- ☐ Our advertisement in *ACCA Student Accountant*
- ☐ Our advertisement in *Pass*
- ☐ Our advertisement in *PQ*
- ☐ Our brochure with a letter through the post
- ☐ Our website www.bpp.com

Which (if any) aspects of our advertising do you find useful?
(Tick as many boxes as are relevant)

- ☐ Prices and publication dates of new editions
- ☐ Information on Text content
- ☐ Facility to order books off-the-page
- ☐ None of the above

Which BPP products have you used?

Text	☑	*Success CD*	☐	*Learn Online*	☐
Kit	☐	*i-Learn*	☐	*Home Study Package*	☐
Passcard	☐	*i-Pass*	☐	*Home Study PLUS*	☐

Your ratings, comments and suggestions would be appreciated on the following areas.

	Very useful	*Useful*	*Not useful*
Introductory section (Key study steps, personal study)	☐	☐	☐
Chapter introductions	☐	☐	☐
Key terms	☐	☐	☐
Quality of explanations	☐	☐	☐
Case studies and other examples	☐	☐	☐
Exam focus points	☐	☐	☐
Questions and answers in each chapter	☐	☐	☐
Fast forwards and chapter roundups	☐	☐	☐
Quick quizzes	☐	☐	☐
Question Bank	☐	☐	☐
Answer Bank	☐	☐	☐
Index	☐	☐	☐

Overall opinion of this Study Text	*Excellent*	☐	*Good*	☐	*Adequate*	☐	*Poor* ☐
Do you intend to continue using BPP products?			*Yes*	☐	*No*	☐	

On the reverse of this page are noted particular areas of the text about which we would welcome your feedback.
The BPP author of this edition can be e-mailed at: Julietgood@bpp.com

Please return this form to: Lesley Buick, ACCA Publishing Manager, BPP Learning Media Ltd, FREEPOST, London, W12 8BR

Review Form & Free Prize Draw (continued)

TELL US WHAT YOU THINK

Free Prize Draw Rules

1 Closing date for 31 January 2010 draw is 31 December 2009. Closing date for 31 July 2010 draw is 30 June 2010.

2 Restricted to entries with UK and Eire addresses only. BPP employees, their families and business associates are excluded.

3 No purchase necessary. Entry forms are available upon request from BPP Learning Media Ltd. No more than one entry per title, per person. Draw restricted to persons aged 16 and over.

4 Winners will be notified by post and receive their cheques not later than 6 weeks after the relevant draw date.

5 The decision of the promoter in all matters is final and binding. No correspondence will be entered into.